

# Kubernetes

## IN ACTION

Marko Lukša

MANNING

## Kubernetes resources covered in the book

|                     | <b>Resource (abbr.) [API version]</b>         | <b>Description</b>  | <b>Section</b> |
|---------------------|---|---|----------------|
| Deploying workloads | <b>Namespace*</b> (ns) [v1]                   | Enables organizing resources into non-overlapping groups (for example, per tenant)                | 3.7            |
|                     | <b>Pod</b> (po) [v1]                          | The basic deployable unit containing one or more processes in co-located containers               | 3.1            |
|                     | <b>ReplicaSet</b> (rs) [apps/v1beta2**]       | Keeps one or more pod replicas running  | 4.3            |
|                     | <b>ReplicationController</b> (rc) [v1]        | The older, less-powerful equivalent of a ReplicaSet   | 4.2            |
|                     | <b>Job</b> [batch/v1]                         | Runs pods that perform a completable task   | 4.5            |
|                     | <b>CronJob</b> [batch/v1beta1]                | Runs a scheduled job once or periodically   | 4.6            |
|                     | <b>DaemonSet</b> (ds) [apps/v1beta2**]        | Runs one pod replica per node (on all nodes or only on those matching a node selector)            | 4.4            |
| Services            | <b>StatefulSet</b> (sts) [apps/v1beta1**]     | Runs stateful pods with a stable identity   | 10.2           |
|                     | <b>Deployment</b> (deploy) [apps/v1beta1**]   | Declarative deployment and updates of pods  | 9.3            |
| Config              | <b>Service</b> (svc) [v1]                     | Exposes one or more pods at a single and stable IP address and port pair                          | 5.1            |
|                     | <b>Endpoints</b> (ep) [v1]                    | Defines which pods (or other servers) are exposed through a service                               | 5.2.1          |
|                     | <b>Ingress</b> (ing) [extensions/v1beta1]     | Exposes one or more services to external clients through a single externally reachable IP address | 5.4            |
| Storage             | <b>ConfigMap</b> (cm) [v1]                    | A key-value map for storing non-sensitive config options for apps and exposing it to them         | 7.4            |
|                     | <b>Secret</b> [v1]                            | Like a ConfigMap, but for sensitive data  | 7.5            |
| Storage             | <b>PersistentVolume*</b> (pv) [v1]            | Points to persistent storage that can be mounted into a pod through a PersistentVolumeClaim       | 6.5            |
|                     | <b>PersistentVolumeClaim</b> (pvc) [v1]       | A request for and claim to a PersistentVolume   | 6.5            |
|                     | <b>StorageClass*</b> (sc) [storage.k8s.io/v1] | Defines the type of dynamically-provisioned storage claimable in a PersistentVolumeClaim          | 6.6            |

\* Cluster-level resource (not namespaced)

\*\* Also in other API versions; listed version is the one used in this book

(continues on inside back cover)

## *Kubernetes in Action*



# *Kubernetes in Action*

MARKO LUKŠA



MANNING  
SHELTER ISLAND

For online information and ordering of this and other Manning books, please visit [www.manning.com](http://www.manning.com). The publisher offers discounts on this book when ordered in quantity. For more information, please contact

Special Sales Department  
Manning Publications Co.  
20 Baldwin Road  
PO Box 761  
Shelter Island, NY 11964  
Email: [orders@manning.com](mailto:orders@manning.com)

©2018 by Manning Publications Co. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, or otherwise, without prior written permission of the publisher.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in the book, and Manning Publications was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed in initial caps or all caps.

- ⊗ Recognizing the importance of preserving what has been written, it is Manning's policy to have the books we publish printed on acid-free paper, and we exert our best efforts to that end. Recognizing also our responsibility to conserve the resources of our planet, Manning books are printed on paper that is at least 15 percent recycled and processed without the use of elemental chlorine.

 Manning Publications Co.  
20 Baldwin Road  
PO Box 761  
Shelter Island, NY 11964

Development editor: Elesha Hyde  
Review editor: Aleksandar Dragosavljević  
Technical development editor: Jeanne Boyarsky  
Project editor: Kevin Sullivan  
Copyeditor: Katie Petito  
Proofreader: Melody Dolab  
Technical proofreader: Antonio Magnaghi  
Illustrator: Chuck Larson  
Typesetter: Dennis Dalinnik  
Cover designer: Marija Tudor

ISBN: 9781617293726  
Printed in the United States of America  
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 – EBM – 22 21 20 19 18 17

*To my parents,  
who have always put their children's needs above their own*



# *brief contents*

---

## PART 1 OVERVIEW

- 1 ■ Introducing Kubernetes 1
- 2 ■ First steps with Docker and Kubernetes 25

## PART 2 CORE CONCEPTS

- 3 ■ Pods: running containers in Kubernetes 55
- 4 ■ Replication and other controllers: deploying managed pods 84
- 5 ■ Services: enabling clients to discover and talk to pods 120
- 6 ■ Volumes: attaching disk storage to containers 159
- 7 ■ ConfigMaps and Secrets: configuring applications 191
- 8 ■ Accessing pod metadata and other resources from applications 225
- 9 ■ Deployments: updating applications declaratively 250
- 10 ■ StatefulSets: deploying replicated stateful applications 280

**PART 3 BEYOND THE BASICS**

- 11 ■ Understanding Kubernetes internals 309**
- 12 ■ Securing the Kubernetes API server 346**
- 13 ■ Securing cluster nodes and the network 375**
- 14 ■ Managing pods' computational resources 404**
- 15 ■ Automatic scaling of pods and cluster nodes 437**
- 16 ■ Advanced scheduling 457**
- 17 ■ Best practices for developing apps 477**
- 18 ■ Extending Kubernetes 508**

# *contents*

---

|                                     |              |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>preface</i>                      | <i>xxi</i>   |
| <i>acknowledgments</i>              | <i>xxiii</i> |
| <i>about this book</i>              | <i>xxv</i>   |
| <i>about the author</i>             | <i>xxix</i>  |
| <i>about the cover illustration</i> | <i>xxx</i>   |

## PART 1 OVERVIEW

|          |   |   |  |  |    |
|----------|---|---|--|--|----|
| <b>1</b> | <b><i>Introducing Kubernetes</i></b>                  | <b>1</b>  |  |  |    |
| 1.1      | Understanding the need for a system like Kubernetes   | 2   |  |  |    |
|          | <i>Moving from monolithic apps to microservices</i>   | 3 ▪ <i>Providing a consistent environment to applications</i> | 6 ▪ <i>Moving to continuous delivery: DevOps and NoOps</i>         | 6  |    |
| 1.2      | Introducing container technologies                    | 7   |  |  |    |
|          | <i>Understanding what containers are</i>              | 8 ▪ <i>Introducing the Docker container platform</i>          | 12 ▪ <i>Introducing rkt—an alternative to Docker</i>               | 15   |    |
| 1.3      | Introducing Kubernetes                                | 16  |  |  |    |
|          | <i>Understanding its origins</i>                      | 16 ▪ <i>Looking at Kubernetes from the top of a mountain</i>  | 16 ▪ <i>Understanding the architecture of a Kubernetes cluster</i> | 18 ▪ <i>Running an application in Kubernetes</i> | 19 |
|          | <i>Understanding the benefits of using Kubernetes</i> | 21  |  |  |    |
| 1.4      | Summary   | 23  |  |  |    |

|          |  |           |
|----------|--|-----------|
| <b>2</b> | <b>First steps with Docker and Kubernetes</b>                          | <b>25</b> |
| 2.1      | Creating, running, and sharing a container image                       | 26        |
|          | <i>Installing Docker and running a Hello World container</i>           | 26        |
|          | <i>Creating a trivial Node.js app</i>                                  | 28        |
|          | ■ <i>Creating a Dockerfile for the image</i>                           | 29        |
|          | ■ <i>Building the container image</i>                                  | 29        |
|          | <i>Running the container image</i>                                     | 32        |
|          | ■ <i>Exploring the inside of a running container</i>                   | 33        |
|          | ■ <i>Stopping and removing a container</i>                             | 34        |
|          | ■ <i>Pushing the image to an image registry</i>                        | 35        |
| 2.2      | Setting up a Kubernetes cluster  | 36        |
|          | <i>Running a local single-node Kubernetes cluster with Minikube</i>    | 37        |
|          | <i>Using a hosted Kubernetes cluster with Google Kubernetes Engine</i> | 38        |
|          | ■ <i>Setting up an alias and command-line completion for kubectl</i>   | 41        |
| 2.3      | Running your first app on Kubernetes                                   | 42        |
|          | <i>Deploying your Node.js app</i>                                      | 42        |
|          | ■ <i>Accessing your web application</i>                                | 45        |
|          | ■ <i>The logical parts of your system</i>                              | 47        |
|          | <i>Horizontally scaling the application</i>                            | 48        |
|          | ■ <i>Examining what nodes your app is running on</i>                   | 51        |
|          | ■ <i>Introducing the Kubernetes dashboard</i>                          | 52        |
| 2.4      | Summary  | 53        |

## PART 2 CORE CONCEPTS

|          |  |           |
|----------|--|-----------|
| <b>3</b> | <b>Pods: running containers in Kubernetes</b>          | <b>55</b> |
| 3.1      | Introducing pods                                       | 56        |
|          | <i>Understanding why we need pods</i>                  | 56        |
|          | ■ <i>Understanding pods</i>                            | 57        |
|          | <i>Organizing containers across pods properly</i>      | 58        |
| 3.2      | Creating pods from YAML or JSON descriptors            | 61        |
|          | <i>Examining a YAML descriptor of an existing pod</i>  | 61        |
|          | ■ <i>Creating a simple YAML descriptor for a pod</i>   | 63        |
|          | ■ <i>Using kubectl create to create the pod</i>        | 65        |
|          | ■ <i>Viewing application logs</i>                      | 65        |
|          | ■ <i>Sending requests to the pod</i>                   | 66        |
| 3.3      | Organizing pods with labels                            | 67        |
|          | <i>Introducing labels</i>                              | 68        |
|          | ■ <i>Specifying labels when creating a pod</i>         | 69        |
|          | <i>Modifying labels of existing pods</i>               | 70        |
| 3.4      | Listing subsets of pods through label selectors        | 71        |
|          | <i>Listing pods using a label selector</i>             | 71        |
|          | ■ <i>Using multiple conditions in a label selector</i> | 72        |

|     |  |    |
|-----|--|----|
| 3.5 | Using labels and selectors to constrain pod scheduling               | 73 |
|     | <i>Using labels for categorizing worker nodes</i>                    | 74 |
|     | <i>Scheduling pods to specific nodes</i>                             | 74 |
|     | <i>Scheduling to one specific node</i>                               | 75 |
| 3.6 | Annotating pods  | 75 |
|     | <i>Looking up an object's annotations</i>                            | 75 |
|     | <i>Adding and modifying annotations</i>                              | 76 |
| 3.7 | Using namespaces to group resources                                  | 76 |
|     | <i>Understanding the need for namespaces</i>                         | 77 |
|     | <i>Discovering other namespaces and their pods</i>                   | 77 |
|     | <i>Creating a namespace</i>  | 78 |
|     | <i>Managing objects in other namespaces</i>                          | 79 |
|     | <i>Understanding the isolation provided by namespaces</i>            | 79 |
| 3.8 | Stopping and removing pods   | 80 |
|     | <i>Deleting a pod by name</i>  | 80 |
|     | <i>Deleting pods using label selectors</i>                           | 80 |
|     | <i>Deleting pods by deleting the whole namespace</i>                 | 80 |
|     | <i>Deleting all pods in a namespace, while keeping the namespace</i> | 81 |
|     | <i>Deleting (almost) all resources in a namespace</i>                | 82 |
| 3.9 | Summary  | 82 |

## 4 Replication and other controllers: deploying managed pods 84

|     |   |     |
|-----|---|-----|
| 4.1 | Keeping pods healthy  | 85  |
|     | <i>Introducing liveness probes</i>                                    | 85  |
|     | <i>Creating an HTTP-based liveness probe</i>                          | 86  |
|     | <i>Seeing a liveness probe in action</i>                              | 87  |
|     | <i>Configuring additional properties of the liveness probe</i>        | 88  |
|     | <i>Creating effective liveness probes</i>                             | 89  |
| 4.2 | Introducing ReplicationControllers                                    | 90  |
|     | <i>The operation of a ReplicationController</i>                       | 91  |
|     | <i>Creating a ReplicationController</i>                               | 93  |
|     | <i>Seeing the ReplicationController in action</i>                     | 94  |
|     | <i>Moving pods in and out of the scope of a ReplicationController</i> | 98  |
|     | <i>Changing the pod template</i>                                      | 101 |
|     | <i>Horizontally scaling pods</i>                                      | 102 |
|     | <i>Deleting a ReplicationController</i>                               | 103 |
| 4.3 | Using ReplicaSets instead of ReplicationControllers                   | 104 |
|     | <i>Comparing a ReplicaSet to a ReplicationController</i>              | 105 |
|     | <i>Defining a ReplicaSet</i>  | 105 |
|     | <i>Creating and examining a ReplicaSet</i>                            | 106 |
|     | <i>Using the ReplicaSet's more expressive label selectors</i>         | 107 |
|     | <i>Wrapping up ReplicaSets</i>  | 108 |

|     |  |     |
|-----|--|-----|
| 4.4 | Running exactly one pod on each node with DaemonSets       | 108 |
|     | <i>Using a DaemonSet to run a pod on every node</i>        | 109 |
|     | <i>Using a DaemonSet to run pods only on certain nodes</i> | 109 |
| 4.5 | Running pods that perform a single completable task        | 112 |
|     | <i>Introducing the Job resource</i>                        | 112 |
|     | <i>Defining a Job resource</i>                             | 113 |
|     | <i>Seeing a Job run a pod</i>                              | 114 |
|     | <i>Running multiple pod instances in a Job</i>             | 114 |
|     | <i>Limiting the time allowed for a Job pod to complete</i> | 116 |
| 4.6 | Scheduling Jobs to run periodically or once in the future  | 116 |
|     | <i>Creating a CronJob</i>                                  | 116 |
|     | <i>Understanding how scheduled jobs are run</i>            | 117 |
| 4.7 | Summary  | 118 |

## 5 Services: enabling clients to discover and talk to pods 120

|     |   |     |
|-----|---|-----|
| 5.1 | Introducing services  | 121 |
|     | <i>Creating services</i>  | 122 |
|     | <i>Discovering services</i>                                     | 128 |
| 5.2 | Connecting to services living outside the cluster               | 131 |
|     | <i>Introducing service endpoints</i>                            | 131 |
|     | <i>Manually configuring service endpoints</i>                   | 132 |
|     | <i>Creating an alias for an external service</i>                | 134 |
| 5.3 | Exposing services to external clients                           | 134 |
|     | <i>Using a NodePort service</i>                                 | 135 |
|     | <i>Exposing a service through an external load balancer</i>     | 138 |
|     | <i>Understanding the peculiarities of external connections</i>  | 141 |
| 5.4 | Exposing services externally through an Ingress resource        | 142 |
|     | <i>Creating an Ingress resource</i>                             | 144 |
|     | <i>Accessing the service through the Ingress</i>                | 145 |
|     | <i>Exposing multiple services through the same Ingress</i>      | 146 |
|     | <i>Configuring Ingress to handle TLS traffic</i>                | 147 |
| 5.5 | Signaling when a pod is ready to accept connections             | 149 |
|     | <i>Introducing readiness probes</i>                             | 149 |
|     | <i>Adding a readiness probe to a pod</i>                        | 151 |
|     | <i>Understanding what real-world readiness probes should do</i> | 153 |

|     |  |     |
|-----|--|-----|
| 5.6 | Using a headless service for discovering individual pods | 154 |
|     | <i>Creating a headless service</i>                       | 154 |
|     | <i>Discovering pods through DNS</i>                      | 155 |
|     | <i>Discovering all pods—even those that aren't ready</i> | 156 |
| 5.7 | Troubleshooting services                                 | 156 |
| 5.8 | Summary  | 157 |

## 6 *Volumes: attaching disk storage to containers* 159

|     |  |     |
|-----|--|-----|
| 6.1 | Introducing volumes  | 160 |
|     | <i>Explaining volumes in an example</i>                                    | 160 |
|     | <i>Introducing available volume types</i>                                  | 162 |
| 6.2 | Using volumes to share data between containers                             | 163 |
|     | <i>Using an emptyDir volume</i>  | 163 |
|     | <i>Using a Git repository as the starting point for a volume</i>           | 166 |
| 6.3 | Accessing files on the worker node's filesystem                            | 169 |
|     | <i>Introducing the hostPath volume</i>                                     | 169 |
|     | <i>Examining system pods that use hostPath volumes</i>                     | 170 |
| 6.4 | Using persistent storage   | 171 |
|     | <i>Using a GCE Persistent Disk in a pod volume</i>                         | 171 |
|     | <i>Using other types of volumes with underlying persistent storage</i>     | 174 |
| 6.5 | Decoupling pods from the underlying storage technology                     | 176 |
|     | <i>Introducing PersistentVolumes and PersistentVolumeClaims</i>            | 176 |
|     | <i>Creating a PersistentVolume</i>   | 177 |
|     | <i>Claiming a PersistentVolume by creating a PersistentVolumeClaim</i>     | 179 |
|     | <i>Using a PersistentVolumeClaim in a pod</i>                              | 181 |
|     | <i>Understanding the benefits of using PersistentVolumes and claims</i>    | 182 |
|     | <i>Recycling PersistentVolumes</i>   | 183 |
| 6.6 | Dynamic provisioning of PersistentVolumes                                  | 184 |
|     | <i>Defining the available storage types through StorageClass resources</i> | 185 |
|     | <i>Requesting the storage class in a PersistentVolumeClaim</i>             | 185 |
|     | <i>Dynamic provisioning without specifying a storage class</i>             | 187 |
| 6.7 | Summary  | 190 |

## 7 *ConfigMaps and Secrets: configuring applications* 191

- 7.1 Configuring containerized applications 191
- 7.2 Passing command-line arguments to containers 192
  - Defining the command and arguments in Docker* 193
  - Overriding the command and arguments in Kubernetes* 195
- 7.3 Setting environment variables for a container 196
  - Specifying environment variables in a container definition* 197
  - Referring to other environment variables in a variable's value* 198
  - Understanding the drawback of hardcoding environment variables* 198
- 7.4 Decoupling configuration with a ConfigMap 198
  - Introducing ConfigMaps* 198 ▪ *Creating a ConfigMap* 200
  - Passing a ConfigMap entry to a container as an environment variable* 202 ▪ *Passing all entries of a ConfigMap as environment variables at once* 204 ▪ *Passing a ConfigMap entry as a command-line argument* 204 ▪ *Using a configMap volume to expose ConfigMap entries as files* 205 ▪ *Updating an app's config without having to restart the app* 211
- 7.5 Using Secrets to pass sensitive data to containers 213
  - Introducing Secrets* 214 ▪ *Introducing the default token Secret* 214 ▪ *Creating a Secret* 216 ▪ *Comparing ConfigMaps and Secrets* 217 ▪ *Using the Secret in a pod* 218
  - Understanding image pull Secrets* 222
- 7.6 Summary 224

## 8 *Accessing pod metadata and other resources from applications* 225

- 8.1 Passing metadata through the Downward API 226
  - Understanding the available metadata* 226 ▪ *Exposing metadata through environment variables* 227 ▪ *Passing metadata through files in a downwardAPI volume* 230
- 8.2 Talking to the Kubernetes API server 233
  - Exploring the Kubernetes REST API* 234 ▪ *Talking to the API server from within a pod* 238 ▪ *Simplifying API server communication with ambassador containers* 243 ▪ *Using client libraries to talk to the API server* 246
- 8.3 Summary 249

## 9 Deployments: updating applications declaratively 250

- 9.1 Updating applications running in pods 251
  - Deleting old pods and replacing them with new ones* 252
  - Spinning up new pods and then deleting the old ones* 252
- 9.2 Performing an automatic rolling update with a ReplicationController 254
  - Running the initial version of the app* 254 ▀ *Performing a rolling update with kubectl* 256 ▀ *Understanding why kubectl rolling-update is now obsolete* 260
- 9.3 Using Deployments for updating apps declaratively 261
  - Creating a Deployment* 262 ▀ *Updating a Deployment* 264
  - Rolling back a deployment* 268 ▀ *Controlling the rate of the rollout* 271 ▀ *Pausing the rollout process* 273 ▀ *Blocking rollouts of bad versions* 274
- 9.4 Summary 279

## 10 StatefulSets: deploying replicated stateful applications 280

- 10.1 Replicating stateful pods 281
  - Running multiple replicas with separate storage for each* 281
  - Providing a stable identity for each pod* 282
- 10.2 Understanding StatefulSets 284
  - Comparing StatefulSets with ReplicaSets* 284 ▀ *Providing a stable network identity* 285 ▀ *Providing stable dedicated storage to each stateful instance* 287 ▀ *Understanding StatefulSet guarantees* 289
- 10.3 Using a StatefulSet 290
  - Creating the app and container image* 290 ▀ *Deploying the app through a StatefulSet* 291 ▀ *Playing with your pods* 295
- 10.4 Discovering peers in a StatefulSet 299
  - Implementing peer discovery through DNS* 301 ▀ *Updating a StatefulSet* 302 ▀ *Trying out your clustered data store* 303
- 10.5 Understanding how StatefulSets deal with node failures 304
  - Simulating a node's disconnection from the network* 304
  - Deleting the pod manually* 306
- 10.6 Summary 307

## PART 3 BEYOND THE BASICS

|           |  |  |  |                                       |     |
|-----------|--|--|--|---------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>11</b> | <b><i>Understanding Kubernetes internals</i></b>                             | <b>309</b>   |  |                                       |     |
| 11.1      | Understanding the architecture   | 310  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>The distributed nature of Kubernetes components</i>                       | 310  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>How Kubernetes uses etcd</i>  | 312 ▪ <i>What the API server does</i>                                    | 316  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>Understanding how the API server notifies clients of resource changes</i> | 318 ▪ <i>Understanding the Scheduler</i>                                 | 319  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>Introducing the controllers running in the Controller Manager</i>         | 321  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>What the Kubelet does</i>   | 326 ▪ <i>The role of the Kubernetes Service Proxy</i>                    | 328 ▪ <i>Introducing Kubernetes add-ons</i>              | 328 ▪ <i>Bringing it all together</i> | 330 |
| 11.2      | How controllers cooperate  | 330  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>Understanding which components are involved</i>                           | 330 ▪ <i>The chain of events</i>   | 331 ▪ <i>Observing cluster events</i>                    | 332                                   |     |
| 11.3      | Understanding what a running pod is  | 333  |  |                                       |     |
| 11.4      | Inter-pod networking   | 335  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>What the network must be like</i>   | 335 ▪ <i>Diving deeper into how networking works</i>                     | 336 ▪ <i>Introducing the Container Network Interface</i> | 338                                   |     |
| 11.5      | How services are implemented   | 338  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>Introducing the kube-proxy</i>  | 339 ▪ <i>How kube-proxy uses iptables</i>                                | 339  |                                       |     |
| 11.6      | Running highly available clusters  | 341  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>Making your apps highly available</i>                                     | 341 ▪ <i>Making Kubernetes Control Plane components highly available</i> | 342  |                                       |     |
| 11.7      | Summary  | 345  |  |                                       |     |
| <b>12</b> | <b><i>Securing the Kubernetes API server</i></b>                             | <b>346</b>   |  |                                       |     |
| 12.1      | Understanding authentication   | 346  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>Users and groups</i>  | 347 ▪ <i>Introducing ServiceAccounts</i>                                 | 348  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>Creating ServiceAccounts</i>  | 349 ▪ <i>Assigning a ServiceAccount to a pod</i>                         | 351  |                                       |     |
| 12.2      | Securing the cluster with role-based access control                          | 353  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>Introducing the RBAC authorization plugin</i>                             | 353 ▪ <i>Introducing RBAC resources</i>                                  | 355 ▪ <i>Using Roles and RoleBindings</i>                | 358                                   |     |
|           | <i>Using ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings</i>                            | 362  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>Understanding default ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings</i>            | 371  |  |                                       |     |
|           | <i>Granting authorization permissions wisely</i>                             | 373  |  |                                       |     |
| 12.3      | Summary  | 373  |  |                                       |     |

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| <b>13</b> | <b>Securing cluster nodes and the network 375</b>  |
| 13.1      | Using the host node's namespaces in a pod 376<br><i>Using the node's network namespace in a pod 376 ▪ Binding to a host port without using the host's network namespace 377</i><br><i>Using the node's PID and IPC namespaces 379</i>  |
| 13.2      | Configuring the container's security context 380<br><i>Running a container as a specific user 381 ▪ Preventing a container from running as root 382 ▪ Running pods in privileged mode 382 ▪ Adding individual kernel capabilities to a container 384 ▪ Dropping capabilities from a container 385</i><br><i>Preventing processes from writing to the container's filesystem 386</i><br><i>Sharing volumes when containers run as different users 387</i> |
| 13.3      | Restricting the use of security-related features in pods 389<br><i>Introducing the PodSecurityPolicy resource 389 ▪ Understanding runAsUser, fsGroup, and supplementalGroups policies 392</i><br><i>Configuring allowed, default, and disallowed capabilities 394</i><br><i>Constraining the types of volumes pods can use 395 ▪ Assigning different PodSecurityPolicies to different users and groups 396</i>   |
| 13.4      | Isolating the pod network 399<br><i>Enabling network isolation in a namespace 399 ▪ Allowing only some pods in the namespace to connect to a server pod 400</i><br><i>Isolating the network between Kubernetes namespaces 401</i><br><i>Isolating using CIDR notation 402 ▪ Limiting the outbound traffic of a set of pods 403</i>   |
| 13.5      | Summary 403  |
| <b>14</b> | <b>Managing pods' computational resources 404</b>  |
| 14.1      | Requesting resources for a pod's containers 405<br><i>Creating pods with resource requests 405 ▪ Understanding how resource requests affect scheduling 406 ▪ Understanding how CPU requests affect CPU time sharing 411 ▪ Defining and requesting custom resources 411</i>   |
| 14.2      | Limiting resources available to a container 412<br><i>Setting a hard limit for the amount of resources a container can use 412 ▪ Exceeding the limits 414 ▪ Understanding how apps in containers see limits 415</i>  |
| 14.3      | Understanding pod QoS classes 417<br><i>Defining the QoS class for a pod 417 ▪ Understanding which process gets killed when memory is low 420</i>  |

|      |   |     |
|------|---|-----|
| 14.4 | Setting default requests and limits for pods per namespace                | 421 |
|      | <i>Introducing the LimitRange resource</i>                                | 421 |
|      | ■ <i>Creating a LimitRange object</i>                                     | 422 |
|      | ■ <i>Enforcing the limits</i>   | 423 |
|      | ■ <i>Applying default resource requests and limits</i>                    | 424 |
| 14.5 | LIMITING THE TOTAL RESOURCES AVAILABLE IN A NAMESPACEx                    | 425 |
|      | <i>Introducing the ResourceQuota object</i>                               | 425 |
|      | ■ <i>Specifying a quota for persistent storage</i>                        | 427 |
|      | ■ <i>Limiting the number of objects that can be created</i>               | 427 |
|      | ■ <i>Specifying quotas for specific pod states and/or QoS classes</i>     | 429 |
| 14.6 | MONITORING POD RESOURCE USAGE   | 430 |
|      | <i>Collecting and retrieving actual resource usages</i>                   | 430 |
|      | ■ <i>Storing and analyzing historical resource consumption statistics</i> | 432 |
| 14.7 | SUMMARY   | 435 |

## 15 Automatic scaling of pods and cluster nodes 437

|      |  |     |
|------|--|-----|
| 15.1 | HORIZONTAL POD AUTOSCALING   | 438 |
|      | <i>Understanding the autoscaling process</i>                       | 438 |
|      | ■ <i>Scaling based on CPU utilization</i>                          | 441 |
|      | ■ <i>Scaling based on memory consumption</i>                       | 448 |
|      | ■ <i>Scaling based on other and custom metrics</i>                 | 448 |
|      | ■ <i>Determining which metrics are appropriate for autoscaling</i> | 450 |
|      | ■ <i>Scaling down to zero replicas</i>                             | 450 |
| 15.2 | VERTICAL POD AUTOSCALING   | 451 |
|      | <i>Automatically configuring resource requests</i>                 | 451 |
|      | ■ <i>Modifying resource requests while a pod is running</i>        | 451 |
| 15.3 | HORIZONTAL SCALING OF CLUSTER NODES                                | 452 |
|      | <i>Introducing the Cluster Autoscaler</i>                          | 452 |
|      | ■ <i>Enabling the Cluster Autoscaler</i>                           | 454 |
|      | ■ <i>Limiting service disruption during cluster scale-down</i>     | 454 |
| 15.4 | SUMMARY  | 456 |

## 16 Advanced scheduling 457

|      |  |     |
|------|--|-----|
| 16.1 | USING TAINTS AND TOLERATIONS TO REPEL PODS FROM CERTAIN NODES      | 457 |
|      | <i>Introducing taints and tolerations</i>                          | 458 |
|      | ■ <i>Adding custom taints to a node</i>                            | 460 |
|      | ■ <i>Adding tolerations to pods</i>                                | 460 |
|      | ■ <i>Understanding what taints and tolerations can be used for</i> | 461 |

|      |   |   |  |     |
|------|---|---|--|-----|
| 16.2 | Using node affinity to attract pods to certain nodes                            | 462   |  |     |
|      | <i>Specifying hard node affinity rules</i>                                      | 463 ▪ <i>Prioritizing nodes when scheduling a pod</i>                         | 465  |     |
| 16.3 | Co-locating pods with pod affinity and anti-affinity                            | 468   |  |     |
|      | <i>Using inter-pod affinity to deploy pods on the same node</i>                 | 468   |  |     |
|      | <i>Deploying pods in the same rack, availability zone, or geographic region</i> | 471 ▪ <i>Expressing pod affinity preferences instead of hard requirements</i> | 472 ▪ <i>Scheduling pods away from each other with pod anti-affinity</i> | 474 |
| 16.4 | Summary   | 476   |  |     |

## 17 Best practices for developing apps 477

|      |   |  |   |   |     |
|------|---|--|---|---|-----|
| 17.1 | Bringing everything together  | 478  |   |   |     |
| 17.2 | Understanding the pod's lifecycle                                     | 479  |   |   |     |
|      | <i>Applications must expect to be killed and relocated</i>            | 479  |   |   |     |
|      | <i>Rescheduling of dead or partially dead pods</i>                    | 482 ▪ <i>Starting pods in a specific order</i>                             | 483 ▪ <i>Adding lifecycle hooks</i>   | 485   |     |
|      | <i>Understanding pod shutdown</i>                                     | 489  |   |   |     |
| 17.3 | Ensuring all client requests are handled properly                     | 492  |   |   |     |
|      | <i>Preventing broken client connections when a pod is starting up</i> | 492  |   |   |     |
|      | <i>Preventing broken connections during pod shut-down</i>             | 493  |   |   |     |
| 17.4 | Making your apps easy to run and manage in Kubernetes                 | 497  |   |   |     |
|      | <i>Making manageable container images</i>                             | 497 ▪ <i>Properly tagging your images and using imagePullPolicy wisely</i> | 497   |   |     |
|      | <i>Using multi-dimensional instead of single-dimensional labels</i>   | 498  |   |   |     |
|      | <i>Describing each resource through annotations</i>                   | 498 ▪ <i>Providing information on why the process terminated</i>           | 498 ▪ <i>Handling application logs</i>  | 500   |     |
| 17.5 | Best practices for development and testing                            | 502  |   |   |     |
|      | <i>Running apps outside of Kubernetes during development</i>          | 502  |   |   |     |
|      | <i>Using Minikube in development</i>                                  | 503 ▪ <i>Versioning and auto-deploying resource manifests</i>              | 504 ▪ <i>Introducing Ksonnet as an alternative to writing YAML/JSON manifests</i> | 505 ▪ <i>Employing Continuous Integration and Continuous Delivery (CI/CD)</i> | 506 |
| 17.6 | Summary   | 506  |   |   |     |

# 18 Extending Kubernetes 508

## 18.1 Defining custom API objects 508

*Introducing CustomResourceDefinitions 509 ▪ Automating custom resources with custom controllers 513 ▪ Validating custom objects 517 ▪ Providing a custom API server for your custom objects 518*

## 18.2 Extending Kubernetes with the Kubernetes Service Catalog 519

*Introducing the Service Catalog 520 ▪ Introducing the Service Catalog API server and Controller Manager 521  
Introducing Service Brokers and the OpenServiceBroker API 522  
Provisioning and using a service 524 ▪ Unbinding and deprovisioning 526 ▪ Understanding what the Service Catalog brings 526*

## 18.3 Platforms built on top of Kubernetes 527

*Red Hat OpenShift Container Platform 527 ▪ Deis Workflow and Helm 530*

## 18.4 Summary 533

*appendix A Using kubectl with multiple clusters 534*

*appendix B Setting up a multi-node cluster with kubeadm 539*

*appendix C Using other container runtimes 552*

*appendix D Cluster Federation 556*

*index 561*

# ***preface***

---

After working at Red Hat for a few years, in late 2014 I was assigned to a newly-established team called Cloud Enablement. Our task was to bring the company's range of middleware products to the OpenShift Container Platform, which was then being developed on top of Kubernetes. At that time, Kubernetes was still in its infancy—version 1.0 hadn't even been released yet.

Our team had to get to know the ins and outs of Kubernetes quickly to set a proper direction for our software and take advantage of everything Kubernetes had to offer. When faced with a problem, it was hard for us to tell if we were doing things wrong or merely hitting one of the early Kubernetes bugs.

Both Kubernetes and my understanding of it have come a long way since then. When I first started using it, most people hadn't even heard of Kubernetes. Now, virtually every software engineer knows about it, and it has become one of the fastest-growing and most-widely-adopted ways of running applications in both the cloud and on-premises datacenters.

In my first month of dealing with Kubernetes, I wrote a two-part blog post about how to run a JBoss WildFly application server cluster in OpenShift/Kubernetes. At the time, I never could have imagined that a simple blog post would ultimately lead the people at Manning to contact me about whether I would like to write a book about Kubernetes. Of course, I couldn't say no to such an offer, even though I was sure they'd approached other people as well and would ultimately pick someone else.

And yet, here we are. After more than a year and a half of writing and researching, the book is done. It's been an awesome journey. Writing a book about a technology is

absolutely the best way to get to know it in much greater detail than you'd learn as just a user. As my knowledge of Kubernetes has expanded during the process and Kubernetes itself has evolved, I've constantly gone back to previous chapters I've written and added additional information. I'm a perfectionist, so I'll never really be absolutely satisfied with the book, but I'm happy to hear that a lot of readers of the Manning Early Access Program (MEAP) have found it to be a great guide to Kubernetes.

My aim is to get the reader to understand the technology itself and teach them how to use the tooling to effectively and efficiently develop and deploy apps to Kubernetes clusters. In the book, I don't put much emphasis on how to actually set up and maintain a proper highly available Kubernetes cluster, but the last part should give readers a very solid understanding of what such a cluster consists of and should allow them to easily comprehend additional resources that deal with this subject.

I hope you'll enjoy reading it, and that it teaches you how to get the most out of the awesome system that is Kubernetes.

## *acknowledgments*

---

Before I started writing this book, I had no clue how many people would be involved in bringing it from a rough manuscript to a published piece of work. This means there are a lot of people to thank.

First, I'd like to thank Erin Twohey for approaching me about writing this book, and Michael Stephens from Manning, who had full confidence in my ability to write it from day one. His words of encouragement early on really motivated me and kept me motivated throughout the last year and a half.

I would also like to thank my initial development editor Andrew Warren, who helped me get my first chapter out the door, and Elesha Hyde, who took over from Andrew and worked with me all the way to the last chapter. Thank you for bearing with me, even though I'm a difficult person to deal with, as I tend to drop off the radar fairly regularly.

I would also like to thank Jeanne Boyarsky, who was the first reviewer to read and comment on my chapters while I was writing them. Jeanne and Elesha were instrumental in making the book as nice as it hopefully is. Without their comments, the book could never have received such good reviews from external reviewers and readers.

I'd like to thank my technical proofreader, Antonio Magnaghi, and of course all my external reviewers: Al Krinker, Alessandro Campeis, Alexander Myltsev, Csaba Sari, David DiMaria, Elias Rangel, Erisk Zelenka, Fabrizio Cucci, Jared Duncan, Keith Donaldson, Michael Bright, Paolo Antinori, Peter Perlepes, and Tiklu Ganguly. Their positive comments kept me going at times when I worried my writing was utterly awful and completely useless. On the other hand, their constructive criticism helped improve

sections that I'd quickly thrown together without enough effort. Thank you for pointing out the hard-to-understand sections and suggesting ways of improving the book. Also, thank you for asking the right questions, which made me realize I was wrong about two or three things in the initial versions of the manuscript.

I also need to thank readers who bought the early version of the book through Manning's MEAP program and voiced their comments in the online forum or reached out to me directly—especially Vimal Kansal, Paolo Patierno, and Roland Huß, who noticed quite a few inconsistencies and other mistakes. And I would like to thank everyone at Manning who has been involved in getting this book published. Before I finish, I also need to thank my colleague and high school friend Aleš Justin, who brought me to Red Hat, and my wonderful colleagues from the Cloud Enablement team. If I hadn't been at Red Hat or in the team, I wouldn't have been the one to write this book.

Lastly, I would like to thank my wife and my son, who were way too understanding and supportive over the last 18 months, while I was locked in my office instead of spending time with them.

Thank you all!

# *about this book*

---

*Kubernetes in Action* aims to make you a proficient user of Kubernetes. It teaches you virtually all the concepts you need to understand to effectively develop and run applications in a Kubernetes environment.

Before diving into Kubernetes, the book gives an overview of container technologies like Docker, including how to build containers, so that even readers who haven't used these technologies before can get up and running. It then slowly guides you through most of what you need to know about Kubernetes—from basic concepts to things hidden below the surface.

## **Who should read this book**

The book focuses primarily on application developers, but it also provides an overview of managing applications from the operational perspective. It's meant for anyone interested in running and managing containerized applications on more than just a single server.

Both beginner and advanced software engineers who want to learn about container technologies and orchestrating multiple related containers at scale will gain the expertise necessary to develop, containerize, and run their applications in a Kubernetes environment.

No previous exposure to either container technologies or Kubernetes is required. The book explains the subject matter in a progressively detailed manner, and doesn't use any application source code that would be too hard for non-expert developers to understand.

Readers, however, should have at least a basic knowledge of programming, computer networking, and running basic commands in Linux, and an understanding of well-known computer protocols like HTTP.

## ***How this book is organized: a roadmap***

This book has three parts that cover 18 chapters.

Part 1 gives a short introduction to Docker and Kubernetes, how to set up a Kubernetes cluster, and how to run a simple application in it. It contains two chapters:

- Chapter 1 explains what Kubernetes is, how it came to be, and how it helps to solve today's problems of managing applications at scale.
- Chapter 2 is a hands-on tutorial on how to build a container image and run it in a Kubernetes cluster. It also explains how to run a local single-node Kubernetes cluster and a proper multi-node cluster in the cloud.

Part 2 introduces the key concepts you must understand to run applications in Kubernetes. The chapters are as follows:

- Chapter 3 introduces the fundamental building block in Kubernetes—the pod—and explains how to organize pods and other Kubernetes objects through labels.
- Chapter 4 teaches you how Kubernetes keeps applications healthy by automatically restarting containers. It also shows how to properly run managed pods, horizontally scale them, make them resistant to failures of cluster nodes, and run them at a predefined time in the future or periodically.
- Chapter 5 shows how pods can expose the service they provide to clients running both inside and outside the cluster. It also shows how pods running in the cluster can discover and access services, regardless of whether they live in or out of the cluster.
- Chapter 6 explains how multiple containers running in the same pod can share files and how you can manage persistent storage and make it accessible to pods.
- Chapter 7 shows how to pass configuration data and sensitive information like credentials to apps running inside pods.
- Chapter 8 describes how applications can get information about the Kubernetes environment they're running in and how they can talk to Kubernetes to alter the state of the cluster.
- Chapter 9 introduces the concept of a Deployment and explains the proper way of running and updating applications in a Kubernetes environment.
- Chapter 10 introduces a dedicated way of running stateful applications, which usually require a stable identity and state.

Part 3 dives deep into the internals of a Kubernetes cluster, introduces some additional concepts, and reviews everything you've learned in the first two parts from a higher perspective. This is the last group of chapters:

- Chapter 11 goes beneath the surface of Kubernetes and explains all the components that make up a Kubernetes cluster and what each of them does. It also

- explains how pods communicate through the network and how services perform load balancing across multiple pods.
- Chapter 12 explains how to secure your Kubernetes API server, and by extension the cluster, using authentication and authorization.
- Chapter 13 teaches you how pods can access the node’s resources and how a cluster administrator can prevent pods from doing that.
- Chapter 14 dives into constraining the computational resources each application is allowed to consume, configuring the applications’ Quality of Service guarantees, and monitoring the resource usage of individual applications. It also teaches you how to prevent users from consuming too many resources.
- Chapter 15 discusses how Kubernetes can be configured to automatically scale the number of running replicas of your application, and how it can also increase the size of your cluster when your current number of cluster nodes can’t accept any additional applications.
- Chapter 16 shows how to ensure pods are scheduled only to certain nodes or how to prevent them from being scheduled to others. It also shows how to make sure pods are scheduled together or how to prevent that from happening.
- Chapter 17 teaches you how you should develop your applications to make them good citizens of your cluster. It also gives you a few pointers on how to set up your development and testing workflows to reduce friction during development.
- Chapter 18 shows you how you can extend Kubernetes with your own custom objects and how others have done it and created enterprise-class application platforms.

As you progress through these chapters, you’ll not only learn about the individual Kubernetes building blocks, but also progressively improve your knowledge of using the `kubectl` command-line tool.

## About the code

While this book doesn’t contain a lot of actual source code, it does contain a lot of manifests of Kubernetes resources in YAML format and shell commands along with their outputs. All of this is formatted in a `fixed-width font` like this to separate it from ordinary text.

Shell commands are mostly **in bold**, to clearly separate them from their output, but sometimes only the most important parts of the command or parts of the command’s output are in bold for emphasis. In most cases, the command output has been reformatted to make it fit into the limited space in the book. Also, because the Kubernetes CLI tool `kubectl` is constantly evolving, newer versions may print out more information than what’s shown in the book. Don’t be confused if they don’t match exactly.

Listings sometimes include a line-continuation marker (`→`) to show that a line of text wraps to the next line. They also include annotations, which highlight and explain the most important parts.

Within text paragraphs, some very common elements such as Pod, ReplicationController, ReplicaSet, DaemonSet, and so forth are set in regular font to avoid over-proliferation of code font and help readability. In some places, “Pod” is capitalized to refer to the Pod resource, and lowercased to refer to the actual group of running containers.

All the samples in the book have been tested with Kubernetes version 1.8 running in Google Kubernetes Engine and in a local cluster run with Minikube. The complete source code and YAML manifests can be found at <https://github.com/luksa/kubernetes-in-action> or downloaded from the publisher’s website at [www.manning.com/books/kubernetes-in-action](http://www.manning.com/books/kubernetes-in-action).

## Book forum

Purchase of *Kubernetes in Action* includes free access to a private web forum run by Manning Publications where you can make comments about the book, ask technical questions, and receive help from the author and from other users. To access the forum, go to <https://forums.manning.com/forums/kubernetes-in-action>. You can also learn more about Manning’s forums and the rules of conduct at <https://forums.manning.com/forums/about>.

Manning’s commitment to our readers is to provide a venue where a meaningful dialogue between individual readers and between readers and the author can take place. It is not a commitment to any specific amount of participation on the part of the author, whose contribution to the forum remains voluntary (and unpaid). We suggest you try asking the author some challenging questions lest his interest stray! The forum and the archives of previous discussions will be accessible from the publisher’s website as long as the book is in print.

## Other online resources

You can find a wide range of additional Kubernetes resources at the following locations:

- The Kubernetes website at <https://kubernetes.io>
- The Kubernetes Blog, which regularly posts interesting info (<http://blog.kubernetes.io>)
- The Kubernetes community’s Slack channel at <http://slack.k8s.io>
- The Kubernetes and Cloud Native Computing Foundation’s YouTube channels:
  - [https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCZ2bu0qutTOM0tHYa\\_jkIwg](https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCZ2bu0qutTOM0tHYa_jkIwg)
  - <https://www.youtube.com/channel/UCvqbFHWN-nwaiWPjPUKpvTA>

To gain a deeper understanding of individual topics or even to help contribute to Kubernetes, you can also check out any of the Kubernetes Special Interest Groups (SIGs) at [https://github.com/kubernetes/kubernetes/wiki/Special-Interest-Groups-\(SIGs\)](https://github.com/kubernetes/kubernetes/wiki/Special-Interest-Groups-(SIGs)).

And, finally, as Kubernetes is open source, there’s a wealth of information available in the Kubernetes source code itself. You’ll find it at <https://github.com/kubernetes/kubernetes> and related repositories.

## *about the author*

---



Marko Lukša is a software engineer with more than 20 years of professional experience developing everything from simple web applications to full ERP systems, frameworks, and middleware software. He took his first steps in programming back in 1985, at the age of six, on a second-hand ZX Spectrum computer his father had bought for him. In primary school, he was the national champion in the Logo programming competition and attended summer coding camps, where he learned to program in Pascal. Since then, he has developed software in a wide range of programming languages.

In high school, he started building dynamic websites when the web was still relatively young. He then moved on to developing software for the healthcare and telecommunications industries at a local company, while studying computer science at the University of Ljubljana, Slovenia. Eventually, he ended up working for Red Hat, initially developing an open source implementation of the Google App Engine API, which utilized Red Hat's JBoss middleware products underneath. He also worked in or contributed to projects like CDI/Weld, Infinispan/JBoss DataGrid, and others.

Since late 2014, he has been part of Red Hat's Cloud Enablement team, where his responsibilities include staying up-to-date on new developments in Kubernetes and related technologies and ensuring the company's middleware software utilizes the features of Kubernetes and OpenShift to their full potential.

## *about the cover illustration*

---

The figure on the cover of *Kubernetes in Action* is a “Member of the Divan,” the Turkish Council of State or governing body. The illustration is taken from a collection of costumes of the Ottoman Empire published on January 1, 1802, by William Miller of Old Bond Street, London. The title page is missing from the collection and we have been unable to track it down to date. The book’s table of contents identifies the figures in both English and French, and each illustration bears the names of two artists who worked on it, both of whom would no doubt be surprised to find their art gracing the front cover of a computer programming book ... 200 years later.

The collection was purchased by a Manning editor at an antiquarian flea market in the “Garage” on West 26th Street in Manhattan. The seller was an American based in Ankara, Turkey, and the transaction took place just as he was packing up his stand for the day. The Manning editor didn’t have on his person the substantial amount of cash that was required for the purchase, and a credit card and check were both politely turned down. With the seller flying back to Ankara that evening, the situation was getting hopeless. What was the solution? It turned out to be nothing more than an old-fashioned verbal agreement sealed with a handshake. The seller proposed that the money be transferred to him by wire, and the editor walked out with the bank information on a piece of paper and the portfolio of images under his arm. Needless to say, we transferred the funds the next day, and we remain grateful and impressed by this unknown person’s trust in one of us. It recalls something that might have happened a long time ago. We at Manning celebrate the inventiveness, the initiative, and, yes, the fun of the computer business with book covers based on the rich diversity of regional life of two centuries ago, brought back to life by the pictures from this collection.

# 1

## *Introducing Kubernetes*

### **This chapter covers**

- Understanding how software development and deployment has changed over recent years
- Isolating applications and reducing environment differences using containers
- Understanding how containers and Docker are used by Kubernetes
- Making developers' and sysadmins' jobs easier with Kubernetes

Years ago, most software applications were big monoliths, running either as a single process or as a small number of processes spread across a handful of servers. These legacy systems are still widespread today. They have slow release cycles and are updated relatively infrequently. At the end of every release cycle, developers package up the whole system and hand it over to the ops team, who then deploys and monitors it. In case of hardware failures, the ops team manually migrates it to the remaining healthy servers.

Today, these big monolithic legacy applications are slowly being broken down into smaller, independently running components called microservices. Because

microservices are decoupled from each other, they can be developed, deployed, updated, and scaled individually. This enables you to change components quickly and as often as necessary to keep up with today's rapidly changing business requirements.

But with bigger numbers of deployable components and increasingly larger datacenters, it becomes increasingly difficult to configure, manage, and keep the whole system running smoothly. It's much harder to figure out where to put each of those components to achieve high resource utilization and thereby keep the hardware costs down. Doing all this manually is hard work. We need automation, which includes automatic scheduling of those components to our servers, automatic configuration, supervision, and failure-handling. This is where Kubernetes comes in.

Kubernetes enables developers to deploy their applications themselves and as often as they want, without requiring any assistance from the operations (ops) team. But Kubernetes doesn't benefit only developers. It also helps the ops team by automatically monitoring and rescheduling those apps in the event of a hardware failure. The focus for system administrators (sysadmins) shifts from supervising individual apps to mostly supervising and managing Kubernetes and the rest of the infrastructure, while Kubernetes itself takes care of the apps.

**NOTE** *Kubernetes* is Greek for pilot or helmsman (the person holding the ship's steering wheel). People pronounce Kubernetes in a few different ways. Many pronounce it as *Koo-ber-nay-tace*, while others pronounce it more like *Koo-ber-netties*. No matter which form you use, people will understand what you mean.

Kubernetes abstracts away the hardware infrastructure and exposes your whole datacenter as a single enormous computational resource. It allows you to deploy and run your software components without having to know about the actual servers underneath. When deploying a multi-component application through Kubernetes, it selects a server for each component, deploys it, and enables it to easily find and communicate with all the other components of your application.

This makes Kubernetes great for most on-premises datacenters, but where it starts to shine is when it's used in the largest datacenters, such as the ones built and operated by cloud providers. Kubernetes allows them to offer developers a simple platform for deploying and running any type of application, while not requiring the cloud provider's own sysadmins to know anything about the tens of thousands of apps running on their hardware.

With more and more big companies accepting the Kubernetes model as the best way to run apps, it's becoming the standard way of running distributed apps both in the cloud, as well as on local on-premises infrastructure.

## 1.1

### ***Understanding the need for a system like Kubernetes***

Before you start getting to know Kubernetes in detail, let's take a quick look at how the development and deployment of applications has changed in recent years. This change is both a consequence of splitting big monolithic apps into smaller microservices

and of the changes in the infrastructure that runs those apps. Understanding these changes will help you better see the benefits of using Kubernetes and container technologies such as Docker.

### 1.1.1 **Moving from monolithic apps to microservices**

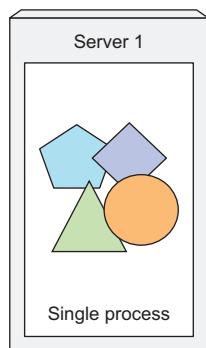
Monolithic applications consist of components that are all tightly coupled together and have to be developed, deployed, and managed as one entity, because they all run as a single OS process. Changes to one part of the application require a redeployment of the whole application, and over time the lack of hard boundaries between the parts results in the increase of complexity and consequential deterioration of the quality of the whole system because of the unconstrained growth of inter-dependencies between these parts.

Running a monolithic application usually requires a small number of powerful servers that can provide enough resources for running the application. To deal with increasing loads on the system, you then either have to vertically scale the servers (also known as scaling up) by adding more CPUs, memory, and other server components, or scale the whole system horizontally, by setting up additional servers and running multiple copies (or replicas) of an application (scaling out). While scaling up usually doesn't require any changes to the app, it gets expensive relatively quickly and in practice always has an upper limit. Scaling out, on the other hand, is relatively cheap hardware-wise, but may require big changes in the application code and isn't always possible—certain parts of an application are extremely hard or next to impossible to scale horizontally (relational databases, for example). If any part of a monolithic application isn't scalable, the whole application becomes unscalable, unless you can split up the monolith somehow.

#### **SPLITTING APPS INTO MICROSERVICES**

These and other problems have forced us to start splitting complex monolithic applications into smaller independently deployable components called microservices. Each microservice runs as an independent process (see figure 1.1) and communicates with other microservices through simple, well-defined interfaces (APIs).

Monolithic application



Microservices-based application

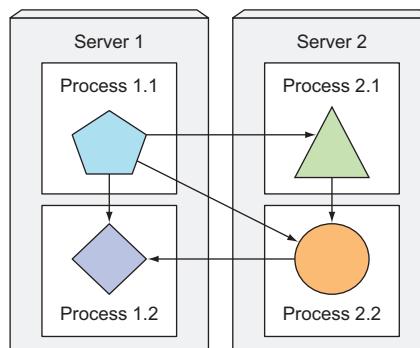


Figure 1.1 Components inside a monolithic application vs. standalone microservices

Microservices communicate through synchronous protocols such as HTTP, over which they usually expose RESTful (REpresentational State Transfer) APIs, or through asynchronous protocols such as AMQP (Advanced Message Queueing Protocol). These protocols are simple, well understood by most developers, and not tied to any specific programming language. Each microservice can be written in the language that's most appropriate for implementing that specific microservice.

Because each microservice is a standalone process with a relatively static external API, it's possible to develop and deploy each microservice separately. A change to one of them doesn't require changes or redeployment of any other service, provided that the API doesn't change or changes only in a backward-compatible way.

### SCALING MICROSERVICES

Scaling microservices, unlike monolithic systems, where you need to scale the system as a whole, is done on a per-service basis, which means you have the option of scaling only those services that require more resources, while leaving others at their original scale. Figure 1.2 shows an example. Certain components are replicated and run as multiple processes deployed on different servers, while others run as a single application process. When a monolithic application can't be scaled out because one of its parts is unscalable, splitting the app into microservices allows you to horizontally scale the parts that allow scaling out, and scale the parts that don't, vertically instead of horizontally.

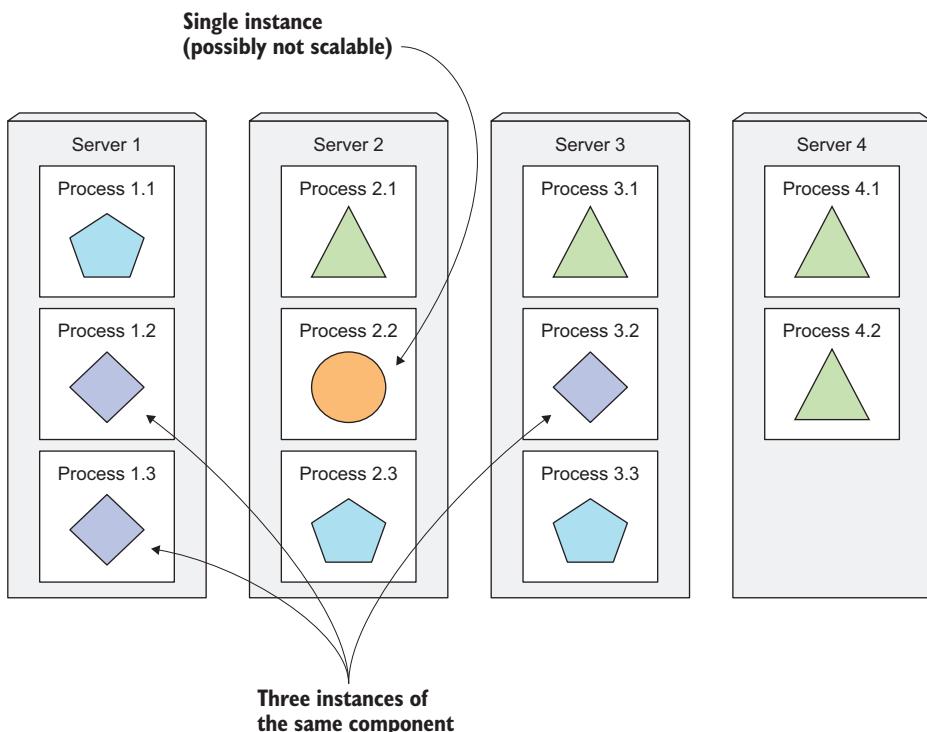


Figure 1.2 Each microservice can be scaled individually.

## DEPLOYING MICROSERVICES

As always, microservices also have drawbacks. When your system consists of only a small number of deployable components, managing those components is easy. It's trivial to decide where to deploy each component, because there aren't that many choices. When the number of those components increases, deployment-related decisions become increasingly difficult because not only does the number of deployment combinations increase, but the number of inter-dependencies between the components increases by an even greater factor.

Microservices perform their work together as a team, so they need to find and talk to each other. When deploying them, someone or something needs to configure all of them properly to enable them to work together as a single system. With increasing numbers of microservices, this becomes tedious and error-prone, especially when you consider what the ops/sysadmin teams need to do when a server fails.

Microservices also bring other problems, such as making it hard to debug and trace execution calls, because they span multiple processes and machines. Luckily, these problems are now being addressed with distributed tracing systems such as Zipkin.

## UNDERSTANDING THE DIVERGENCE OF ENVIRONMENT REQUIREMENTS

As I've already mentioned, components in a microservices architecture aren't only deployed independently, but are also developed that way. Because of their independence and the fact that it's common to have separate teams developing each component, nothing impedes each team from using different libraries and replacing them whenever the need arises. The divergence of dependencies between application components, like the one shown in figure 1.3, where applications require different versions of the same libraries, is inevitable.

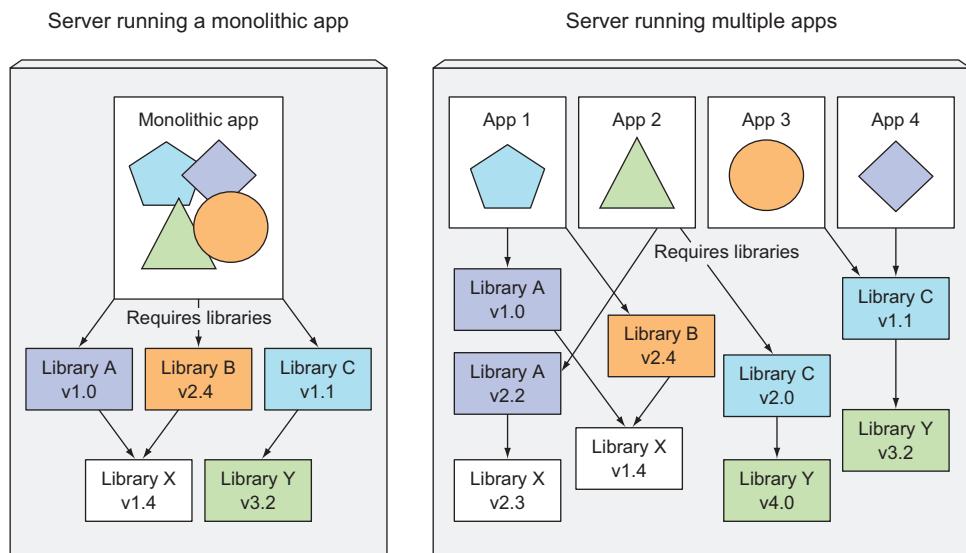


Figure 1.3 Multiple applications running on the same host may have conflicting dependencies.

Deploying dynamically linked applications that require different versions of shared libraries, and/or require other environment specifics, can quickly become a nightmare for the ops team who deploys and manages them on production servers. The bigger the number of components you need to deploy on the same host, the harder it will be to manage all their dependencies to satisfy all their requirements.

### **1.1.2 *Providing a consistent environment to applications***

Regardless of how many individual components you're developing and deploying, one of the biggest problems that developers and operations teams always have to deal with is the differences in the environments they run their apps in. Not only is there a huge difference between development and production environments, differences even exist between individual production machines. Another unavoidable fact is that the environment of a single production machine will change over time.

These differences range from hardware to the operating system to the libraries that are available on each machine. Production environments are managed by the operations team, while developers often take care of their development laptops on their own. The difference is how much these two groups of people know about system administration, and this understandably leads to relatively big differences between those two systems, not to mention that system administrators give much more emphasis on keeping the system up to date with the latest security patches, while a lot of developers don't care about that as much.

Also, production systems can run applications from multiple developers or development teams, which isn't necessarily true for developers' computers. A production system must provide the proper environment to all applications it hosts, even though they may require different, even conflicting, versions of libraries.

To reduce the number of problems that only show up in production, it would be ideal if applications could run in the exact same environment during development and in production so they have the exact same operating system, libraries, system configuration, networking environment, and everything else. You also don't want this environment to change too much over time, if at all. Also, if possible, you want the ability to add applications to the same server without affecting any of the existing applications on that server.

### **1.1.3 *Moving to continuous delivery: DevOps and NoOps***

In the last few years, we've also seen a shift in the whole application development process and how applications are taken care of in production. In the past, the development team's job was to create the application and hand it off to the operations team, who then deployed it, tended to it, and kept it running. But now, organizations are realizing it's better to have the same team that develops the application also take part in deploying it and taking care of it over its whole lifetime. This means the developer, QA, and operations teams now need to collaborate throughout the whole process. This practice is called DevOps.

### UNDERSTANDING THE BENEFITS

Having the developers more involved in running the application in production leads to them having a better understanding of both the users' needs and issues and the problems faced by the ops team while maintaining the app. Application developers are now also much more inclined to give users the app earlier and then use their feedback to steer further development of the app.

To release newer versions of applications more often, you need to streamline the deployment process. Ideally, you want developers to deploy the applications themselves without having to wait for the ops people. But deploying an application often requires an understanding of the underlying infrastructure and the organization of the hardware in the datacenter. Developers don't always know those details and, most of the time, don't even want to know about them.

### LETTING DEVELOPERS AND SYSADMINS DO WHAT THEY DO BEST

Even though developers and system administrators both work toward achieving the same goal of running a successful software application as a service to its customers, they have different individual goals and motivating factors. Developers love creating new features and improving the user experience. They don't normally want to be the ones making sure that the underlying operating system is up to date with all the security patches and things like that. They prefer to leave that up to the system administrators.

The ops team is in charge of the production deployments and the hardware infrastructure they run on. They care about system security, utilization, and other aspects that aren't a high priority for developers. The ops people don't want to deal with the implicit interdependencies of all the application components and don't want to think about how changes to either the underlying operating system or the infrastructure can affect the operation of the application as a whole, but they must.

Ideally, you want the developers to deploy applications themselves without knowing anything about the hardware infrastructure and without dealing with the ops team. This is referred to as *NoOps*. Obviously, you still need someone to take care of the hardware infrastructure, but ideally, without having to deal with peculiarities of each application running on it.

As you'll see, Kubernetes enables us to achieve all of this. By abstracting away the actual hardware and exposing it as a single platform for deploying and running apps, it allows developers to configure and deploy their applications without any help from the sysadmins and allows the sysadmins to focus on keeping the underlying infrastructure up and running, while not having to know anything about the actual applications running on top of it.

## 1.2 *Introducing container technologies*

In section 1.1 I presented a non-comprehensive list of problems facing today's development and ops teams. While you have many ways of dealing with them, this book will focus on how they're solved with Kubernetes.

Kubernetes uses Linux container technologies to provide isolation of running applications, so before we dig into Kubernetes itself, you need to become familiar with the basics of containers to understand what Kubernetes does itself, and what it offloads to container technologies like *Docker* or *rkt* (pronounced “rock-it”).

### **1.2.1 Understanding what containers are**

In section 1.1.1 we saw how different software components running on the same machine will require different, possibly conflicting, versions of dependent libraries or have other different environment requirements in general.

When an application is composed of only smaller numbers of large components, it’s completely acceptable to give a dedicated Virtual Machine (VM) to each component and isolate their environments by providing each of them with their own operating system instance. But when these components start getting smaller and their numbers start to grow, you can’t give each of them their own VM if you don’t want to waste hardware resources and keep your hardware costs down. But it’s not only about wasting hardware resources. Because each VM usually needs to be configured and managed individually, rising numbers of VMs also lead to wasting human resources, because they increase the system administrators’ workload considerably.

#### **ISOLATING COMPONENTS WITH LINUX CONTAINER TECHNOLOGIES**

Instead of using virtual machines to isolate the environments of each microservice (or software processes in general), developers are turning to Linux container technologies. They allow you to run multiple services on the same host machine, while not only exposing a different environment to each of them, but also isolating them from each other, similarly to VMs, but with much less overhead.

A process running in a container runs inside the host’s operating system, like all the other processes (unlike VMs, where processes run in separate operating systems). But the process in the container is still isolated from other processes. To the process itself, it looks like it’s the only one running on the machine and in its operating system.

#### **COMPARING VIRTUAL MACHINES TO CONTAINERS**

Compared to VMs, containers are much more lightweight, which allows you to run higher numbers of software components on the same hardware, mainly because each VM needs to run its own set of system processes, which requires additional compute resources in addition to those consumed by the component’s own process. A container, on the other hand, is nothing more than a single isolated process running in the host OS, consuming only the resources that the app consumes and without the overhead of any additional processes.

Because of the overhead of VMs, you often end up grouping multiple applications into each VM because you don’t have enough resources to dedicate a whole VM to each app. When using containers, you can (and should) have one container for each

application, as shown in figure 1.4. The end-result is that you can fit many more applications on the same bare-metal machine.

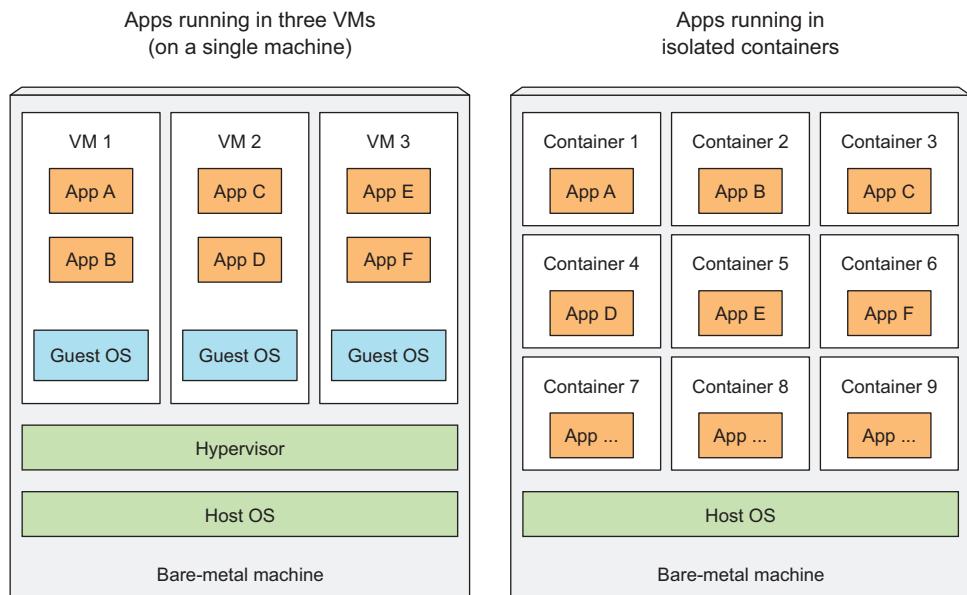


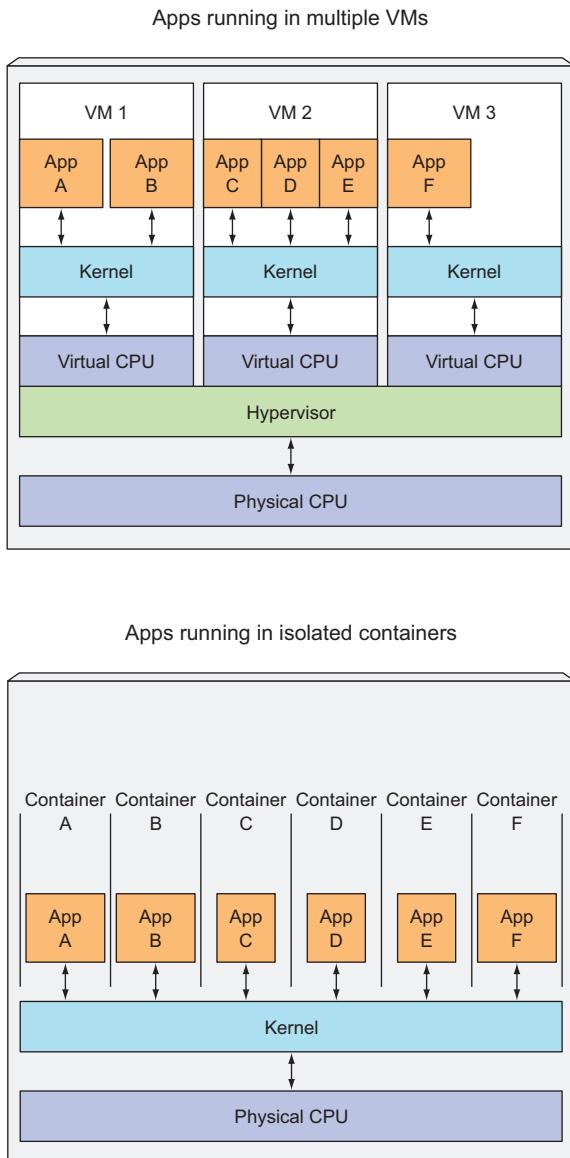
Figure 1.4 Using VMs to isolate groups of applications vs. isolating individual apps with containers

When you run three VMs on a host, you have three completely separate operating systems running on and sharing the same bare-metal hardware. Underneath those VMs is the host's OS and a hypervisor, which divides the physical hardware resources into smaller sets of virtual resources that can be used by the operating system inside each VM. Applications running inside those VMs perform system calls to the guest OS' kernel in the VM, and the kernel then performs x86 instructions on the host's physical CPU through the hypervisor.

**NOTE** Two types of hypervisors exist. Type 1 hypervisors don't use a host OS, while Type 2 do.

Containers, on the other hand, all perform system calls on the exact same kernel running in the host OS. This single kernel is the only one performing x86 instructions on the host's CPU. The CPU doesn't need to do any kind of virtualization the way it does with VMs (see figure 1.5).

The main benefit of virtual machines is the full isolation they provide, because each VM runs its own Linux kernel, while containers all call out to the same kernel, which can clearly pose a security risk. If you have a limited amount of hardware resources, VMs may only be an option when you have a small number of processes that



**Figure 1.5** The difference between how apps in VMs use the CPU vs. how they use them in containers

you want to isolate. To run greater numbers of isolated processes on the same machine, containers are a much better choice because of their low overhead. Remember, each VM runs its own set of system services, while containers don't, because they all run in the same OS. That also means that to run a container, nothing needs to be booted up, as is the case in VMs. A process run in a container starts up immediately.

## INTRODUCING THE MECHANISMS THAT MAKE CONTAINER ISOLATION POSSIBLE

By this point, you're probably wondering how exactly containers can isolate processes if they're running on the same operating system. Two mechanisms make this possible. The first one, *Linux Namespaces*, makes sure each process sees its own personal view of the system (files, processes, network interfaces, hostname, and so on). The second one is *Linux Control Groups (cgroups)*, which limit the amount of resources the process can consume (CPU, memory, network bandwidth, and so on).

### ISOLATING PROCESSES WITH LINUX NAMESPACES

By default, each Linux system initially has one single namespace. All system resources, such as filesystems, process IDs, user IDs, network interfaces, and others, belong to the single namespace. But you can create additional namespaces and organize resources across them. When running a process, you run it inside one of those namespaces. The process will only see resources that are inside the same namespace. Well, multiple kinds of namespaces exist, so a process doesn't belong to one namespace, but to one namespace of each kind.

The following kinds of namespaces exist:

- Mount (mnt)
- Process ID (pid)
- Network (net)
- Inter-process communication (ipc)
- UTS
- User ID (user)

Each namespace kind is used to isolate a certain group of resources. For example, the UTS namespace determines what hostname and domain name the process running inside that namespace sees. By assigning two different UTS namespaces to a pair of processes, you can make them see different local hostnames. In other words, to the two processes, it will appear as though they are running on two different machines (at least as far as the hostname is concerned).

Likewise, what Network namespace a process belongs to determines which network interfaces the application running inside the process sees. Each network interface belongs to exactly one namespace, but can be moved from one namespace to another. Each container uses its own Network namespace, and therefore each container sees its own set of network interfaces.

This should give you a basic idea of how namespaces are used to isolate applications running in containers from each other.

### LIMITING RESOURCES AVAILABLE TO A PROCESS

The other half of container isolation deals with limiting the amount of system resources a container can consume. This is achieved with cgroups, a Linux kernel feature that limits the resource usage of a process (or a group of processes). A process can't use more than the configured amount of CPU, memory, network bandwidth,

and so on. This way, processes cannot hog resources reserved for other processes, which is similar to when each process runs on a separate machine.

### 1.2.2 ***Introducing the Docker container platform***

While container technologies have been around for a long time, they've become more widely known with the rise of the Docker container platform. Docker was the first container system that made containers easily portable across different machines. It simplified the process of packaging up not only the application but also all its libraries and other dependencies, even the whole OS file system, into a simple, portable package that can be used to provision the application to any other machine running Docker.

When you run an application packaged with Docker, it sees the exact filesystem contents that you've bundled with it. It sees the same files whether it's running on your development machine or a production machine, even if the production server is running a completely different Linux OS. The application won't see anything from the server it's running on, so it doesn't matter if the server has a completely different set of installed libraries compared to your development machine.

For example, if you've packaged up your application with the files of the whole Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) operating system, the application will believe it's running inside RHEL, both when you run it on your development computer that runs Fedora and when you run it on a server running Debian or some other Linux distribution. Only the kernel may be different.

This is similar to creating a VM image by installing an operating system into a VM, installing the app inside it, and then distributing the whole VM image around and running it. Docker achieves the same effect, but instead of using VMs to achieve app isolation, it uses Linux container technologies mentioned in the previous section to provide (almost) the same level of isolation that VMs do. Instead of using big monolithic VM images, it uses container images, which are usually smaller.

A big difference between Docker-based container images and VM images is that container images are composed of layers, which can be shared and reused across multiple images. This means only certain layers of an image need to be downloaded if the other layers were already downloaded previously when running a different container image that also contains the same layers.

#### **UNDERSTANDING DOCKER CONCEPTS**

Docker is a platform for packaging, distributing, and running applications. As we've already stated, it allows you to package your application together with its whole environment. This can be either a few libraries that the app requires or even all the files that are usually available on the filesystem of an installed operating system. Docker makes it possible to transfer this package to a central repository from which it can then be transferred to any computer running Docker and executed there (for the most part, but not always, as we'll soon explain).

Three main concepts in Docker comprise this scenario:

- *Images*—A Docker-based container image is something you package your application and its environment into. It contains the filesystem that will be available to the application and other metadata, such as the path to the executable that should be executed when the image is run.
- *Registries*—A Docker Registry is a repository that stores your Docker images and facilitates easy sharing of those images between different people and computers. When you build your image, you can either run it on the computer you've built it on, or you can *push* (upload) the image to a registry and then *pull* (download) it on another computer and run it there. Certain registries are public, allowing anyone to pull images from it, while others are private, only accessible to certain people or machines.
- *Containers*—A Docker-based container is a regular Linux container created from a Docker-based container image. A running container is a process running on the host running Docker, but it's completely isolated from both the host and all other processes running on it. The process is also resource-constrained, meaning it can only access and use the amount of resources (CPU, RAM, and so on) that are allocated to it.

#### BUILDING, DISTRIBUTING, AND RUNNING A DOCKER IMAGE

Figure 1.6 shows all three concepts and how they relate to each other. The developer first builds an image and then pushes it to a registry. The image is thus available to anyone who can access the registry. They can then pull the image to any other machine running Docker and run the image. Docker creates an isolated container based on the image and runs the binary executable specified as part of the image.

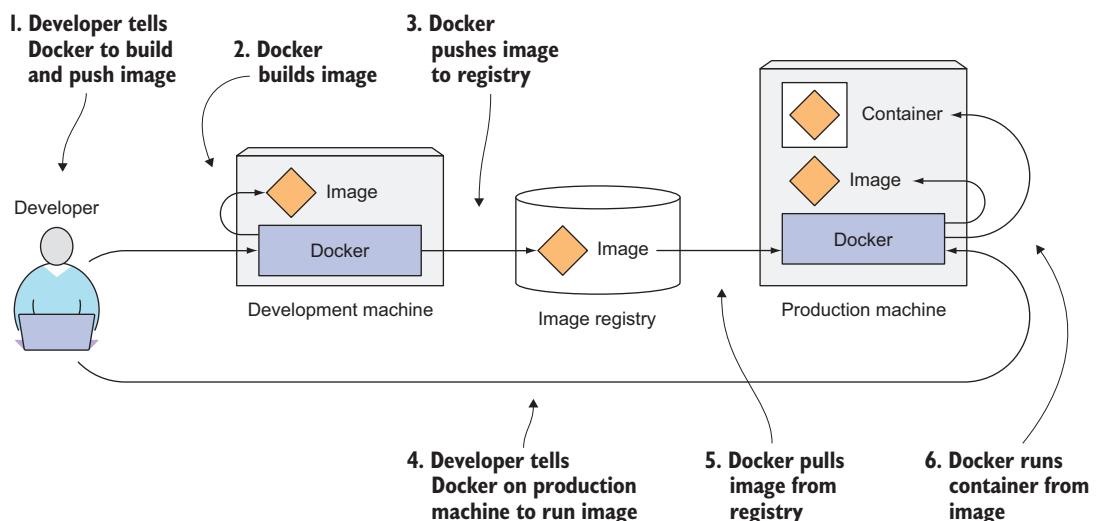
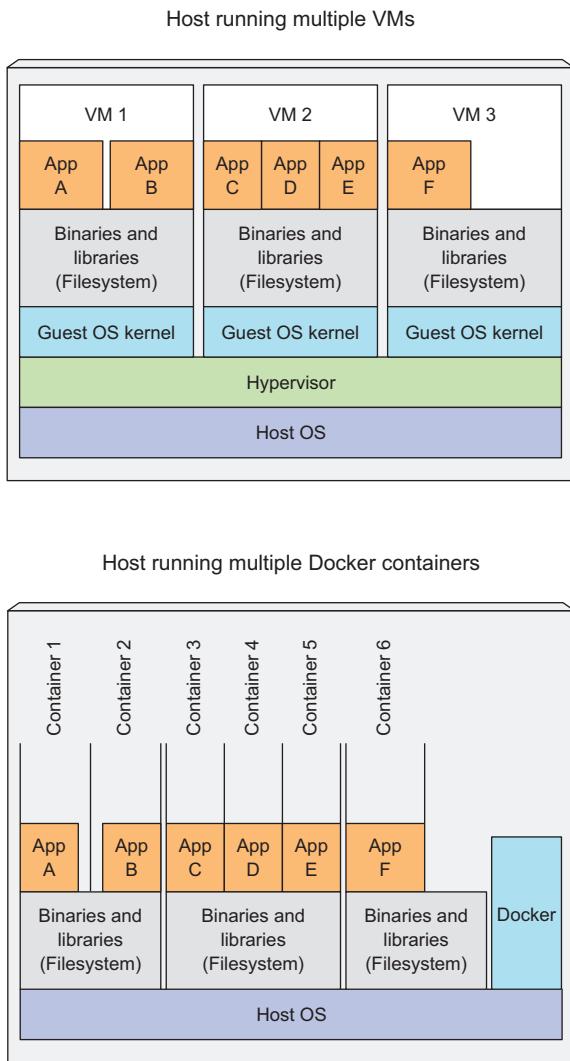


Figure 1.6 Docker images, registries, and containers

### COMPARING VIRTUAL MACHINES AND DOCKER CONTAINERS

I've explained how Linux containers are generally like virtual machines, but much more lightweight. Now let's look at how Docker containers specifically compare to virtual machines (and how Docker images compare to VM images). Figure 1.7 again shows the same six applications running both in VMs and as Docker containers.



**Figure 1.7** Running six apps on three VMs vs. running them in Docker containers

You'll notice that apps A and B have access to the same binaries and libraries both when running in a VM and when running as two separate containers. In the VM, this is obvious, because both apps see the same filesystem (that of the VM). But we said

that each container has its own isolated filesystem. How can both app A and app B share the same files?

#### **UNDERSTANDING IMAGE LAYERS**

I've already said that Docker images are composed of layers. Different images can contain the exact same layers because every Docker image is built on top of another image and two different images can both use the same parent image as their base. This speeds up the distribution of images across the network, because layers that have already been transferred as part of the first image don't need to be transferred again when transferring the other image.

But layers don't only make distribution more efficient, they also help reduce the storage footprint of images. Each layer is only stored once. Two containers created from two images based on the same base layers can therefore read the same files, but if one of them writes over those files, the other one doesn't see those changes. Therefore, even if they share files, they're still isolated from each other. This works because container image layers are read-only. When a container is run, a new writable layer is created on top of the layers in the image. When the process in the container writes to a file located in one of the underlying layers, a copy of the whole file is created in the top-most layer and the process writes to the copy.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE PORTABILITY LIMITATIONS OF CONTAINER IMAGES**

In theory, a container image can be run on any Linux machine running Docker, but one small caveat exists—one related to the fact that all containers running on a host use the host's Linux kernel. If a containerized application requires a specific kernel version, it may not work on every machine. If a machine runs a different version of the Linux kernel or doesn't have the same kernel modules available, the app can't run on it.

While containers are much more lightweight compared to VMs, they impose certain constraints on the apps running inside them. VMs have no such constraints, because each VM runs its own kernel.

And it's not only about the kernel. It should also be clear that a containerized app built for a specific hardware architecture can only run on other machines that have the same architecture. You can't containerize an application built for the x86 architecture and expect it to run on an ARM-based machine because it also runs Docker. You still need a VM for that.

### **1.2.3 *Introducing rkt—an alternative to Docker***

Docker was the first container platform that made containers mainstream. I hope I've made it clear that Docker itself doesn't provide process isolation. The actual isolation of containers is done at the Linux kernel level using kernel features such as Linux Namespaces and cgroups. Docker only makes it easy to use those features.

After the success of Docker, the Open Container Initiative (OCI) was born to create open industry standards around container formats and runtime. Docker is part of that initiative, as is *rkt* (pronounced “rock-it”), which is another Linux container engine.

Like Docker, rkt is a platform for running containers. It puts a strong emphasis on security, composability, and conforming to open standards. It uses the OCI container image format and can even run regular Docker container images.

This book focuses on using Docker as the container runtime for Kubernetes, because it was initially the only one supported by Kubernetes. Recently, Kubernetes has also started supporting rkt, as well as others, as the container runtime.

The reason I mention rkt at this point is so you don't make the mistake of thinking Kubernetes is a container orchestration system made specifically for Docker-based containers. In fact, over the course of this book, you'll realize that the essence of Kubernetes isn't orchestrating containers. It's much more. Containers happen to be the best way to run apps on different cluster nodes. With that in mind, let's finally dive into the core of what this book is all about—Kubernetes.

## 1.3 **Introducing Kubernetes**

We've already shown that as the number of deployable application components in your system grows, it becomes harder to manage them all. Google was probably the first company that realized it needed a much better way of deploying and managing their software components and their infrastructure to scale globally. It's one of only a few companies in the world that runs hundreds of thousands of servers and has had to deal with managing deployments on such a massive scale. This has forced them to develop solutions for making the development and deployment of thousands of software components manageable and cost-efficient.

### 1.3.1 **Understanding its origins**

Through the years, Google developed an internal system called *Borg* (and later a new system called *Omega*), that helped both application developers and system administrators manage those thousands of applications and services. In addition to simplifying the development and management, it also helped them achieve a much higher utilization of their infrastructure, which is important when your organization is that large. When you run hundreds of thousands of machines, even tiny improvements in utilization mean savings in the millions of dollars, so the incentives for developing such a system are clear.

After having kept Borg and Omega secret for a whole decade, in 2014 Google introduced Kubernetes, an open-source system based on the experience gained through Borg, Omega, and other internal Google systems.

### 1.3.2 **Looking at Kubernetes from the top of a mountain**

Kubernetes is a software system that allows you to easily deploy and manage containerized applications on top of it. It relies on the features of Linux containers to run heterogeneous applications without having to know any internal details of these applications and without having to manually deploy these applications on each host. Because these apps run in containers, they don't affect other apps running on the

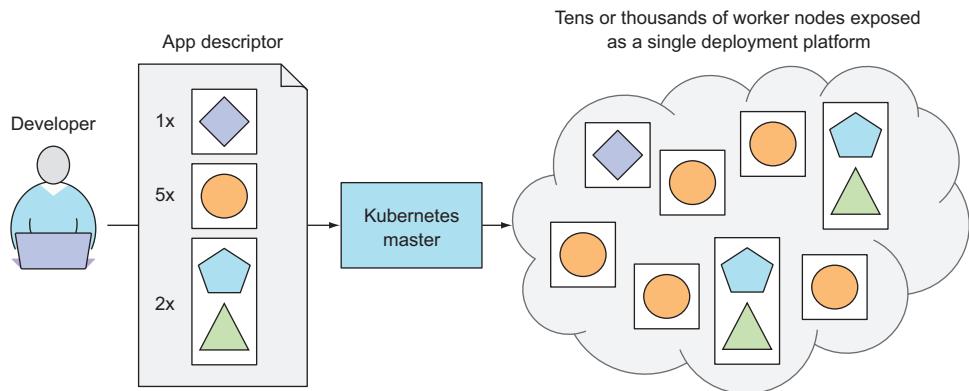
same server, which is critical when you run applications for completely different organizations on the same hardware. This is of paramount importance for cloud providers, because they strive for the best possible utilization of their hardware while still having to maintain complete isolation of hosted applications.

Kubernetes enables you to run your software applications on thousands of computer nodes as if all those nodes were a single, enormous computer. It abstracts away the underlying infrastructure and, by doing so, simplifies development, deployment, and management for both development and the operations teams.

Deploying applications through Kubernetes is always the same, whether your cluster contains only a couple of nodes or thousands of them. The size of the cluster makes no difference at all. Additional cluster nodes simply represent an additional amount of resources available to deployed apps.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE CORE OF WHAT KUBERNETES DOES**

Figure 1.8 shows the simplest possible view of a Kubernetes system. The system is composed of a master node and any number of worker nodes. When the developer submits a list of apps to the master, Kubernetes deploys them to the cluster of worker nodes. What node a component lands on doesn't (and shouldn't) matter—neither to the developer nor to the system administrator.



**Figure 1.8** Kubernetes exposes the whole datacenter as a single deployment platform.

The developer can specify that certain apps must run together and Kubernetes will deploy them on the same worker node. Others will be spread around the cluster, but they can talk to each other in the same way, regardless of where they're deployed.

#### **HELPING DEVELOPERS FOCUS ON THE CORE APP FEATURES**

Kubernetes can be thought of as an operating system for the cluster. It relieves application developers from having to implement certain infrastructure-related services into their apps; instead they rely on Kubernetes to provide these services. This includes things such as service discovery, scaling, load-balancing, self-healing, and even leader

election. Application developers can therefore focus on implementing the actual features of the applications and not waste time figuring out how to integrate them with the infrastructure.

#### **HELPING OPS TEAMS ACHIEVE BETTER RESOURCE UTILIZATION**

Kubernetes will run your containerized app somewhere in the cluster, provide information to its components on how to find each other, and keep all of them running. Because your application doesn't care which node it's running on, Kubernetes can relocate the app at any time, and by mixing and matching apps, achieve far better resource utilization than is possible with manual scheduling.

#### **1.3.3 *Understanding the architecture of a Kubernetes cluster***

We've seen a bird's-eye view of Kubernetes' architecture. Now let's take a closer look at what a Kubernetes cluster is composed of. At the hardware level, a Kubernetes cluster is composed of many nodes, which can be split into two types:

- The *master* node, which hosts the *Kubernetes Control Plane* that controls and manages the whole Kubernetes system
- Worker *nodes* that run the actual applications you deploy

Figure 1.9 shows the components running on these two sets of nodes. I'll explain them next.

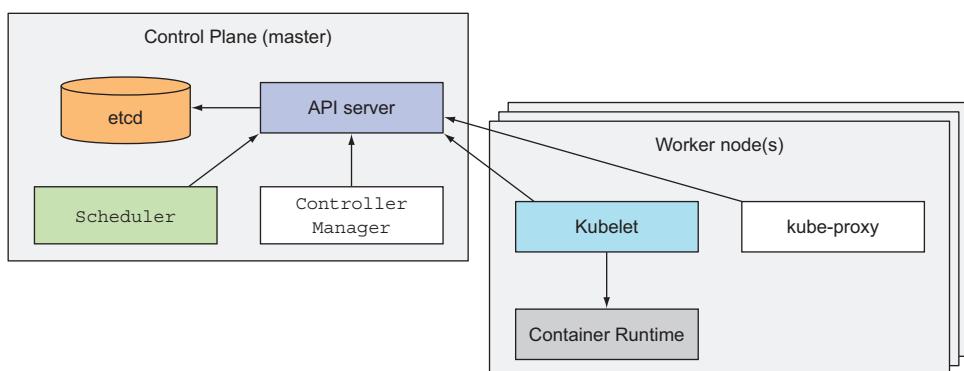


Figure 1.9 The components that make up a Kubernetes cluster

#### **THE CONTROL PLANE**

The Control Plane is what controls the cluster and makes it function. It consists of multiple components that can run on a single master node or be split across multiple nodes and replicated to ensure high availability. These components are

- The *Kubernetes API Server*, which you and the other Control Plane components communicate with

- The *Scheduler*, which schedules your apps (assigns a worker node to each deployable component of your application)
- The *Controller Manager*, which performs cluster-level functions, such as replicating components, keeping track of worker nodes, handling node failures, and so on
- *etcd*, a reliable distributed data store that persistently stores the cluster configuration.

The components of the Control Plane hold and control the state of the cluster, but they don't run your applications. This is done by the (worker) nodes.

### THE NODES

The worker nodes are the machines that run your containerized applications. The task of running, monitoring, and providing services to your applications is done by the following components:

- Docker, rkt, or another *container runtime*, which runs your containers
- The *Kubelet*, which talks to the API server and manages containers on its node
- The *Kubernetes Service Proxy (kube-proxy)*, which load-balances network traffic between application components

We'll explain all these components in detail in chapter 11. I'm not a fan of explaining how things work before first explaining *what* something does and teaching people to use it. It's like learning to drive a car. You don't want to know what's under the hood. You first want to learn how to drive it from point A to point B. Only after you learn how to do that do you become interested in how a car makes that possible. After all, knowing what's under the hood may someday help you get the car moving again after it breaks down and leaves you stranded at the side of the road.

#### 1.3.4 **Running an application in Kubernetes**

To run an application in Kubernetes, you first need to package it up into one or more container images, push those images to an image registry, and then post a description of your app to the Kubernetes API server.

The description includes information such as the container image or images that contain your application components, how those components are related to each other, and which ones need to be run co-located (together on the same node) and which don't. For each component, you can also specify how many copies (or *replicas*) you want to run. Additionally, the description also includes which of those components provide a service to either internal or external clients and should be exposed through a single IP address and made discoverable to the other components.

#### **UNDERSTANDING HOW THE DESCRIPTION RESULTS IN A RUNNING CONTAINER**

When the API server processes your app's description, the Scheduler schedules the specified groups of containers onto the available worker nodes based on computational resources required by each group and the unallocated resources on each node

at that moment. The Kubelet on those nodes then instructs the Container Runtime (Docker, for example) to pull the required container images and run the containers.

Examine figure 1.10 to gain a better understanding of how applications are deployed in Kubernetes. The app descriptor lists four containers, grouped into three sets (these sets are called *pods*; we'll explain what they are in chapter 3). The first two pods each contain only a single container, whereas the last one contains two. That means both containers need to run co-located and shouldn't be isolated from each other. Next to each pod, you also see a number representing the number of replicas of each pod that need to run in parallel. After submitting the descriptor to Kubernetes, it will schedule the specified number of replicas of each pod to the available worker nodes. The Kubelets on the nodes will then tell Docker to pull the container images from the image registry and run the containers.

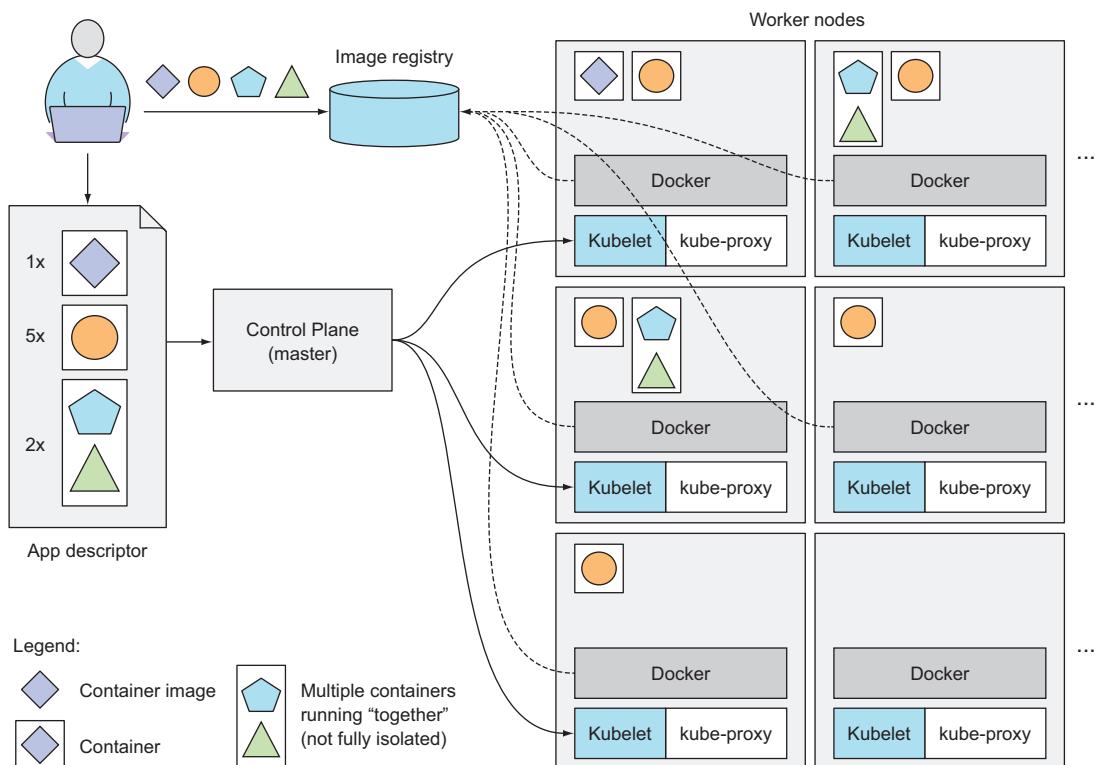


Figure 1.10 A basic overview of the Kubernetes architecture and an application running on top of it

### KEEPING THE CONTAINERS RUNNING

Once the application is running, Kubernetes continuously makes sure that the deployed state of the application always matches the description you provided. For example, if

you specify that you always want five instances of a web server running, Kubernetes will always keep exactly five instances running. If one of those instances stops working properly, like when its process crashes or when it stops responding, Kubernetes will restart it automatically.

Similarly, if a whole worker node dies or becomes inaccessible, Kubernetes will select new nodes for all the containers that were running on the node and run them on the newly selected nodes.

#### **SCALING THE NUMBER OF COPIES**

While the application is running, you can decide you want to increase or decrease the number of copies, and Kubernetes will spin up additional ones or stop the excess ones, respectively. You can even leave the job of deciding the optimal number of copies to Kubernetes. It can automatically keep adjusting the number, based on real-time metrics, such as CPU load, memory consumption, queries per second, or any other metric your app exposes.

#### **HITTING A MOVING TARGET**

We've said that Kubernetes may need to move your containers around the cluster. This can occur when the node they were running on has failed or because they were evicted from a node to make room for other containers. If the container is providing a service to external clients or other containers running in the cluster, how can they use the container properly if it's constantly moving around the cluster? And how can clients connect to containers providing a service when those containers are replicated and spread across the whole cluster?

To allow clients to easily find containers that provide a specific service, you can tell Kubernetes which containers provide the same service and Kubernetes will expose all of them at a single static IP address and expose that address to all applications running in the cluster. This is done through environment variables, but clients can also look up the service IP through good old DNS. The kube-proxy will make sure connections to the service are load balanced across all the containers that provide the service. The IP address of the service stays constant, so clients can always connect to its containers, even when they're moved around the cluster.

### **1.3.5 *Understanding the benefits of using Kubernetes***

If you have Kubernetes deployed on all your servers, the ops team doesn't need to deal with deploying your apps anymore. Because a containerized application already contains all it needs to run, the system administrators don't need to install anything to deploy and run the app. On any node where Kubernetes is deployed, Kubernetes can run the app immediately without any help from the sysadmins.

#### **SIMPLIFYING APPLICATION DEPLOYMENT**

Because Kubernetes exposes all its worker nodes as a single deployment platform, application developers can start deploying applications on their own and don't need to know anything about the servers that make up the cluster.

In essence, all the nodes are now a single bunch of computational resources that are waiting for applications to consume them. A developer doesn't usually care what kind of server the application is running on, as long as the server can provide the application with adequate system resources.

Certain cases do exist where the developer does care what kind of hardware the application should run on. If the nodes are heterogeneous, you'll find cases when you want certain apps to run on nodes with certain capabilities and run other apps on others. For example, one of your apps may require being run on a system with SSDs instead of HDDs, while other apps run fine on HDDs. In such cases, you obviously want to ensure that particular app is always scheduled to a node with an SSD.

Without using Kubernetes, the sysadmin would select one specific node that has an SSD and deploy the app there. But when using Kubernetes, instead of selecting a specific node where your app should be run, it's more appropriate to tell Kubernetes to only choose among nodes with an SSD. You'll learn how to do that in chapter 3.

#### **ACHIEVING BETTER UTILIZATION OF HARDWARE**

By setting up Kubernetes on your servers and using it to run your apps instead of running them manually, you've decoupled your app from the infrastructure. When you tell Kubernetes to run your application, you're letting it choose the most appropriate node to run your application on based on the description of the application's resource requirements and the available resources on each node.

By using containers and not tying the app down to a specific node in your cluster, you're allowing the app to freely move around the cluster at any time, so the different app components running on the cluster can be mixed and matched to be packed tightly onto the cluster nodes. This ensures the node's hardware resources are utilized as best as possible.

The ability to move applications around the cluster at any time allows Kubernetes to utilize the infrastructure much better than what you can achieve manually. Humans aren't good at finding optimal combinations, especially when the number of all possible options is huge, such as when you have many application components and many server nodes they can be deployed on. Computers can obviously perform this work much better and faster than humans.

#### **HEALTH CHECKING AND SELF-HEALING**

Having a system that allows moving an application across the cluster at any time is also valuable in the event of server failures. As your cluster size increases, you'll deal with failing computer components ever more frequently.

Kubernetes monitors your app components and the nodes they run on and automatically reschedules them to other nodes in the event of a node failure. This frees the ops team from having to migrate app components manually and allows the team to immediately focus on fixing the node itself and returning it to the pool of available hardware resources instead of focusing on relocating the app.

If your infrastructure has enough spare resources to allow normal system operation even without the failed node, the ops team doesn't even need to react to the failure

immediately, such as at 3 a.m. They can sleep tight and deal with the failed node during regular work hours.

#### AUTOMATIC SCALING

Using Kubernetes to manage your deployed applications also means the ops team doesn't need to constantly monitor the load of individual applications to react to sudden load spikes. As previously mentioned, Kubernetes can be told to monitor the resources used by each application and to keep adjusting the number of running instances of each application.

If Kubernetes is running on cloud infrastructure, where adding additional nodes is as easy as requesting them through the cloud provider's API, Kubernetes can even automatically scale the whole cluster size up or down based on the needs of the deployed applications.

#### SIMPLIFYING APPLICATION DEVELOPMENT

The features described in the previous section mostly benefit the operations team. But what about the developers? Does Kubernetes bring anything to their table? It definitely does.

If you turn back to the fact that apps run in the same environment both during development and in production, this has a big effect on when bugs are discovered. We all agree the sooner you discover a bug, the easier it is to fix it, and fixing it requires less work. It's the developers who do the fixing, so this means less work for them.

Then there's the fact that developers don't need to implement features that they would usually implement. This includes discovery of services and/or peers in a clustered application. Kubernetes does this instead of the app. Usually, the app only needs to look up certain environment variables or perform a DNS lookup. If that's not enough, the application can query the Kubernetes API server directly to get that and/or other information. Querying the Kubernetes API server like that can even save developers from having to implement complicated mechanisms such as leader election.

As a final example of what Kubernetes brings to the table, you also need to consider the increase in confidence developers will feel knowing that when a new version of their app is going to be rolled out, Kubernetes can automatically detect if the new version is bad and stop its rollout immediately. This increase in confidence usually accelerates the continuous delivery of apps, which benefits the whole organization.

## 1.4 **Summary**

In this introductory chapter, you've seen how applications have changed in recent years and how they can now be harder to deploy and manage. We've introduced Kubernetes and shown how it, together with Docker and other container platforms, helps deploy and manage applications and the infrastructure they run on. You've learned that

- Monolithic apps are easier to deploy, but harder to maintain over time and sometimes impossible to scale.

- Microservices-based application architectures allow easier development of each component, but are harder to deploy and configure to work as a single system.
- Linux containers provide much the same benefits as virtual machines, but are far more lightweight and allow for much better hardware utilization.
- Docker improved on existing Linux container technologies by allowing easier and faster provisioning of containerized apps together with their OS environments.
- Kubernetes exposes the whole datacenter as a single computational resource for running applications.
- Developers can deploy apps through Kubernetes without assistance from sysadmins.
- Sysadmins can sleep better by having Kubernetes deal with failed nodes automatically.

In the next chapter, you'll get your hands dirty by building an app and running it in Docker and then in Kubernetes.



# *First steps with Docker and Kubernetes*

---

## **This chapter covers**

- Creating, running, and sharing a container image with Docker
- Running a single-node Kubernetes cluster locally
- Setting up a Kubernetes cluster on Google Kubernetes Engine
- Setting up and using the `kubectl` command-line client
- Deploying an app on Kubernetes and scaling it horizontally

Before you start learning about Kubernetes concepts in detail, let's see how to create a simple application, package it into a container image, and run it in a managed Kubernetes cluster (in Google Kubernetes Engine) or in a local single-node cluster. This should give you a slightly better overview of the whole Kubernetes system and will make it easier to follow the next few chapters, where we'll go over the basic building blocks and concepts in Kubernetes.

## 2.1 Creating, running, and sharing a container image

As you've already learned in the previous chapter, running applications in Kubernetes requires them to be packaged into container images. We'll do a basic introduction to using Docker in case you haven't used it yet. In the next few sections you'll

- 1 Install Docker and run your first "Hello world" container
- 2 Create a trivial Node.js app that you'll later deploy in Kubernetes
- 3 Package the app into a container image so you can then run it as an isolated container
- 4 Run a container based on the image
- 5 Push the image to Docker Hub so that anyone anywhere can run it

### 2.1.1 *Installing Docker and running a Hello World container*

First, you'll need to install Docker on your Linux machine. If you don't use Linux, you'll need to start a Linux virtual machine (VM) and run Docker inside that VM. If you're using a Mac or Windows and install Docker per instructions, Docker will set up a VM for you and run the Docker daemon inside that VM. The Docker client executable will be available on your host OS, and will communicate with the daemon inside the VM.

To install Docker, follow the instructions at <http://docs.docker.com/engine/installation/> for your specific operating system. After completing the installation, you can use the Docker client executable to run various Docker commands. For example, you could try pulling and running an existing image from Docker Hub, the public Docker registry, which contains ready-to-use container images for many well-known software packages. One of them is the busybox image, which you'll use to run a simple echo "Hello world" command.

#### RUNNING A HELLO WORLD CONTAINER

If you're unfamiliar with busybox, it's a single executable that combines many of the standard UNIX command-line tools, such as echo, ls, gzip, and so on. Instead of the busybox image, you could also use any other full-fledged OS container image such as Fedora, Ubuntu, or other similar images, as long as it includes the echo executable.

How do you run the busybox image? You don't need to download or install anything. Use the docker run command and specify what image to download and run and (optionally) what command to execute, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 2.1 Running a Hello world container with Docker

```
$ docker run busybox echo "Hello world"
Unable to find image 'busybox:latest' locally
latest: Pulling from docker.io/busybox
9a163e0b8d13: Pull complete
fef924a0204a: Pull complete
Digest: sha256:97473e34e311e6c1b3f61f2a721d038d1e5eef17d98d1353a513007cf46ca6bd
Status: Downloaded newer image for docker.io/busybox:latest
Hello world
```

This doesn't look that impressive, but when you consider that the whole "app" was downloaded and executed with a single command, without you having to install that app or anything else, you'll agree it's awesome. In your case, the app was a single executable (busybox), but it might as well have been an incredibly complex app with many dependencies. The whole process of setting up and running the app would have been exactly the same. What's also important is that the app was executed inside a container, completely isolated from all the other processes running on your machine.

#### **UNDERSTANDING WHAT HAPPENS BEHIND THE SCENES**

Figure 2.1 shows exactly what happened when you performed the docker run command. First, Docker checked to see if the busybox:latest image was already present on your local machine. It wasn't, so Docker pulled it from the Docker Hub registry at <http://docker.io>. After the image was downloaded to your machine, Docker created a container from that image and ran the command inside it. The echo command printed the text to STDOUT and then the process terminated and the container stopped.

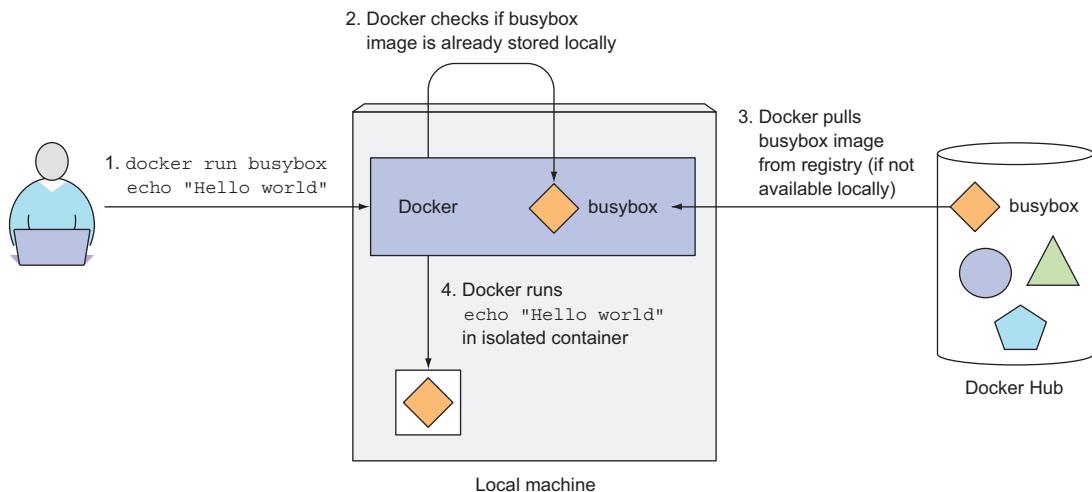


Figure 2.1 Running echo "Hello world" in a container based on the busybox container image

#### **RUNNING OTHER IMAGES**

Running other existing container images is much the same as how you ran the busybox image. In fact, it's often even simpler, because you usually don't need to specify what command to execute, the way you did in the example (`echo "Hello world"`). The command that should be executed is usually baked into the image itself, but you can override it if you want. After searching or browsing through the publicly available images on <http://hub.docker.com> or another public registry, you tell Docker to run the image like this:

```
$ docker run <image>
```

## VERSIONING CONTAINER IMAGES

All software packages get updated, so more than a single version of a package usually exists. Docker supports having multiple versions or variants of the same image under the same name. Each variant must have a unique tag. When referring to images without explicitly specifying the tag, Docker will assume you're referring to the so-called *latest* tag. To run a different version of the image, you may specify the tag along with the image name like this:

```
$ docker run <image>:<tag>
```

### 2.1.2 Creating a trivial Node.js app

Now that you have a working Docker setup, you're going to create an app. You'll build a trivial Node.js web application and package it into a container image. The application will accept HTTP requests and respond with the hostname of the machine it's running in. This way, you'll see that an app running inside a container sees its own hostname and not that of the host machine, even though it's running on the host like any other process. This will be useful later, when you deploy the app on Kubernetes and scale it out (scale it horizontally; that is, run multiple instances of the app). You'll see your HTTP requests hitting different instances of the app.

Your app will consist of a single file called `app.js` with the contents shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 2.2 A simple Node.js app: `app.js`

```
const http = require('http');
const os = require('os');

console.log("Kubia server starting...");

var handler = function(request, response) {
  console.log("Received request from " + request.connection.remoteAddress);
  response.writeHead(200);
  response.end("You've hit " + os.hostname() + "\n");
};

var www = http.createServer(handler);
www.listen(8080);
```

It should be clear what this code does. It starts up an HTTP server on port 8080. The server responds with an HTTP response status code 200 OK and the text "You've hit <hostname>" to every request. The request handler also logs the client's IP address to the standard output, which you'll need later.

**NOTE** The returned hostname is the server's actual hostname, not the one the client sends in the HTTP request's Host header.

You could now download and install Node.js and test your app directly, but this isn't necessary, because you'll use Docker to package the app into a container image and

enable it to be run anywhere without having to download or install anything (except Docker, which does need to be installed on the machine you want to run the image on).

### 2.1.3 Creating a Dockerfile for the image

To package your app into an image, you first need to create a file called Dockerfile, which will contain a list of instructions that Docker will perform when building the image. The Dockerfile needs to be in the same directory as the app.js file and should contain the commands shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 2.3 A Dockerfile for building a container image for your app

```
FROM node:7
ADD app.js /app.js
ENTRYPOINT ["node", "app.js"]
```

The `FROM` line defines the container image you'll use as a starting point (the base image you're building on top of). In your case, you're using the `node` container image, tag 7. In the second line, you're adding your `app.js` file from your local directory into the root directory in the image, under the same name (`app.js`). Finally, in the third line, you're defining what command should be executed when somebody runs the image. In your case, the command is `node app.js`.

#### Choosing a base image

You may wonder why we chose this specific image as your base. Because your app is a Node.js app, you need your image to contain the `node` binary executable to run the app. You could have used any image that contains that binary, or you could have even used a Linux distro base image such as `fedora` or `ubuntu` and installed Node.js into the container at image build time. But because the `node` image is made specifically for running Node.js apps, and includes everything you need to run your app, you'll use that as the base image.

### 2.1.4 Building the container image

Now that you have your Dockerfile and the `app.js` file, you have everything you need to build your image. To build it, run the following Docker command:

```
$ docker build -t kubia .
```

Figure 2.2 shows what happens during the build process. You're telling Docker to build an image called `kubia` based on the contents of the current directory (note the dot at the end of the build command). Docker will look for the Dockerfile in the directory and build the image based on the instructions in the file.

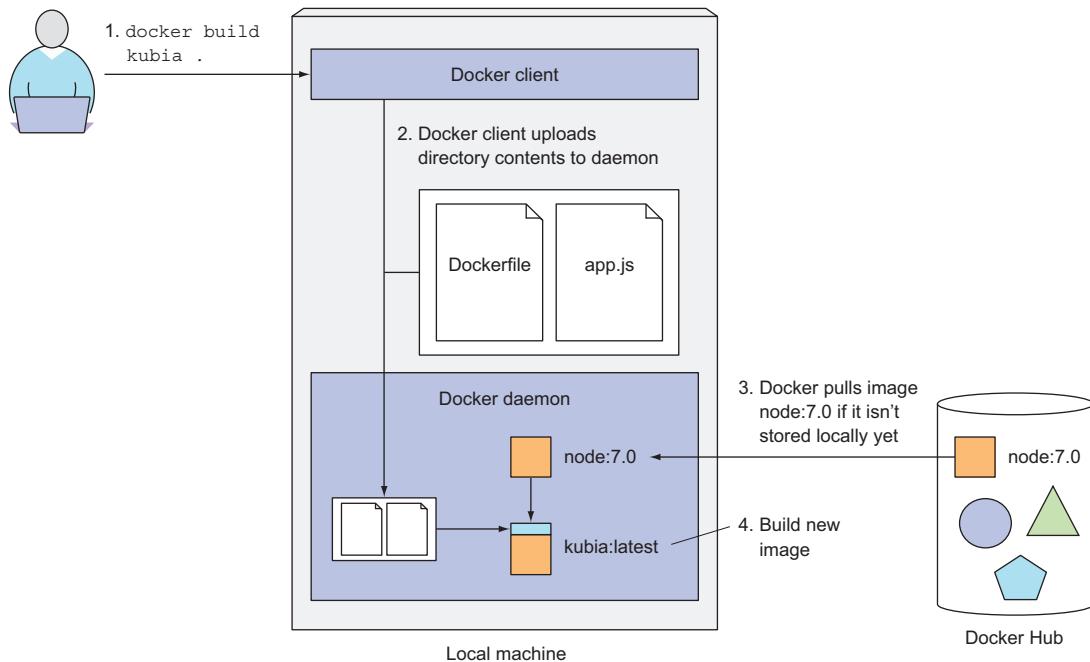


Figure 2.2 Building a new container image from a Dockerfile

### UNDERSTANDING HOW AN IMAGE IS BUILT

The build process isn't performed by the Docker client. Instead, the contents of the whole directory are uploaded to the Docker daemon and the image is built there. The client and daemon don't need to be on the same machine at all. If you're using Docker on a non-Linux OS, the client is on your host OS, but the daemon runs inside a VM. Because all the files in the build directory are uploaded to the daemon, if it contains many large files and the daemon isn't running locally, the upload may take longer.

**TIP** Don't include any unnecessary files in the build directory, because they'll slow down the build process—especially when the Docker daemon is on a remote machine.

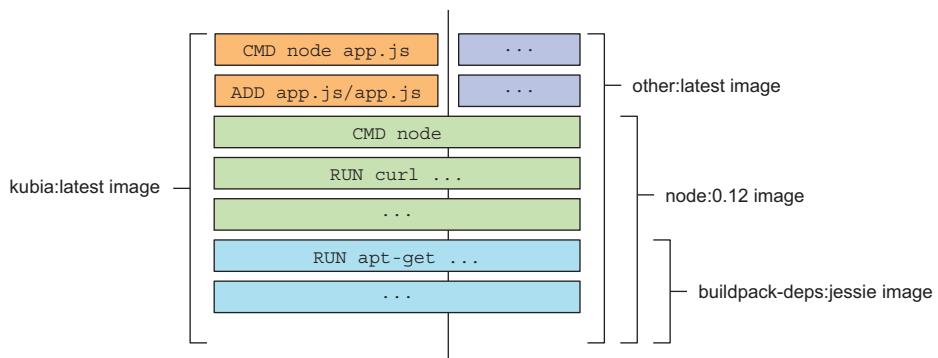
During the build process, Docker will first pull the base image (node:7) from the public image repository (Docker Hub), unless the image has already been pulled and is stored on your machine.

### UNDERSTANDING IMAGE LAYERS

An image isn't a single, big, binary blob, but is composed of multiple layers, which you may have already noticed when running the busybox example (there were multiple `Pull complete` lines—one for each layer). Different images may share several layers,

which makes storing and transferring images much more efficient. For example, if you create multiple images based on the same base image (such as `node:7` in the example), all the layers comprising the base image will be stored only once. Also, when pulling an image, Docker will download each layer individually. Several layers may already be stored on your machine, so Docker will only download those that aren't.

You may think that each Dockerfile creates only a single new layer, but that's not the case. When building an image, a new layer is created for each individual command in the Dockerfile. During the build of your image, after pulling all the layers of the base image, Docker will create a new layer on top of them and add the app.js file into it. Then it will create yet another layer that will specify the command that should be executed when the image is run. This last layer will then be tagged as `kubia:latest`. This is shown in figure 2.3, which also shows how a different image called `other:latest` would use the same layers of the Node.js image as your own image does.



**Figure 2.3** Container images are composed of layers that can be shared among different images.

When the build process completes, you have a new image stored locally. You can see it by telling Docker to list all locally stored images, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 2.4 Listing locally stored images

```
$ docker images
REPOSITORY      TAG          IMAGE ID      CREATED        VIRTUAL SIZE
kubia           latest       d30ecc7419e7   1 minute ago  637.1 MB
...
```

#### COMPARING BUILDING IMAGES WITH A DOCKERFILE VS. MANUALLY

Dockerfiles are the usual way of building container images with Docker, but you could also build the image manually by running a container from an existing image, executing commands in the container, exiting the container, and committing the final state as a new image. This is exactly what happens when you build from a Dockerfile, but it's performed automatically and is repeatable, which allows you to make changes to

the Dockerfile and rebuild the image any time, without having to manually retype all the commands again.

### 2.1.5 **Running the container image**

You can now run your image with the following command:

```
$ docker run --name kubia-container -p 8080:8080 -d kubia
```

This tells Docker to run a new container called `kubia-container` from the `kubia` image. The container will be detached from the console (`-d` flag), which means it will run in the background. Port 8080 on the local machine will be mapped to port 8080 inside the container (`-p 8080:8080` option), so you can access the app through <http://localhost:8080>.

If you’re not running the Docker daemon on your local machine (if you’re using a Mac or Windows, the daemon is running inside a VM), you’ll need to use the hostname or IP of the VM running the daemon instead of `localhost`. You can look it up through the `DOCKER_HOST` environment variable.

#### ACCESSING YOUR APP

Now try to access your application at <http://localhost:8080> (be sure to replace `localhost` with the hostname or IP of the Docker host if necessary):

```
$ curl localhost:8080
You've hit 44d76963e8e1
```

That’s the response from your app. Your tiny application is now running inside a container, isolated from everything else. As you can see, it’s returning `44d76963e8e1` as its hostname, and not the actual hostname of your host machine. The hexadecimal number is the ID of the Docker container.

#### LISTING ALL RUNNING CONTAINERS

Let’s list all running containers in the following listing, so you can examine the list (I’ve edited the output to make it more readable—imagine the last two lines as the continuation of the first two).

#### Listing 2.5 Listing running containers

```
$ docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE               COMMAND                  CREATED             ...
44d76963e8e1      kubia:latest        "/bin/sh -c 'node ap"   6 minutes ago      ...
...                 STATUS              PORTS                  NAMES
...     Up 6 minutes          0.0.0.0:8080->8080/tcp    kubia-container
```

A single container is running. For each container, Docker prints out its ID and name, the image used to run the container, and the command that’s executing inside the container.

## GETTING ADDITIONAL INFORMATION ABOUT A CONTAINER

The docker ps command only shows the most basic information about the containers. To see additional information, you can use docker inspect:

```
$ docker inspect kubia-container
```

Docker will print out a long JSON containing low-level information about the container.

### 2.1.6 Exploring the inside of a running container

What if you want to see what the environment is like inside the container? Because multiple processes can run inside the same container, you can always run an additional process in it to see what's inside. You can even run a shell, provided that the shell's binary executable is available in the image.

## RUNNING A SHELL INSIDE AN EXISTING CONTAINER

The Node.js image on which you've based your image contains the bash shell, so you can run the shell inside the container like this:

```
$ docker exec -it kubia-container bash
```

This will run bash inside the existing kubia-container container. The bash process will have the same Linux namespaces as the main container process. This allows you to explore the container from within and see how Node.js and your app see the system when running inside the container. The `-it` option is shorthand for two options:

- `-i`, which makes sure STDIN is kept open. You need this for entering commands into the shell.
- `-t`, which allocates a pseudo terminal (TTY).

You need both if you want to use the shell like you're used to. (If you leave out the first one, you can't type any commands, and if you leave out the second one, the command prompt won't be displayed and some commands will complain about the TERM variable not being set.)

## EXPLORING THE CONTAINER FROM WITHIN

Let's see how to use the shell in the following listing to see the processes running in the container.

### Listing 2.6 Listing processes from inside a container

```
root@44d76963e8e1:/# ps aux
USER  PID %CPU %MEM    VSZ   RSS TTY STAT START TIME COMMAND
root     1  0.0  0.1 676380 16504 ?    S1   12:31 0:00 node app.js
root    10  0.0  0.0  20216 1924 ?    Ss   12:31 0:00 bash
root    19  0.0  0.0  17492 1136 ?    R+   12:38 0:00 ps aux
```

You see only three processes. You don't see any other processes from the host OS.

### UNDERSTANDING THAT PROCESSES IN A CONTAINER RUN IN THE HOST OPERATING SYSTEM

If you now open another terminal and list the processes on the host OS itself, you will, among all other host processes, also see the processes running in the container, as shown in listing 2.7.

**NOTE** If you’re using a Mac or Windows, you’ll need to log into the VM where the Docker daemon is running to see these processes.

#### Listing 2.7 A container’s processes run in the host OS

```
$ ps aux | grep app.js
USER  PID %CPU %MEM    VSZ   RSS TTY STAT START TIME COMMAND
root  382  0.0  0.1 676380 16504 ?    S1   12:31 0:00 node app.js
```

This proves that processes running in the container are running in the host OS. If you have a keen eye, you may have noticed that the processes have different IDs inside the container vs. on the host. The container is using its own PID Linux namespace and has a completely isolated process tree, with its own sequence of numbers.

### THE CONTAINER’S FILESYSTEM IS ALSO ISOLATED

Like having an isolated process tree, each container also has an isolated filesystem. Listing the contents of the root directory inside the container will only show the files in the container and will include all the files that are in the image plus any files that are created while the container is running (log files and similar), as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 2.8 A container has its own complete filesystem

```
root@44d76963e8e1:/# ls /
app.js  boot  etc  lib  media  opt  root  sbin  sys  usr
bin     dev   home lib64  mnt  proc  run   srv  tmp  var
```

It contains the app.js file and other system directories that are part of the node:7 base image you’re using. To exit the container, you exit the shell by running the `exit` command and you’ll be returned to your host machine (like logging out of an ssh session, for example).

**TIP** Entering a running container like this is useful when debugging an app running in a container. When something’s wrong, the first thing you’ll want to explore is the actual state of the system your application sees. Keep in mind that an application will not only see its own unique filesystem, but also processes, users, hostname, and network interfaces.

## 2.1.7 Stopping and removing a container

To stop your app, you tell Docker to stop the kubia-container container:

```
$ docker stop kubia-container
```

This will stop the main process running in the container and consequently stop the container, because no other processes are running inside the container. The container itself still exists and you can see it with `docker ps -a`. The `-a` option prints out all the containers, those running and those that have been stopped. To truly remove a container, you need to remove it with the `docker rm` command:

```
$ docker rm kubia-container
```

This deletes the container. All its contents are removed and it can't be started again.

### 2.1.8 Pushing the image to an image registry

The image you've built has so far only been available on your local machine. To allow you to run it on any other machine, you need to push the image to an external image registry. For the sake of simplicity, you won't set up a private image registry and will instead push the image to Docker Hub (<http://hub.docker.com>), which is one of the publicly available registries. Other widely used such registries are Quay.io and the Google Container Registry.

Before you do that, you need to re-tag your image according to Docker Hub's rules. Docker Hub will allow you to push an image if the image's repository name starts with your Docker Hub ID. You create your Docker Hub ID by registering at <http://hub.docker.com>. I'll use my own ID (luksa) in the following examples. Please change every occurrence with your own ID.

#### TAGGING AN IMAGE UNDER AN ADDITIONAL TAG

Once you know your ID, you're ready to rename your image, currently tagged as `kubia`, to `luksa/kubia` (replace `luksa` with your own Docker Hub ID):

```
$ docker tag kubia luksa/kubia
```

This doesn't rename the tag; it creates an additional tag for the same image. You can confirm this by listing the images stored on your system with the `docker images` command, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 2.9 A container image can have multiple tags**

```
$ docker images | head
REPOSITORY      TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED      VIRTUAL SIZE
luksa/kubia     latest   d30ecc7419e7  About an hour ago  654.5 MB
kubia           latest   d30ecc7419e7  About an hour ago  654.5 MB
docker.io/node  7.0     04c0ca2a8dad  2 days ago    654.5 MB
...
```

As you can see, both `kubia` and `luksa/kubia` point to the same image ID, so they're in fact one single image with two tags.

### PUSHING THE IMAGE TO DOCKER HUB

Before you can push the image to Docker Hub, you need to log in under your user ID with the `docker login` command. Once you're logged in, you can finally push the `yourid/kubia` image to Docker Hub like this:

```
$ docker push luksa/kubia
```

### RUNNING THE IMAGE ON A DIFFERENT MACHINE

After the push to Docker Hub is complete, the image will be available to everyone. You can now run the image on any machine running Docker by executing the following command:

```
$ docker run -p 8080:8080 -d luksa/kubia
```

It doesn't get much simpler than that. And the best thing about this is that your application will have the exact same environment every time and everywhere it's run. If it ran fine on your machine, it should run as well on every other Linux machine. No need to worry about whether the host machine has Node.js installed or not. In fact, even if it does, your app won't use it, because it will use the one installed inside the image.

## 2.2 *Setting up a Kubernetes cluster*

Now that you have your app packaged inside a container image and made available through Docker Hub, you can deploy it in a Kubernetes cluster instead of running it in Docker directly. But first, you need to set up the cluster itself.

Setting up a full-fledged, multi-node Kubernetes cluster isn't a simple task, especially if you're not well-versed in Linux and networking administration. A proper Kubernetes install spans multiple physical or virtual machines and requires the networking to be set up properly, so that all the containers running inside the Kubernetes cluster can connect to each other through the same flat networking space.

A long list of methods exists for installing a Kubernetes cluster. These methods are described in detail in the documentation at <http://kubernetes.io>. We're not going to list all of them here, because the list keeps evolving, but Kubernetes can be run on your local development machine, your own organization's cluster of machines, on cloud providers providing virtual machines (Google Compute Engine, Amazon EC2, Microsoft Azure, and so on), or by using a managed Kubernetes cluster such as Google Kubernetes Engine (previously known as Google Container Engine).

In this chapter, we'll cover two simple options for getting your hands on a running Kubernetes cluster. You'll see how to run a single-node Kubernetes cluster on your local machine and how to get access to a hosted cluster running on Google Kubernetes Engine (GKE).

A third option, which covers installing a cluster with the `kubeadm` tool, is explained in appendix B. The instructions there show you how to set up a three-node Kubernetes

cluster using virtual machines, but I suggest you try it only after reading the first 11 chapters of the book.

Another option is to install Kubernetes on Amazon’s AWS (Amazon Web Services). For this, you can look at the kops tool, which is built on top of kubeadm mentioned in the previous paragraph, and is available at <http://github.com/kubernetes/kops>. It helps you deploy production-grade, highly available Kubernetes clusters on AWS and will eventually support other platforms as well (Google Kubernetes Engine, VMware, vSphere, and so on).

## 2.2.1 **Running a local single-node Kubernetes cluster with Minikube**

The simplest and quickest path to a fully functioning Kubernetes cluster is by using Minikube. Minikube is a tool that sets up a single-node cluster that’s great for both testing Kubernetes and developing apps locally.

Although we can’t show certain Kubernetes features related to managing apps on multiple nodes, the single-node cluster should be enough for exploring most topics discussed in this book.

### **INSTALLING MINIKUBE**

Minikube is a single binary that needs to be downloaded and put onto your path. It’s available for OSX, Linux, and Windows. To install it, the best place to start is to go to the Minikube repository on GitHub (<http://github.com/kubernetes/minikube>) and follow the instructions there.

For example, on OSX and Linux, Minikube can be downloaded and set up with a single command. For OSX, this is what the command looks like:

```
$ curl -Lo minikube https://storage.googleapis.com/minikube/releases/
↳ v0.23.0/minikube-darwin-amd64 && chmod +x minikube && sudo mv minikube
↳ /usr/local/bin/
```

On Linux, you download a different release (replace “darwin” with “linux” in the URL). On Windows, you can download the file manually, rename it to minikube.exe, and put it onto your path. Minikube runs Kubernetes inside a VM run through either VirtualBox or KVM, so you also need to install one of them before you can start the Minikube cluster.

### **STARTING A KUBERNETES CLUSTER WITH MINIKUBE**

Once you have Minikube installed locally, you can immediately start up the Kubernetes cluster with the command in the following listing.

#### **Listing 2.10 Starting a Minikube virtual machine**

```
$ minikube start
Starting local Kubernetes cluster...
Starting VM...
SSH-ing files into VM...
...
Kubectl is now configured to use the cluster.
```

Starting the cluster takes more than a minute, so don't interrupt the command before it completes.

### INSTALLING THE KUBERNETES CLIENT (KUBECTL)

To interact with Kubernetes, you also need the kubectl CLI client. Again, all you need to do is download it and put it on your path. The latest stable release for OSX, for example, can be downloaded and installed with the following command:

```
$ curl -LO https://storage.googleapis.com/kubernetes-release/release
↳ /$(curl -s https://storage.googleapis.com/kubernetes-release/release
↳ /stable.txt)/bin/darwin/amd64/kubectl
↳ && chmod +x kubectl
↳ && sudo mv kubectl /usr/local/bin/
```

To download kubectl for Linux or Windows, replace darwin in the URL with either linux or windows.

**NOTE** If you'll be using multiple Kubernetes clusters (for example, both Minikube and GKE), refer to appendix A for information on how to set up and switch between different kubectl contexts.

### CHECKING TO SEE THE CLUSTER IS UP AND KUBECTL CAN TALK TO IT

To verify your cluster is working, you can use the kubectl cluster-info command shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 2.11 Displaying cluster information

```
$ kubectl cluster-info
Kubernetes master is running at https://192.168.99.100:8443
KubeDNS is running at https://192.168.99.100:8443/api/v1/proxy/...
kubernetes-dashboard is running at https://192.168.99.100:8443/api/v1/...
```

This shows the cluster is up. It shows the URLs of the various Kubernetes components, including the API server and the web console.

**TIP** You can run minikube ssh to log into the Minikube VM and explore it from the inside. For example, you may want to see what processes are running on the node.

## 2.2.2 Using a hosted Kubernetes cluster with Google Kubernetes Engine

If you want to explore a full-fledged multi-node Kubernetes cluster instead, you can use a managed Google Kubernetes Engine (GKE) cluster. This way, you don't need to manually set up all the cluster nodes and networking, which is usually too much for someone making their first steps with Kubernetes. Using a managed solution such as GKE makes sure you don't end up with a misconfigured, non-working, or partially working cluster.

## SETTING UP A GOOGLE CLOUD PROJECT AND DOWNLOADING THE NECESSARY CLIENT BINARIES

Before you can set up a new Kubernetes cluster, you need to set up your GKE environment. Because the process may change, I'm not listing the exact instructions here. To get started, please follow the instructions at <https://cloud.google.com/container-engine/docs/before-you-begin>.

Roughly, the whole procedure includes

- 1 Signing up for a Google account, in the unlikely case you don't have one already.
- 2 Creating a project in the Google Cloud Platform Console.
- 3 Enabling billing. This does require your credit card info, but Google provides a 12-month free trial. And they're nice enough to not start charging automatically after the free trial is over.)
- 4 Enabling the Kubernetes Engine API.
- 5 Downloading and installing Google Cloud SDK. (This includes the *gcloud* command-line tool, which you'll need to create a Kubernetes cluster.)
- 6 Installing the *kubectl* command-line tool with *gcloud components install kubectl*.

**NOTE** Certain operations (the one in step 2, for example) may take a few minutes to complete, so relax and grab a coffee in the meantime.

## CREATING A KUBERNETES CLUSTER WITH THREE NODES

After completing the installation, you can create a Kubernetes cluster with three worker nodes using the command shown in the following listing.

### Listing 2.12 Creating a three-node cluster in GKE

```
$ gcloud container clusters create kubia --num-nodes 3
  --machine-type f1-micro
Creating cluster kubia...done.
Created [https://container.googleapis.com/v1/projects/kubial-
1227/zones/europe-west1-d/clusters/kubia].
kubeconfig entry generated for kubia.
NAME    ZONE    MST_VER   MASTER_IP      TYPE      NODE_VER  NUM_NODES STATUS
kubia   eu-wld   1.5.3    104.155.92.30  f1-micro  1.5.3     3          RUNNING
```

You should now have a running Kubernetes cluster with three worker nodes as shown in figure 2.4. You're using three nodes to help better demonstrate features that apply to multiple nodes. You can use a smaller number of nodes, if you want.

## GETTING AN OVERVIEW OF YOUR CLUSTER

To give you a basic idea of what your cluster looks like and how to interact with it, see figure 2.4. Each node runs Docker, the Kubelet and the kube-proxy. You'll interact with the cluster through the *kubectl* command line client, which issues REST requests to the Kubernetes API server running on the master node.

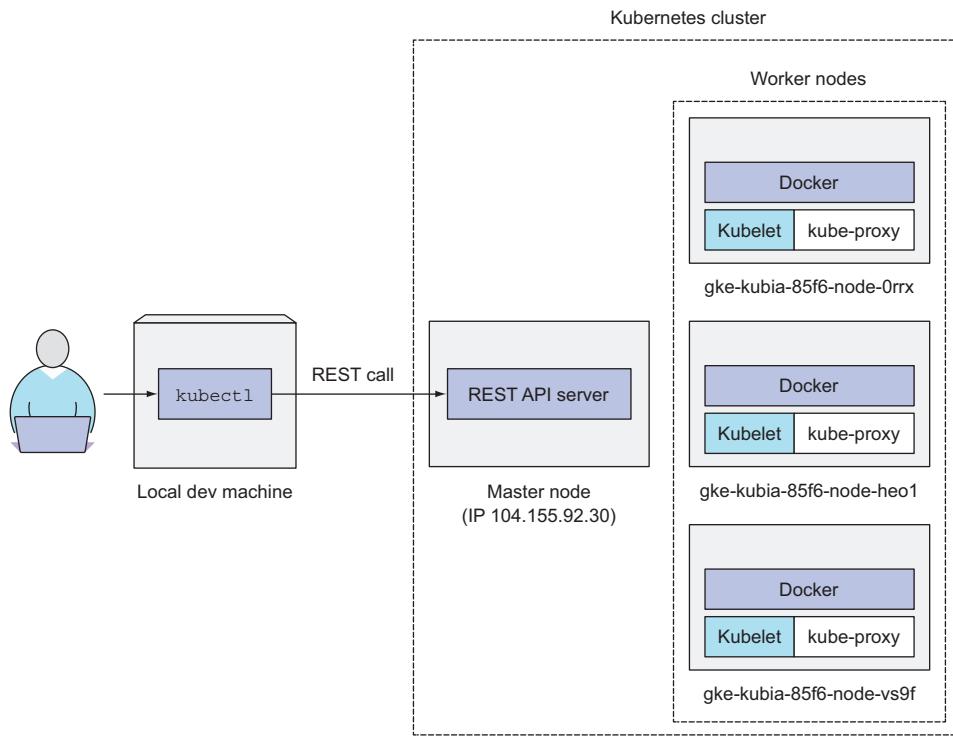


Figure 2.4 How you’re interacting with your three-node Kubernetes cluster

#### CHECKING IF THE CLUSTER IS UP BY LISTING CLUSTER NODES

You’ll use the `kubectl` command now to list all the nodes in your cluster, as shown in the following listing.

##### **Listing 2.13 Listing cluster nodes with `kubectl`**

```
$ kubectl get nodes
NAME           STATUS  AGE   VERSION
gke-kubia-85f6-node-0rrx  Ready   1m    v1.5.3
gke-kubia-85f6-node-heo1  Ready   1m    v1.5.3
gke-kubia-85f6-node-vs9f  Ready   1m    v1.5.3
```

The `kubectl get` command can list all kinds of Kubernetes objects. You’ll use it constantly, but it usually shows only the most basic information for the listed objects.

**TIP** You can log into one of the nodes with `gcloud compute ssh <node-name>` to explore what’s running on the node.

### RETRIEVING ADDITIONAL DETAILS OF AN OBJECT

To see more detailed information about an object, you can use the `kubectl describe` command, which shows much more:

```
$ kubectl describe node gke-kubia-85f6-node-0rrx
```

I'm omitting the actual output of the `describe` command, because it's fairly wide and would be completely unreadable here in the book. The output shows the node's status, its CPU and memory data, system information, containers running on the node, and much more.

In the previous `kubectl describe` example, you specified the name of the node explicitly, but you could also have performed a simple `kubectl describe node` without typing the node's name and it would print out a detailed description of all the nodes.

**TIP** Running the `describe` and `get` commands without specifying the name of the object comes in handy when only one object of a given type exists, so you don't waste time typing or copy/pasting the object's name.

While we're talking about reducing keystrokes, let me give you additional advice on how to make working with `kubectl` much easier, before we move on to running your first app in Kubernetes.

### 2.2.3 *Setting up an alias and command-line completion for kubectl*

You'll use `kubectl` often. You'll soon realize that having to type the full command every time is a real pain. Before you continue, take a minute to make your life easier by setting up an alias and tab completion for `kubectl`.

#### CREATING AN ALIAS

Throughout the book, I'll always be using the full name of the `kubectl` executable, but you may want to add a short alias such as `k`, so you won't have to type `kubectl` every time. If you haven't used aliases yet, here's how you define one. Add the following line to your `~/.bashrc` or equivalent file:

```
alias k=kubectl
```

**NOTE** You may already have the `k` executable if you used `gcloud` to set up the cluster.

#### CONFIGURING TAB COMPLETION FOR KUBECTL

Even with a short alias such as `k`, you'll still need to type way more than you'd like. Luckily, the `kubectl` command can also output shell completion code for both the `bash` and `zsh` shell. It doesn't enable tab completion of only command names, but also of the actual object names. For example, instead of having to write the whole node name in the previous example, all you'd need to type is

```
$ kubectl desc<TAB> no<TAB> gke-ku<TAB>
```

To enable tab completion in bash, you'll first need to install a package called `bash-completion` and then run the following command (you'll probably also want to add it to `~/.bashrc` or equivalent):

```
$ source <(kubectl completion bash)
```

But there's one caveat. When you run the preceding command, tab completion will only work when you use the full `kubectl` name (it won't work when you use the `k` alias). To fix this, you need to transform the output of the `kubectl completion` command a bit:

```
$ source <(kubectl completion bash | sed s/kubectl/k/g)
```

**NOTE** Unfortunately, as I'm writing this, shell completion doesn't work for aliases on MacOS. You'll have to use the full `kubectl` command name if you want completion to work.

Now you're all set to start interacting with your cluster without having to type too much. You can finally run your first app on Kubernetes.

## 2.3 *Running your first app on Kubernetes*

Because this may be your first time, you'll use the simplest possible way of running an app on Kubernetes. Usually, you'd prepare a JSON or YAML manifest, containing a description of all the components you want to deploy, but because we haven't talked about the types of components you can create in Kubernetes yet, you'll use a simple one-line command to get something running.

### 2.3.1 *Deploying your Node.js app*

The simplest way to deploy your app is to use the `kubectl run` command, which will create all the necessary components without having to deal with JSON or YAML. This way, we don't need to dive into the structure of each object yet. Try to run the image you created and pushed to Docker Hub earlier. Here's how to run it in Kubernetes:

```
$ kubectl run kubia --image=luksa/kubia --port=8080 --generator=run/v1
replicationcontroller "kubia" created
```

The `--image=luksa/kubia` part obviously specifies the container image you want to run, and the `--port=8080` option tells Kubernetes that your app is listening on port 8080. The last flag (`--generator`) does require an explanation, though. Usually, you won't use it, but you're using it here so Kubernetes creates a *ReplicationController* instead of a *Deployment*. You'll learn what ReplicationControllers are later in the chapter, but we won't talk about Deployments until chapter 9. That's why I don't want `kubectl` to create a Deployment yet.

As the previous command's output shows, a *ReplicationController* called `kubia` has been created. As already mentioned, we'll see what that is later in the chapter. For

now, let's start from the bottom and focus on the container you created (you can assume a container has been created, because you specified a container image in the run command).

### INTRODUCING PODS

You may be wondering if you can see your container in a list showing all the running containers. Maybe something such as `kubectl get containers`? Well, that's not exactly how Kubernetes works. It doesn't deal with individual containers directly. Instead, it uses the concept of multiple co-located containers. This group of containers is called a Pod.

A pod is a group of one or more tightly related containers that will always run together on the same worker node and in the same Linux namespace(s). Each pod is like a separate logical machine with its own IP, hostname, processes, and so on, running a single application. The application can be a single process, running in a single container, or it can be a main application process and additional supporting processes, each running in its own container. All the containers in a pod will appear to be running on the same logical machine, whereas containers in other pods, even if they're running on the same worker node, will appear to be running on a different one.

To better understand the relationship between containers, pods, and nodes, examine figure 2.5. As you can see, each pod has its own IP and contains one or more containers, each running an application process. Pods are spread out across different worker nodes.

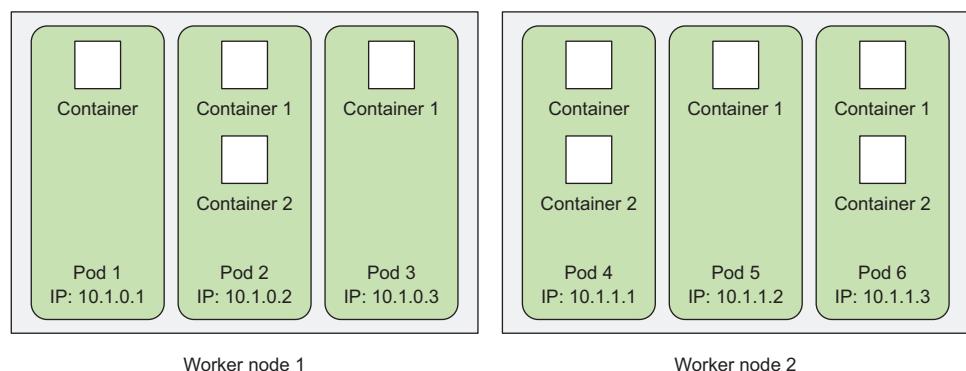


Figure 2.5 The relationship between containers, pods, and physical worker nodes

### LISTING PODS

Because you can't list individual containers, since they're not standalone Kubernetes objects, can you list pods instead? Yes, you can. Let's see how to tell `kubectl` to list pods in the following listing.

**Listing 2.14 Listing pods**

```
$ kubectl get pods
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-4jfyyf  0/1     Pending   0          1m
```

This is your pod. Its status is still Pending and the pod's single container is shown as not ready yet (this is what the 0/1 in the READY column means). The reason why the pod isn't running yet is because the worker node the pod has been assigned to is downloading the container image before it can run it. When the download is finished, the pod's container will be created and then the pod will transition to the Running state, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 2.15 Listing pods again to see if the pod's status has changed**

```
$ kubectl get pods
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-4jfyyf  1/1     Running   0          5m
```

To see more information about the pod, you can also use the `kubectl describe pod` command, like you did earlier for one of the worker nodes. If the pod stays stuck in the Pending status, it might be that Kubernetes can't pull the image from the registry. If you're using your own image, make sure it's marked as public on Docker Hub. To make sure the image can be pulled successfully, try pulling the image manually with the `docker pull` command on another machine.

**UNDERSTANDING WHAT HAPPENED BEHIND THE SCENES**

To help you visualize what transpired, look at figure 2.6. It shows both steps you had to perform to get a container image running inside Kubernetes. First, you built the image and pushed it to Docker Hub. This was necessary because building the image on your local machine only makes it available on your local machine, but you needed to make it accessible to the Docker daemons running on your worker nodes.

When you ran the `kubectl` command, it created a new ReplicationController object in the cluster by sending a REST HTTP request to the Kubernetes API server. The ReplicationController then created a new pod, which was then scheduled to one of the worker nodes by the Scheduler. The Kubelet on that node saw that the pod was scheduled to it and instructed Docker to pull the specified image from the registry because the image wasn't available locally. After downloading the image, Docker created and ran the container.

The other two nodes are displayed to show context. They didn't play any role in the process, because the pod wasn't scheduled to them.

**DEFINITION** The term scheduling means assigning the pod to a node. The pod is run immediately, not at a time in the future as the term might lead you to believe.

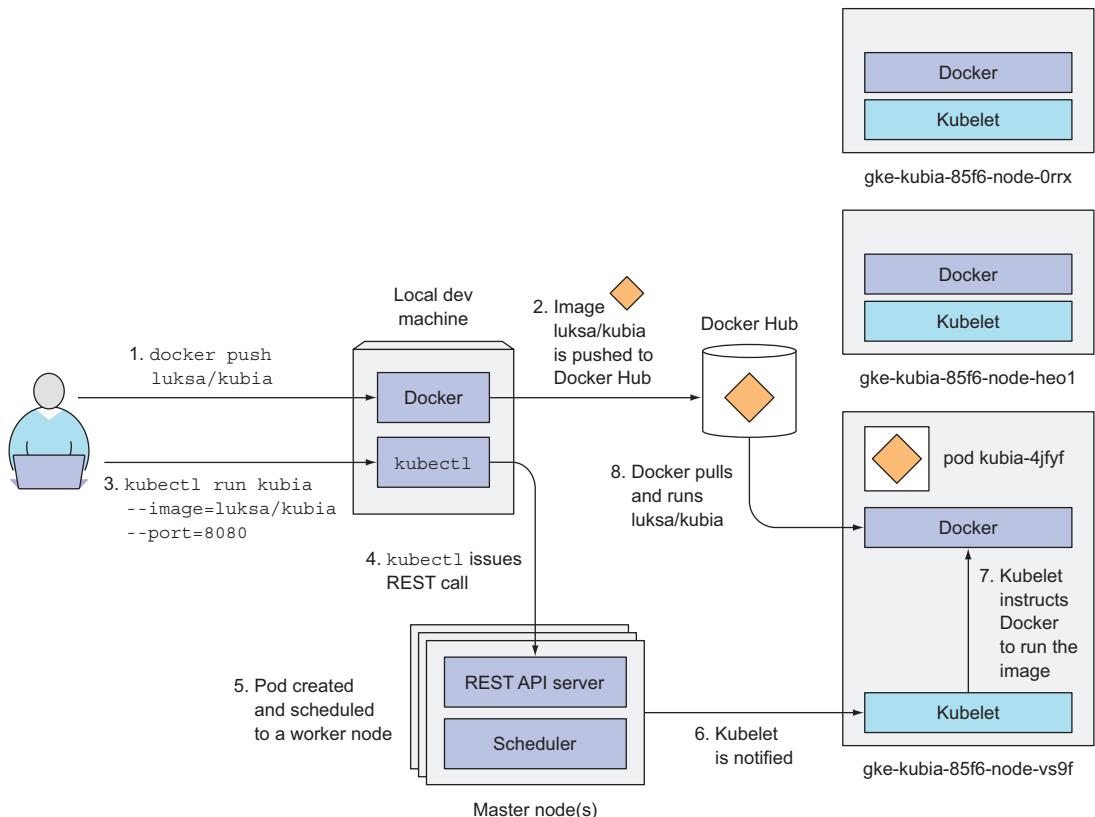


Figure 2.6 Running the luksa/kubia container image in Kubernetes

### 2.3.2 Accessing your web application

With your pod running, how do you access it? We mentioned that each pod gets its own IP address, but this address is internal to the cluster and isn't accessible from outside of it. To make the pod accessible from the outside, you'll expose it through a Service object. You'll create a special service of type LoadBalancer, because if you create a regular service (a ClusterIP service), like the pod, it would also only be accessible from inside the cluster. By creating a LoadBalancer-type service, an external load balancer will be created and you can connect to the pod through the load balancer's public IP.

#### CREATING A SERVICE OBJECT

To create the service, you'll tell Kubernetes to expose the ReplicationController you created earlier:

```
$ kubectl expose rc kubia --type=LoadBalancer --name kubia-http
service "kubia-http" exposed
```

**NOTE** We’re using the abbreviation `rc` instead of `replicationcontroller`. Most resource types have an abbreviation like this so you don’t have to type the full name (for example, `po` for pods, `svc` for services, and so on).

### LISTING SERVICES

The `expose` command’s output mentions a service called `kubia-http`. Services are objects like Pods and Nodes, so you can see the newly created Service object by running the `kubectl get services` command, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 2.16 Listing Services

```
$ kubectl get services
NAME      CLUSTER-IP      EXTERNAL-IP      PORT(S)      AGE
kubernetes  10.3.240.1    <none>          443/TCP     34m
kubia-http  10.3.246.185  <pending>        8080:31348/TCP  4s
```

The list shows two services. Ignore the `kubernetes` service for now and take a close look at the `kubia-http` service you created. It doesn’t have an external IP address yet, because it takes time for the load balancer to be created by the cloud infrastructure Kubernetes is running on. Once the load balancer is up, the external IP address of the service should be displayed. Let’s wait a while and list the services again, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 2.17 Listing services again to see if an external IP has been assigned

```
$ kubectl get svc
NAME      CLUSTER-IP      EXTERNAL-IP      PORT(S)      AGE
kubernetes  10.3.240.1    <none>          443/TCP     35m
kubia-http  10.3.246.185  104.155.74.57  8080:31348/TCP  1m
```

Aha, there’s the external IP. Your application is now accessible at <http://104.155.74.57:8080> from anywhere in the world.

**NOTE** Minikube doesn’t support LoadBalancer services, so the service will never get an external IP. But you can access the service anyway through its external port. How to do that is described in the next section’s tip.

### ACCESSING YOUR SERVICE THROUGH ITS EXTERNAL IP

You can now send requests to your pod through the service’s external IP and port:

```
$ curl 104.155.74.57:8080
You've hit kubia-4jfjf
```

Woohoo! Your app is now running somewhere in your three-node Kubernetes cluster (or a single-node cluster if you’re using Minikube). If you don’t count the steps required to set up the whole cluster, all it took was two simple commands to get your app running and to make it accessible to users across the world.

**TIP** When using Minikube, you can get the IP and port through which you can access the service by running `minikube service kubia-http`.

If you look closely, you'll see that the app is reporting the name of the pod as its hostname. As already mentioned, each pod behaves like a separate independent machine with its own IP address and hostname. Even though the application is running in the worker node's operating system, to the app it appears as though it's running on a separate machine dedicated to the app itself—no other processes are running alongside it.

### 2.3.3 The logical parts of your system

Until now, I've mostly explained the actual physical components of your system. You have three worker nodes, which are VMs running Docker and the Kubelet, and you have a master node that controls the whole system. Honestly, we don't know if a single master node is hosting all the individual components of the Kubernetes Control Plane or if they're split across multiple nodes. It doesn't really matter, because you're only interacting with the API server, which is accessible at a single endpoint.

Besides this physical view of the system, there's also a separate, logical view of it. I've already mentioned Pods, ReplicationControllers, and Services. All of them will be explained in the next few chapters, but let's quickly look at how they fit together and what roles they play in your little setup.

#### UNDERSTANDING HOW THE REPLICATIONCONTROLLER, THE POD, AND THE SERVICE FIT TOGETHER

As I've already explained, you're not creating and working with containers directly. Instead, the basic building block in Kubernetes is the pod. But, you didn't really create any pods either, at least not directly. By running the `kubectl run` command you created a ReplicationController, and this ReplicationController is what created the actual Pod object. To make that pod accessible from outside the cluster, you told Kubernetes to expose all the pods managed by that ReplicationController as a single Service. A rough picture of all three elements is presented in figure 2.7.

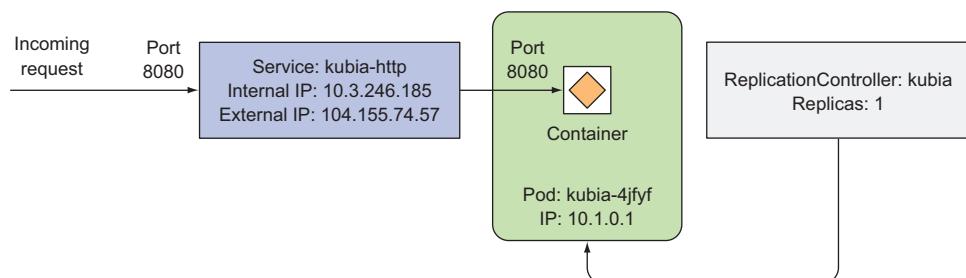


Figure 2.7 Your system consists of a ReplicationController, a Pod, and a Service.

### **UNDERSTANDING THE POD AND ITS CONTAINER**

The main and most important component in your system is the pod. It contains only a single container, but generally a pod can contain as many containers as you want. Inside the container is your Node.js process, which is bound to port 8080 and is waiting for HTTP requests. The pod has its own unique private IP address and hostname.

### **UNDERSTANDING THE ROLE OF THE REPLICATIONCONTROLLER**

The next component is the kubia ReplicationController. It makes sure there's always exactly one instance of your pod running. Generally, ReplicationControllers are used to replicate pods (that is, create multiple copies of a pod) and keep them running. In your case, you didn't specify how many pod replicas you want, so the ReplicationController created a single one. If your pod were to disappear for any reason, the ReplicationController would create a new pod to replace the missing one.

### **UNDERSTANDING WHY YOU NEED A SERVICE**

The third component of your system is the kubia-`http` service. To understand why you need services, you need to learn a key detail about pods. They're ephemeral. A pod may disappear at any time—because the node it's running on has failed, because someone deleted the pod, or because the pod was evicted from an otherwise healthy node. When any of those occurs, a missing pod is replaced with a new one by the ReplicationController, as described previously. This new pod gets a different IP address from the pod it's replacing. This is where services come in—to solve the problem of ever-changing pod IP addresses, as well as exposing multiple pods at a single constant IP and port pair.

When a service is created, it gets a static IP, which never changes during the lifetime of the service. Instead of connecting to pods directly, clients should connect to the service through its constant IP address. The service makes sure one of the pods receives the connection, regardless of where the pod is currently running (and what its IP address is).

Services represent a static location for a group of one or more pods that all provide the same service. Requests coming to the IP and port of the service will be forwarded to the IP and port of one of the pods belonging to the service at that moment.

#### **2.3.4 *Horizontally scaling the application***

You now have a running application, monitored and kept running by a ReplicationController and exposed to the world through a service. Now let's make additional magic happen.

One of the main benefits of using Kubernetes is the simplicity with which you can scale your deployments. Let's see how easy it is to scale up the number of pods. You'll increase the number of running instances to three.

Your pod is managed by a ReplicationController. Let's see it with the `kubectl get` command:

```
$ kubectl get replicationcontrollers
NAME      DESIRED   CURRENT   AGE
kubia     1          1          17m
```

### Listing all the resource types with kubectl get

You've been using the same basic `kubectl get` command to list things in your cluster. You've used this command to list Node, Pod, Service and ReplicationController objects. You can get a list of all the possible object types by invoking `kubectl get` without specifying the type. You can then use those types with various `kubectl` commands such as `get`, `describe`, and so on. The list also shows the abbreviations I mentioned earlier.

The list shows a single ReplicationController called `kubia`. The `DESIRED` column shows the number of pod replicas you want the ReplicationController to keep, whereas the `CURRENT` column shows the actual number of pods currently running. In your case, you wanted to have a single replica of the pod running, and exactly one replica is currently running.

#### INCREASING THE DESIRED REPLICA COUNT

To scale up the number of replicas of your pod, you need to change the desired replica count on the ReplicationController like this:

```
$ kubectl scale rc kubia --replicas=3
replicationcontroller "kubia" scaled
```

You've now told Kubernetes to make sure three instances of your pod are always running. Notice that you didn't instruct Kubernetes what action to take. You didn't tell it to add two more pods. You only set the new desired number of instances and let Kubernetes determine what actions it needs to take to achieve the requested state.

This is one of the most fundamental Kubernetes principles. Instead of telling Kubernetes exactly what actions it should perform, you're only declaratively changing the desired state of the system and letting Kubernetes examine the current actual state and reconcile it with the desired state. This is true across all of Kubernetes.

#### SEEING THE RESULTS OF THE SCALE-OUT

Back to your replica count increase. Let's list the ReplicationControllers again to see the updated replica count:

```
$ kubectl get rc
NAME      DESIRED      CURRENT      READY      AGE
kubia     3            3            2          17m
```

Because the actual number of pods has already been increased to three (as evident from the `CURRENT` column), listing all the pods should now show three pods instead of one:

```
$ kubectl get pods
NAME      READY      STATUS      RESTARTS      AGE
kubia-hczji  1/1      Running    0           7s
kubia-iq9y6  0/1      Pending    0           7s
kubia-4jfyyf 1/1      Running    0           18m
```

As you can see, three pods exist instead of one. Two are already running, one is still pending, but should be ready in a few moments, as soon as the container image is downloaded and the container is started.

As you can see, scaling an application is incredibly simple. Once your app is running in production and a need to scale the app arises, you can add additional instances with a single command without having to install and run additional copies manually.

Keep in mind that the app itself needs to support being scaled horizontally. Kubernetes doesn't magically make your app scalable; it only makes it trivial to scale the app up or down.

#### SEEING REQUESTS HIT ALL THREE PODS WHEN HITTING THE SERVICE

Because you now have multiple instances of your app running, let's see what happens if you hit the service URL again. Will you always hit the same app instance or not?

```
$ curl 104.155.74.57:8080
You've hit kubia-hczji
$ curl 104.155.74.57:8080
You've hit kubia-iq9y6
$ curl 104.155.74.57:8080
You've hit kubia-iq9y6
$ curl 104.155.74.57:8080
You've hit kubia-4jfjf
```

Requests are hitting different pods randomly. This is what services in Kubernetes do when more than one pod instance backs them. They act as a load balancer standing in front of multiple pods. When there's only one pod, services provide a static address for the single pod. Whether a service is backed by a single pod or a group of pods, those pods come and go as they're moved around the cluster, which means their IP addresses change, but the service is always there at the same address. This makes it easy for clients to connect to the pods, regardless of how many exist and how often they change location.

#### VISUALIZING THE NEW STATE OF YOUR SYSTEM

Let's visualize your system again to see what's changed from before. Figure 2.8 shows the new state of your system. You still have a single service and a single ReplicationController, but you now have three instances of your pod, all managed by the ReplicationController. The service no longer sends all requests to a single pod, but spreads them across all three pods as shown in the experiment with curl in the previous section.

As an exercise, you can now try spinning up additional instances by increasing the ReplicationController's replica count even further and then scaling back down.

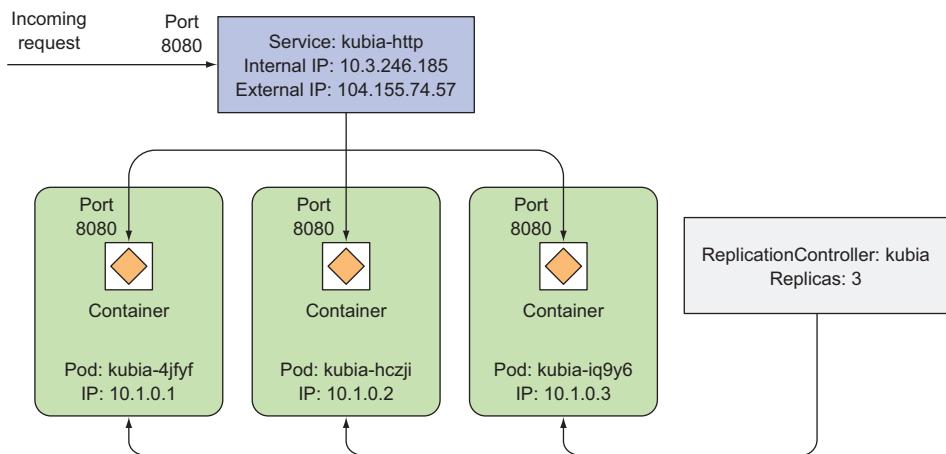


Figure 2.8 Three instances of a pod managed by the same ReplicationController and exposed through a single service IP and port.

### 2.3.5 Examining what nodes your app is running on

You may be wondering what nodes your pods have been scheduled to. In the Kubernetes world, what node a pod is running on isn't that important, as long as it gets scheduled to a node that can provide the CPU and memory the pod needs to run properly.

Regardless of the node they're scheduled to, all the apps running inside containers have the same type of OS environment. Each pod has its own IP and can talk to any other pod, regardless of whether that other pod is also running on the same node or on a different one. Each pod is provided with the requested amount of computational resources, so whether those resources are provided by one node or another doesn't make any difference.

#### DISPLAYING THE POD IP AND THE POD'S NODE WHEN LISTING PODS

If you've been paying close attention, you probably noticed that the `kubectl get pods` command doesn't even show any information about the nodes the pods are scheduled to. This is because it's usually not an important piece of information.

But you can request additional columns to display using the `-o wide` option. When listing pods, this option shows the pod's IP and the node the pod is running on:

```
$ kubectl get pods -o wide
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE     IP          NODE
kubia-hczji  1/1    Running   0          7s     10.1.0.2   gke-kubia-85...
```

### INSPECTING OTHER DETAILS OF A POD WITH KUBECTL DESCRIBE

You can also see the node by using the kubectl describe command, which shows many other details of the pod, as shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing 2.18 Describing a pod with kubectl describe**

```
$ kubectl describe pod kubia-hczji
Name:           kubia-hczji
Namespace:      default
Node:          gke-kubia-85f6-node-vs9f/10.132.0.3
Start Time:    Fri, 29 Apr 2016 14:12:33 +0200
Labels:        run=kubia
Status:        Running
IP:            10.1.0.2
Controllers:   ReplicationController/kubia
Containers: ...
Conditions:
  Type    Status
  Ready   True
Volumes: ...
Events: ...
```



Here's the node the pod has been scheduled to.

This shows, among other things, the node the pod has been scheduled to, the time when it was started, the image(s) it's running, and other useful information.

### 2.3.6 *Introducing the Kubernetes dashboard*

Before we wrap up this initial hands-on chapter, let's look at another way of exploring your Kubernetes cluster.

Up to now, you've only been using the kubectl command-line tool. If you're more into graphical web user interfaces, you'll be glad to hear that Kubernetes also comes with a nice (but still evolving) web dashboard.

The dashboard allows you to list all the Pods, ReplicationControllers, Services, and other objects deployed in your cluster, as well as to create, modify, and delete them. Figure 2.9 shows the dashboard.

Although you won't use the dashboard in this book, you can open it up any time to quickly see a graphical view of what's deployed in your cluster after you create or modify objects through kubectl.

### ACCESSING THE DASHBOARD WHEN RUNNING KUBERNETES IN GKE

If you're using Google Kubernetes Engine, you can find out the URL of the dashboard through the kubectl cluster-info command, which we already introduced:

```
$ kubectl cluster-info | grep dashboard
kubernetes-dashboard is running at https://104.155.108.191/api/v1/proxy/
  namespaces/kube-system/services/kubernetes-dashboard
```

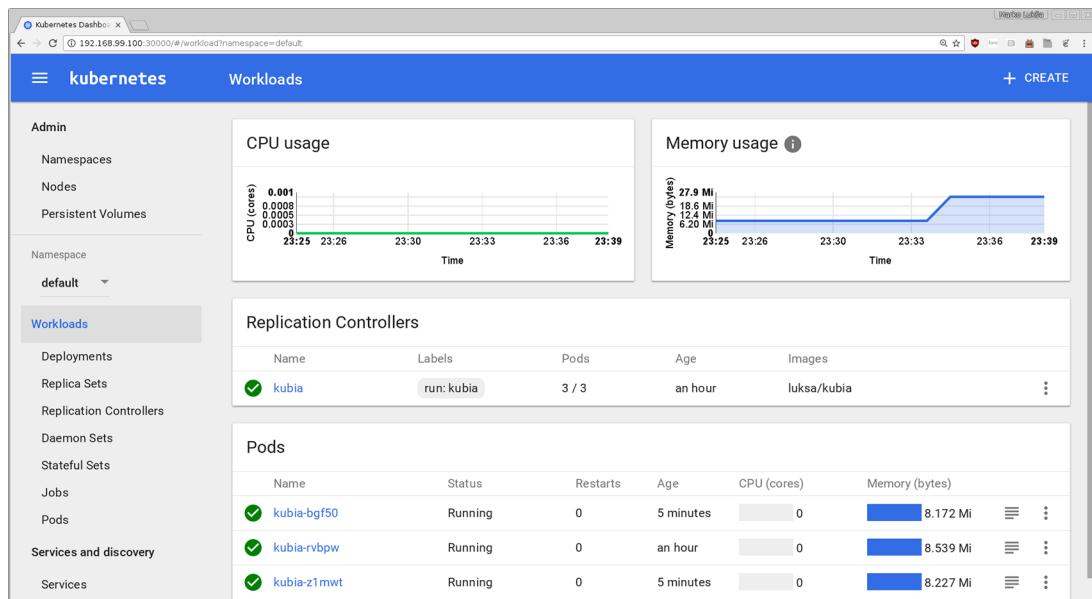


Figure 2.9 Screenshot of the Kubernetes web-based dashboard

If you open this URL in a browser, you’re presented with a username and password prompt. You’ll find the username and password by running the following command:

```
$ gcloud container clusters describe kubia | grep -E "(username|password):"
password: 32nENgreEJ632A12
username: admin
```

The username and password for the dashboard

#### ACCESSING THE DASHBOARD WHEN USING MINIKUBE

To open the dashboard in your browser when using Minikube to run your Kubernetes cluster, run the following command:

```
$ minikube dashboard
```

The dashboard will open in your default browser. Unlike with GKE, you won’t need to enter any credentials to access it.

## 2.4 Summary

Hopefully, this initial hands-on chapter has shown you that Kubernetes isn’t a complicated platform to use, and you’re ready to learn in depth about all the things it can provide. After reading this chapter, you should now know how to

- Pull and run any publicly available container image
- Package your apps into container images and make them available to anyone by pushing the images to a remote image registry

- Enter a running container and inspect its environment
- Set up a multi-node Kubernetes cluster on Google Kubernetes Engine
- Configure an alias and tab completion for the `kubectl` command-line tool
- List and inspect Nodes, Pods, Services, and ReplicationControllers in a Kubernetes cluster
- Run a container in Kubernetes and make it accessible from outside the cluster
- Have a basic sense of how Pods, ReplicationControllers, and Services relate to one another
- Scale an app horizontally by changing the ReplicationController's replica count
- Access the web-based Kubernetes dashboard on both Minikube and GKE



# *Pods: running containers in Kubernetes*

---

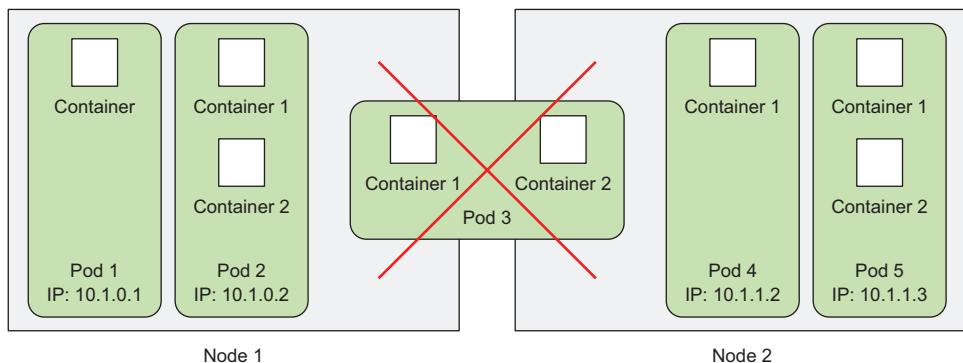
## **This chapter covers**

- Creating, running, and stopping pods
- Organizing pods and other resources with labels
- Performing an operation on all pods with a specific label
- Using namespaces to split pods into non-overlapping groups
- Scheduling pods onto specific types of worker nodes

The previous chapter should have given you a rough picture of the basic components you create in Kubernetes and at least an outline of what they do. Now, we'll start reviewing all types of Kubernetes objects (or *resources*) in greater detail, so you'll understand when, how, and why to use each of them. We'll start with pods, because they're the central, most important, concept in Kubernetes. Everything else either manages, exposes, or is used by pods.

### 3.1 Introducing pods

You've already learned that a pod is a co-located group of containers and represents the basic building block in Kubernetes. Instead of deploying containers individually, you always deploy and operate on a pod of containers. We're not implying that a pod always includes more than one container—it's common for pods to contain only a single container. The key thing about pods is that when a pod does contain multiple containers, all of them are always run on a single worker node—it never spans multiple worker nodes, as shown in figure 3.1.



**Figure 3.1** All containers of a pod run on the same node. A pod never spans two nodes.

#### 3.1.1 Understanding why we need pods

But why do we even need pods? Why can't we use containers directly? Why would we even need to run multiple containers together? Can't we put all our processes into a single container? We'll answer those questions now.

##### UNDERSTANDING WHY MULTIPLE CONTAINERS ARE BETTER THAN ONE CONTAINER RUNNING MULTIPLE PROCESSES

Imagine an app consisting of multiple processes that either communicate through *IPC* (Inter-Process Communication) or through locally stored files, which requires them to run on the same machine. Because in Kubernetes you always run processes in containers and each container is much like an isolated machine, you may think it makes sense to run multiple processes in a single container, but you shouldn't do that.

Containers are designed to run only a single process per container (unless the process itself spawns child processes). If you run multiple unrelated processes in a single container, it is your responsibility to keep all those processes running, manage their logs, and so on. For example, you'd have to include a mechanism for automatically restarting individual processes if they crash. Also, all those processes would log to the same standard output, so you'd have a hard time figuring out what process logged what.

Therefore, you need to run each process in its own container. That's how Docker and Kubernetes are meant to be used.

### 3.1.2 Understanding pods

Because you're not supposed to group multiple processes into a single container, it's obvious you need another higher-level construct that will allow you to bind containers together and manage them as a single unit. This is the reasoning behind pods.

A pod of containers allows you to run closely related processes together and provide them with (almost) the same environment as if they were all running in a single container, while keeping them somewhat isolated. This way, you get the best of both worlds. You can take advantage of all the features containers provide, while at the same time giving the processes the illusion of running together.

#### UNDERSTANDING THE PARTIAL ISOLATION BETWEEN CONTAINERS OF THE SAME POD

In the previous chapter, you learned that containers are completely isolated from each other, but now you see that you want to isolate groups of containers instead of individual ones. You want containers inside each group to share certain resources, although not all, so that they're not fully isolated. Kubernetes achieves this by configuring Docker to have all containers of a pod share the same set of Linux namespaces instead of each container having its own set.

Because all containers of a pod run under the same Network and UTS namespaces (we're talking about Linux namespaces here), they all share the same hostname and network interfaces. Similarly, all containers of a pod run under the same IPC namespace and can communicate through IPC. In the latest Kubernetes and Docker versions, they can also share the same PID namespace, but that feature isn't enabled by default.

**NOTE** When containers of the same pod use separate PID namespaces, you only see the container's own processes when running `ps aux` in the container.

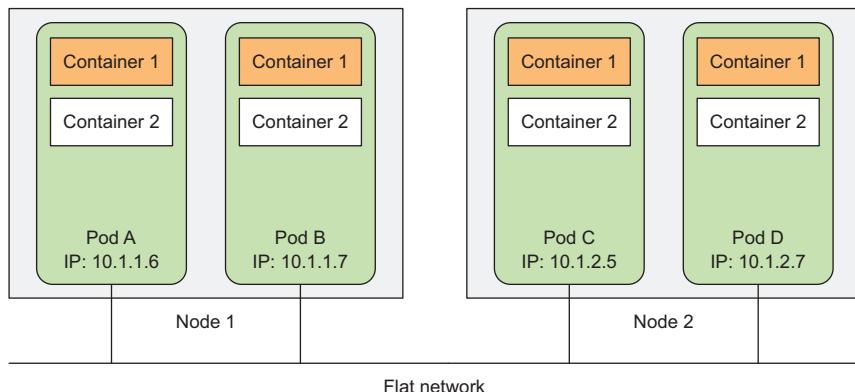
But when it comes to the filesystem, things are a little different. Because most of the container's filesystem comes from the container image, by default, the filesystem of each container is fully isolated from other containers. However, it's possible to have them share file directories using a Kubernetes concept called a *Volume*, which we'll talk about in chapter 6.

#### UNDERSTANDING HOW CONTAINERS SHARE THE SAME IP AND PORT SPACE

One thing to stress here is that because containers in a pod run in the same Network namespace, they share the same IP address and port space. This means processes running in containers of the same pod need to take care not to bind to the same port numbers or they'll run into port conflicts. But this only concerns containers in the same pod. Containers of different pods can never run into port conflicts, because each pod has a separate port space. All the containers in a pod also have the same loopback network interface, so a container can communicate with other containers in the same pod through localhost.

### INTRODUCING THE FLAT INTER-POD NETWORK

All pods in a Kubernetes cluster reside in a single flat, shared, network-address space (shown in figure 3.2), which means every pod can access every other pod at the other pod's IP address. No NAT (Network Address Translation) gateways exist between them. When two pods send network packets between each other, they'll each see the actual IP address of the other as the source IP in the packet.



**Figure 3.2** Each pod gets a routable IP address and all other pods see the pod under that IP address.

Consequently, communication between pods is always simple. It doesn't matter if two pods are scheduled onto a single or onto different worker nodes; in both cases the containers inside those pods can communicate with each other across the flat NAT-less network, much like computers on a local area network (LAN), regardless of the actual inter-node network topology. Like a computer on a LAN, each pod gets its own IP address and is accessible from all other pods through this network established specifically for pods. This is usually achieved through an additional software-defined network layered on top of the actual network.

To sum up what's been covered in this section: pods are logical hosts and behave much like physical hosts or VMs in the non-container world. Processes running in the same pod are like processes running on the same physical or virtual machine, except that each process is encapsulated in a container.

#### 3.1.3 *Organizing containers across pods properly*

You should think of pods as separate machines, but where each one hosts only a certain app. Unlike the old days, when we used to cram all sorts of apps onto the same host, we don't do that with pods. Because pods are relatively lightweight, you can have as many as you need without incurring almost any overhead. Instead of stuffing everything into a single pod, you should organize apps into multiple pods, where each one contains only tightly related components or processes.

Having said that, do you think a multi-tier application consisting of a frontend application server and a backend database should be configured as a single pod or as two pods?

### SPLITTING MULTI-TIER APPS INTO MULTIPLE PODS

Although nothing is stopping you from running both the frontend server and the database in a single pod with two containers, it isn't the most appropriate way. We've said that all containers of the same pod always run co-located, but do the web server and the database really need to run on the same machine? The answer is obviously no, so you don't want to put them into a single pod. But is it wrong to do so regardless? In a way, it is.

If both the frontend and backend are in the same pod, then both will always be run on the same machine. If you have a two-node Kubernetes cluster and only this single pod, you'll only be using a single worker node and not taking advantage of the computational resources (CPU and memory) you have at your disposal on the second node. Splitting the pod into two would allow Kubernetes to schedule the frontend to one node and the backend to the other node, thereby improving the utilization of your infrastructure.

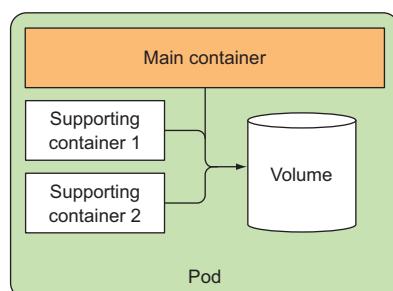
### SPLITTING INTO MULTIPLE PODS TO ENABLE INDIVIDUAL SCALING

Another reason why you shouldn't put them both into a single pod is scaling. A pod is also the basic unit of scaling. Kubernetes can't horizontally scale individual containers; instead, it scales whole pods. If your pod consists of a frontend and a backend container, when you scale up the number of instances of the pod to, let's say, two, you end up with two frontend containers and two backend containers.

Usually, frontend components have completely different scaling requirements than the backends, so we tend to scale them individually. Not to mention the fact that backends such as databases are usually much harder to scale compared to (stateless) frontend web servers. If you need to scale a container individually, this is a clear indication that it needs to be deployed in a separate pod.

### UNDERSTANDING WHEN TO USE MULTIPLE CONTAINERS IN A POD

The main reason to put multiple containers into a single pod is when the application consists of one main process and one or more complementary processes, as shown in figure 3.3.



**Figure 3.3** Pods should contain tightly coupled containers, usually a main container and containers that support the main one.

For example, the main container in a pod could be a web server that serves files from a certain file directory, while an additional container (a sidecar container) periodically downloads content from an external source and stores it in the web server’s directory. In chapter 6 you’ll see that you need to use a Kubernetes Volume that you mount into both containers.

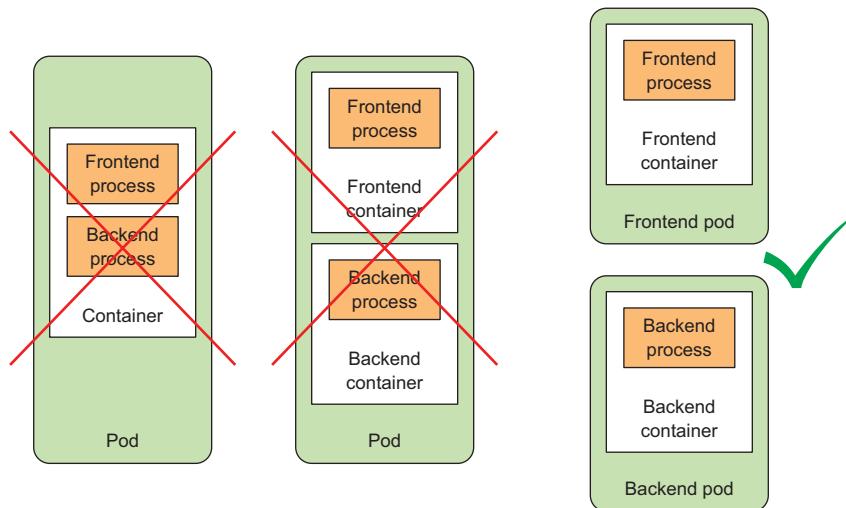
Other examples of sidecar containers include log rotators and collectors, data processors, communication adapters, and others.

#### **DECIDING WHEN TO USE MULTIPLE CONTAINERS IN A POD**

To recap how containers should be grouped into pods—when deciding whether to put two containers into a single pod or into two separate pods, you always need to ask yourself the following questions:

- Do they need to be run together or can they run on different hosts?
- Do they represent a single whole or are they independent components?
- Must they be scaled together or individually?

Basically, you should always gravitate toward running containers in separate pods, unless a specific reason requires them to be part of the same pod. Figure 3.4 will help you memorize this.



**Figure 3.4** A container shouldn’t run multiple processes. A pod shouldn’t contain multiple containers if they don’t need to run on the same machine.

Although pods can contain multiple containers, to keep things simple for now, you’ll only be dealing with single-container pods in this chapter. You’ll see how multiple containers are used in the same pod later, in chapter 6.

## 3.2 Creating pods from YAML or JSON descriptors

Pods and other Kubernetes resources are usually created by posting a JSON or YAML manifest to the Kubernetes REST API endpoint. Also, you can use other, simpler ways of creating resources, such as the `kubectl run` command you used in the previous chapter, but they usually only allow you to configure a limited set of properties, not all. Additionally, defining all your Kubernetes objects from YAML files makes it possible to store them in a version control system, with all the benefits it brings.

To configure all aspects of each type of resource, you'll need to know and understand the Kubernetes API object definitions. You'll get to know most of them as you learn about each resource type throughout this book. We won't explain every single property, so you should also refer to the Kubernetes API reference documentation at <http://kubernetes.io/docs/reference/> when creating objects.

### 3.2.1 Examining a YAML descriptor of an existing pod

You already have some existing pods you created in the previous chapter, so let's look at what a YAML definition for one of those pods looks like. You'll use the `kubectl get` command with the `-o yaml` option to get the whole YAML definition of the pod, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 3.1 Full YAML of a deployed pod**

```
$ kubectl get po kubia-zxzij -o yaml
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  annotations:
    kubernetes.io/created-by: ...
  creationTimestamp: 2016-03-18T12:37:50Z
  generateName: kubia-
  labels:
    run: kubia
  name: kubia-zxzij
  namespace: default
  resourceVersion: "294"
  selfLink: /api/v1/namespaces/default/pods/kubia-zxzij
  uid: 3a564dc0-ed06-11e5-ba3b-42010af00004
spec:
  containers:
  - image: luksa/kubia
    imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent
    name: kubia
    ports:
    - containerPort: 8080
      protocol: TCP
    resources:
      requests:
        cpu: 100m
```

Kubernetes API version used in this YAML descriptor

Type of Kubernetes object/resource

Pod metadata (name, labels, annotations, and so on)

Pod specification/contents (list of pod's containers, volumes, and so on)

```

terminationMessagePath: /dev/termination-log
volumeMounts:
- mountPath: /var/run/secrets/k8s.io/servacc
  name: default-token-kvcqa
  readOnly: true
dnsPolicy: ClusterFirst
nodeName: gke-kubia-e8fe08b8-node-txje
restartPolicy: Always
serviceAccount: default
serviceAccountName: default
terminationGracePeriodSeconds: 30
volumes:
- name: default-token-kvcqa
  secret:
    secretName: default-token-kvcqa
status:
  conditions:
  - lastProbeTime: null
    lastTransitionTime: null
    status: "True"
    type: Ready
  containerStatuses:
  - containerID: docker://f0276994322d247ba...
    image: luksa/kubia
    imageID: docker://4c325bcc6b40c110226b89fe...
    lastState: {}
    name: kubia
    ready: true
    restartCount: 0
    state:
      running:
        startedAt: 2016-03-18T12:46:05Z
  hostIP: 10.132.0.4
  phase: Running
  podIP: 10.0.2.3
  startTime: 2016-03-18T12:44:32Z

```

**Pod specification/contents (list of pod's containers, volumes, and so on)**

**Detailed status of the pod and its containers**

I know this looks complicated, but it becomes simple once you understand the basics and know how to distinguish between the important parts and the minor details. Also, you can take comfort in the fact that when creating a new pod, the YAML you need to write is much shorter, as you'll see later.

### INTRODUCING THE MAIN PARTS OF A POD DEFINITION

The pod definition consists of a few parts. First, there's the Kubernetes API version used in the YAML and the type of resource the YAML is describing. Then, three important sections are found in almost all Kubernetes resources:

- *Metadata* includes the name, namespace, labels, and other information about the pod.
- *Spec* contains the actual description of the pod's contents, such as the pod's containers, volumes, and other data.

- *Status* contains the current information about the running pod, such as what condition the pod is in, the description and status of each container, and the pod’s internal IP and other basic info.

Listing 3.1 showed a full description of a running pod, including its status. The status part contains read-only runtime data that shows the state of the resource at a given moment. When creating a new pod, you never need to provide the status part.

The three parts described previously show the typical structure of a Kubernetes API object. As you’ll see throughout the book, all other objects have the same anatomy. This makes understanding new objects relatively easy.

Going through all the individual properties in the previous YAML doesn’t make much sense, so, instead, let’s see what the most basic YAML for creating a pod looks like.

### 3.2.2 Creating a simple YAML descriptor for a pod

You’re going to create a file called `kubia-manual.yaml` (you can create it in any directory you want), or download the book’s code archive, where you’ll find the file inside the `Chapter03` directory. The following listing shows the entire contents of the file.

**Listing 3.2 A basic pod manifest: kubia-manual.yaml**

```
Descriptor conforms
to version v1 of
Kubernetes API
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: kubia-manual
spec:
  containers:
    - image: luksa/kubia
      name: kubia
      ports:
        - containerPort: 8080
          protocol: TCP
You're
describing a pod.
The name
of the pod
Container image to create
the container from
Name of the container
The port the app
is listening on
```

I’m sure you’ll agree this is much simpler than the definition in listing 3.1. Let’s examine this descriptor in detail. It conforms to the v1 version of the Kubernetes API. The type of resource you’re describing is a pod, with the name `kubia-manual`. The pod consists of a single container based on the `luksa/kubia` image. You’ve also given a name to the container and indicated that it’s listening on port 8080.

#### SPECIFYING CONTAINER PORTS

Specifying ports in the pod definition is purely informational. Omitting them has no effect on whether clients can connect to the pod through the port or not. If the con-

tainer is accepting connections through a port bound to the 0.0.0.0 address, other pods can always connect to it, even if the port isn't listed in the pod spec explicitly. But it makes sense to define the ports explicitly so that everyone using your cluster can quickly see what ports each pod exposes. Explicitly defining ports also allows you to assign a name to each port, which can come in handy, as you'll see later in the book.

### Using kubectl explain to discover possible API object fields

When preparing a manifest, you can either turn to the Kubernetes reference documentation at <http://kubernetes.io/docs/api> to see which attributes are supported by each API object, or you can use the `kubectl explain` command.

For example, when creating a pod manifest from scratch, you can start by asking `kubectl` to explain pods:

```
$ kubectl explain pods
DESCRIPTION:
Pod is a collection of containers that can run on a host. This resource
is created by clients and scheduled onto hosts.

FIELDS:
  kind      <string>
    Kind is a string value representing the REST resource this object
    represents...

  metadata  <Object>
    Standard object's metadata...

  spec      <Object>
    Specification of the desired behavior of the pod...

  status     <Object>
    Most recently observed status of the pod. This data may not be up to
    date...
```

`Kubectl` prints out the explanation of the object and lists the attributes the object can contain. You can then drill deeper to find out more about each attribute. For example, you can examine the `spec` attribute like this:

```
$ kubectl explain pod.spec
RESOURCE: spec <Object>

DESCRIPTION:
  Specification of the desired behavior of the pod...
  podSpec is a description of a pod.

FIELDS:
  hostPID    <boolean>
    Use the host's pid namespace. Optional: Default to false.

  ...
  volumes   <[]Object>
    List of volumes that can be mounted by containers belonging to the
    pod.
```

```
Containers <[]Object> -required-
List of containers belonging to the pod. Containers cannot currently
Be added or removed. There must be at least one container in a pod.
Cannot be updated. More info:
http://releases.k8s.io/release-1.4/docs/user-guide/containers.md
```

### 3.2.3 Using kubectl create to create the pod

To create the pod from your YAML file, use the `kubectl create` command:

```
$ kubectl create -f kubia-manual.yaml
pod "kubia-manual" created
```

The `kubectl create -f` command is used for creating any resource (not only pods) from a YAML or JSON file.

#### RETRIEVING THE WHOLE DEFINITION OF A RUNNING POD

After creating the pod, you can ask Kubernetes for the full YAML of the pod. You'll see it's similar to the YAML you saw earlier. You'll learn about the additional fields appearing in the returned definition in the next sections. Go ahead and use the following command to see the full descriptor of the pod:

```
$ kubectl get po kubia-manual -o yaml
```

If you're more into JSON, you can also tell `kubectl` to return JSON instead of YAML like this (this works even if you used YAML to create the pod):

```
$ kubectl get po kubia-manual -o json
```

#### SEEING YOUR NEWLY CREATED POD IN THE LIST OF PODS

Your pod has been created, but how do you know if it's running? Let's list pods to see their statuses:

```
$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY     STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-manual  1/1      Running   0          32s
kubia-zxzij  1/1      Running   0          1d
```

There's your `kubia-manual` pod. Its status shows that it's running. If you're like me, you'll probably want to confirm that's true by talking to the pod. You'll do that in a minute. First, you'll look at the app's log to check for any errors.

### 3.2.4 Viewing application logs

Your little Node.js application logs to the process's standard output. Containerized applications usually log to the standard output and standard error stream instead of

writing their logs to files. This is to allow users to view logs of different applications in a simple, standard way.

The container runtime (Docker in your case) redirects those streams to files and allows you to get the container’s log by running

```
$ docker logs <container id>
```

You could use ssh to log into the node where your pod is running and retrieve its logs with docker logs, but Kubernetes provides an easier way.

#### **RETRIEVING A POD’S LOG WITH KUBECTL LOGS**

To see your pod’s log (more precisely, the container’s log) you run the following command on your local machine (no need to ssh anywhere):

```
$ kubectl logs kubia-manual
Kubia server starting...
```

You haven’t sent any web requests to your Node.js app, so the log only shows a single log statement about the server starting up. As you can see, retrieving logs of an application running in Kubernetes is incredibly simple if the pod only contains a single container.

**NOTE** Container logs are automatically rotated daily and every time the log file reaches 10MB in size. The kubectl logs command only shows the log entries from the last rotation.

#### **SPECIFYING THE CONTAINER NAME WHEN GETTING LOGS OF A MULTI-CONTAINER POD**

If your pod includes multiple containers, you have to explicitly specify the container name by including the -c <container name> option when running kubectl logs. In your kubia-manual pod, you set the container’s name to kubia, so if additional containers exist in the pod, you’d have to get its logs like this:

```
$ kubectl logs kubia-manual -c kubia
Kubia server starting...
```

Note that you can only retrieve container logs of pods that are still in existence. When a pod is deleted, its logs are also deleted. To make a pod’s logs available even after the pod is deleted, you need to set up centralized, cluster-wide logging, which stores all the logs into a central store. Chapter 17 explains how centralized logging works.

### **3.2.5 *Sending requests to the pod***

The pod is now running—at least that’s what kubectl get and your app’s log say. But how do you see it in action? In the previous chapter, you used the kubectl expose command to create a service to gain access to the pod externally. You’re not going to do that now, because a whole chapter is dedicated to services, and you have other ways of connecting to a pod for testing and debugging purposes. One of them is through *port forwarding*.

### FORWARDING A LOCAL NETWORK PORT TO A PORT IN THE POD

When you want to talk to a specific pod without going through a service (for debugging or other reasons), Kubernetes allows you to configure port forwarding to the pod. This is done through the `kubectl port-forward` command. The following command will forward your machine's local port 8888 to port 8080 of your `kubia-manual` pod:

```
$ kubectl port-forward kubia-manual 8888:8080
... Forwarding from 127.0.0.1:8888 -> 8080
... Forwarding from [::1]:8888 -> 8080
```

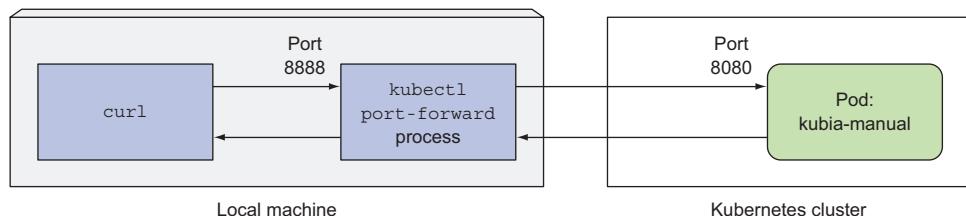
The port forwarder is running and you can now connect to your pod through the local port.

### CONNECTING TO THE POD THROUGH THE PORT FORWARDER

In a different terminal, you can now use `curl` to send an HTTP request to your pod through the `kubectl port-forward` proxy running on `localhost:8888`:

```
$ curl localhost:8888
You've hit kubia-manual
```

Figure 3.5 shows an overly simplified view of what happens when you send the request. In reality, a couple of additional components sit between the `kubectl` process and the pod, but they aren't relevant right now.



**Figure 3.5** A simplified view of what happens when you use `curl` with `kubectl port-forward`

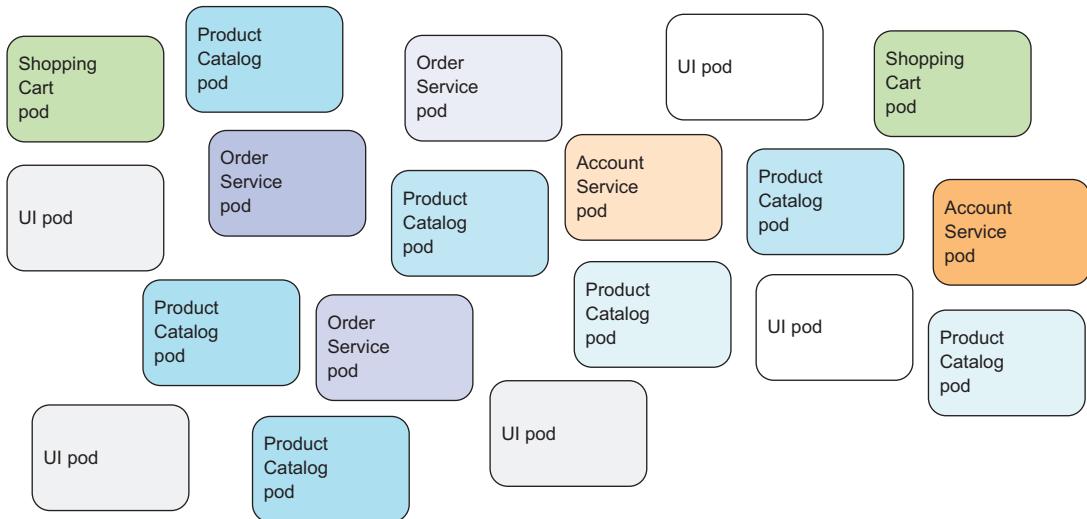
Using port forwarding like this is an effective way to test an individual pod. You'll learn about other similar methods throughout the book.

## 3.3 Organizing pods with labels

At this point, you have two pods running in your cluster. When deploying actual applications, most users will end up running many more pods. As the number of pods increases, the need for categorizing them into subsets becomes more and more evident.

For example, with microservices architectures, the number of deployed microservices can easily exceed 20 or more. Those components will probably be replicated

(multiple copies of the same component will be deployed) and multiple versions or releases (stable, beta, canary, and so on) will run concurrently. This can lead to hundreds of pods in the system. Without a mechanism for organizing them, you end up with a big, incomprehensible mess, such as the one shown in figure 3.6. The figure shows pods of multiple microservices, with several running multiple replicas, and others running different releases of the same microservice.



**Figure 3.6** Uncategorized pods in a microservices architecture

It's evident you need a way of organizing them into smaller groups based on arbitrary criteria, so every developer and system administrator dealing with your system can easily see which pod is which. And you'll want to operate on every pod belonging to a certain group with a single action instead of having to perform the action for each pod individually.

Organizing pods and all other Kubernetes objects is done through *labels*.

### 3.3.1 *Introducing labels*

Labels are a simple, yet incredibly powerful, Kubernetes feature for organizing not only pods, but all other Kubernetes resources. A label is an arbitrary key-value pair you attach to a resource, which is then utilized when selecting resources using *label selectors* (resources are filtered based on whether they include the label specified in the selector). A resource can have more than one label, as long as the keys of those labels are unique within that resource. You usually attach labels to resources when you create them, but you can also add additional labels or even modify the values of existing labels later without having to recreate the resource.

Let's turn back to the microservices example from figure 3.6. By adding labels to those pods, you get a much-better-organized system that everyone can easily make sense of. Each pod is labeled with two labels:

- `app`, which specifies which app, component, or microservice the pod belongs to.
- `rel`, which shows whether the application running in the pod is a stable, beta, or a canary release.

**DEFINITION** A canary release is when you deploy a new version of an application next to the stable version, and only let a small fraction of users hit the new version to see how it behaves before rolling it out to all users. This prevents bad releases from being exposed to too many users.

By adding these two labels, you've essentially organized your pods into two dimensions (horizontally by app and vertically by release), as shown in figure 3.7.

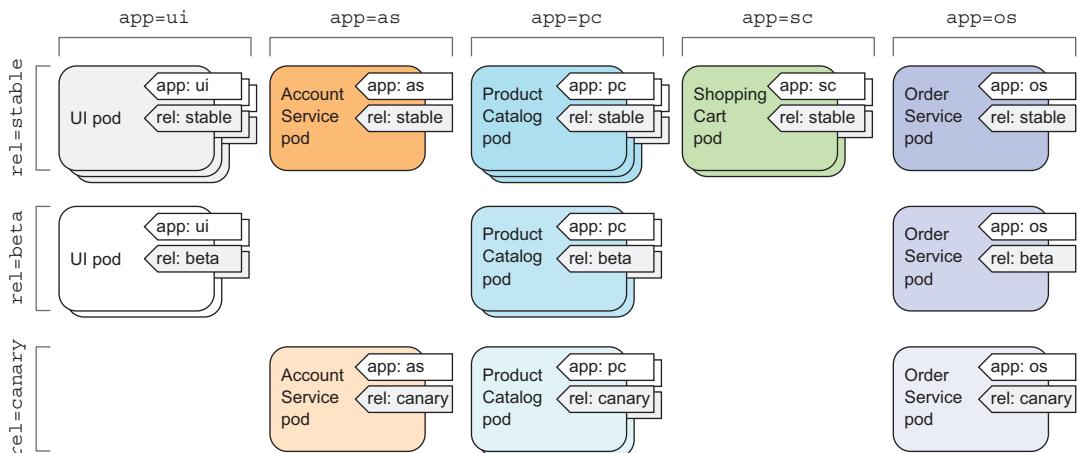


Figure 3.7 Organizing pods in a microservices architecture with pod labels

Every developer or ops person with access to your cluster can now easily see the system's structure and where each pod fits in by looking at the pod's labels.

### 3.3.2 Specifying labels when creating a pod

Now, you'll see labels in action by creating a new pod with two labels. Create a new file called `kubia-manual-with-labels.yaml` with the contents of the following listing.

#### Listing 3.3 A pod with labels: kubia-manual-with-labels.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: kubia-manual-v2
```

```

labels:
  creation_method: manual
  env: prod
spec:
  containers:
    - image: luksa/kubia
      name: kubia
      ports:
        - containerPort: 8080
          protocol: TCP

```

Two labels are attached to the pod.

You've included the labels `creation_method=manual` and `env=prod` in the `.labels` section. You'll create this pod now:

```
$ kubectl create -f kubia-manual-with-labels.yaml
pod "kubia-manual-v2" created
```

The `kubectl get pods` command doesn't list any labels by default, but you can see them by using the `--show-labels` switch:

```
$ kubectl get po --show-labels
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   LABELS
kubia-manual   1/1     Running   0          16m   <none>
kubia-manual-v2 1/1     Running   0          2m    creation_method=manual,env=prod
kubia-zxzij    1/1     Running   0          1d    run=kubia
```

Instead of listing all labels, if you're only interested in certain labels, you can specify them with the `-L` switch and have each displayed in its own column. List pods again and show the columns for the two labels you've attached to your `kubia-manual-v2` pod:

```
$ kubectl get po -L creation_method,env
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   CREATION_METHOD   ENV
kubia-manual   1/1     Running   0          16m   <none>           <none>
kubia-manual-v2 1/1     Running   0          2m    manual           prod
kubia-zxzij    1/1     Running   0          1d    <none>           <none>
```

### 3.3.3 *Modifying labels of existing pods*

Labels can also be added to and modified on existing pods. Because the `kubia-manual` pod was also created manually, let's add the `creation_method=manual` label to it:

```
$ kubectl label po kubia-manual creation_method=manual
pod "kubia-manual" labeled
```

Now, let's also change the `env=prod` label to `env=debug` on the `kubia-manual-v2` pod, to see how existing labels can be changed.

**NOTE** You need to use the `--overwrite` option when changing existing labels.

```
$ kubectl label po kubia-manual-v2 env=debug --overwrite
pod "kubia-manual-v2" labeled
```

List the pods again to see the updated labels:

```
$ kubectl get po -L creation_method,env
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   CREATION_METHOD   ENV
kubia-manual 1/1     Running   0          16m   manual           <none>
kubia-manual-v2 1/1     Running   0          2m    manual           debug
kubia-zxzij   1/1     Running   0          1d    <none>          <none>
```

As you can see, attaching labels to resources is trivial, and so is changing them on existing resources. It may not be evident right now, but this is an incredibly powerful feature, as you'll see in the next chapter. But first, let's see what you can do with these labels, in addition to displaying them when listing pods.

## 3.4 Listing subsets of pods through label selectors

Attaching labels to resources so you can see the labels next to each resource when listing them isn't that interesting. But labels go hand in hand with *label selectors*. Label selectors allow you to select a subset of pods tagged with certain labels and perform an operation on those pods. A label selector is a criterion, which filters resources based on whether they include a certain label with a certain value.

A label selector can select resources based on whether the resource

- Contains (or doesn't contain) a label with a certain key
- Contains a label with a certain key and value
- Contains a label with a certain key, but with a value not equal to the one you specify

### 3.4.1 Listing pods using a label selector

Let's use label selectors on the pods you've created so far. To see all pods you created manually (you labeled them with `creation_method=manual`), do the following:

```
$ kubectl get po -l creation_method=manual
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-manual 1/1     Running   0          51m
kubia-manual-v2 1/1     Running   0          37m
```

To list all pods that include the `env` label, whatever its value is:

```
$ kubectl get po -l env
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-manual-v2 1/1     Running   0          37m
```

And those that don't have the `env` label:

```
$ kubectl get po -l '!env'
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-manual 1/1     Running   0          51m
kubia-zxzij  1/1     Running   0          10d
```

**NOTE** Make sure to use single quotes around `!env`, so the bash shell doesn't evaluate the exclamation mark.

Similarly, you could also match pods with the following label selectors:

- `creation_method!=manual` to select pods with the `creation_method` label with any value other than `manual`
- `env in (prod,devel)` to select pods with the `env` label set to either `prod` or `devel`
- `env notin (prod,devel)` to select pods with the `env` label set to any value other than `prod` or `devel`

Turning back to the pods in the microservices-oriented architecture example, you could select all pods that are part of the product catalog microservice by using the `app=pc` label selector (shown in the following figure).

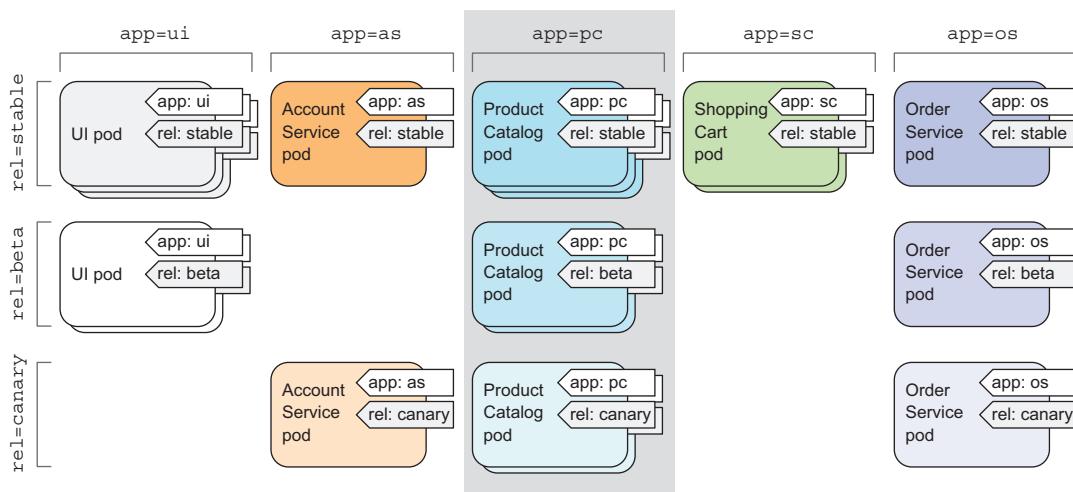


Figure 3.8 Selecting the product catalog microservice pods using the “`app=pc`” label selector

### 3.4.2 Using multiple conditions in a label selector

A selector can also include multiple comma-separated criteria. Resources need to match all of them to match the selector. If, for example, you want to select only pods running the beta release of the product catalog microservice, you'd use the following selector: `app=pc,rel=beta` (visualized in figure 3.9).

Label selectors aren't useful only for listing pods, but also for performing actions on a subset of all pods. For example, later in the chapter, you'll see how to use label selectors to delete multiple pods at once. But label selectors aren't used only by `kubectl`. They're also used internally, as you'll see next.

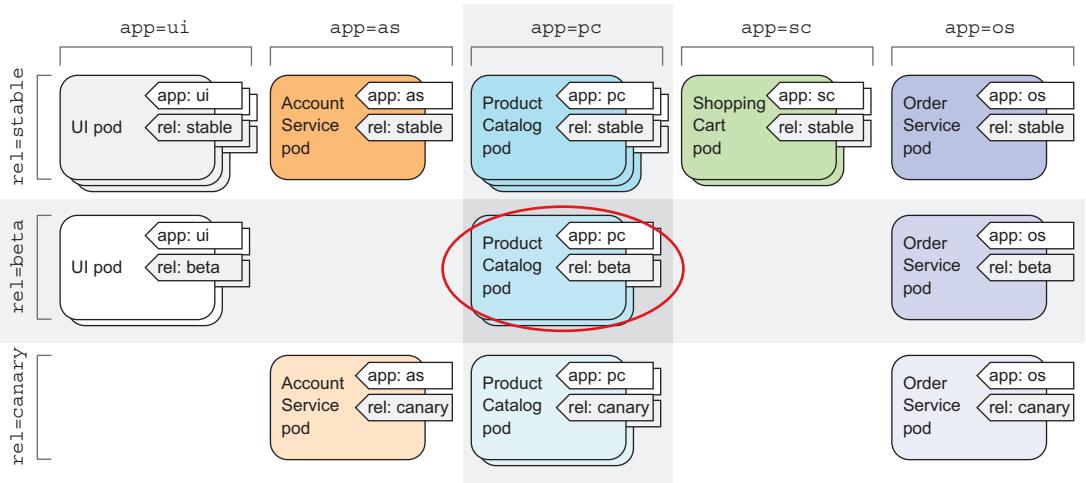


Figure 3.9 Selecting pods with multiple label selectors

### 3.5 Using labels and selectors to constrain pod scheduling

All the pods you've created so far have been scheduled pretty much randomly across your worker nodes. As I've mentioned in the previous chapter, this is the proper way of working in a Kubernetes cluster. Because Kubernetes exposes all the nodes in the cluster as a single, large deployment platform, it shouldn't matter to you what node a pod is scheduled to. Because each pod gets the exact amount of computational resources it requests (CPU, memory, and so on) and its accessibility from other pods isn't at all affected by the node the pod is scheduled to, usually there shouldn't be any need for you to tell Kubernetes exactly where to schedule your pods.

Certain cases exist, however, where you'll want to have at least a little say in where a pod should be scheduled. A good example is when your hardware infrastructure isn't homogenous. If part of your worker nodes have spinning hard drives, whereas others have SSDs, you may want to schedule certain pods to one group of nodes and the rest to the other. Another example is when you need to schedule pods performing intensive GPU-based computation only to nodes that provide the required GPU acceleration.

You never want to say specifically what node a pod should be scheduled to, because that would couple the application to the infrastructure, whereas the whole idea of Kubernetes is hiding the actual infrastructure from the apps that run on it. But if you want to have a say in where a pod should be scheduled, instead of specifying an exact node, you should describe the node requirements and then let Kubernetes select a node that matches those requirements. This can be done through node labels and node label selectors.

### 3.5.1 Using labels for categorizing worker nodes

As you learned earlier, pods aren't the only Kubernetes resource type that you can attach a label to. Labels can be attached to any Kubernetes object, including nodes. Usually, when the ops team adds a new node to the cluster, they'll categorize the node by attaching labels specifying the type of hardware the node provides or anything else that may come in handy when scheduling pods.

Let's imagine one of the nodes in your cluster contains a GPU meant to be used for general-purpose GPU computing. You want to add a label to the node showing this feature. You're going to add the label `gpu=true` to one of your nodes (pick one out of the list returned by `kubectl get nodes`):

```
$ kubectl label node gke-kubia-85f6-node-0rrx gpu=true
node "gke-kubia-85f6-node-0rrx" labeled
```

Now you can use a label selector when listing the nodes, like you did before with pods. List only nodes that include the label `gpu=true`:

```
$ kubectl get nodes -l gpu=true
NAME           STATUS   AGE
gke-kubia-85f6-node-0rrx   Ready   1d
```

As expected, only one node has this label. You can also try listing all the nodes and tell `kubectl` to display an additional column showing the values of each node's `gpu` label (`kubectl get nodes -L gpu`).

### 3.5.2 Scheduling pods to specific nodes

Now imagine you want to deploy a new pod that needs a GPU to perform its work. To ask the scheduler to only choose among the nodes that provide a GPU, you'll add a node selector to the pod's YAML. Create a file called `kubia-gpu.yaml` with the following listing's contents and then use `kubectl create -f kubia-gpu.yaml` to create the pod.

#### **Listing 3.4 Using a label selector to schedule a pod to a specific node: `kubia-gpu.yaml`**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: kubia-gpu
spec:
  nodeSelector:
    gpu: "true"
  containers:
    - image: luksa/kubia
      name: kubia
```

 **nodeSelector tells Kubernetes to deploy this pod only to nodes containing the `gpu=true` label.**

You've added a `nodeSelector` field under the `spec` section. When you create the pod, the scheduler will only choose among the nodes that contain the `gpu=true` label (which is only a single node in your case).

### 3.5.3 Scheduling to one specific node

Similarly, you could also schedule a pod to an exact node, because each node also has a unique label with the key `kubernetes.io/hostname` and value set to the actual hostname of the node. But setting the `nodeSelector` to a specific node by the hostname label may lead to the pod being unschedulable if the node is offline. You shouldn't think in terms of individual nodes. Always think about logical groups of nodes that satisfy certain criteria specified through label selectors.

This was a quick demonstration of how labels and label selectors work and how they can be used to influence the operation of Kubernetes. The importance and usefulness of label selectors will become even more evident when we talk about ReplicationControllers and Services in the next two chapters.

**NOTE** Additional ways of influencing which node a pod is scheduled to are covered in chapter 16.

## 3.6 Annotating pods

In addition to labels, pods and other objects can also contain *annotations*. Annotations are also key-value pairs, so in essence, they're similar to labels, but they aren't meant to hold identifying information. They can't be used to group objects the way labels can. While objects can be selected through label selectors, there's no such thing as an annotation selector.

On the other hand, annotations can hold much larger pieces of information and are primarily meant to be used by tools. Certain annotations are automatically added to objects by Kubernetes, but others are added by users manually.

Annotations are also commonly used when introducing new features to Kubernetes. Usually, alpha and beta versions of new features don't introduce any new fields to API objects. Annotations are used instead of fields, and then once the required API changes have become clear and been agreed upon by the Kubernetes developers, new fields are introduced and the related annotations deprecated.

A great use of annotations is adding descriptions for each pod or other API object, so that everyone using the cluster can quickly look up information about each individual object. For example, an annotation used to specify the name of the person who created the object can make collaboration between everyone working on the cluster much easier.

### 3.6.1 Looking up an object's annotations

Let's see an example of an annotation that Kubernetes added automatically to the pod you created in the previous chapter. To see the annotations, you'll need to

request the full YAML of the pod or use the `kubectl describe` command. You'll use the first option in the following listing.

#### **Listing 3.5 A pod's annotations**

```
$ kubectl get po kubia-zxzij -o yaml
apiVersion: v1
kind: pod
metadata:
  annotations:
    kubernetes.io/created-by: |
      {"kind":"SerializedReference", "apiVersion":"v1",
       "reference":{"kind":"ReplicationController", "namespace":"default", ...}
```

Without going into too many details, as you can see, the `kubernetes.io/created-by` annotation holds JSON data about the object that created the pod. That's not something you'd want to put into a label. Labels should be short, whereas annotations can contain relatively large blobs of data (up to 256 KB in total).

**NOTE** The `kubernetes.io/created-by` annotations was deprecated in version 1.8 and will be removed in 1.9, so you will no longer see it in the YAML.

### **3.6.2 Adding and modifying annotations**

Annotations can obviously be added to pods at creation time, the same way labels can. They can also be added to or modified on existing pods later. The simplest way to add an annotation to an existing object is through the `kubectl annotate` command.

You'll try adding an annotation to your `kubia-manual` pod now:

```
$ kubectl annotate pod kubia-manual mycompany.com/someannotation="foo bar"
pod "kubia-manual" annotated
```

You added the annotation `mycompany.com/someannotation` with the value `foo bar`. It's a good idea to use this format for annotation keys to prevent key collisions. When different tools or libraries add annotations to objects, they may accidentally override each other's annotations if they don't use unique prefixes like you did here.

You can use `kubectl describe` to see the annotation you added:

```
$ kubectl describe pod kubia-manual
...
Annotations:     mycompany.com/someannotation=foo bar
...
```

### **3.7 Using namespaces to group resources**

Let's turn back to labels for a moment. We've seen how they organize pods and other objects into groups. Because each object can have multiple labels, those groups of objects can overlap. Plus, when working with the cluster (through `kubectl` for example), if you don't explicitly specify a label selector, you'll always see all objects.

But what about times when you want to split objects into separate, non-overlapping groups? You may want to only operate inside one group at a time. For this and other reasons, Kubernetes also groups objects into namespaces. These aren't the Linux namespaces we talked about in chapter 2, which are used to isolate processes from each other. Kubernetes namespaces provide a scope for objects names. Instead of having all your resources in one single namespace, you can split them into multiple namespaces, which also allows you to use the same resource names multiple times (across different namespaces).

### 3.7.1 Understanding the need for namespaces

Using multiple namespaces allows you to split complex systems with numerous components into smaller distinct groups. They can also be used for separating resources in a multi-tenant environment, splitting up resources into production, development, and QA environments, or in any other way you may need. Resource names only need to be unique within a namespace. Two different namespaces can contain resources of the same name. But, while most types of resources are namespaced, a few aren't. One of them is the Node resource, which is global and not tied to a single namespace. You'll learn about other cluster-level resources in later chapters.

Let's see how to use namespaces now.

### 3.7.2 Discovering other namespaces and their pods

First, let's list all namespaces in your cluster:

```
$ kubectl get ns
NAME      LABELS      STATUS      AGE
default   <none>     Active      1h
kube-public   <none>     Active      1h
kube-system   <none>     Active      1h
```

Up to this point, you've operated only in the default namespace. When listing resources with the `kubectl get` command, you've never specified the namespace explicitly, so `kubectl` always defaulted to the default namespace, showing you only the objects in that namespace. But as you can see from the list, the `kube-public` and the `kube-system` namespaces also exist. Let's look at the pods that belong to the `kube-system` namespace, by telling `kubectl` to list pods in that namespace only:

```
$ kubectl get po --namespace kube-system
NAME                           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
fluentd-cloud-kubia-e8fe-node-txje   1/1    Running   0          1h
heapster-v11-fz1ge                  1/1    Running   0          1h
kube-dns-v9-p8a4t                   0/4    Pending   0          1h
kube-ui-v4-kdlai                   1/1    Running   0          1h
17-lb-controller-v0.5.2-bue96       2/2    Running   92         1h
```

**TIP** You can also use `-n` instead of `--namespace`.

You'll learn about these pods later in the book (don't worry if the pods shown here don't match the ones on your system exactly). It's clear from the name of the namespace that these are resources related to the Kubernetes system itself. By having them in this separate namespace, it keeps everything nicely organized. If they were all in the default namespace, mixed in with the resources you create yourself, you'd have a hard time seeing what belongs where, and you might inadvertently delete system resources.

Namespaces enable you to separate resources that don't belong together into non-overlapping groups. If several users or groups of users are using the same Kubernetes cluster, and they each manage their own distinct set of resources, they should each use their own namespace. This way, they don't need to take any special care not to inadvertently modify or delete the other users' resources and don't need to concern themselves with name conflicts, because namespaces provide a scope for resource names, as has already been mentioned.

Besides isolating resources, namespaces are also used for allowing only certain users access to particular resources and even for limiting the amount of computational resources available to individual users. You'll learn about this in chapters 12 through 14.

### 3.7.3 ***Creating a namespace***

A namespace is a Kubernetes resource like any other, so you can create it by posting a YAML file to the Kubernetes API server. Let's see how to do this now.

#### **CREATING A NAMESPACE FROM A YAML FILE**

First, create a custom-namespace.yaml file with the following listing's contents (you'll find the file in the book's code archive).

#### Listing 3.6 A YAML definition of a namespace: custom-namespace.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Namespace
metadata:
  name: custom-namespace
```

This says you're defining a namespace.

This is the name of the namespace.

Now, use kubectl to post the file to the Kubernetes API server:

```
$ kubectl create -f custom-namespace.yaml
namespace "custom-namespace" created
```

#### **CREATING A NAMESPACE WITH KUBECTL CREATE NAMESPACE**

Although writing a file like the previous one isn't a big deal, it's still a hassle. Luckily, you can also create namespaces with the dedicated kubectl create namespace command, which is quicker than writing a YAML file. By having you create a YAML manifest for the namespace, I wanted to reinforce the idea that everything in Kubernetes

has a corresponding API object that you can create, read, update, and delete by posting a YAML manifest to the API server.

You could have created the namespace like this:

```
$ kubectl create namespace custom-namespace
namespace "custom-namespace" created
```

**NOTE** Although most objects' names must conform to the naming conventions specified in RFC 1035 (Domain names), which means they may contain only letters, digits, dashes, and dots, namespaces (and a few others) aren't allowed to contain dots.

### 3.7.4 Managing objects in other namespaces

To create resources in the namespace you've created, either add a `namespace: custom-namespace` entry to the `metadata` section, or specify the namespace when creating the resource with the `kubectl create` command:

```
$ kubectl create -f kubia-manual.yaml -n custom-namespace
pod "kubia-manual" created
```

You now have two pods with the same name (`kubia-manual`). One is in the default namespace, and the other is in your `custom-namespace`.

When listing, describing, modifying, or deleting objects in other namespaces, you need to pass the `--namespace` (or `-n`) flag to `kubectl`. If you don't specify the namespace, `kubectl` performs the action in the default namespace configured in the current `kubectl` context. The current context's namespace and the current context itself can be changed through `kubectl config` commands. To learn more about managing `kubectl` contexts, refer to appendix A.

**TIP** To quickly switch to a different namespace, you can set up the following alias: `alias kcd='kubectl config set-context $(kubectl config current-context) --namespace'`. You can then switch between namespaces using `kcd some-namespace`.

### 3.7.5 Understanding the isolation provided by namespaces

To wrap up this section about namespaces, let me explain what namespaces don't provide—at least not out of the box. Although namespaces allow you to isolate objects into distinct groups, which allows you to operate only on those belonging to the specified namespace, they don't provide any kind of isolation of running objects.

For example, you may think that when different users deploy pods across different namespaces, those pods are isolated from each other and can't communicate, but that's not necessarily the case. Whether namespaces provide network isolation depends on which networking solution is deployed with Kubernetes. When the solution doesn't provide inter-namespace network isolation, if a pod in namespace `foo` knows the IP

address of a pod in namespace bar, there is nothing preventing it from sending traffic, such as HTTP requests, to the other pod.

## 3.8 **Stopping and removing pods**

You've created a number of pods, which should all still be running. You have four pods running in the default namespace and one pod in custom-namespace. You're going to stop all of them now, because you don't need them anymore.

### 3.8.1 **Deleting a pod by name**

First, delete the kubia-gpu pod by name:

```
$ kubectl delete po kubia-gpu
pod "kubia-gpu" deleted
```

By deleting a pod, you're instructing Kubernetes to terminate all the containers that are part of that pod. Kubernetes sends a SIGTERM signal to the process and waits a certain number of seconds (30 by default) for it to shut down gracefully. If it doesn't shut down in time, the process is then killed through SIGKILL. To make sure your processes are always shut down gracefully, they need to handle the SIGTERM signal properly.

**TIP** You can also delete more than one pod by specifying multiple, space-separated names (for example, `kubectl delete po pod1 pod2`).

### 3.8.2 **Deleting pods using label selectors**

Instead of specifying each pod to delete by name, you'll now use what you've learned about label selectors to stop both the kubia-manual and the kubia-manual-v2 pod. Both pods include the `creation_method=manual` label, so you can delete them by using a label selector:

```
$ kubectl delete po -l creation_method=manual
pod "kubia-manual" deleted
pod "kubia-manual-v2" deleted
```

In the earlier microservices example, where you had tens (or possibly hundreds) of pods, you could, for instance, delete all canary pods at once by specifying the `rel=canary` label selector (visualized in figure 3.10):

```
$ kubectl delete po -l rel=canary
```

### 3.8.3 **Deleting pods by deleting the whole namespace**

Okay, back to your real pods. What about the pod in the custom-namespace? You no longer need either the pods in that namespace, or the namespace itself. You can

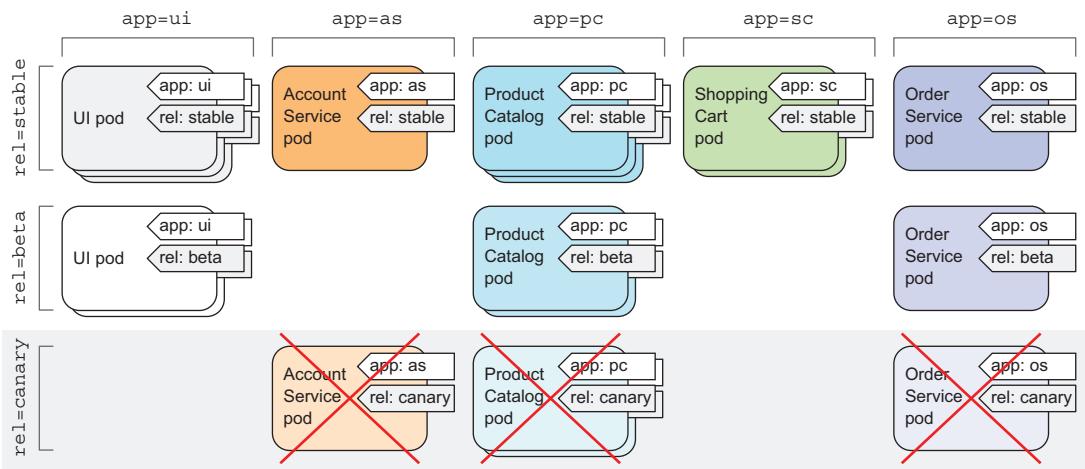


Figure 3.10 Selecting and deleting all canary pods through the rel=canary label selector

delete the whole namespace (the pods will be deleted along with the namespace automatically), using the following command:

```
$ kubectl delete ns custom-namespace
namespace "custom-namespace" deleted
```

### 3.8.4 Deleting all pods in a namespace, while keeping the namespace

You've now cleaned up almost everything. But what about the pod you created with the kubectl run command in chapter 2? That one is still running:

```
$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-zxzij   1/1     Running   0          1d
```

This time, instead of deleting the specific pod, tell Kubernetes to delete all pods in the current namespace by using the --all option:

```
$ kubectl delete po --all
pod "kubia-zxzij" deleted
```

Now, double check that no pods were left running:

```
$ kubectl get pods
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-09as0   1/1     Running   0          1d
kubia-zxzij   1/1     Terminating   0          1d
```

Wait, what?!? The `kubia-zxzij` pod is terminating, but a new pod called `kubia-09as0`, which wasn't there before, has appeared. No matter how many times you delete all pods, a new pod called `kubia-something` will emerge.

You may remember you created your first pod with the `kubectl run` command. In chapter 2, I mentioned that this doesn't create a pod directly, but instead creates a ReplicationController, which then creates the pod. As soon as you delete a pod created by the ReplicationController, it immediately creates a new one. To delete the pod, you also need to delete the ReplicationController.

### 3.8.5 ***Deleting (almost) all resources in a namespace***

You can delete the ReplicationController and the pods, as well as all the Services you've created, by deleting all resources in the current namespace with a single command:

```
$ kubectl delete all --all
pod "kubia-09as0" deleted
replicationcontroller "kubia" deleted
service "kubernetes" deleted
service "kubia-http" deleted
```

The first `all` in the command specifies that you're deleting resources of all types, and the `--all` option specifies that you're deleting all resource instances instead of specifying them by name (you already used this option when you ran the previous `delete` command).

**NOTE** Deleting everything with the `all` keyword doesn't delete absolutely everything. Certain resources (like Secrets, which we'll introduce in chapter 7) are preserved and need to be deleted explicitly.

As it deletes resources, `kubectl` will print the name of every resource it deletes. In the list, you should see the `kubia` ReplicationController and the `kubia-http` Service you created in chapter 2.

**NOTE** The `kubectl delete all --all` command also deletes the `kubernetes` Service, but it should be recreated automatically in a few moments.

## 3.9 ***Summary***

After reading this chapter, you should now have a decent knowledge of the central building block in Kubernetes. Every other concept you'll learn about in the next few chapters is directly related to pods.

In this chapter, you've learned

- How to decide whether certain containers should be grouped together in a pod or not.

- Pods can run multiple processes and are similar to physical hosts in the non-container world.
- YAML or JSON descriptors can be written and used to create pods and then examined to see the specification of a pod and its current state.
- Labels and label selectors should be used to organize pods and easily perform operations on multiple pods at once.
- You can use node labels and selectors to schedule pods only to nodes that have certain features.
- Annotations allow attaching larger blobs of data to pods either by people or tools and libraries.
- Namespaces can be used to allow different teams to use the same cluster as though they were using separate Kubernetes clusters.
- How to use the `kubectl explain` command to quickly look up the information on any Kubernetes resource.

In the next chapter, you'll learn about ReplicationControllers and other resources that manage pods.

# *Replication and other controllers: deploying managed pods*

## **This chapter covers**

- Keeping pods healthy
- Running multiple instances of the same pod
- Automatically rescheduling pods after a node fails
- Scaling pods horizontally
- Running system-level pods on each cluster node
- Running batch jobs
- Scheduling jobs to run periodically or once in the future

As you've learned so far, pods represent the basic deployable unit in Kubernetes. You know how to create, supervise, and manage them manually. But in real-world use cases, you want your deployments to stay up and running automatically and remain healthy without any manual intervention. To do this, you almost never create pods directly. Instead, you create other types of resources, such as ReplicationControllers or Deployments, which then create and manage the actual pods.

When you create unmanaged pods (such as the ones you created in the previous chapter), a cluster node is selected to run the pod and then its containers are run on that node. In this chapter, you'll learn that Kubernetes then monitors

those containers and automatically restarts them if they fail. But if the whole node fails, the pods on the node are lost and will not be replaced with new ones, unless those pods are managed by the previously mentioned ReplicationControllers or similar. In this chapter, you'll learn how Kubernetes checks if a container is still alive and restarts it if it isn't. You'll also learn how to run managed pods—both those that run indefinitely and those that perform a single task and then stop.

## 4.1 Keeping pods healthy

One of the main benefits of using Kubernetes is the ability to give it a list of containers and let it keep those containers running somewhere in the cluster. You do this by creating a Pod resource and letting Kubernetes pick a worker node for it and run the pod's containers on that node. But what if one of those containers dies? What if all containers of a pod die?

As soon as a pod is scheduled to a node, the Kubelet on that node will run its containers and, from then on, keep them running as long as the pod exists. If the container's main process crashes, the Kubelet will restart the container. If your application has a bug that causes it to crash every once in a while, Kubernetes will restart it automatically, so even without doing anything special in the app itself, running the app in Kubernetes automatically gives it the ability to heal itself.

But sometimes apps stop working without their process crashing. For example, a Java app with a memory leak will start throwing OutOfMemoryErrors, but the JVM process will keep running. It would be great to have a way for an app to signal to Kubernetes that it's no longer functioning properly and have Kubernetes restart it.

We've said that a container that crashes is restarted automatically, so maybe you're thinking you could catch these types of errors in the app and exit the process when they occur. You can certainly do that, but it still doesn't solve all your problems.

For example, what about those situations when your app stops responding because it falls into an infinite loop or a deadlock? To make sure applications are restarted in such cases, you must check an application's health from the outside and not depend on the app doing it internally.

### 4.1.1 Introducing liveness probes

Kubernetes can check if a container is still alive through *liveness probes*. You can specify a liveness probe for each container in the pod's specification. Kubernetes will periodically execute the probe and restart the container if the probe fails.

**NOTE** Kubernetes also supports *readiness probes*, which we'll learn about in the next chapter. Be sure not to confuse the two. They're used for two different things.

Kubernetes can probe a container using one of the three mechanisms:

- An *HTTP GET* probe performs an HTTP GET request on the container's IP address, a port and path you specify. If the probe receives a response, and the

response code doesn't represent an error (in other words, if the HTTP response code is 2xx or 3xx), the probe is considered successful. If the server returns an error response code or if it doesn't respond at all, the probe is considered a failure and the container will be restarted as a result.

- A *TCP Socket* probe tries to open a TCP connection to the specified port of the container. If the connection is established successfully, the probe is successful. Otherwise, the container is restarted.
- An *Exec* probe executes an arbitrary command inside the container and checks the command's exit status code. If the status code is 0, the probe is successful. All other codes are considered failures.

#### 4.1.2 Creating an HTTP-based liveness probe

Let's see how to add a liveness probe to your Node.js app. Because it's a web app, it makes sense to add a liveness probe that will check whether its web server is serving requests. But because this particular Node.js app is too simple to ever fail, you'll need to make the app fail artificially.

To properly demo liveness probes, you'll modify the app slightly and make it return a 500 Internal Server Error HTTP status code for each request after the fifth one—your app will handle the first five client requests properly and then return an error on every subsequent request. Thanks to the liveness probe, it should be restarted when that happens, allowing it to properly handle client requests again.

You can find the code of the new app in the book's code archive (in the folder Chapter04/kubia-unhealthy). I've pushed the container image to Docker Hub, so you don't need to build it yourself.

You'll create a new pod that includes an HTTP GET liveness probe. The following listing shows the YAML for the pod.

**Listing 4.1 Adding a liveness probe to a pod: kubia-liveness-probe.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: pod
metadata:
  name: kubia-liveness
spec:
  containers:
    - image: luksa/kubia-unhealthy
      name: kubia
      livenessProbe:
        httpGet:
          path: /
          port: 8080
  This is the image
  containing the
  (somewhat)
  broken app.
  The network port
  the probe should
  connect to
  A liveness probe that will
  perform an HTTP GET
  The path to
  request in the
  HTTP request
```

The pod descriptor defines an `httpGet` liveness probe, which tells Kubernetes to periodically perform HTTP GET requests on path / on port 8080 to determine if the container is still healthy. These requests start as soon as the container is run.

After five such requests (or actual client requests), your app starts returning HTTP status code 500, which Kubernetes will treat as a probe failure, and will thus restart the container.

#### 4.1.3 Seeing a liveness probe in action

To see what the liveness probe does, try creating the pod now. After about a minute and a half, the container will be restarted. You can see that by running `kubectl get`:

```
$ kubectl get po kubia-liveness
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-liveness 1/1     Running   1          2m
```

The `RESTARTS` column shows that the pod's container has been restarted once (if you wait another minute and a half, it gets restarted again, and then the cycle continues indefinitely).

#### Obtaining the application log of a crashed container

In the previous chapter, you learned how to print the application's log with `kubectl logs`. If your container is restarted, the `kubectl logs` command will show the log of the current container.

When you want to figure out why the previous container terminated, you'll want to see those logs instead of the current container's logs. This can be done by using the `--previous` option:

```
$ kubectl logs mypod --previous
```

You can see why the container had to be restarted by looking at what `kubectl describe` prints out, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 4.2 A pod's description after its container is restarted

```
$ kubectl describe po kubia-liveness
Name:           kubia-liveness
...
Containers:
  kubia:
    Container ID:      docker://480986f8
    Image:            luksa/kubia-unhealthy
    Image ID:         docker://sha256:2b208508
    Port:
    State:            Running
    Started:          Sun, 14 May 2017 11:41:40 +0200
```

The container is currently running.

```
Last State:           Terminated
Reason:              Error
Exit Code:            137
Started:             Mon, 01 Jan 0001 00:00:00 +0000
Finished:            Sun, 14 May 2017 11:41:38 +0200
Ready:               True
Restart Count:       1
Liveness:            http-get http://:8080/ delay=0s timeout=1s
                     period=10s #success=1 #failure=3
...
Events:
... Killing container with id docker://95246981:pod "kubia-liveness ...
      container "kubia" is unhealthy, it will be killed and re-created.
```

The previous container terminated with an error and exited with code 137.

The container has been restarted once.

You can see that the container is currently running, but it previously terminated because of an error. The exit code was 137, which has a special meaning—it denotes that the process was terminated by an external signal. The number 137 is a sum of two numbers: 128+x, where x is the signal number sent to the process that caused it to terminate. In the example, x equals 9, which is the number of the SIGKILL signal, meaning the process was killed forcibly.

The events listed at the bottom show why the container was killed—Kubernetes detected the container was unhealthy, so it killed and re-created it.

**NOTE** When a container is killed, a completely new container is created—it's not the same container being restarted again.

#### 4.1.4 Configuring additional properties of the liveness probe

You may have noticed that `kubectl describe` also displays additional information about the liveness probe:

```
Liveness: http-get http://:8080/ delay=0s timeout=1s period=10s #success=1
          ↗ #failure=3
```

Beside the liveness probe options you specified explicitly, you can also see additional properties, such as `delay`, `timeout`, `period`, and so on. The `delay=0s` part shows that the probing begins immediately after the container is started. The `timeout` is set to only 1 second, so the container must return a response in 1 second or the probe is counted as failed. The container is probed every 10 seconds (`period=10s`) and the container is restarted after the probe fails three consecutive times (`#failure=3`).

These additional parameters can be customized when defining the probe. For example, to set the initial delay, add the `initialDelaySeconds` property to the liveness probe as shown in the following listing.

##### **Listing 4.3 A liveness probe with an initial delay: kubia-liveness-probe-initial-delay.yaml**

```
livenessProbe:
  httpGet:
    path: /
```

```
port: 8080  
initialDelaySeconds: 15
```



Kubernetes will wait 15 seconds before executing the first probe.

If you don't set the initial delay, the prober will start probing the container as soon as it starts, which usually leads to the probe failing, because the app isn't ready to start receiving requests. If the number of failures exceeds the failure threshold, the container is restarted before it's even able to start responding to requests properly.

**TIP** Always remember to set an initial delay to account for your app's startup time.

I've seen this on many occasions and users were confused why their container was being restarted. But if they'd used `kubectl describe`, they'd have seen that the container terminated with exit code 137 or 143, telling them that the pod was terminated externally. Additionally, the listing of the pod's events would show that the container was killed because of a failed liveness probe. If you see this happening at pod startup, it's because you failed to set `initialDelaySeconds` appropriately.

**NOTE** Exit code 137 signals that the process was killed by an external signal (exit code is 128 + 9 (SIGKILL)). Likewise, exit code 143 corresponds to 128 + 15 (SIGTERM).

#### 4.1.5 Creating effective liveness probes

For pods running in production, you should always define a liveness probe. Without one, Kubernetes has no way of knowing whether your app is still alive or not. As long as the process is still running, Kubernetes will consider the container to be healthy.

##### WHAT A LIVENESS PROBE SHOULD CHECK

Your simplistic liveness probe simply checks if the server is responding. While this may seem overly simple, even a liveness probe like this does wonders, because it causes the container to be restarted if the web server running within the container stops responding to HTTP requests. Compared to having no liveness probe, this is a major improvement, and may be sufficient in most cases.

But for a better liveness check, you'd configure the probe to perform requests on a specific URL path (`/health`, for example) and have the app perform an internal status check of all the vital components running inside the app to ensure none of them has died or is unresponsive.

**TIP** Make sure the `/health` HTTP endpoint doesn't require authentication; otherwise the probe will always fail, causing your container to be restarted indefinitely.

Be sure to check only the internals of the app and nothing influenced by an external factor. For example, a frontend web server's liveness probe shouldn't return a failure when the server can't connect to the backend database. If the underlying cause is in the database itself, restarting the web server container will not fix the problem.

Because the liveness probe will fail again, you'll end up with the container restarting repeatedly until the database becomes accessible again.

#### KEEPING PROBES LIGHT

Liveness probes shouldn't use too many computational resources and shouldn't take too long to complete. By default, the probes are executed relatively often and are only allowed one second to complete. Having a probe that does heavy lifting can slow down your container considerably. Later in the book, you'll also learn about how to limit CPU time available to a container. The probe's CPU time is counted in the container's CPU time quota, so having a heavyweight liveness probe will reduce the CPU time available to the main application processes.

**TIP** If you're running a Java app in your container, be sure to use an HTTP GET liveness probe instead of an Exec probe, where you spin up a whole new JVM to get the liveness information. The same goes for any JVM-based or similar applications, whose start-up procedure requires considerable computational resources.

#### DON'T BOTHER IMPLEMENTING RETRY LOOPS IN YOUR PROBES

You've already seen that the failure threshold for the probe is configurable and usually the probe must fail multiple times before the container is killed. But even if you set the failure threshold to 1, Kubernetes will retry the probe several times before considering it a single failed attempt. Therefore, implementing your own retry loop into the probe is wasted effort.

#### LIVENESS PROBE WRAP-UP

You now understand that Kubernetes keeps your containers running by restarting them if they crash or if their liveness probes fail. This job is performed by the Kubelet on the node hosting the pod—the Kubernetes Control Plane components running on the master(s) have no part in this process.

But if the node itself crashes, it's the Control Plane that must create replacements for all the pods that went down with the node. It doesn't do that for pods that you create directly. Those pods aren't managed by anything except by the Kubelet, but because the Kubelet runs on the node itself, it can't do anything if the node fails.

To make sure your app is restarted on another node, you need to have the pod managed by a ReplicationController or similar mechanism, which we'll discuss in the rest of this chapter.

## 4.2 *Introducing ReplicationControllers*

A ReplicationController is a Kubernetes resource that ensures its pods are always kept running. If the pod disappears for any reason, such as in the event of a node disappearing from the cluster or because the pod was evicted from the node, the ReplicationController notices the missing pod and creates a replacement pod.

Figure 4.1 shows what happens when a node goes down and takes two pods with it. Pod A was created directly and is therefore an unmanaged pod, while pod B is managed

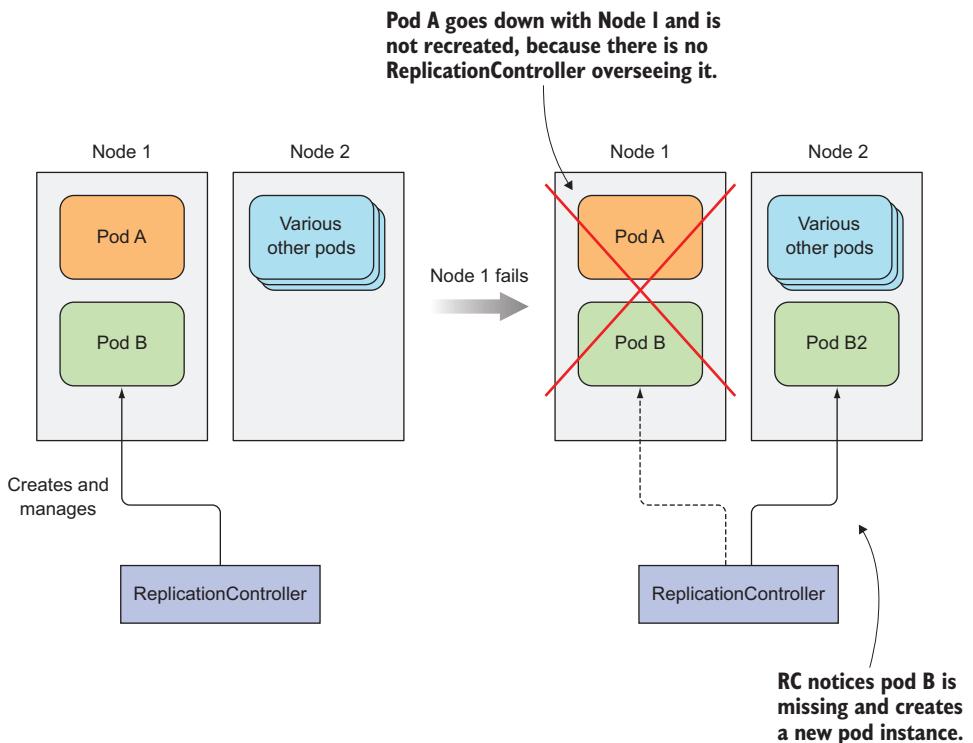


Figure 4.1 When a node fails, only pods backed by a ReplicationController are recreated.

by a ReplicationController. After the node fails, the ReplicationController creates a new pod (pod B2) to replace the missing pod B, whereas pod A is lost completely—nothing will ever recreate it.

The ReplicationController in the figure manages only a single pod, but ReplicationControllers, in general, are meant to create and manage multiple copies (replicas) of a pod. That's where ReplicationControllers got their name from.

#### 4.2.1 The operation of a ReplicationController

A ReplicationController constantly monitors the list of running pods and makes sure the actual number of pods of a “type” always matches the desired number. If too few such pods are running, it creates new replicas from a pod template. If too many such pods are running, it removes the excess replicas.

You might be wondering how there can be more than the desired number of replicas. This can happen for a few reasons:

- Someone creates a pod of the same type manually.
- Someone changes an existing pod’s “type.”
- Someone decreases the desired number of pods, and so on.

I've used the term pod "type" a few times. But no such thing exists. ReplicationControllers don't operate on pod types, but on sets of pods that match a certain label selector (you learned about them in the previous chapter).

### INTRODUCING THE CONTROLLER'S RECONCILIATION LOOP

A ReplicationController's job is to make sure that an exact number of pods always matches its label selector. If it doesn't, the ReplicationController takes the appropriate action to reconcile the actual with the desired number. The operation of a ReplicationController is shown in figure 4.2.

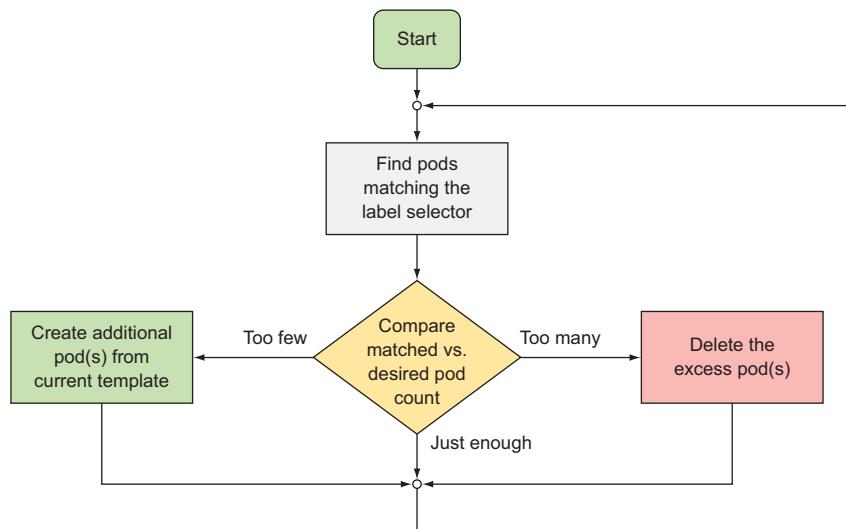


Figure 4.2 A ReplicationController's reconciliation loop

### UNDERSTANDING THE THREE PARTS OF A REPLICATIONCONTROLLER

A ReplicationController has three essential parts (also shown in figure 4.3):

- A *label selector*, which determines what pods are in the ReplicationController's scope
- A *replica count*, which specifies the desired number of pods that should be running
- A *pod template*, which is used when creating new pod replicas

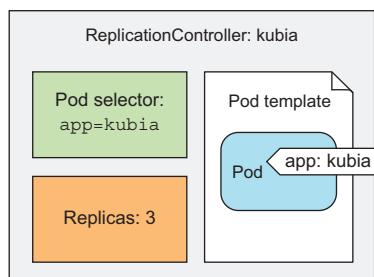


Figure 4.3 The three key parts of a ReplicationController (pod selector, replica count, and pod template)

A ReplicationController’s replica count, the label selector, and even the pod template can all be modified at any time, but only changes to the replica count affect existing pods.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE EFFECT OF CHANGING THE CONTROLLER’S LABEL SELECTOR OR POD TEMPLATE**

Changes to the label selector and the pod template have no effect on existing pods. Changing the label selector makes the existing pods fall out of the scope of the ReplicationController, so the controller stops caring about them. ReplicationControllers also don’t care about the actual “contents” of its pods (the container images, environment variables, and other things) after they create the pod. The template therefore only affects new pods created by this ReplicationController. You can think of it as a cookie cutter for cutting out new pods.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE BENEFITS OF USING A REPLICATIONCONTROLLER**

Like many things in Kubernetes, a ReplicationController, although an incredibly simple concept, provides or enables the following powerful features:

- It makes sure a pod (or multiple pod replicas) is always running by starting a new pod when an existing one goes missing.
- When a cluster node fails, it creates replacement replicas for all the pods that were running on the failed node (those that were under the ReplicationController’s control).
- It enables easy horizontal scaling of pods—both manual and automatic (see horizontal pod auto-scaling in chapter 15).

**NOTE** A pod instance is never relocated to another node. Instead, the ReplicationController creates a completely new pod instance that has no relation to the instance it’s replacing.

#### **4.2.2 Creating a ReplicationController**

Let’s look at how to create a ReplicationController and then see how it keeps your pods running. Like pods and other Kubernetes resources, you create a ReplicationController by posting a JSON or YAML descriptor to the Kubernetes API server.

You’re going to create a YAML file called `kubia-rc.yaml` for your ReplicationController, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 4.4 A YAML definition of a ReplicationController: `kubia-rc.yaml`**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  replicas: 3
  selector:
    app: kubia
```

This manifest defines a ReplicationController (RC)

The name of this ReplicationController

The desired number of pod instances

The pod selector determining what pods the RC is operating on

```

template:
  metadata:
    labels:
      app: kubia
  spec:
    containers:
      - name: kubia
        image: luksa/kubia
        ports:
          - containerPort: 8080

```

The pod template  
for creating new  
pods

When you post the file to the API server, Kubernetes creates a new ReplicationController named `kubia`, which makes sure three pod instances always match the label selector `app=kubia`. When there aren't enough pods, new pods will be created from the provided pod template. The contents of the template are almost identical to the pod definition you created in the previous chapter.

The pod labels in the template must obviously match the label selector of the ReplicationController; otherwise the controller would create new pods indefinitely, because spinning up a new pod wouldn't bring the actual replica count any closer to the desired number of replicas. To prevent such scenarios, the API server verifies the ReplicationController definition and will not accept it if it's misconfigured.

Not specifying the selector at all is also an option. In that case, it will be configured automatically from the labels in the pod template.

**TIP** Don't specify a pod selector when defining a ReplicationController. Let Kubernetes extract it from the pod template. This will keep your YAML shorter and simpler.

To create the ReplicationController, use the `kubectl create` command, which you already know:

```
$ kubectl create -f kubia-rc.yaml
replicationcontroller "kubia" created
```

As soon as the ReplicationController is created, it goes to work. Let's see what it does.

### 4.2.3 Seeing the ReplicationController in action

Because no pods exist with the `app=kubia` label, the ReplicationController should spin up three new pods from the pod template. List the pods to see if the ReplicationController has done what it's supposed to:

```
$ kubectl get pods
NAME      READY     STATUS            RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-53thy  0/1     ContainerCreating  0          2s
kubia-k0xz6  0/1     ContainerCreating  0          2s
kubia-q3vkg  0/1     ContainerCreating  0          2s
```

Indeed, it has! You wanted three pods, and it created three pods. It's now managing those three pods. Next you'll mess with them a little to see how the ReplicationController responds.

### SEEING THE REPLICATIONCONTROLLER RESPOND TO A DELETED POD

First, you'll delete one of the pods manually to see how the ReplicationController spins up a new one immediately, bringing the number of matching pods back to three:

```
$ kubectl delete pod kubia-53thy
pod "kubia-53thy" deleted
```

Listing the pods again shows four of them, because the one you deleted is terminating, and a new pod has already been created:

```
$ kubectl get pods
NAME      READY     STATUS        RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-53thy  1/1     Terminating   0          3m
kubia-oini2  0/1     ContainerCreating   0          2s
kubia-k0xz6  1/1     Running       0          3m
kubia-q3vkg  1/1     Running       0          3m
```

The ReplicationController has done its job again. It's a nice little helper, isn't it?

### GETTING INFORMATION ABOUT A REPLICATIONCONTROLLER

Now, let's see what information the `kubectl get` command shows for ReplicationControllers:

```
$ kubectl get rc
NAME    DESIRED   CURRENT   READY   AGE
kubia   3         3         2       3m
```

**NOTE** We're using `rc` as a shorthand for `replicationcontroller`.

You see three columns showing the desired number of pods, the actual number of pods, and how many of them are ready (you'll learn what that means in the next chapter, when we talk about readiness probes).

You can see additional information about your ReplicationController with the `kubectl describe` command, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 4.5 Displaying details of a ReplicationController with `kubectl describe`

```
$ kubectl describe rc kubia
Name:           kubia
Namespace:      default
Selector:       app=kubia
Labels:         app=kubia
Annotations:    <none>
Replicas:       3 current / 3 desired
Pods Status:   4 Running / 0 Waiting / 0 Succeeded / 0 Failed
Pod Template:
  Labels:       app=kubia
  Containers:  ...
```

The actual vs. the desired number of pod instances

Number of pod instances per pod status

| Volumes: <none>        |        |                  |                          |  |
|------------------------|--------|------------------|--------------------------|--|
| From                   | Type   | Reason           | Message                  | The events related to this ReplicationController |
| replication-controller | Normal | SuccessfulCreate | Created pod: kubia-53thy |  |
| replication-controller | Normal | SuccessfulCreate | Created pod: kubia-k0xz6 |  |
| replication-controller | Normal | SuccessfulCreate | Created pod: kubia-q3vkg |  |
| replication-controller | Normal | SuccessfulCreate | Created pod: kubia-oini2 |  |

The current number of replicas matches the desired number, because the controller has already created a new pod. It shows four running pods because a pod that's terminating is still considered running, although it isn't counted in the current replica count.

The list of events at the bottom shows the actions taken by the ReplicationController—it has created four pods so far.

#### UNDERSTANDING EXACTLY WHAT CAUSED THE CONTROLLER TO CREATE A NEW POD

The controller is responding to the deletion of a pod by creating a new replacement pod (see figure 4.4). Well, technically, it isn't responding to the deletion itself, but the resulting state—the inadequate number of pods.

While a ReplicationController is immediately notified about a pod being deleted (the API server allows clients to watch for changes to resources and resource lists), that's not what causes it to create a replacement pod. The notification triggers the controller to check the actual number of pods and take appropriate action.

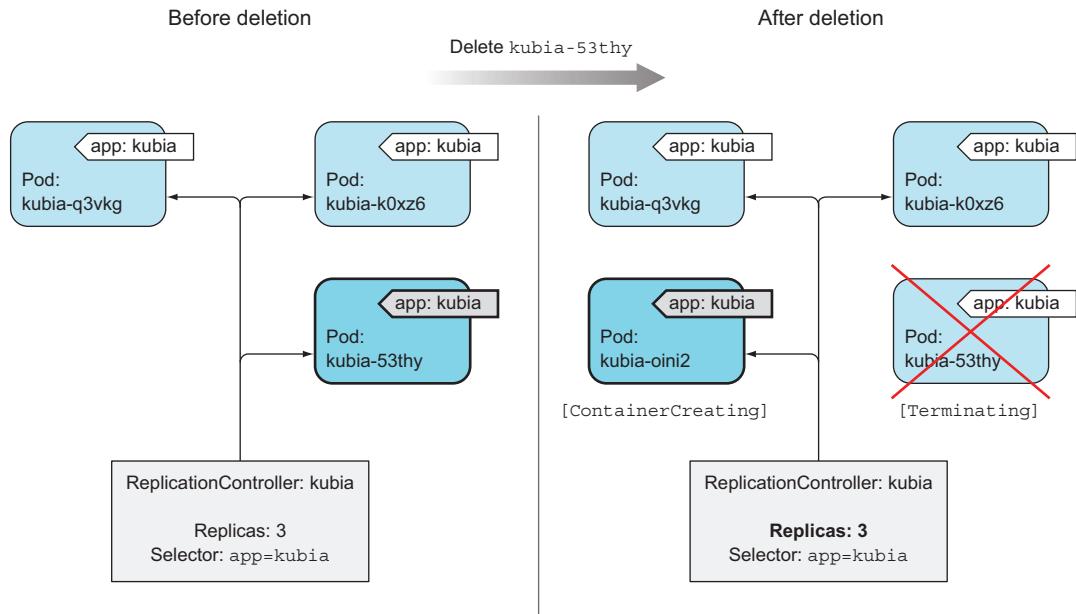


Figure 4.4 If a pod disappears, the ReplicationController sees too few pods and creates a new replacement pod.

## RESPONDING TO A NODE FAILURE

Seeing the ReplicationController respond to the manual deletion of a pod isn't too interesting, so let's look at a better example. If you're using Google Kubernetes Engine to run these examples, you have a three-node Kubernetes cluster. You're going to disconnect one of the nodes from the network to simulate a node failure.

**NOTE** If you're using Minikube, you can't do this exercise, because you only have one node that acts both as a master and a worker node.

If a node fails in the non-Kubernetes world, the ops team would need to migrate the applications running on that node to other machines manually. Kubernetes, on the other hand, does that automatically. Soon after the ReplicationController detects that its pods are down, it will spin up new pods to replace them.

Let's see this in action. You need to ssh into one of the nodes with the gcloud compute ssh command and then shut down its network interface with sudo ifconfig eth0 down, as shown in the following listing.

**NOTE** Choose a node that runs at least one of your pods by listing pods with the -o wide option.

### Listing 4.6 Simulating a node failure by shutting down its network interface

```
$ gcloud compute ssh gke-kubia-default-pool-b46381f1-zwko
Enter passphrase for key '/home/luksa/.ssh/google_compute_engine':
Welcome to Kubernetes v1.6.4!
...
luksa@gke-kubia-default-pool-b46381f1-zwko ~ $ sudo ifconfig eth0 down
```

When you shut down the network interface, the ssh session will stop responding, so you need to open up another terminal or hard-exit from the ssh session. In the new terminal you can list the nodes to see if Kubernetes has detected that the node is down. This takes a minute or so. Then, the node's status is shown as NotReady:

| NAME                                 | STATUS   | AGE |
|--------------------------------------|----------|-----|
| gke-kubia-default-pool-b46381f1-opc5 | Ready    | 5h  |
| gke-kubia-default-pool-b46381f1-s8gj | Ready    | 5h  |
| gke-kubia-default-pool-b46381f1-zwko | NotReady | 5h  |

Node isn't ready, because it's disconnected from the network

If you list the pods now, you'll still see the same three pods as before, because Kubernetes waits a while before rescheduling pods (in case the node is unreachable because of a temporary network glitch or because the Kubelet is restarting). If the node stays unreachable for several minutes, the status of the pods that were scheduled to that node changes to Unknown. At that point, the ReplicationController will immediately spin up a new pod. You can see this by listing the pods again:

| \$ kubectl get pods |       |         |          |     |  |
|---------------------|-------|---------|----------|-----|--|
| NAME                | READY | STATUS  | RESTARTS | AGE |  |
| kubia-oini2         | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 10m |  |
| kubia-k0xz6         | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 10m |  |
| kubia-q3vkg         | 1/1   | Unknown | 0        | 10m |  |
| kubia-dmdck         | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 5s  |  |

Looking at the age of the pods, you see that the kubia-dmdck pod is new. You again have three pod instances running, which means the ReplicationController has again done its job of bringing the actual state of the system to the desired state.

The same thing happens if a node fails (either breaks down or becomes unreachable). No immediate human intervention is necessary. The system heals itself automatically.

To bring the node back, you need to reset it with the following command:

```
$ gcloud compute instances reset gke-kubia-default-pool-b46381f1-zwko
```

When the node boots up again, its status should return to Ready, and the pod whose status was Unknown will be deleted.

#### 4.2.4 *Moving pods in and out of the scope of a ReplicationController*

Pods created by a ReplicationController aren't tied to the ReplicationController in any way. At any moment, a ReplicationController manages pods that match its label selector. By changing a pod's labels, it can be removed from or added to the scope of a ReplicationController. It can even be moved from one ReplicationController to another.

**TIP** Although a pod isn't tied to a ReplicationController, the pod does reference it in the `metadata.ownerReferences` field, which you can use to easily find which ReplicationController a pod belongs to.

If you change a pod's labels so they no longer match a ReplicationController's label selector, the pod becomes like any other manually created pod. It's no longer managed by anything. If the node running the pod fails, the pod is obviously not rescheduled. But keep in mind that when you changed the pod's labels, the replication controller noticed one pod was missing and spun up a new pod to replace it.

Let's try this with your pods. Because your ReplicationController manages pods that have the `app=kubia` label, you need to either remove this label or change its value to move the pod out of the ReplicationController's scope. Adding another label will have no effect, because the ReplicationController doesn't care if the pod has any additional labels. It only cares whether the pod has all the labels referenced in the label selector.

## ADDING LABELS TO PODS MANAGED BY A REPLICATIONCONTROLLER

Let's confirm that a ReplicationController doesn't care if you add additional labels to its managed pods:

```
$ kubectl label pod kubia-dmdck type=special
pod "kubia-dmdck" labeled

$ kubectl get pods --show-labels
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   LABELS
kubia-oini2 1/1     Running   0          11m   app=kubia
kubia-k0xz6 1/1     Running   0          11m   app=kubia
kubia-dmdck 1/1     Running   0          1m    app=kubia,type=special
```

You've added the `type=special` label to one of the pods. Listing all pods again shows the same three pods as before, because no change occurred as far as the ReplicationController is concerned.

## CHANGING THE LABELS OF A MANAGED POD

Now, you'll change the `app=kubia` label to something else. This will make the pod no longer match the ReplicationController's label selector, leaving it to only match two pods. The ReplicationController should therefore start a new pod to bring the number back to three:

```
$ kubectl label pod kubia-dmdck app=foo --overwrite
pod "kubia-dmdck" labeled
```

The `--overwrite` argument is necessary; otherwise `kubectl` will only print out a warning and won't change the label, to prevent you from inadvertently changing an existing label's value when your intent is to add a new one.

Listing all the pods again should now show four pods:

```
$ kubectl get pods -L app
NAME      READY   STATUS            RESTARTS   AGE   APP
kubia-2qneh 0/1    ContainerCreating 0          2s    kubia
kubia-oini2  1/1    Running           0          20m   kubia
kubia-k0xz6  1/1    Running           0          20m   kubia
kubia-dmdck  1/1    Running           0          10m   foo
```

**NOTE** You're using the `-L app` option to display the `app` label in a column.

There, you now have four pods altogether: one that isn't managed by your ReplicationController and three that are. Among them is the newly created pod.

Figure 4.5 illustrates what happened when you changed the pod's labels so they no longer matched the ReplicationController's pod selector. You can see your three pods and your ReplicationController. After you change the pod's label from `app=kubia` to `app=foo`, the ReplicationController no longer cares about the pod. Because the controller's replica count is set to 3 and only two pods match the label selector, the

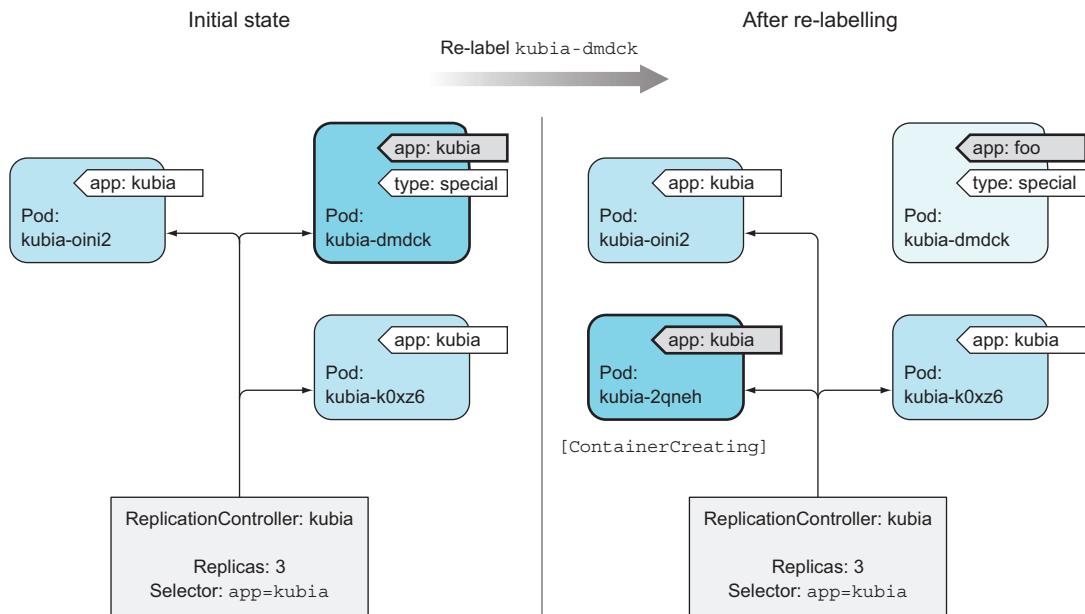


Figure 4.5 Removing a pod from the scope of a ReplicationController by changing its labels

ReplicationController spins up pod kubia-2qneh to bring the number back up to three. Pod kubia-dmdck is now completely independent and will keep running until you delete it manually (you can do that now, because you don't need it anymore).

#### REMOVING PODS FROM CONTROLLERS IN PRACTICE

Removing a pod from the scope of the ReplicationController comes in handy when you want to perform actions on a specific pod. For example, you might have a bug that causes your pod to start behaving badly after a specific amount of time or a specific event. If you know a pod is malfunctioning, you can take it out of the ReplicationController's scope, let the controller replace it with a new one, and then debug or play with the pod in any way you want. Once you're done, you delete the pod.

#### CHANGING THE REPLICATIONCONTROLLER'S LABEL SELECTOR

As an exercise to see if you fully understand ReplicationControllers, what do you think would happen if instead of changing the labels of a pod, you modified the ReplicationController's label selector?

If your answer is that it would make all the pods fall out of the scope of the ReplicationController, which would result in it creating three new pods, you're absolutely right. And it shows that you understand how ReplicationControllers work.

Kubernetes does allow you to change a ReplicationController's label selector, but that's not the case for the other resources that are covered in the second half of this

chapter and which are also used for managing pods. You'll never change a controller's label selector, but you'll regularly change its pod template. Let's take a look at that.

#### 4.2.5 **Changing the pod template**

A ReplicationController's pod template can be modified at any time. Changing the pod template is like replacing a cookie cutter with another one. It will only affect the cookies you cut out afterward and will have no effect on the ones you've already cut (see figure 4.6). To modify the old pods, you'd need to delete them and let the ReplicationController replace them with new ones based on the new template.

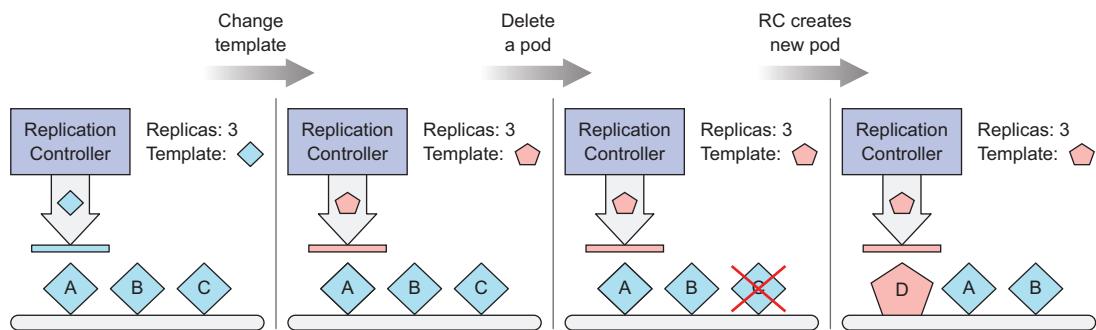


Figure 4.6 Changing a ReplicationController's pod template only affects pods created afterward and has no effect on existing pods.

As an exercise, you can try editing the ReplicationController and adding a label to the pod template. You can edit the ReplicationController with the following command:

```
$ kubectl edit rc kubia
```

This will open the ReplicationController's YAML definition in your default text editor. Find the pod template section and add an additional label to the metadata. After you save your changes and exit the editor, `kubectl` will update the ReplicationController and print the following message:

```
replicationcontroller "kubia" edited
```

You can now list pods and their labels again and confirm that they haven't changed. But if you delete the pods and wait for their replacements to be created, you'll see the new label.

Editing a ReplicationController like this to change the container image in the pod template, deleting the existing pods, and letting them be replaced with new ones from the new template could be used for upgrading pods, but you'll learn a better way of doing that in chapter 9.

### Configuring kubectl edit to use a different text editor

You can tell `kubectl` to use a text editor of your choice by setting the `KUBE_EDITOR` environment variable. For example, if you'd like to use `nano` for editing Kubernetes resources, execute the following command (or put it into your `~/.bashrc` or an equivalent file):

```
export KUBE_EDITOR="/usr/bin/nano"
```

If the `KUBE_EDITOR` environment variable isn't set, `kubectl edit` falls back to using the default editor, usually configured through the `EDITOR` environment variable.

## 4.2.6 Horizontally scaling pods

You've seen how ReplicationControllers make sure a specific number of pod instances is always running. Because it's incredibly simple to change the desired number of replicas, this also means scaling pods horizontally is trivial.

Scaling the number of pods up or down is as easy as changing the value of the `replicas` field in the `ReplicationController` resource. After the change, the `ReplicationController` will either see too many pods exist (when scaling down) and delete part of them, or see too few of them (when scaling up) and create additional pods.

#### SCALING UP A REPLICATIONCONTROLLER

Your `ReplicationController` has been keeping three instances of your pod running. You're going to scale that number up to 10 now. As you may remember, you've already scaled a `ReplicationController` in chapter 2. You could use the same command as before:

```
$ kubectl scale rc kubia --replicas=10
```

But you'll do it differently this time.

#### SCALING A REPLICATIONCONTROLLER BY EDITING ITS DEFINITION

Instead of using the `kubectl scale` command, you're going to scale it in a declarative way by editing the `ReplicationController`'s definition:

```
$ kubectl edit rc kubia
```

When the text editor opens, find the `spec.replicas` field and change its value to 10, as shown in the following listing.

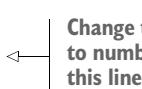
#### Listing 4.7 Editing the RC in a text editor by running `kubectl edit`

```
# Please edit the object below. Lines beginning with a '#' will be ignored,
# and an empty file will abort the edit. If an error occurs while saving
# this file will be reopened with the relevant failures.
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
```

```

metadata:
...
spec:
  replicas: 3
  selector:
    app: kubia
...

```


**Change the number 3  
to number 10 in  
this line.**

When you save the file and close the editor, the ReplicationController is updated and it immediately scales the number of pods to 10:

```
$ kubectl get rc
NAME      DESIRED   CURRENT   READY     AGE
kubia     10        10        4         21m
```

There you go. If the `kubectl scale` command makes it look as though you’re telling Kubernetes exactly what to do, it’s now much clearer that you’re making a declarative change to the desired state of the ReplicationController and not telling Kubernetes to do something.

#### **SCALING DOWN WITH THE KUBECTL SCALE COMMAND**

Now scale back down to 3. You can use the `kubectl scale` command:

```
$ kubectl scale rc kubia --replicas=3
```

All this command does is modify the `spec.replicas` field of the ReplicationController’s definition—like when you changed it through `kubectl edit`.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE DECLARATIVE APPROACH TO SCALING**

Horizontally scaling pods in Kubernetes is a matter of stating your desire: “I want to have  $x$  number of instances running.” You’re not telling Kubernetes what or how to do it. You’re just specifying the desired state.

This declarative approach makes interacting with a Kubernetes cluster easy. Imagine if you had to manually determine the current number of running instances and then explicitly tell Kubernetes how many additional instances to run. That’s more work and is much more error-prone. Changing a simple number is much easier, and in chapter 15, you’ll learn that even that can be done by Kubernetes itself if you enable horizontal pod auto-scaling.

#### **4.2.7 Deleting a ReplicationController**

When you delete a ReplicationController through `kubectl delete`, the pods are also deleted. But because pods created by a ReplicationController aren’t an integral part of the ReplicationController, and are only managed by it, you can delete only the ReplicationController and leave the pods running, as shown in figure 4.7.

This may be useful when you initially have a set of pods managed by a ReplicationController, and then decide to replace the ReplicationController with a ReplicaSet, for example (you’ll learn about them next.). You can do this without affecting the

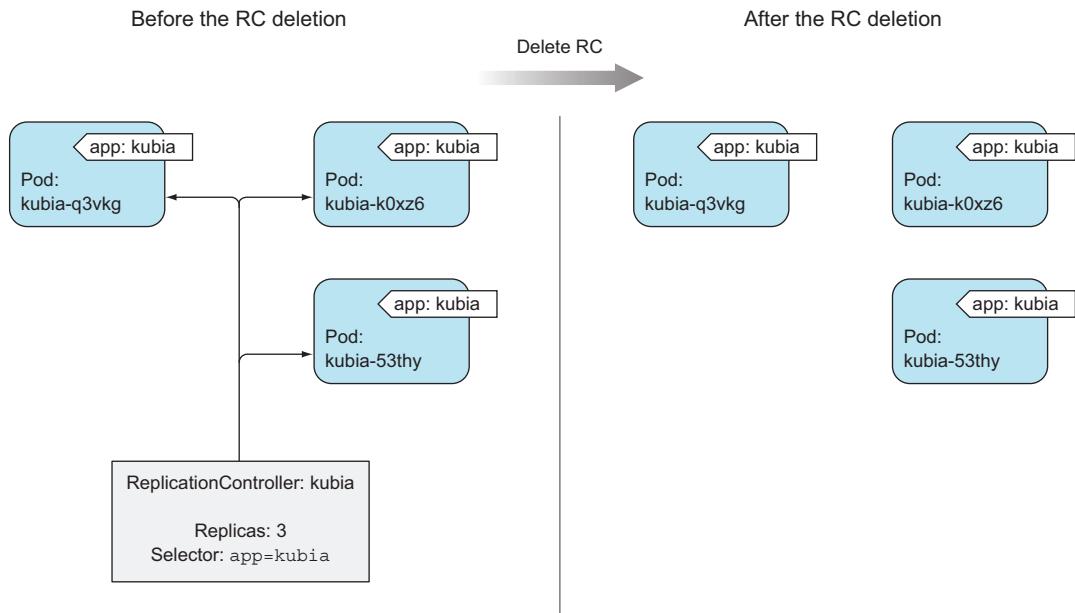


Figure 4.7 Deleting a replication controller with `--cascade=false` leaves pods unmanaged.

pods and keep them running without interruption while you replace the ReplicationController that manages them.

When deleting a ReplicationController with `kubectl delete`, you can keep its pods running by passing the `--cascade=false` option to the command. Try that now:

```
$ kubectl delete rc kubia --cascade=false
replicationcontroller "kubia" deleted
```

You've deleted the ReplicationController so the pods are on their own. They are no longer managed. But you can always create a new ReplicationController with the proper label selector and make them managed again.

### 4.3 Using ReplicaSets instead of ReplicationControllers

Initially, ReplicationControllers were the only Kubernetes component for replicating pods and rescheduling them when nodes failed. Later, a similar resource called a ReplicaSet was introduced. It's a new generation of ReplicationController and replaces it completely (ReplicationControllers will eventually be deprecated).

You could have started this chapter by creating a ReplicaSet instead of a ReplicationController, but I felt it would be a good idea to start with what was initially available in Kubernetes. Plus, you'll still see ReplicationControllers used in the wild, so it's good for you to know about them. That said, you should always create ReplicaSets instead of ReplicationControllers from now on. They're almost identical, so you shouldn't have any trouble using them instead.

You usually won't create them directly, but instead have them created automatically when you create the higher-level Deployment resource, which you'll learn about in chapter 9. In any case, you should understand ReplicaSets, so let's see how they differ from ReplicationControllers.

### 4.3.1 Comparing a ReplicaSet to a ReplicationController

A ReplicaSet behaves exactly like a ReplicationController, but it has more expressive pod selectors. Whereas a ReplicationController's label selector only allows matching pods that include a certain label, a ReplicaSet's selector also allows matching pods that lack a certain label or pods that include a certain label key, regardless of its value.

Also, for example, a single ReplicationController can't match pods with the label `env=production` and those with the label `env=devel` at the same time. It can only match either pods with the `env=production` label or pods with the `env=devel` label. But a single ReplicaSet can match both sets of pods and treat them as a single group.

Similarly, a ReplicationController can't match pods based merely on the presence of a label key, regardless of its value, whereas a ReplicaSet can. For example, a ReplicaSet can match all pods that include a label with the key `env`, whatever its actual value is (you can think of it as `env=*`).

### 4.3.2 Defining a ReplicaSet

You're going to create a ReplicaSet now to see how the orphaned pods that were created by your ReplicationController and then abandoned earlier can now be adopted by a ReplicaSet. First, you'll rewrite your ReplicationController into a ReplicaSet by creating a new file called `kubia-replicaset.yaml` with the contents in the following listing.

**Listing 4.8 A YAML definition of a ReplicaSet: kubia-replicaset.yaml**

```
apiVersion: apps/v1beta2
kind: ReplicaSet
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  replicas: 3
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: kubia
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: kubia
    spec:
      containers:
        - name: kubia
          image: luksa/kubia
```

ReplicaSets aren't part of the v1 API, but belong to the apps API group and version v1beta2.

You're using the simpler `matchLabels` selector here, which is much like a ReplicationController's selector.

The template is the same as in the ReplicationController.

The first thing to note is that ReplicaSets aren't part of the v1 API, so you need to ensure you specify the proper `apiVersion` when creating the resource. You're creating a resource of type `ReplicaSet` which has much the same contents as the `ReplicationController` you created earlier.

The only difference is in the selector. Instead of listing labels the pods need to have directly under the `selector` property, you're specifying them under `selector.matchLabels`. This is the simpler (and less expressive) way of defining label selectors in a `ReplicaSet`. Later, you'll look at the more expressive option, as well.

### About the API version attribute

This is your first opportunity to see that the `apiVersion` property specifies two things:

- The API group (which is `apps` in this case)
- The actual API version (`v1beta2`)

You'll see throughout the book that certain Kubernetes resources are in what's called the core API group, which doesn't need to be specified in the `apiVersion` field (you just specify the version—for example, you've been using `apiVersion: v1` when defining Pod resources). Other resources, which were introduced in later Kubernetes versions, are categorized into several API groups. Look at the inside of the book's covers to see all resources and their respective API groups.

Because you still have three pods matching the `app=kubia` selector running from earlier, creating this `ReplicaSet` will not cause any new pods to be created. The `ReplicaSet` will take those existing three pods under its wing.

#### 4.3.3 *Creating and examining a ReplicaSet*

Create the `ReplicaSet` from the YAML file with the `kubectl create` command. After that, you can examine the `ReplicaSet` with `kubectl get` and `kubectl describe`:

```
$ kubectl get rs
NAME      DESIRED   CURRENT   READY     AGE
kubia     3          3          3         3s
```

**TIP** Use `rs` shorthand, which stands for `replicaset`.

```
$ kubectl describe rs
Name:           kubia
Namespace:      default
Selector:       app=kubia
Labels:         app=kubia
Annotations:    <none>
Replicas:       3 current / 3 desired
Pods Status:   3 Running / 0 Waiting / 0 Succeeded / 0 Failed
Pod Template:
  Labels:        app=kubia
```

```
Containers:    ...
Volumes:      <none>
Events:       <none>
```

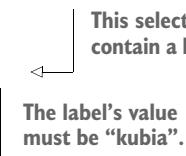
As you can see, the ReplicaSet isn't any different from a ReplicationController. It's showing it has three replicas matching the selector. If you list all the pods, you'll see they're still the same three pods you had before. The ReplicaSet didn't create any new ones.

#### 4.3.4 Using the ReplicaSet's more expressive label selectors

The main improvements of ReplicaSets over ReplicationControllers are their more expressive label selectors. You intentionally used the simpler `matchLabels` selector in the first ReplicaSet example to see that ReplicaSets are no different from ReplicationControllers. Now, you'll rewrite the selector to use the more powerful `matchExpressions` property, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 4.9 A `matchExpressions` selector: `kubia-replicaset-matchexpressions.yaml`**

```
selector:
  matchExpressions:
    - key: app
      operator: In
      values:
        - kubia
```



**NOTE** Only the selector is shown. You'll find the whole ReplicaSet definition in the book's code archive.

You can add additional expressions to the selector. As in the example, each expression must contain a key, an operator, and possibly (depending on the operator) a list of values. You'll see four valid operators:

- `In`—Label's value must match one of the specified values.
- `NotIn`—Label's value must not match any of the specified values.
- `Exists`—Pod must include a label with the specified key (the value isn't important). When using this operator, you shouldn't specify the `values` field.
- `DoesNotExist`—Pod must not include a label with the specified key. The `values` property must not be specified.

If you specify multiple expressions, all those expressions must evaluate to true for the selector to match a pod. If you specify both `matchLabels` and `matchExpressions`, all the labels must match and all the expressions must evaluate to true for the pod to match the selector.

### 4.3.5 Wrapping up ReplicaSets

This was a quick introduction to ReplicaSets as an alternative to ReplicationControllers. Remember, always use them instead of ReplicationControllers, but you may still find ReplicationControllers in other people's deployments.

Now, delete the ReplicaSet to clean up your cluster a little. You can delete the ReplicaSet the same way you'd delete a ReplicationController:

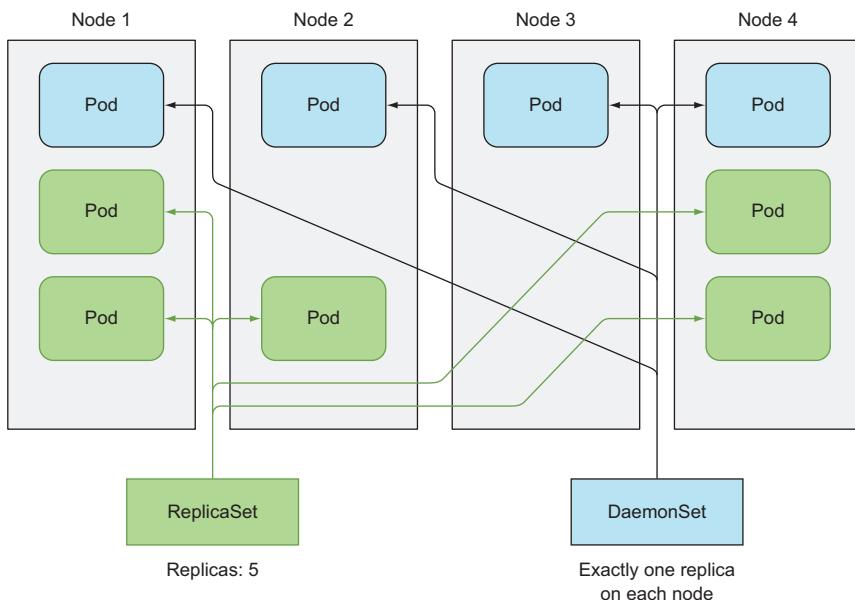
```
$ kubectl delete rs kubia
replicaset "kubia" deleted
```

Deleting the ReplicaSet should delete all the pods. List the pods to confirm that's the case.

## 4.4 Running exactly one pod on each node with DaemonSets

Both ReplicationControllers and ReplicaSets are used for running a specific number of pods deployed anywhere in the Kubernetes cluster. But certain cases exist when you want a pod to run on each and every node in the cluster (and each node needs to run exactly one instance of the pod, as shown in figure 4.8).

Those cases include infrastructure-related pods that perform system-level operations. For example, you'll want to run a log collector and a resource monitor on every node. Another good example is Kubernetes' own kube-proxy process, which needs to run on all nodes to make services work.



**Figure 4.8** DaemonSets run only a single pod replica on each node, whereas ReplicaSets scatter them around the whole cluster randomly.

Outside of Kubernetes, such processes would usually be started through system init scripts or the systemd daemon during node boot up. On Kubernetes nodes, you can still use systemd to run your system processes, but then you can't take advantage of all the features Kubernetes provides.

#### 4.4.1 Using a DaemonSet to run a pod on every node

To run a pod on all cluster nodes, you create a DaemonSet object, which is much like a ReplicationController or a ReplicaSet, except that pods created by a DaemonSet already have a target node specified and skip the Kubernetes Scheduler. They aren't scattered around the cluster randomly.

A DaemonSet makes sure it creates as many pods as there are nodes and deploys each one on its own node, as shown in figure 4.8.

Whereas a ReplicaSet (or ReplicationController) makes sure that a desired number of pod replicas exist in the cluster, a DaemonSet doesn't have any notion of a desired replica count. It doesn't need it because its job is to ensure that a pod matching its pod selector is running on each node.

If a node goes down, the DaemonSet doesn't cause the pod to be created elsewhere. But when a new node is added to the cluster, the DaemonSet immediately deploys a new pod instance to it. It also does the same if someone inadvertently deletes one of the pods, leaving the node without the DaemonSet's pod. Like a ReplicaSet, a DaemonSet creates the pod from the pod template configured in it.

#### 4.4.2 Using a DaemonSet to run pods only on certain nodes

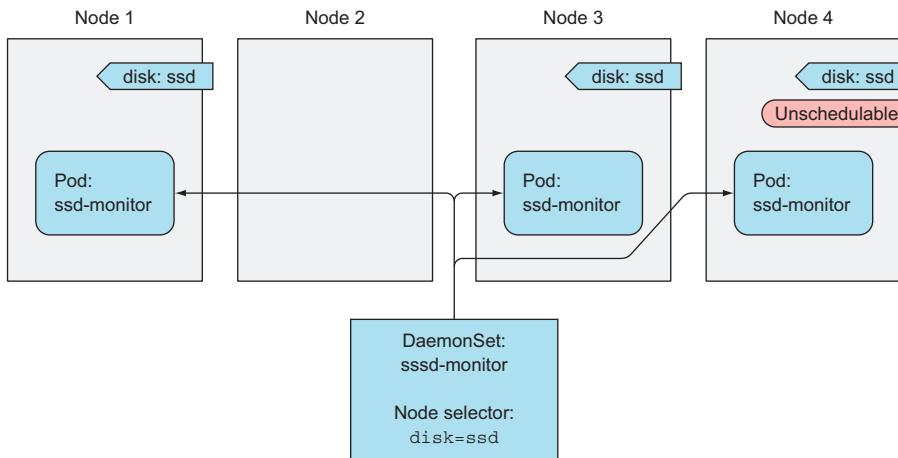
A DaemonSet deploys pods to all nodes in the cluster, unless you specify that the pods should only run on a subset of all the nodes. This is done by specifying the `nodeSelector` property in the pod template, which is part of the DaemonSet definition (similar to the pod template in a ReplicaSet or ReplicationController).

You've already used node selectors to deploy a pod onto specific nodes in chapter 3. A node selector in a DaemonSet is similar—it defines the nodes the DaemonSet must deploy its pods to.

**NOTE** Later in the book, you'll learn that nodes can be made unschedulable, preventing pods from being deployed to them. A DaemonSet will deploy pods even to such nodes, because the unschedulable attribute is only used by the Scheduler, whereas pods managed by a DaemonSet bypass the Scheduler completely. This is usually desirable, because DaemonSets are meant to run system services, which usually need to run even on unschedulable nodes.

#### EXPLAINING DAEMONSETS WITH AN EXAMPLE

Let's imagine having a daemon called `ssd-monitor` that needs to run on all nodes that contain a solid-state drive (SSD). You'll create a DaemonSet that runs this daemon on all nodes that are marked as having an SSD. The cluster administrators have added the `disk=ssd` label to all such nodes, so you'll create the DaemonSet with a node selector that only selects nodes with that label, as shown in figure 4.9.



**Figure 4.9** Using a DaemonSet with a node selector to deploy system pods only on certain nodes

### CREATING A DAEMONSET YAML DEFINITION

You'll create a DaemonSet that runs a mock `ssd-monitor` process, which prints "SSD OK" to the standard output every five seconds. I've already prepared the mock container image and pushed it to Docker Hub, so you can use it instead of building your own. Create the YAML for the DaemonSet, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 4.10 A YAML for a DaemonSet: `ssd-monitor-daemonset.yaml`

```
apiVersion: apps/v1beta2
kind: DaemonSet
metadata:
  name: ssd-monitor
spec:
  selector:
    matchLabels:
      app: ssd-monitor
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: ssd-monitor
  spec:
    nodeSelector:
      disk: ssd
    containers:
      - name: main
        image: luksa/ssd-monitor
```

DaemonSets are in the  
apps API group,  
version v1beta2.

The pod template includes a  
node selector, which selects  
nodes with the `disk=ssd` label.

You're defining a DaemonSet that will run a pod with a single container based on the `luksa/ssd-monitor` container image. An instance of this pod will be created for each node that has the `disk=ssd` label.

## CREATING THE DAEMONSET

You'll create the DaemonSet like you always create resources from a YAML file:

```
$ kubectl create -f ssd-monitor-daemonset.yaml
daemonset "ssd-monitor" created
```

Let's see the created DaemonSet:

```
$ kubectl get ds
NAME          DESIRED   CURRENT   READY   UP-TO-DATE   AVAILABLE   NODE-SELECTOR
ssd-monitor    0         0         0       0           0           disk:ssd
```

Those zeroes look strange. Didn't the DaemonSet deploy any pods? List the pods:

```
$ kubectl get po
No resources found.
```

Where are the pods? Do you know what's going on? Yes, you forgot to label your nodes with the `disk=ssd` label. No problem—you can do that now. The DaemonSet should detect that the nodes' labels have changed and deploy the pod to all nodes with a matching label. Let's see if that's true.

## ADDING THE REQUIRED LABEL TO YOUR NODE(S)

Regardless if you're using Minikube, GKE, or another multi-node cluster, you'll need to list the nodes first, because you'll need to know the node's name when labeling it:

```
$ kubectl get node
NAME      STATUS     AGE        VERSION
minikube  Ready      4d        v1.6.0
```

Now, add the `disk=ssd` label to one of your nodes like this:

```
$ kubectl label node minikube disk=ssd
node "minikube" labeled
```

**NOTE** Replace `minikube` with the name of one of your nodes if you're not using Minikube.

The DaemonSet should have created one pod now. Let's see:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
ssd-monitor-hgxwq  1/1     Running   0          35s
```

Okay; so far so good. If you have multiple nodes and you add the same label to further nodes, you'll see the DaemonSet spin up pods for each of them.

## REMOVING THE REQUIRED LABEL FROM THE NODE

Now, imagine you've made a mistake and have mislabeled one of the nodes. It has a spinning disk drive, not an SSD. What happens if you change the node's label?

```
$ kubectl label node minikube disk=hdd --overwrite
node "minikube" labeled
```

Let's see if the change has any effect on the pod that was running on that node:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
ssd-monitor-hgxwq  1/1     Terminating   0          4m
```

The pod is being terminated. But you knew that was going to happen, right? This wraps up your exploration of DaemonSets, so you may want to delete your ssd-monitor DaemonSet. If you still have any other daemon pods running, you'll see that deleting the DaemonSet deletes those pods as well.

## 4.5 **Running pods that perform a single completable task**

Up to now, we've only talked about pods than need to run continuously. You'll have cases where you only want to run a task that terminates after completing its work. ReplicationControllers, ReplicaSets, and DaemonSets run continuous tasks that are never considered completed. Processes in such pods are restarted when they exit. But in a completable task, after its process terminates, it should not be restarted again.

### 4.5.1 **Introducing the Job resource**

Kubernetes includes support for this through the Job resource, which is similar to the other resources we've discussed in this chapter, but it allows you to run a pod whose container isn't restarted when the process running inside finishes successfully. Once it does, the pod is considered complete.

In the event of a node failure, the pods on that node that are managed by a Job will be rescheduled to other nodes the way ReplicaSet pods are. In the event of a failure of the process itself (when the process returns an error exit code), the Job can be configured to either restart the container or not.

Figure 4.10 shows how a pod created by a Job is rescheduled to a new node if the node it was initially scheduled to fails. The figure also shows both a managed pod, which isn't rescheduled, and a pod backed by a ReplicaSet, which is.

For example, Jobs are useful for ad hoc tasks, where it's crucial that the task finishes properly. You could run the task in an unmanaged pod and wait for it to finish, but in the event of a node failing or the pod being evicted from the node while it is performing its task, you'd need to manually recreate it. Doing this manually doesn't make sense—especially if the job takes hours to complete.

An example of such a job would be if you had data stored somewhere and you needed to transform and export it somewhere. You're going to emulate this by running a container image built on top of the busybox image, which invokes the sleep command for two minutes. I've already built the image and pushed it to Docker Hub, but you can peek into its Dockerfile in the book's code archive.

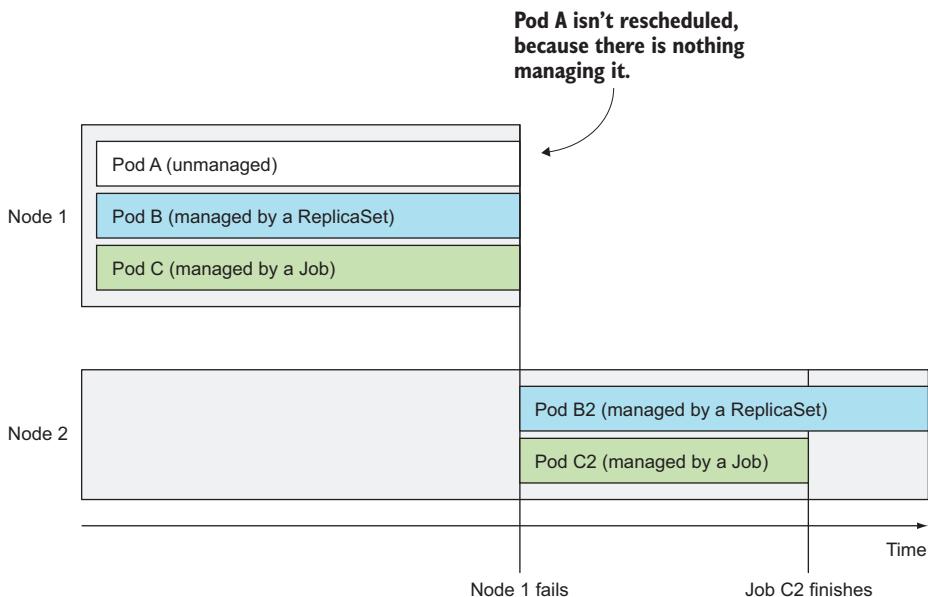


Figure 4.10 Pods managed by Jobs are rescheduled until they finish successfully.

#### 4.5.2 Defining a Job resource

Create the Job manifest as in the following listing.

##### Listing 4.11 A YAML definition of a Job: exporter.yaml

```
apiVersion: batch/v1
kind: Job
metadata:
  name: batch-job
spec:
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: batch-job
    spec:
      restartPolicy: OnFailure
      containers:
        - name: main
          image: luksa/batch-job
```

Jobs are in the batch API group, version v1.

You're not specifying a pod selector (it will be created based on the labels in the pod template).

Jobs can't use the default restart policy, which is Always.

Jobs are part of the batch API group and v1 API version. The YAML defines a resource of type Job that will run the luksa/batch-job image, which invokes a process that runs for exactly 120 seconds and then exits.

In a pod's specification, you can specify what Kubernetes should do when the processes running in the container finish. This is done through the `restartPolicy`

pod spec property, which defaults to Always. Job pods can't use the default policy, because they're not meant to run indefinitely. Therefore, you need to explicitly set the restart policy to either OnFailure or Never. This setting is what prevents the container from being restarted when it finishes (not the fact that the pod is being managed by a Job resource).

#### 4.5.3 Seeing a Job run a pod

After you create this Job with the `kubectl create` command, you should see it start up a pod immediately:

```
$ kubectl get jobs
NAME      DESIRED  SUCCESSFUL  AGE
batch-job  1        0           2s

$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY     STATUS    RESTARTS  AGE
batch-job-28qf4  1/1      Running   0         4s
```

After the two minutes have passed, the pod will no longer show up in the pod list and the Job will be marked as completed. By default, completed pods aren't shown when you list pods, unless you use the `--show-all` (or `-a`) switch:

```
$ kubectl get po -a
NAME      READY     STATUS    RESTARTS  AGE
batch-job-28qf4  0/1      Completed  0         2m
```

The reason the pod isn't deleted when it completes is to allow you to examine its logs; for example:

```
$ kubectl logs batch-job-28qf4
Fri Apr 29 09:58:22 UTC 2016 Batch job starting
Fri Apr 29 10:00:22 UTC 2016 Finished successfully
```

The pod will be deleted when you delete it or the Job that created it. Before you do that, let's look at the Job resource again:

```
$ kubectl get job
NAME      DESIRED  SUCCESSFUL  AGE
batch-job  1        1           9m
```

The Job is shown as having completed successfully. But why is that piece of information shown as a number instead of as yes or true? And what does the DESIRED column indicate?

#### 4.5.4 Running multiple pod instances in a Job

Jobs may be configured to create more than one pod instance and run them in parallel or sequentially. This is done by setting the `completions` and the `parallelism` properties in the Job spec.

## RUNNING JOB PODS SEQUENTIALLY

If you need a Job to run more than once, you set completions to how many times you want the Job's pod to run. The following listing shows an example.

**Listing 4.12 A Job requiring multiple completions: multi-completion-batch-job.yaml**

```
apiVersion: batch/v1
kind: Job
metadata:
  name: multi-completion-batch-job
spec:
  completions: 5
  template:
    <template is the same as in listing 4.11>
```

This Job will run five pods one after the other. It initially creates one pod, and when the pod's container finishes, it creates the second pod, and so on, until five pods complete successfully. If one of the pods fails, the Job creates a new pod, so the Job may create more than five pods overall.

## RUNNING JOB PODS IN PARALLEL

Instead of running single Job pods one after the other, you can also make the Job run multiple pods in parallel. You specify how many pods are allowed to run in parallel with the parallelism Job spec property, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 4.13 Running Job pods in parallel: multi-completion-parallel-batch-job.yaml**

```
apiVersion: batch/v1
kind: Job
metadata:
  name: multi-completion-batch-job
spec:
  completions: 5
  parallelism: 2
  template:
    <same as in listing 4.11>
```

By setting parallelism to 2, the Job creates two pods and runs them in parallel:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME                               READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
multi-completion-batch-job-lmmnk   1/1    Running   0          21s
multi-completion-batch-job-qx4nq   1/1    Running   0          21s
```

As soon as one of them finishes, the Job will run the next pod, until five pods finish successfully.

### SCALING A JOB

You can even change a Job's parallelism property while the Job is running. This is similar to scaling a ReplicaSet or ReplicationController, and can be done with the `kubectl scale` command:

```
$ kubectl scale job multi-completion-batch-job --replicas 3
job "multi-completion-batch-job" scaled
```

Because you've increased parallelism from 2 to 3, another pod is immediately spun up, so three pods are now running.

#### 4.5.5 *Limiting the time allowed for a Job pod to complete*

We need to discuss one final thing about Jobs. How long should the Job wait for a pod to finish? What if the pod gets stuck and can't finish at all (or it can't finish fast enough)?

A pod's time can be limited by setting the `activeDeadlineSeconds` property in the pod spec. If the pod runs longer than that, the system will try to terminate it and will mark the Job as failed.

**NOTE** You can configure how many times a Job can be retried before it is marked as failed by specifying the `spec.backoffLimit` field in the Job manifest. If you don't explicitly specify it, it defaults to 6.

#### 4.6 *Scheduling Jobs to run periodically or once in the future*

Job resources run their pods immediately when you create the Job resource. But many batch jobs need to be run at a specific time in the future or repeatedly in the specified interval. In Linux- and UNIX-like operating systems, these jobs are better known as cron jobs. Kubernetes supports them, too.

A cron job in Kubernetes is configured by creating a CronJob resource. The schedule for running the job is specified in the well-known cron format, so if you're familiar with regular cron jobs, you'll understand Kubernetes' CronJobs in a matter of seconds.

At the configured time, Kubernetes will create a Job resource according to the Job template configured in the CronJob object. When the Job resource is created, one or more pod replicas will be created and started according to the Job's pod template, as you learned in the previous section. There's nothing more to it.

Let's look at how to create CronJobs.

##### 4.6.1 *Creating a CronJob*

Imagine you need to run the batch job from your previous example every 15 minutes. To do that, create a CronJob resource with the following specification.

**Listing 4.14 YAML for a CronJob resource: cronjob.yaml**

```

apiVersion: batch/v1beta1           ← API group is batch,
kind: CronJob                      ← version is v1beta1
metadata:
  name: batch-job-every-fifteen-minutes
spec:
  schedule: "0,15,30,45 * * * *"    ← This job should run at the
  jobTemplate:                         0, 15, 30 and 45 minutes of
    spec:                                every hour, every day.
      template:
        metadata:
          labels:
            app: periodic-batch-job
          spec:
            restartPolicy: OnFailure
            containers:
              - name: main
                image: luksa/batch-job

```

The template for the Job resources that will be created by this Cronjob

As you can see, it's not too complicated. You've specified a schedule and a template from which the Job objects will be created.

**CONFIGURING THE SCHEDULE**

If you're unfamiliar with the cron schedule format, you'll find great tutorials and explanations online, but as a quick introduction, from left to right, the schedule contains the following five entries:

- Minute
- Hour
- Day of month
- Month
- Day of week.

In the example, you want to run the job every 15 minutes, so the schedule needs to be "0,15,30,45 \* \* \* \*", which means at the 0, 15, 30 and 45 minutes mark of every hour (first asterisk), of every day of the month (second asterisk), of every month (third asterisk) and on every day of the week (fourth asterisk).

If, instead, you wanted it to run every 30 minutes, but only on the first day of the month, you'd set the schedule to "0,30 \* 1 \* \*", and if you want it to run at 3AM every Sunday, you'd set it to "0 3 \* \* 0" (the last zero stands for Sunday).

**CONFIGURING THE JOB TEMPLATE**

A CronJob creates Job resources from the `jobTemplate` property configured in the CronJob spec, so refer to section 4.5 for more information on how to configure it.

**4.6.2 Understanding how scheduled jobs are run**

Job resources will be created from the CronJob resource at approximately the scheduled time. The Job then creates the pods.

It may happen that the Job or pod is created and run relatively late. You may have a hard requirement for the job to not be started too far over the scheduled time. In that case, you can specify a deadline by specifying the `startingDeadlineSeconds` field in the CronJob specification as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 4.15 Specifying a `startingDeadlineSeconds` for a CronJob

```
apiVersion: batch/v1beta1
kind: CronJob
spec:
  schedule: "0,15,30,45 * * * *"
  startingDeadlineSeconds: 15
  ...
  
```

At the latest, the pod must start running at 15 seconds past the scheduled time.

In the example in listing 4.15, one of the times the job is supposed to run is 10:30:00. If it doesn't start by 10:30:15 for whatever reason, the job will not run and will be shown as Failed.

In normal circumstances, a CronJob always creates only a single Job for each execution configured in the schedule, but it may happen that two Jobs are created at the same time, or none at all. To combat the first problem, your jobs should be idempotent (running them multiple times instead of once shouldn't lead to unwanted results). For the second problem, make sure that the next job run performs any work that should have been done by the previous (missed) run.

## 4.7 Summary

You've now learned how to keep pods running and have them rescheduled in the event of node failures. You should now know that

- You can specify a liveness probe to have Kubernetes restart your container as soon as it's no longer healthy (where the app defines what's considered healthy).
- Pods shouldn't be created directly, because they will not be re-created if they're deleted by mistake, if the node they're running on fails, or if they're evicted from the node.
- ReplicationControllers always keep the desired number of pod replicas running.
- Scaling pods horizontally is as easy as changing the desired replica count on a ReplicationController.
- Pods aren't owned by the ReplicationControllers and can be moved between them if necessary.
- A ReplicationController creates new pods from a pod template. Changing the template has no effect on existing pods.

- ReplicationControllers should be replaced with ReplicaSets and Deployments, which provide the same functionality, but with additional powerful features.
- ReplicationControllers and ReplicaSets schedule pods to random cluster nodes, whereas DaemonSets make sure every node runs a single instance of a pod defined in the DaemonSet.
- Pods that perform a batch task should be created through a Kubernetes Job resource, not directly or through a ReplicationController or similar object.
- Jobs that need to run sometime in the future can be created through CronJob resources.

# *Services: enabling clients to discover and talk to pods*

## **This chapter covers**

- Creating Service resources to expose a group of pods at a single address
- Discovering services in the cluster
- Exposing services to external clients
- Connecting to external services from inside the cluster
- Controlling whether a pod is ready to be part of the service or not
- Troubleshooting services

You've learned about pods and how to deploy them through ReplicaSets and similar resources to ensure they keep running. Although certain pods can do their work independently of an external stimulus, many applications these days are meant to respond to external requests. For example, in the case of microservices, pods will usually respond to HTTP requests coming either from other pods inside the cluster or from clients outside the cluster.

Pods need a way of finding other pods if they want to consume the services they provide. Unlike in the non-Kubernetes world, where a sysadmin would configure

each client app by specifying the exact IP address or hostname of the server providing the service in the client's configuration files, doing the same in Kubernetes wouldn't work, because

- *Pods are ephemeral*—They may come and go at any time, whether it's because a pod is removed from a node to make room for other pods, because someone scaled down the number of pods, or because a cluster node has failed.
- *Kubernetes assigns an IP address to a pod after the pod has been scheduled to a node and before it's started*—Clients thus can't know the IP address of the server pod up front.
- *Horizontal scaling means multiple pods may provide the same service*—Each of those pods has its own IP address. Clients shouldn't care how many pods are backing the service and what their IPs are. They shouldn't have to keep a list of all the individual IPs of pods. Instead, all those pods should be accessible through a single IP address.

To solve these problems, Kubernetes also provides another resource type—Services—that we'll discuss in this chapter.

## 5.1 **Introducing services**

A Kubernetes Service is a resource you create to make a single, constant point of entry to a group of pods providing the same service. Each service has an IP address and port that never change while the service exists. Clients can open connections to that IP and port, and those connections are then routed to one of the pods backing that service. This way, clients of a service don't need to know the location of individual pods providing the service, allowing those pods to be moved around the cluster at any time.

### **EXPLAINING SERVICES WITH AN EXAMPLE**

Let's revisit the example where you have a frontend web server and a backend database server. There may be multiple pods that all act as the frontend, but there may only be a single backend database pod. You need to solve two problems to make the system function:

- External clients need to connect to the frontend pods without caring if there's only a single web server or hundreds.
- The frontend pods need to connect to the backend database. Because the database runs inside a pod, it may be moved around the cluster over time, causing its IP address to change. You don't want to reconfigure the frontend pods every time the backend database is moved.

By creating a service for the frontend pods and configuring it to be accessible from outside the cluster, you expose a single, constant IP address through which external clients can connect to the pods. Similarly, by also creating a service for the backend pod, you create a stable address for the backend pod. The service address doesn't

change even if the pod's IP address changes. Additionally, by creating the service, you also enable the frontend pods to easily find the backend service by its name through either environment variables or DNS. All the components of your system (the two services, the two sets of pods backing those services, and the interdependencies between them) are shown in figure 5.1.

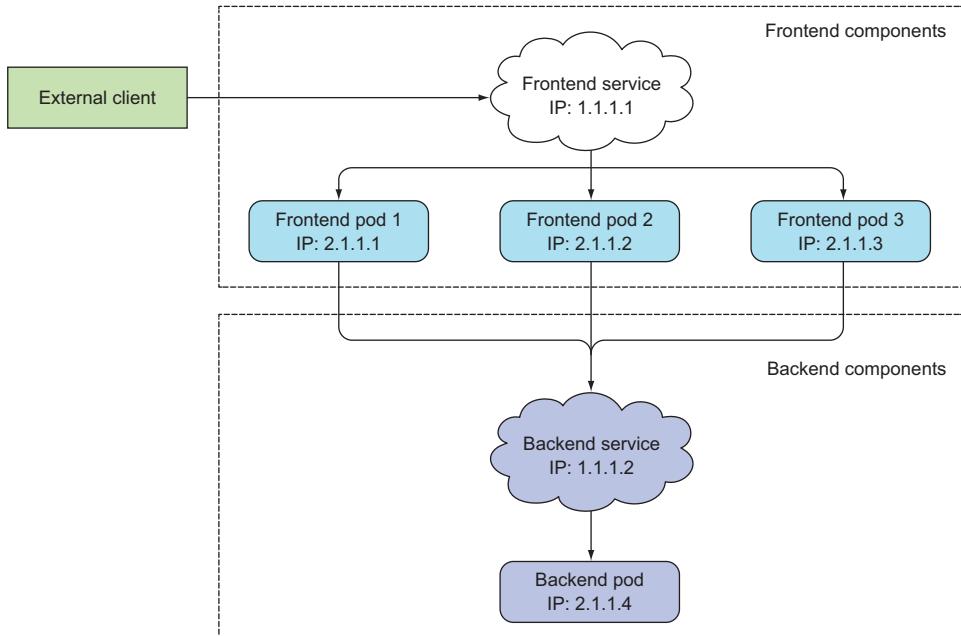


Figure 5.1 Both internal and external clients usually connect to pods through services.

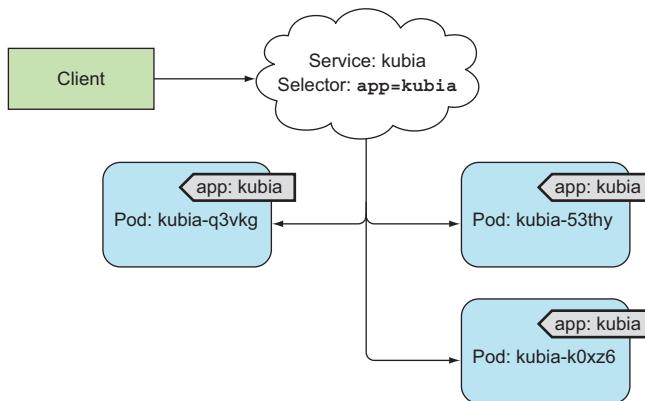
You now understand the basic idea behind services. Now, let's dig deeper by first seeing how they can be created.

### 5.1.1 Creating services

As you've seen, a service can be backed by more than one pod. Connections to the service are load-balanced across all the backing pods. But how exactly do you define which pods are part of the service and which aren't?

You probably remember label selectors and how they're used in ReplicationControllers and other pod controllers to specify which pods belong to the same set. The same mechanism is used by services in the same way, as you can see in figure 5.2.

In the previous chapter, you created a ReplicationController which then ran three instances of the pod containing the Node.js app. Create the ReplicationController again and verify three pod instances are up and running. After that, you'll create a Service for those three pods.



**Figure 5.2** Label selectors determine which pods belong to the Service.

### CREATING A SERVICE THROUGH KUBECTL EXPOSE

The easiest way to create a service is through `kubectl expose`, which you've already used in chapter 2 to expose the `ReplicationController` you created earlier. The `expose` command created a `Service` resource with the same pod selector as the one used by the `ReplicationController`, thereby exposing all its pods through a single IP address and port.

Now, instead of using the `expose` command, you'll create a service manually by posting a YAML to the Kubernetes API server.

### CREATING A SERVICE THROUGH A YAML DESCRIPTOR

Create a file called `kubia-svc.yaml` with the following listing's contents.

#### Listing 5.1 A definition of a service: `kubia-svc.yaml`

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  ports:
    - port: 80
      targetPort: 8080
  selector:
    app: kubia
```

The port this service will be available on  
The container port the service will forward to  
All pods with the `app=kubia` label will be part of this service.

You're defining a service called `kubia`, which will accept connections on port 80 and route each connection to port 8080 of one of the pods matching the `app=kubia` label selector.

Go ahead and create the service by posting the file using `kubectl create`.

### EXAMINING YOUR NEW SERVICE

After posting the YAML, you can list all Service resources in your namespace and see that an internal cluster IP has been assigned to your service:

```
$ kubectl get svc
NAME      CLUSTER-IP      EXTERNAL-IP      PORT(S)      AGE
kubernetes  10.111.240.1    <none>          443/TCP     30d
kubia      10.111.249.153   <none>          80/TCP      6m
```



Here's your service.

The list shows that the IP address assigned to the service is 10.111.249.153. Because this is the cluster IP, it's only accessible from inside the cluster. The primary purpose of services is exposing groups of pods to other pods in the cluster, but you'll usually also want to expose services externally. You'll see how to do that later. For now, let's use your service from inside the cluster and see what it does.

### TESTING YOUR SERVICE FROM WITHIN THE CLUSTER

You can send requests to your service from within the cluster in a few ways:

- The obvious way is to create a pod that will send the request to the service's cluster IP and log the response. You can then examine the pod's log to see what the service's response was.
- You can ssh into one of the Kubernetes nodes and use the curl command.
- You can execute the curl command inside one of your existing pods through the kubectl exec command.

Let's go for the last option, so you also learn how to run commands in existing pods.

### REMOTELY EXECUTING COMMANDS IN RUNNING CONTAINERS

The kubectl exec command allows you to remotely run arbitrary commands inside an existing container of a pod. This comes in handy when you want to examine the contents, state, and/or environment of a container. List the pods with the kubectl get pods command and choose one as your target for the exec command (in the following example, I've chosen the kubia-7nog1 pod as the target). You'll also need to obtain the cluster IP of your service (using kubectl get svc, for example). When running the following commands yourself, be sure to replace the pod name and the service IP with your own:

```
$ kubectl exec kubia-7nog1 -- curl -s http://10.111.249.153
You've hit kubia-gzwli
```

If you've used ssh to execute commands on a remote system before, you'll recognize that kubectl exec isn't much different.

### Why the double dash?

The double dash (--) in the command signals the end of command options for kubectl. Everything after the double dash is the command that should be executed inside the pod. Using the double dash isn't necessary if the command has no arguments that start with a dash. But in your case, if you don't use the double dash there, the -s option would be interpreted as an option for kubectl exec and would result in the following strange and highly misleading error:

```
$ kubectl exec kubia-7nog1 curl -s http://10.111.249.153
The connection to the server 10.111.249.153 was refused - did you
specify the right host or port?
```

This has nothing to do with your service refusing the connection. It's because kubectl is not able to connect to an API server at 10.111.249.153 (the -s option is used to tell kubectl to connect to a different API server than the default).

Let's go over what transpired when you ran the command. Figure 5.3 shows the sequence of events. You instructed Kubernetes to execute the curl command inside the container of one of your pods. Curl sent an HTTP request to the service IP, which is backed by three pods. The Kubernetes service proxy intercepted the connection, selected a random pod among the three pods, and forwarded the request to it. Node.js running inside that pod then handled the request and returned an HTTP response containing the pod's name. Curl then printed the response to the standard output, which was intercepted and printed to its standard output on your local machine by kubectl.

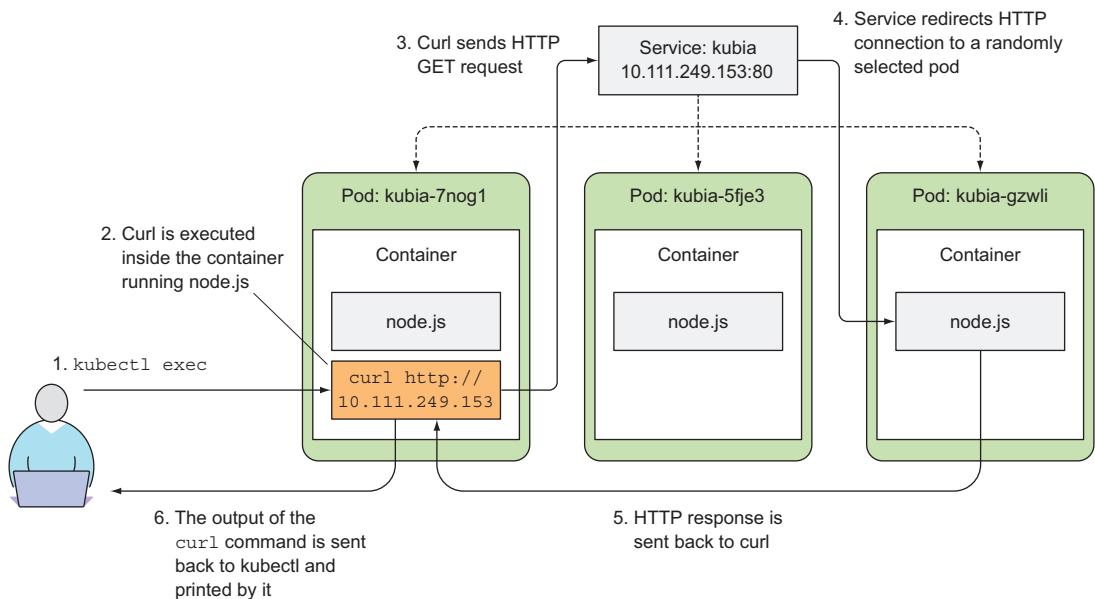


Figure 5.3 Using kubectl exec to test out a connection to the service by running curl in one of the pods

In the previous example, you executed the curl command as a separate process, but inside the pod’s main container. This isn’t much different from the actual main process in the container talking to the service.

### CONFIGURING SESSION AFFINITY ON THE SERVICE

If you execute the same command a few more times, you should hit a different pod with every invocation, because the service proxy normally forwards each connection to a randomly selected backing pod, even if the connections are coming from the same client.

If, on the other hand, you want all requests made by a certain client to be redirected to the same pod every time, you can set the service’s sessionAffinity property to ClientIP (instead of None, which is the default), as shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing 5.2 A example of a service with ClientIP session affinity configured**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
spec:
  sessionAffinity: ClientIP
  ...
  
```

This makes the service proxy redirect all requests originating from the same client IP to the same pod. As an exercise, you can create an additional service with session affinity set to ClientIP and try sending requests to it.

Kubernetes supports only two types of service session affinity: None and ClientIP. You may be surprised it doesn’t have a cookie-based session affinity option, but you need to understand that Kubernetes services don’t operate at the HTTP level. Services deal with TCP and UDP packets and don’t care about the payload they carry. Because cookies are a construct of the HTTP protocol, services don’t know about them, which explains why session affinity cannot be based on cookies.

### EXPOSING MULTIPLE PORTS IN THE SAME SERVICE

Your service exposes only a single port, but services can also support multiple ports. For example, if your pods listened on two ports—let’s say 8080 for HTTP and 8443 for HTTPS—you could use a single service to forward both port 80 and 443 to the pod’s ports 8080 and 8443. You don’t need to create two different services in such cases. Using a single, multi-port service exposes all the service’s ports through a single cluster IP.

**NOTE** When creating a service with multiple ports, you must specify a name for each port.

The spec for a multi-port service is shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing 5.3 Specifying multiple ports in a service definition**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: kubia
  
```

```

spec:
  ports:
    - name: http
      port: 80
      targetPort: 8080
    - name: https
      port: 443
      targetPort: 8443
  selector:
    app: kubia

```

**Port 80 is mapped to the pods' port 8080.**

**Port 443 is mapped to pods' port 8443.**

**The label selector always applies to the whole service.**

**NOTE** The label selector applies to the service as a whole—it can't be configured for each port individually. If you want different ports to map to different subsets of pods, you need to create two services.

Because your kubia pods don't listen on multiple ports, creating a multi-port service and a multi-port pod is left as an exercise to you.

### USING NAMED PORTS

In all these examples, you've referred to the target port by its number, but you can also give a name to each pod's port and refer to it by name in the service spec. This makes the service spec slightly clearer, especially if the port numbers aren't well-known.

For example, suppose your pod defines names for its ports as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 5.4 Specifying port names in a pod definition

```

kind: Pod
spec:
  containers:
    - name: kubia
      ports:
        - name: http
          containerPort: 8080
        - name: https
          containerPort: 8443

```

**Container's port 8080 is called http**

**Port 8443 is called https.**

You can then refer to those ports by name in the service spec, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 5.5 Referring to named ports in a service

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
spec:
  ports:
    - name: http
      port: 80
      targetPort: http
    - name: https
      port: 443
      targetPort: https

```

**Port 80 is mapped to the container's port called http.**

**Port 443 is mapped to the container's port, whose name is https.**

But why should you even bother with naming ports? The biggest benefit of doing so is that it enables you to change port numbers later without having to change the service spec. Your pod currently uses port 8080 for http, but what if you later decide you'd like to move that to port 80?

If you're using named ports, all you need to do is change the port number in the pod spec (while keeping the port's name unchanged). As you spin up pods with the new ports, client connections will be forwarded to the appropriate port numbers, depending on the pod receiving the connection (port 8080 on old pods and port 80 on the new ones).

### 5.1.2 **Discovering services**

By creating a service, you now have a single and stable IP address and port that you can hit to access your pods. This address will remain unchanged throughout the whole lifetime of the service. Pods behind this service may come and go, their IPs may change, their number can go up or down, but they'll always be accessible through the service's single and constant IP address.

But how do the client pods know the IP and port of a service? Do you need to create the service first, then manually look up its IP address and pass the IP to the configuration options of the client pod? Not really. Kubernetes also provides ways for client pods to discover a service's IP and port.

#### **DISCOVERING SERVICES THROUGH ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES**

When a pod is started, Kubernetes initializes a set of environment variables pointing to each service that exists at that moment. If you create the service before creating the client pods, processes in those pods can get the IP address and port of the service by inspecting their environment variables.

Let's see what those environment variables look like by examining the environment of one of your running pods. You've already learned that you can use the `kubectl exec` command to run a command in the pod, but because you created the service only after your pods had been created, the environment variables for the service couldn't have been set yet. You'll need to address that first.

Before you can see environment variables for your service, you first need to delete all the pods and let the ReplicationController create new ones. You may remember you can delete all pods without specifying their names like this:

```
$ kubectl delete po --all
pod "kubia-7nogl" deleted
pod "kubia-bf50t" deleted
pod "kubia-gzwli" deleted
```

Now you can list the new pods (I'm sure you know how to do that) and pick one as your target for the `kubectl exec` command. Once you've selected your target pod, you can list environment variables by running the `env` command inside the container, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 5.6 Service-related environment variables in a container**

```
$ kubectl exec kubia-3inly env
PATH=/usr/local/sbin:/usr/local/bin:/usr/sbin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/bin
HOSTNAME=kubia-3inly
KUBERNETES_SERVICE_HOST=10.111.240.1
KUBERNETES_SERVICE_PORT=443
...
KUBIA_SERVICE_HOST=10.111.249.153
KUBIA_SERVICE_PORT=80
...
```

Two services are defined in your cluster: the kubernetes and the kubia service (you saw this earlier with the `kubectl get svc` command); consequently, two sets of service-related environment variables are in the list. Among the variables that pertain to the kubia service you created at the beginning of the chapter, you'll see the `KUBIA_SERVICE_HOST` and the `KUBIA_SERVICE_PORT` environment variables, which hold the IP address and port of the kubia service, respectively.

Turning back to the frontend-backend example we started this chapter with, when you have a frontend pod that requires the use of a backend database server pod, you can expose the backend pod through a service called `backend-database` and then have the frontend pod look up its IP address and port through the environment variables `BACKEND_DATABASE_SERVICE_HOST` and `BACKEND_DATABASE_SERVICE_PORT`.

**NOTE** Dashes in the service name are converted to underscores and all letters are uppercased when the service name is used as the prefix in the environment variable's name.

Environment variables are one way of looking up the IP and port of a service, but isn't this usually the domain of DNS? Why doesn't Kubernetes include a DNS server and allow you to look up service IPs through DNS instead? As it turns out, it does!

### DISCOVERING SERVICES THROUGH DNS

Remember in chapter 3 when you listed pods in the `kube-system` namespace? One of the pods was called `kube-dns`. The `kube-system` namespace also includes a corresponding service with the same name.

As the name suggests, the pod runs a DNS server, which all other pods running in the cluster are automatically configured to use (Kubernetes does that by modifying each container's `/etc/resolv.conf` file). Any DNS query performed by a process running in a pod will be handled by Kubernetes' own DNS server, which knows all the services running in your system.

**NOTE** Whether a pod uses the internal DNS server or not is configurable through the `dnsPolicy` property in each pod's spec.

Each service gets a DNS entry in the internal DNS server, and client pods that know the name of the service can access it through its fully qualified domain name (FQDN) instead of resorting to environment variables.

### CONNECTING TO THE SERVICE THROUGH ITS FQDN

To revisit the frontend-backend example, a frontend pod can connect to the backend-database service by opening a connection to the following FQDN:

```
backend-database.default.svc.cluster.local
```

backend-database corresponds to the service name, default stands for the namespace the service is defined in, and svc.cluster.local is a configurable cluster domain suffix used in all cluster local service names.

**NOTE** The client must still know the service's port number. If the service is using a standard port (for example, 80 for HTTP or 5432 for Postgres), that shouldn't be a problem. If not, the client can get the port number from the environment variable.

Connecting to a service can be even simpler than that. You can omit the svc.cluster.local suffix and even the namespace, when the frontend pod is in the same namespace as the database pod. You can thus refer to the service simply as backend-database. That's incredibly simple, right?

Let's try this. You'll try to access the kubia service through its FQDN instead of its IP. Again, you'll need to do that inside an existing pod. You already know how to use kubectl exec to run a single command in a pod's container, but this time, instead of running the curl command directly, you'll run the bash shell instead, so you can then run multiple commands in the container. This is similar to what you did in chapter 2 when you entered the container you ran with Docker by using the docker exec -it bash command.

### RUNNING A SHELL IN A POD'S CONTAINER

You can use the kubectl exec command to run bash (or any other shell) inside a pod's container. This way you're free to explore the container as long as you want, without having to perform a kubectl exec for every command you want to run.

**NOTE** The shell's binary executable must be available in the container image for this to work.

To use the shell properly, you need to pass the -it option to kubectl exec:

```
$ kubectl exec -it kubia-3inly bash  
root@kubia-3inly:/#
```

You're now inside the container. You can use the curl command to access the kubia service in any of the following ways:

```
root@kubia-3inly:/# curl http://kubia.default.svc.cluster.local  
You've hit kubia-5asi2  
  
root@kubia-3inly:/# curl http://kubia.default  
You've hit kubia-3inly
```

```
root@kubia-3inly:/# curl http://kubia
You've hit kubia-8awf3
```

You can hit your service by using the service's name as the hostname in the requested URL. You can omit the namespace and the svc.cluster.local suffix because of how the DNS resolver inside each pod's container is configured. Look at the /etc/resolv.conf file in the container and you'll understand:

```
root@kubia-3inly:/# cat /etc/resolv.conf
search default.svc.cluster.local svc.cluster.local cluster.local ...
```

### UNDERSTANDING WHY YOU CAN'T PING A SERVICE IP

One last thing before we move on. You know how to create services now, so you'll soon create your own. But what if, for whatever reason, you can't access your service?

You'll probably try to figure out what's wrong by entering an existing pod and trying to access the service like you did in the last example. Then, if you still can't access the service with a simple curl command, maybe you'll try to ping the service IP to see if it's up. Let's try that now:

```
root@kubia-3inly:/# ping kubia
PING kubia.default.svc.cluster.local (10.111.249.153): 56 data bytes
^C--- kubia.default.svc.cluster.local ping statistics ---
54 packets transmitted, 0 packets received, 100% packet loss
```

Hmm. curl-ing the service works, but pinging it doesn't. That's because the service's cluster IP is a virtual IP, and only has meaning when combined with the service port. We'll explain what that means and how services work in chapter 11. I wanted to mention that here because it's the first thing users do when they try to debug a broken service and it catches most of them off guard.

## 5.2 **Connecting to services living outside the cluster**

Up to now, we've talked about services backed by one or more pods running inside the cluster. But cases exist when you'd like to expose external services through the Kubernetes services feature. Instead of having the service redirect connections to pods in the cluster, you want it to redirect to external IP(s) and port(s).

This allows you to take advantage of both service load balancing and service discovery. Client pods running in the cluster can connect to the external service like they connect to internal services.

### 5.2.1 **Introducing service endpoints**

Before going into how to do this, let me first shed more light on services. Services don't link to pods directly. Instead, a resource sits in between—the Endpoints resource. You may have already noticed endpoints if you used the kubectl describe command on your service, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 5.7 Full details of a service displayed with kubectl describe**

```
$ kubectl describe svc kubia
Name:           kubia
Namespace:      default
Labels:         <none>
Selector:       app=kubia
Type:          ClusterIP
IP:            10.111.249.153
Port:          <unset> 80/TCP
Endpoints:    10.108.1.4:8080,10.108.2.5:8080,10.108.2.6:8080
Session Affinity: None
No events.
```

The annotations for Listing 5.7 provide context for the service configuration:

- The service's pod selector is used to create the list of endpoints.** This annotation points to the 'Selector' field and its corresponding 'Endpoints' field.
- The list of pod IPs and ports that represent the endpoints of this service** This annotation points to the 'Endpoints' field.

An Endpoints resource (yes, plural) is a list of IP addresses and ports exposing a service. The Endpoints resource is like any other Kubernetes resource, so you can display its basic info with kubectl get:

```
$ kubectl get endpoints kubia
NAME      ENDPOINTS                                     AGE
kubia    10.108.1.4:8080,10.108.2.5:8080,10.108.2.6:8080   1h
```

Although the pod selector is defined in the service spec, it's not used directly when redirecting incoming connections. Instead, the selector is used to build a list of IPs and ports, which is then stored in the Endpoints resource. When a client connects to a service, the service proxy selects one of those IP and port pairs and redirects the incoming connection to the server listening at that location.

### 5.2.2 Manually configuring service endpoints

You may have probably realized this already, but having the service's endpoints decoupled from the service allows them to be configured and updated manually.

If you create a service without a pod selector, Kubernetes won't even create the Endpoints resource (after all, without a selector, it can't know which pods to include in the service). It's up to you to create the Endpoints resource to specify the list of endpoints for the service.

To create a service with manually managed endpoints, you need to create both a Service and an Endpoints resource.

#### CREATING A SERVICE WITHOUT A SELECTOR

You'll first create the YAML for the service itself, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 5.8 A service without a pod selector: external-service.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: external-service
spec:
  ports:
    - port: 80
```

The annotations for Listing 5.8 provide context for the service configuration:

- The name of the service must match the name of the Endpoints object (see next listing).** This annotation points to the 'name' field in the 'metadata' section.
- This service has no selector defined.** This annotation points to the 'spec' section, indicating that no selector is defined for this service.

You’re defining a service called `external-service` that will accept incoming connections on port 80. You didn’t define a pod selector for the service.

### CREATING AN ENDPOINTS RESOURCE FOR A SERVICE WITHOUT A SELECTOR

Endpoints are a separate resource and not an attribute of a service. Because you created the service without a selector, the corresponding Endpoints resource hasn’t been created automatically, so it’s up to you to create it. The following listing shows its YAML manifest.

**Listing 5.9 A manually created Endpoints resource: external-service-endpoints.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Endpoints
metadata:
  name: external-service
subsets:
- addresses:
  - ip: 11.11.11.11
  - ip: 22.22.22.22
  ports:
  - port: 80
```

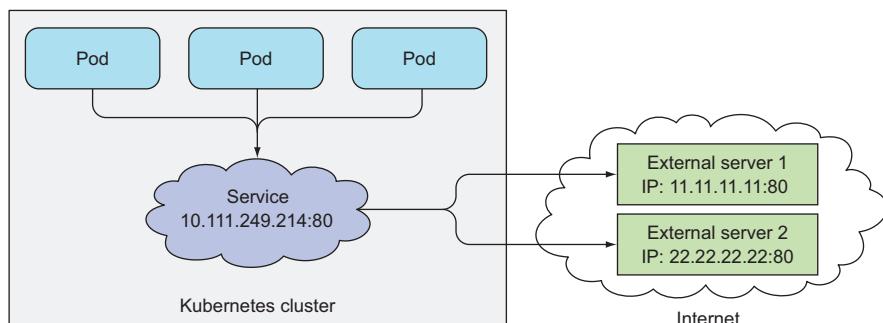
The name of the Endpoints object must match the name of the service (see previous listing).

The IPs of the endpoints that the service will forward connections to

The target port of the endpoints

The Endpoints object needs to have the same name as the service and contain the list of target IP addresses and ports for the service. After both the Service and the Endpoints resource are posted to the server, the service is ready to be used like any regular service with a pod selector. Containers created after the service is created will include the environment variables for the service, and all connections to its IP:port pair will be load balanced between the service’s endpoints.

Figure 5.4 shows three pods connecting to the service with external endpoints.



**Figure 5.4** Pods consuming a service with two external endpoints.

If you later decide to migrate the external service to pods running inside Kubernetes, you can add a selector to the service, thereby making its Endpoints managed automatically. The same is also true in reverse—by removing the selector from a Service,

Kubernetes stops updating its Endpoints. This means a service IP address can remain constant while the actual implementation of the service is changed.

### 5.2.3 Creating an alias for an external service

Instead of exposing an external service by manually configuring the service's Endpoints, a simpler method allows you to refer to an external service by its fully qualified domain name (FQDN).

#### CREATING AN EXTERNALNAME SERVICE

To create a service that serves as an alias for an external service, you create a Service resource with the type field set to ExternalName. For example, let's imagine there's a public API available at [api.somecompany.com](http://api.somecompany.com). You can define a service that points to it as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 5.10 An ExternalName-type service: external-service-externalname.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: external-service
spec:
  type: ExternalName
  externalName: someapi.somecompany.com
  ports:
    - port: 80
```

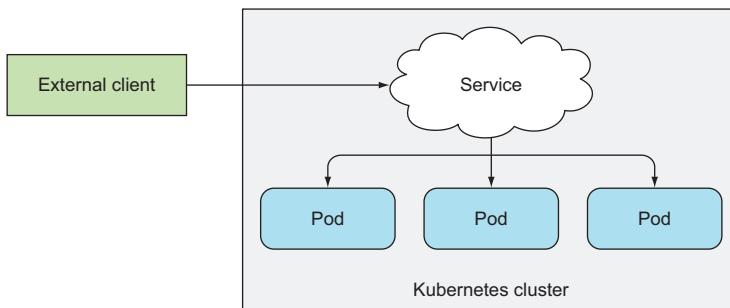
After the service is created, pods can connect to the external service through the `external-service.default.svc.cluster.local` domain name (or even `external-service`) instead of using the service's actual FQDN. This hides the actual service name and its location from pods consuming the service, allowing you to modify the service definition and point it to a different service any time later, by only changing the `externalName` attribute or by changing the type back to `ClusterIP` and creating an `Endpoints` object for the service—either manually or by specifying a label selector on the service and having it created automatically.

`ExternalName` services are implemented solely at the DNS level—a simple `CNAME` DNS record is created for the service. Therefore, clients connecting to the service will connect to the external service directly, bypassing the service proxy completely. For this reason, these types of services don't even get a cluster IP.

**NOTE** A `CNAME` record points to a fully qualified domain name instead of a numeric IP address.

### 5.3 Exposing services to external clients

Up to now, we've only talked about how services can be consumed by pods from inside the cluster. But you'll also want to expose certain services, such as frontend web servers, to the outside, so external clients can access them, as depicted in figure 5.5.



**Figure 5.5 Exposing a service to external clients**

You have a few ways to make a service accessible externally:

- *Setting the service type to NodePort*—For a NodePort service, each cluster node opens a port on the node itself (hence the name) and redirects traffic received on that port to the underlying service. The service isn’t accessible only at the internal cluster IP and port, but also through a dedicated port on all nodes.
- *Setting the service type to LoadBalancer, an extension of the NodePort type*—This makes the service accessible through a dedicated load balancer, provisioned from the cloud infrastructure Kubernetes is running on. The load balancer redirects traffic to the node port across all the nodes. Clients connect to the service through the load balancer’s IP.
- *Creating an Ingress resource, a radically different mechanism for exposing multiple services through a single IP address*—It operates at the HTTP level (network layer 7) and can thus offer more features than layer 4 services can. We’ll explain Ingress resources in section 5.4.

### 5.3.1 Using a NodePort service

The first method of exposing a set of pods to external clients is by creating a service and setting its type to NodePort. By creating a NodePort service, you make Kubernetes reserve a port on all its nodes (the same port number is used across all of them) and forward incoming connections to the pods that are part of the service.

This is similar to a regular service (their actual type is ClusterIP), but a NodePort service can be accessed not only through the service’s internal cluster IP, but also through any node’s IP and the reserved node port.

This will make more sense when you try interacting with a NodePort service.

#### CREATING A NODEPORT SERVICE

You’ll now create a NodePort service to see how you can use it. The following listing shows the YAML for the service.

**Listing 5.11 A NodePort service definition: kubia-svc-nodeport.yaml**

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: kubia-nodeport
spec:
  type: NodePort
  ports:
  - port: 80
    targetPort: 8080
    nodePort: 30123
  selector:
    app: kubia

```

The annotations provide the following information:

- Set the service type to NodePort.** Points to the `type: NodePort` field.
- This is the port of the service's internal cluster IP.** Points to the `port: 80` field.
- This is the target port of the backing pods.** Points to the `targetPort: 8080` field.
- The service will be accessible through port 30123 of each of your cluster nodes.** Points to the `nodePort: 30123` field.

You set the type to NodePort and specify the node port this service should be bound to across all cluster nodes. Specifying the port isn't mandatory; Kubernetes will choose a random port if you omit it.

**NOTE** When you create the service in GKE, `kubectl` prints out a warning about having to configure firewall rules. We'll see how to do that soon.

### EXAMINING YOUR NODEPORT SERVICE

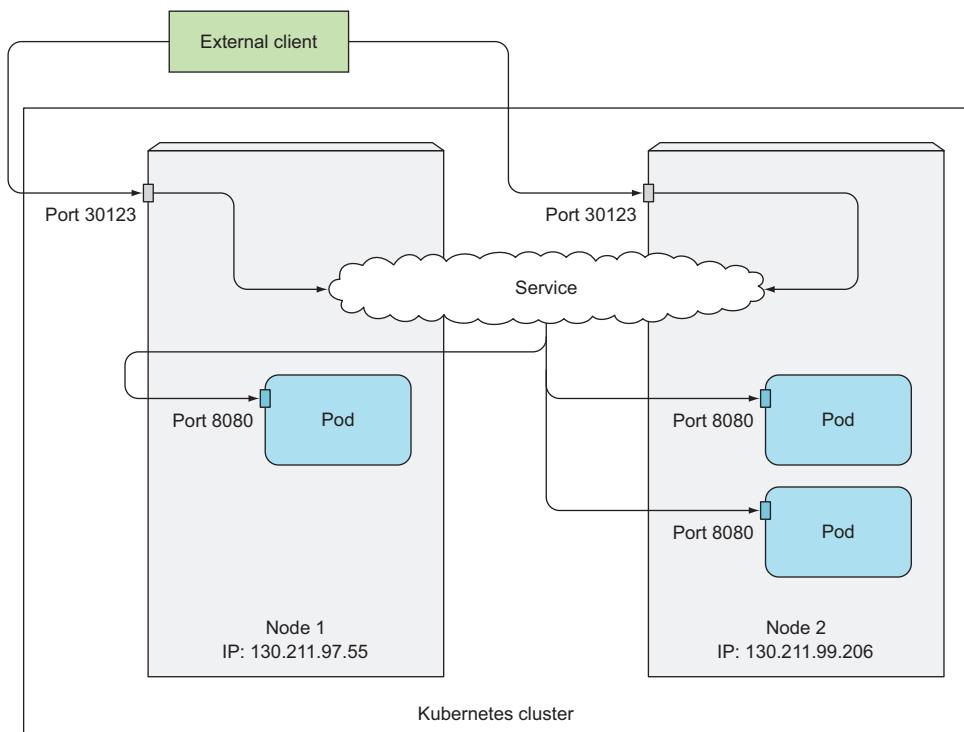
Let's see the basic information of your service to learn more about it:

```
$ kubectl get svc kubia-nodeport
NAME           CLUSTER-IP      EXTERNAL-IP     PORT(S)        AGE
kubia-nodeport  10.111.254.223  <nodes>        80:30123/TCP  2m
```

Look at the EXTERNAL-IP column. It shows `<nodes>`, indicating the service is accessible through the IP address of any cluster node. The PORT(S) column shows both the internal port of the cluster IP (80) and the node port (30123). The service is accessible at the following addresses:

- 10.11.254.223:80
- <1st node's IP>:30123
- <2nd node's IP>:30123, and so on.

Figure 5.6 shows your service exposed on port 30123 of both of your cluster nodes (this applies if you're running this on GKE; Minikube only has a single node, but the principle is the same). An incoming connection to one of those ports will be redirected to a randomly selected pod, which may or may not be the one running on the node the connection is being made to.



**Figure 5.6 An external client connecting to a NodePort service either through Node 1 or 2**

A connection received on port 30123 of the first node might be forwarded either to the pod running on the first node or to one of the pods running on the second node.

#### CHANGING FIREWALL RULES TO LET EXTERNAL CLIENTS ACCESS OUR NODEPORT SERVICE

As I've mentioned previously, before you can access your service through the node port, you need to configure the Google Cloud Platform's firewalls to allow external connections to your nodes on that port. You'll do this now:

```
$ gcloud compute firewall-rules create kubia-svc-rule --allow=tcp:30123
Created [https://www.googleapis.com/compute/v1/projects/kubia-
1295/global/firewalls/kubia-svc-rule].
NAME          NETWORK   SRC_RANGES   RULES      SRC_TAGS   TARGET_TAGS
kubia-svc-rule  default   0.0.0.0/0   tcp:30123
```

You can access your service through port 30123 of one of the node's IPs. But you need to figure out the IP of a node first. Refer to the sidebar on how to do that.

### Using JSONPath to get the IPs of all your nodes

You can find the IP in the JSON or YAML descriptors of the nodes. But instead of sifting through the relatively large JSON, you can tell `kubectl` to print out only the node IP instead of the whole service definition:

```
$ kubectl get nodes -o jsonpath='{.items[*].status.\n  addresses[?(@.type=="ExternalIP")].address}'\n130.211.97.55 130.211.99.206
```

You're telling `kubectl` to only output the information you want by specifying a JSONPath. You're probably familiar with XPath and how it's used with XML. JSONPath is basically XPath for JSON. The JSONPath in the previous example instructs `kubectl` to do the following:

- Go through all the elements in the `items` attribute.
- For each element, enter the `status` attribute.
- Filter elements of the `addresses` attribute, taking only those that have the `type` attribute set to `ExternalIP`.
- Finally, print the `address` attribute of the filtered elements.

To learn more about how to use JSONPath with `kubectl`, refer to the documentation at <http://kubernetes.io/docs/user-guide/jsonpath>.

Once you know the IPs of your nodes, you can try accessing your service through them:

```
$ curl http://130.211.97.55:30123\nYou've hit kubia-ym8or\n$ curl http://130.211.99.206:30123\nYou've hit kubia-xueq1
```

**TIP** When using Minikube, you can easily access your NodePort services through your browser by running `minikube service <service-name> [-n <namespace>]`.

As you can see, your pods are now accessible to the whole internet through port 30123 on any of your nodes. It doesn't matter what node a client sends the request to. But if you only point your clients to the first node, when that node fails, your clients can't access the service anymore. That's why it makes sense to put a load balancer in front of the nodes to make sure you're spreading requests across all healthy nodes and never sending them to a node that's offline at that moment.

If your Kubernetes cluster supports it (which is mostly true when Kubernetes is deployed on cloud infrastructure), the load balancer can be provisioned automatically by creating a `LoadBalancer` instead of a `NodePort` service. We'll look at this next.

#### 5.3.2 Exposing a service through an external load balancer

Kubernetes clusters running on cloud providers usually support the automatic provision of a load balancer from the cloud infrastructure. All you need to do is set the

service's type to LoadBalancer instead of NodePort. The load balancer will have its own unique, publicly accessible IP address and will redirect all connections to your service. You can thus access your service through the load balancer's IP address.

If Kubernetes is running in an environment that doesn't support LoadBalancer services, the load balancer will not be provisioned, but the service will still behave like a NodePort service. That's because a LoadBalancer service is an extension of a NodePort service. You'll run this example on Google Kubernetes Engine, which supports LoadBalancer services. Minikube doesn't, at least not as of this writing.

### CREATING A LOADBALANCER SERVICE

To create a service with a load balancer in front, create the service from the following YAML manifest, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 5.12 A LoadBalancer-type service: kubia-svc-loadbalancer.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: kubia-loadbalancer
spec:
  type: LoadBalancer
  ports:
  - port: 80
    targetPort: 8080
  selector:
    app: kubia
```

This type of service obtains a load balancer from the infrastructure hosting the Kubernetes cluster.

The service type is set to LoadBalancer instead of NodePort. You're not specifying a specific node port, although you could (you're letting Kubernetes choose one instead).

### CONNECTING TO THE SERVICE THROUGH THE LOAD BALANCER

After you create the service, it takes time for the cloud infrastructure to create the load balancer and write its IP address into the Service object. Once it does that, the IP address will be listed as the external IP address of your service:

```
$ kubectl get svc kubia-loadbalancer
NAME           CLUSTER-IP      EXTERNAL-IP      PORT(S)        AGE
kubia-loadbalancer   10.111.241.153   130.211.53.173   80:32143/TCP   1m
```

In this case, the load balancer is available at IP 130.211.53.173, so you can now access the service at that IP address:

```
$ curl http://130.211.53.173
You've hit kubia-xueql
```

Success! As you may have noticed, this time you didn't need to mess with firewalls the way you had to before with the NodePort service.

### Session affinity and web browsers

Because your service is now exposed externally, you may try accessing it with your web browser. You'll see something that may strike you as odd—the browser will hit the exact same pod every time. Did the service's session affinity change in the meantime? With `kubectl explain`, you can double-check that the service's session affinity is still set to `None`, so why don't different browser requests hit different pods, as is the case when using `curl`?

Let me explain what's happening. The browser is using keep-alive connections and sends all its requests through a single connection, whereas `curl` opens a new connection every time. Services work at the connection level, so when a connection to a service is first opened, a random pod is selected and then all network packets belonging to that connection are all sent to that single pod. Even if session affinity is set to `None`, users will always hit the same pod (until the connection is closed).

See figure 5.7 to see how HTTP requests are delivered to the pod. External clients (`curl` in your case) connect to port 80 of the load balancer and get routed to the

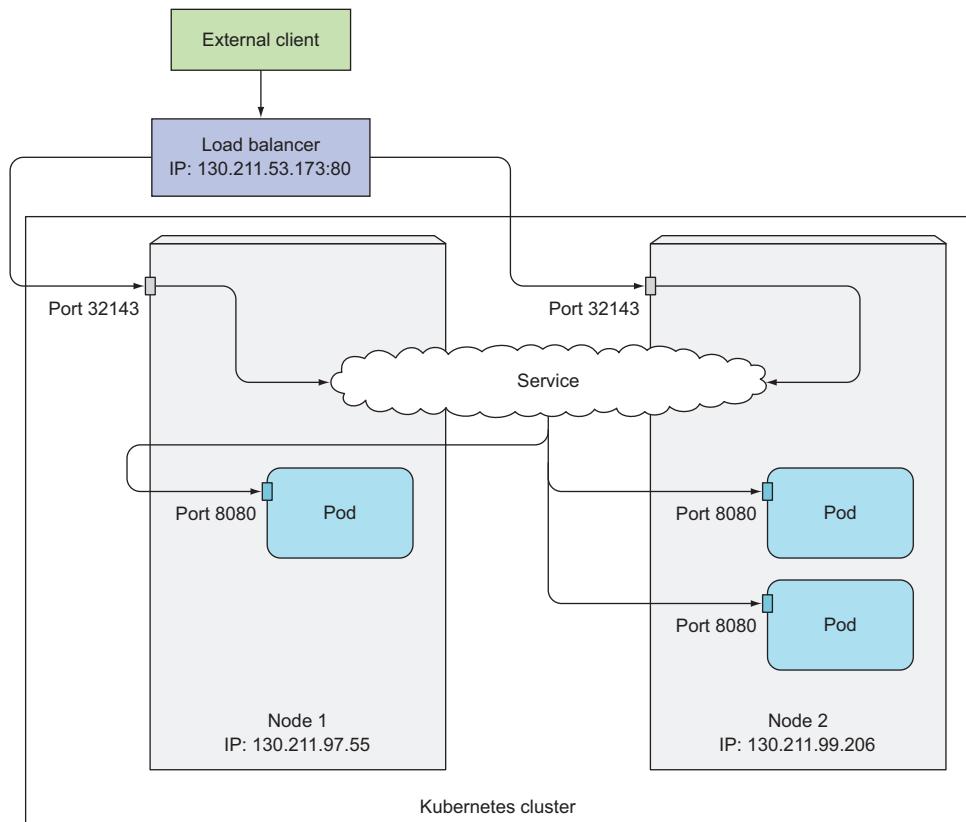


Figure 5.7 An external client connecting to a LoadBalancer service

implicitly assigned node port on one of the nodes. From there, the connection is forwarded to one of the pod instances.

As already mentioned, a LoadBalancer-type service is a NodePort service with an additional infrastructure-provided load balancer. If you use `kubectl describe` to display additional info about the service, you'll see that a node port has been selected for the service. If you were to open the firewall for this port, the way you did in the previous section about NodePort services, you could access the service through the node IPs as well.

**TIP** If you're using Minikube, even though the load balancer will never be provisioned, you can still access the service through the node port (at the Minikube VM's IP address).

### 5.3.3 *Understanding the peculiarities of external connections*

You must be aware of several things related to externally originating connections to services.

#### UNDERSTANDING AND PREVENTING UNNECESSARY NETWORK HOPS

When an external client connects to a service through the node port (this also includes cases when it goes through the load balancer first), the randomly chosen pod may or may not be running on the same node that received the connection. An additional network hop is required to reach the pod, but this may not always be desirable.

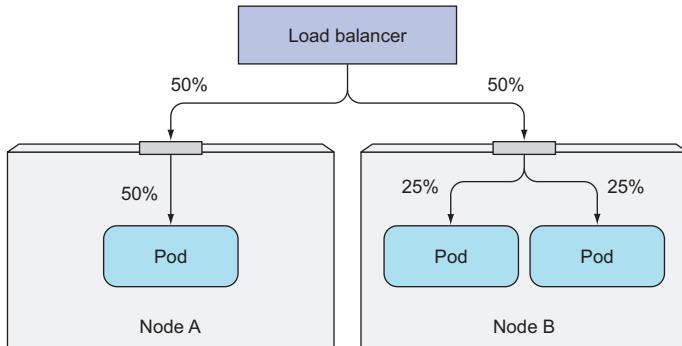
You can prevent this additional hop by configuring the service to redirect external traffic only to pods running on the node that received the connection. This is done by setting the `externalTrafficPolicy` field in the service's spec section:

```
spec:  
  externalTrafficPolicy: Local  
  ...
```

If a service definition includes this setting and an external connection is opened through the service's node port, the service proxy will choose a locally running pod. If no local pods exist, the connection will hang (it won't be forwarded to a random global pod, the way connections are when not using the annotation). You therefore need to ensure the load balancer forwards connections only to nodes that have at least one such pod.

Using this annotation also has other drawbacks. Normally, connections are spread evenly across all the pods, but when using this annotation, that's no longer the case.

Imagine having two nodes and three pods. Let's say node A runs one pod and node B runs the other two. If the load balancer spreads connections evenly across the two nodes, the pod on node A will receive 50% of all connections, but the two pods on node B will only receive 25% each, as shown in figure 5.8.



**Figure 5.8** A Service using the Local external traffic policy may lead to uneven load distribution across pods.

#### BEING AWARE OF THE NON-PRESERVATION OF THE CLIENT'S IP

Usually, when clients inside the cluster connect to a service, the pods backing the service can obtain the client's IP address. But when the connection is received through a node port, the packets' source IP is changed, because Source Network Address Translation (SNAT) is performed on the packets.

The backing pod can't see the actual client's IP, which may be a problem for some applications that need to know the client's IP. In the case of a web server, for example, this means the access log won't show the browser's IP.

The Local external traffic policy described in the previous section affects the preservation of the client's IP, because there's no additional hop between the node receiving the connection and the node hosting the target pod (SNAT isn't performed).

## 5.4 Exposing services externally through an Ingress resource

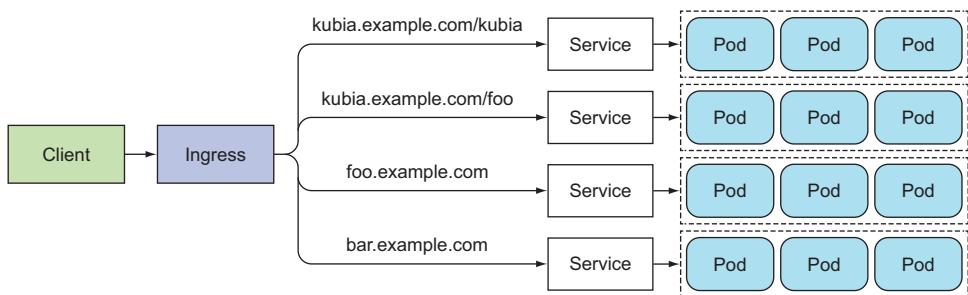
You've now seen two ways of exposing a service to clients outside the cluster, but another method exists—creating an Ingress resource.

**DEFINITION** *Ingress* (noun)—The act of going in or entering; the right to enter; a means or place of entering; entryway.

Let me first explain why you need another way to access Kubernetes services from the outside.

#### UNDERSTANDING WHY INGRESSES ARE NEEDED

One important reason is that each LoadBalancer service requires its own load balancer with its own public IP address, whereas an Ingress only requires one, even when providing access to dozens of services. When a client sends an HTTP request to the Ingress, the host and path in the request determine which service the request is forwarded to, as shown in figure 5.9.



**Figure 5.9** Multiple services can be exposed through a single Ingress.

Ingresses operate at the application layer of the network stack (HTTP) and can provide features such as cookie-based session affinity and the like, which services can't.

#### UNDERSTANDING THAT AN INGRESS CONTROLLER IS REQUIRED

Before we go into the features an Ingress object provides, let me emphasize that to make Ingress resources work, an Ingress controller needs to be running in the cluster. Different Kubernetes environments use different implementations of the controller, but several don't provide a default controller at all.

For example, Google Kubernetes Engine uses Google Cloud Platform's own HTTP load-balancing features to provide the Ingress functionality. Initially, Minikube didn't provide a controller out of the box, but it now includes an add-on that can be enabled to let you try out the Ingress functionality. Follow the instructions in the following sidebar to ensure it's enabled.

#### Enabling the Ingress add-on in Minikube

If you're using Minikube to run the examples in this book, you'll need to ensure the Ingress add-on is enabled. You can check whether it is by listing all the add-ons:

```
$ minikube addons list
- default-storageclass: enabled
- kube-dns: enabled
- heapster: disabled
- ingress: disabled
- registry-creds: disabled
- addon-manager: enabled
- dashboard: enabled
```

The Ingress add-on  
isn't enabled.

You'll learn about what these add-ons are throughout the book, but it should be pretty clear what the dashboard and the kube-dns add-ons do. Enable the Ingress add-on so you can see Ingresses in action:

```
$ minikube addons enable ingress
ingress was successfully enabled
```

**(continued)**

This should have spun up an Ingress controller as another pod. Most likely, the controller pod will be in the `kube-system` namespace, but not necessarily, so list all the running pods across all namespaces by using the `--all-namespaces` option:

```
$ kubectl get po --all-namespaces
NAMESPACE     NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
default       kubia-rsv5m   1/1     Running   0          13h
default       kubia-fe4ad   1/1     Running   0          13h
default       kubia-ke823   1/1     Running   0          13h
kube-system   default-http-backend-5wb0h 1/1     Running   0          18m
kube-system   kube-addon-manager-minikube 1/1     Running   3          6d
kube-system   kube-dns-v20-101vq   3/3     Running   9          6d
kube-system   kubernetes-dashboard-jxd9l  1/1     Running   3          6d
kube-system   nginx-ingress-controller-gdts0 1/1     Running   0          18m
```

At the bottom of the output, you see the Ingress controller pod. The name suggests that Nginx (an open-source HTTP server and reverse proxy) is used to provide the Ingress functionality.

**TIP** The `--all-namespaces` option mentioned in the sidebar is handy when you don't know what namespace your pod (or other type of resource) is in, or if you want to list resources across all namespaces.

#### 5.4.1 Creating an Ingress resource

You've confirmed there's an Ingress controller running in your cluster, so you can now create an Ingress resource. The following listing shows what the YAML manifest for the Ingress looks like.

##### Listing 5.13 An Ingress resource definition: `kubia-ingress.yaml`

```
apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: Ingress
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  rules:
  - host: kubia.example.com
    http:
      paths:
      - path: /
        backend:
          serviceName: kubia-nodeport
          servicePort: 80
```

This Ingress maps the `kubia.example.com` domain name to your service.

All requests will be sent to port 80 of the `kubia-nodeport` service.

This defines an Ingress with a single rule, which makes sure all HTTP requests received by the Ingress controller, in which the host `kubia.example.com` is requested, will be sent to the `kubia-nodeport` service on port 80.

**NOTE** Ingress controllers on cloud providers (in GKE, for example) require the Ingress to point to a NodePort service. But that's not a requirement of Kubernetes itself.

### 5.4.2 Accessing the service through the Ingress

To access your service through <http://kubia.example.com>, you'll need to make sure the domain name resolves to the IP of the Ingress controller.

#### Obtaining the IP address of the Ingress

To look up the IP, you need to list Ingresses:

```
$ kubectl get ingresses
NAME      HOSTS          ADDRESS        PORTS      AGE
kubia     kubia.example.com  192.168.99.100  80        29m
```

**NOTE** When running on cloud providers, the address may take time to appear, because the Ingress controller provisions a load balancer behind the scenes.

The IP is shown in the ADDRESS column.

#### Ensuring the host configured in the Ingress points to the Ingress' IP address

Once you know the IP, you can then either configure your DNS servers to resolve [kubia.example.com](http://kubia.example.com) to that IP or you can add the following line to `/etc/hosts` (or `C:\windows\system32\drivers\etc\hosts` on Windows):

```
192.168.99.100  kubia.example.com
```

#### Accessing pods through the Ingress

Everything is now set up, so you can access the service at <http://kubia.example.com> (using a browser or curl):

```
$ curl http://kubia.example.com
You've hit kubia-ke823
```

You've successfully accessed the service through an Ingress. Let's take a better look at how that unfolded.

#### Understanding how Ingresses work

Figure 5.10 shows how the client connected to one of the pods through the Ingress controller. The client first performed a DNS lookup of [kubia.example.com](http://kubia.example.com), and the DNS server (or the local operating system) returned the IP of the Ingress controller. The client then sent an HTTP request to the Ingress controller and specified `kubia.example.com` in the `Host` header. From that header, the controller determined which service the client is trying to access, looked up the pod IPs through the `Endpoints` object associated with the service, and forwarded the client's request to one of the pods.

As you can see, the Ingress controller didn't forward the request to the service. It only used it to select a pod. Most, if not all, controllers work like this.

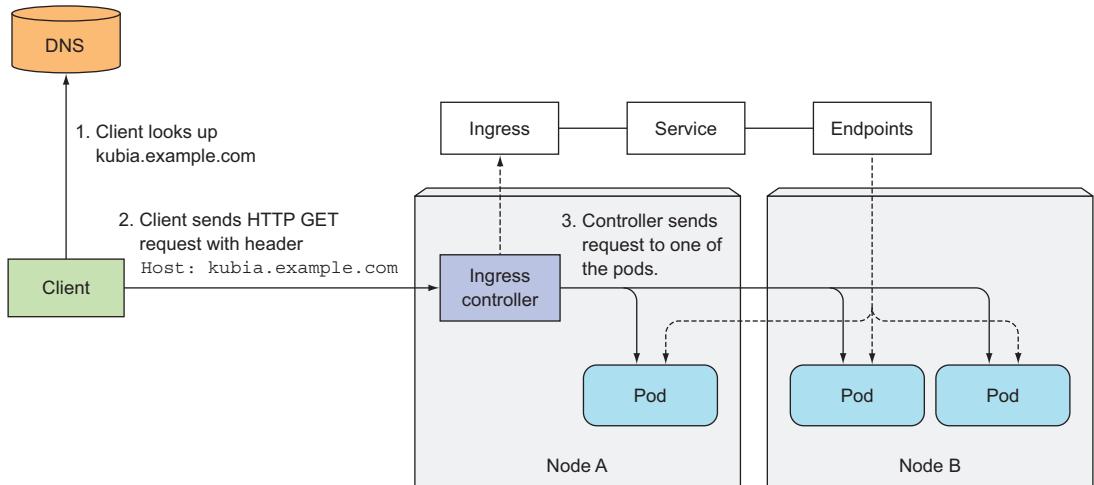


Figure 5.10 Accessing pods through an Ingress

### 5.4.3 Exposing multiple services through the same Ingress

If you look at the Ingress spec closely, you'll see that both rules and paths are arrays, so they can contain multiple items. An Ingress can map multiple hosts and paths to multiple services, as you'll see next. Let's focus on paths first.

#### MAPPING DIFFERENT SERVICES TO DIFFERENT PATHS OF THE SAME HOST

You can map multiple paths on the same host to different services, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 5.14 Ingress exposing multiple services on same host, but different paths

```
...
- host: kubia.example.com
  http:
    paths:
      - path: /kubia
        backend:
          serviceName: kubia
          servicePort: 80
      - path: /foo
        backend:
          serviceName: bar
          servicePort: 80
```

Requests to `kubia.example.com/kubia`  
will be routed to the `kubia` service.

Requests to `kubia.example.com/bar`  
will be routed to the `bar` service.

In this case, requests will be sent to two different services, depending on the path in the requested URL. Clients can therefore reach two different services through a single IP address (that of the Ingress controller).

## MAPPING DIFFERENT SERVICES TO DIFFERENT HOSTS

Similarly, you can use an Ingress to map to different services based on the host in the HTTP request instead of (only) the path, as shown in the next listing.

**Listing 5.15 Ingress exposing multiple services on different hosts**

```
spec:
  rules:
    - host: foo.example.com
      http:
        paths:
          - path: /
            backend:
              serviceName: foo
              servicePort: 80
    - host: bar.example.com
      http:
        paths:
          - path: /
            backend:
              serviceName: bar
              servicePort: 80
```

Requests received by the controller will be forwarded to either service foo or bar, depending on the Host header in the request (the way virtual hosts are handled in web servers). DNS needs to point both the `foo.example.com` and the `bar.example.com` domain names to the Ingress controller's IP address.

### 5.4.4 Configuring Ingress to handle TLS traffic

You've seen how an Ingress forwards HTTP traffic. But what about HTTPS? Let's take a quick look at how to configure Ingress to support TLS.

#### CREATING A TLS CERTIFICATE FOR THE INGRESS

When a client opens a TLS connection to an Ingress controller, the controller terminates the TLS connection. The communication between the client and the controller is encrypted, whereas the communication between the controller and the backend pod isn't. The application running in the pod doesn't need to support TLS. For example, if the pod runs a web server, it can accept only HTTP traffic and let the Ingress controller take care of everything related to TLS. To enable the controller to do that, you need to attach a certificate and a private key to the Ingress. The two need to be stored in a Kubernetes resource called a Secret, which is then referenced in the Ingress manifest. We'll explain Secrets in detail in chapter 7. For now, you'll create the Secret without paying too much attention to it.

First, you need to create the private key and certificate:

```
$ openssl genrsa -out tls.key 2048
$ openssl req -new -x509 -key tls.key -out tls.cert -days 360 -subj
  /CN=kubia.example.com
```

Then you create the Secret from the two files like this:

```
$ kubectl create secret tls tls-secret --cert=tls.cert --key=tls.key
secret "tls-secret" created
```

### **Signing certificates through the CertificateSigningRequest resource**

Instead of signing the certificate ourselves, you can get the certificate signed by creating a CertificateSigningRequest (CSR) resource. Users or their applications can create a regular certificate request, put it into a CSR, and then either a human operator or an automated process can approve the request like this:

```
$ kubectl certificate approve <name of the CSR>
```

The signed certificate can then be retrieved from the CSR's `status.certificate` field.

Note that a certificate signer component must be running in the cluster; otherwise creating CertificateSigningRequest and approving or denying them won't have any effect.

The private key and the certificate are now stored in the Secret called `tls-secret`. Now, you can update your Ingress object so it will also accept HTTPS requests for `kubia.example.com`. The Ingress manifest should now look like the following listing.

#### **Listing 5.16 Ingress handling TLS traffic: kubia-ingress-tls.yaml**

```
apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: Ingress
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  tls:
    - hosts:
        - kubia.example.com
      secretName: tls-secret
  rules:
    - host: kubia.example.com
      http:
        paths:
          - path: /
            backend:
              serviceName: kubia-nodeport
              servicePort: 80
```

- A callout points to the `spec.tls` section with the text: "The whole TLS configuration is under this attribute."
- A callout points to the `secretName` field within the `spec.tls` section with the text: "TLS connections will be accepted for the `kubia.example.com` hostname."
- A callout points to the `secretName` field within the `spec.tls` section with the text: "The private key and the certificate should be obtained from the `tls-secret` you created previously."

**TIP** Instead of deleting the Ingress and re-creating it from the new file, you can invoke `kubectl apply -f kubia-ingress-tls.yaml`, which updates the Ingress resource with what's specified in the file.

You can now use HTTPS to access your service through the Ingress:

```
$ curl -k -v https://kubia.example.com/kubia
* About to connect() to kubia.example.com port 443 (#0)
...
* Server certificate:
*   subject: CN=kubia.example.com
...
> GET /kubia HTTP/1.1
> ...
You've hit kubia-xueql
```

The command's output shows the response from the app, as well as the server certificate you configured the Ingress with.

**NOTE** Support for Ingress features varies between the different Ingress controller implementations, so check the implementation-specific documentation to see what's supported.

Ingresses are a relatively new Kubernetes feature, so you can expect to see many improvements and new features in the future. Although they currently support only L7 (HTTP/HTTPS) load balancing, support for L4 load balancing is also planned.

## 5.5 **Signaling when a pod is ready to accept connections**

There's one more thing we need to cover regarding both Services and Ingresses. You've already learned that pods are included as endpoints of a service if their labels match the service's pod selector. As soon as a new pod with proper labels is created, it becomes part of the service and requests start to be redirected to the pod. But what if the pod isn't ready to start serving requests immediately?

The pod may need time to load either configuration or data, or it may need to perform a warm-up procedure to prevent the first user request from taking too long and affecting the user experience. In such cases you don't want the pod to start receiving requests immediately, especially when the already-running instances can process requests properly and quickly. It makes sense to not forward requests to a pod that's in the process of starting up until it's fully ready.

### 5.5.1 **Introducing readiness probes**

In the previous chapter you learned about liveness probes and how they help keep your apps healthy by ensuring unhealthy containers are restarted automatically. Similar to liveness probes, Kubernetes allows you to also define a readiness probe for your pod.

The readiness probe is invoked periodically and determines whether the specific pod should receive client requests or not. When a container's readiness probe returns success, it's signaling that the container is ready to accept requests.

This notion of being ready is obviously something that's specific to each container. Kubernetes can merely check if the app running in the container responds to a simple

GET / request or it can hit a specific URL path, which causes the app to perform a whole list of checks to determine if it's ready. Such a detailed readiness probe, which takes the app's specifics into account, is the app developer's responsibility.

#### TYPES OF READINESS PROBES

Like liveness probes, three types of readiness probes exist:

- An *Exec* probe, where a process is executed. The container's status is determined by the process' exit status code.
- An *HTTP GET* probe, which sends an HTTP GET request to the container and the HTTP status code of the response determines whether the container is ready or not.
- A *TCP Socket* probe, which opens a TCP connection to a specified port of the container. If the connection is established, the container is considered ready.

#### UNDERSTANDING THE OPERATION OF READINESS PROBES

When a container is started, Kubernetes can be configured to wait for a configurable amount of time to pass before performing the first readiness check. After that, it invokes the probe periodically and acts based on the result of the readiness probe. If a pod reports that it's not ready, it's removed from the service. If the pod then becomes ready again, it's re-added.

Unlike liveness probes, if a container fails the readiness check, it won't be killed or restarted. This is an important distinction between liveness and readiness probes. Liveness probes keep pods healthy by killing off unhealthy containers and replacing them with new, healthy ones, whereas readiness probes make sure that only pods that are ready to serve requests receive them. This is mostly necessary during container start up, but it's also useful after the container has been running for a while.

As you can see in figure 5.11, if a pod's readiness probe fails, the pod is removed from the Endpoints object. Clients connecting to the service will not be redirected to the pod. The effect is the same as when the pod doesn't match the service's label selector at all.

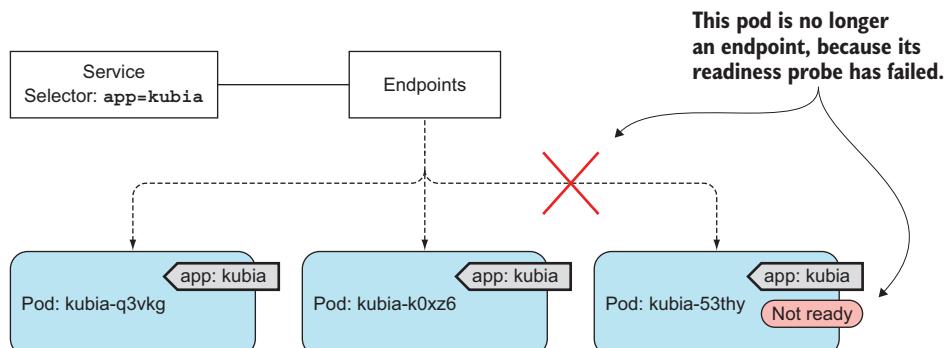


Figure 5.11 A pod whose readiness probe fails is removed as an endpoint of a service.

## UNDERSTANDING WHY READINESS PROBES ARE IMPORTANT

Imagine that a group of pods (for example, pods running application servers) depends on a service provided by another pod (a backend database, for example). If at any point one of the frontend pods experiences connectivity problems and can't reach the database anymore, it may be wise for its readiness probe to signal to Kubernetes that the pod isn't ready to serve any requests at that time. If other pod instances aren't experiencing the same type of connectivity issues, they can serve requests normally. A readiness probe makes sure clients only talk to those healthy pods and never notice there's anything wrong with the system.

### 5.5.2 Adding a readiness probe to a pod

Next you'll add a readiness probe to your existing pods by modifying the ReplicationController's pod template.

#### ADDING A READINESS PROBE TO THE POD TEMPLATE

You'll use the `kubectl edit` command to add the probe to the pod template in your existing ReplicationController:

```
$ kubectl edit rc kubia
```

When the ReplicationController's YAML opens in the text editor, find the container specification in the pod template and add the following readiness probe definition to the first container under `spec.template.spec.containers`. The YAML should look like the following listing.

#### Listing 5.17 RC creating a pod with a readiness probe: `kubia-rc-readinessprobe.yaml`

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ReplicationController
...
spec:
  ...
  template:
    ...
    spec:
      containers:
        - name: kubia
          image: luksa/kubia
          readinessProbe:
            exec:
              command:
                - ls
                - /var/ready
  ...

```

A readinessProbe may be defined for each container in the pod.

The readiness probe will periodically perform the command `ls /var/ready` inside the container. The `ls` command returns exit code zero if the file exists, or a non-zero exit code otherwise. If the file exists, the readiness probe will succeed; otherwise, it will fail.

The reason you’re defining such a strange readiness probe is so you can toggle its result by creating or removing the file in question. The file doesn’t exist yet, so all the pods should now report not being ready, right? Well, not exactly. As you may remember from the previous chapter, changing a ReplicationController’s pod template has no effect on existing pods.

In other words, all your existing pods still have no readiness probe defined. You can see this by listing the pods with `kubectl get pods` and looking at the `READY` column. You need to delete the pods and have them re-created by the ReplicationController. The new pods will fail the readiness check and won’t be included as endpoints of the service until you create the `/var/ready` file in each of them.

### OBSERVING AND MODIFYING THE PODS’ READINESS STATUS

List the pods again and inspect whether they’re ready or not:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-2r1qb  0/1    Running   0          1m
kubia-3rax1  0/1    Running   0          1m
kubia-3yw4s  0/1    Running   0          1m
```

The `READY` column shows that none of the containers are ready. Now make the readiness probe of one of them start returning success by creating the `/var/ready` file, whose existence makes your mock readiness probe succeed:

```
$ kubectl exec kubia-2r1qb -- touch /var/ready
```

You’ve used the `kubectl exec` command to execute the `touch` command inside the container of the `kubia-2r1qb` pod. The `touch` command creates the file if it doesn’t yet exist. The pod’s readiness probe command should now exit with status code 0, which means the probe is successful, and the pod should now be shown as ready. Let’s see if it is:

```
$ kubectl get po kubia-2r1qb
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-2r1qb  0/1    Running   0          2m
```

The pod still isn’t ready. Is there something wrong or is this the expected result? Take a more detailed look at the pod with `kubectl describe`. The output should contain the following line:

```
Readiness: exec [ls /var/ready] delay=0s timeout=1s period=10s #success=1
➥ #failure=3
```

The readiness probe is checked periodically—every 10 seconds by default. The pod isn’t ready because the readiness probe hasn’t been invoked yet. But in 10 seconds at the latest, the pod should become ready and its IP should be listed as the only endpoint of the service (run `kubectl get endpoints kubia-loadbalancer` to confirm).

### HITTING THE SERVICE WITH THE SINGLE READY POD

You can now hit the service URL a few times to see that each and every request is redirected to this one pod:

```
$ curl http://130.211.53.173
You've hit kubia-2rlqb
$ curl http://130.211.53.173
You've hit kubia-2rlqb
...
$ curl http://130.211.53.173
You've hit kubia-2rlqb
```

Even though there are three pods running, only a single pod is reporting as being ready and is therefore the only pod receiving requests. If you now delete the file, the pod will be removed from the service again.

#### 5.5.3 *Understanding what real-world readiness probes should do*

This mock readiness probe is useful only for demonstrating what readiness probes do. In the real world, the readiness probe should return success or failure depending on whether the app can (and wants to) receive client requests or not.

Manually removing pods from services should be performed by either deleting the pod or changing the pod’s labels instead of manually flipping a switch in the probe.

**TIP** If you want to add or remove a pod from a service manually, add `enabled=true` as a label to your pod and to the label selector of your service. Remove the label when you want to remove the pod from the service.

### ALWAYS DEFINE A READINESS PROBE

Before we conclude this section, there are two final notes about readiness probes that I need to emphasize. First, if you don’t add a readiness probe to your pods, they’ll become service endpoints almost immediately. If your application takes too long to start listening for incoming connections, client requests hitting the service will be forwarded to the pod while it’s still starting up and not ready to accept incoming connections. Clients will therefore see “Connection refused” types of errors.

**TIP** You should always define a readiness probe, even if it’s as simple as sending an HTTP request to the base URL.

### DON’T INCLUDE POD SHUTDOWN LOGIC INTO YOUR READINESS PROBES

The other thing I need to mention applies to the other end of the pod’s life (pod shutdown) and is also related to clients experiencing connection errors.

When a pod is being shut down, the app running in it usually stops accepting connections as soon as it receives the termination signal. Because of this, you might think you need to make your readiness probe start failing as soon as the shutdown procedure is initiated, ensuring the pod is removed from all services it’s part of. But that’s not necessary, because Kubernetes removes the pod from all services as soon as you delete the pod.

## 5.6 Using a headless service for discovering individual pods

You've seen how services can be used to provide a stable IP address allowing clients to connect to pods (or other endpoints) backing each service. Each connection to the service is forwarded to one randomly selected backing pod. But what if the client needs to connect to all of those pods? What if the backing pods themselves need to each connect to all the other backing pods? Connecting through the service clearly isn't the way to do this. What is?

For a client to connect to all pods, it needs to figure out the the IP of each individual pod. One option is to have the client call the Kubernetes API server and get the list of pods and their IP addresses through an API call, but because you should always strive to keep your apps Kubernetes-agnostic, using the API server isn't ideal.

Luckily, Kubernetes allows clients to discover pod IPs through DNS lookups. Usually, when you perform a DNS lookup for a service, the DNS server returns a single IP—the service's cluster IP. But if you tell Kubernetes you don't need a cluster IP for your service (you do this by setting the `clusterIP` field to `None` in the service specification), the DNS server will return the pod IPs instead of the single service IP.

Instead of returning a single DNS A record, the DNS server will return multiple A records for the service, each pointing to the IP of an individual pod backing the service at that moment. Clients can therefore do a simple DNS A record lookup and get the IPs of all the pods that are part of the service. The client can then use that information to connect to one, many, or all of them.

### 5.6.1 Creating a headless service

Setting the `clusterIP` field in a service spec to `None` makes the service *headless*, as Kubernetes won't assign it a cluster IP through which clients could connect to the pods backing it.

You'll create a headless service called `kubia-headless` now. The following listing shows its definition.

#### Listing 5.18 A headless service: `kubia-svc-headless.yaml`

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: kubia-headless
spec:
  clusterIP: None
  ports:
    - port: 80
      targetPort: 8080
  selector:
    app: kubia
```

This makes the service headless.

After you create the service with `kubectl create`, you can inspect it with `kubectl get` and `kubectl describe`. You'll see it has no cluster IP and its endpoints include (part of)

the pods matching its pod selector. I say “part of” because your pods contain a readiness probe, so only pods that are ready will be listed as endpoints of the service. Before continuing, please make sure at least two pods report being ready, by creating the `/var/ready` file, as in the previous example:

```
$ kubectl exec <pod name> -- touch /var/ready
```

### 5.6.2 Discovering pods through DNS

With your pods ready, you can now try performing a DNS lookup to see if you get the actual pod IPs or not. You’ll need to perform the lookup from inside one of the pods. Unfortunately, your `kubia` container image doesn’t include the `nslookup` (or the `dig`) binary, so you can’t use it to perform the DNS lookup.

All you’re trying to do is perform a DNS lookup from inside a pod running in the cluster. Why not run a new pod based on an image that contains the binaries you need? To perform DNS-related actions, you can use the `tutum/dnsutils` container image, which is available on Docker Hub and contains both the `nslookup` and the `dig` binaries. To run the pod, you can go through the whole process of creating a YAML manifest for it and passing it to `kubectl create`, but that’s too much work, right? Luckily, there’s a faster way.

#### RUNNING A POD WITHOUT WRITING A YAML MANIFEST

In chapter 1, you already created pods without writing a YAML manifest by using the `kubectl run` command. But this time you want to create only a pod—you don’t need to create a `ReplicationController` to manage the pod. You can do that like this:

```
$ kubectl run dnsutils --image=tutum/dnsutils --generator=run-pod/v1
  --command -- sleep infinity
pod "dnsutils" created
```

The trick is in the `--generator=run-pod/v1` option, which tells `kubectl` to create the pod directly, without any kind of `ReplicationController` or similar behind it.

#### UNDERSTANDING DNS A RECORDS RETURNED FOR A HEADLESS SERVICE

Let’s use the newly created pod to perform a DNS lookup:

```
$ kubectl exec dnsutils nslookup kubia-headless
...
Name:      kubia-headless.default.svc.cluster.local
Address: 10.108.1.4
Name:      kubia-headless.default.svc.cluster.local
Address: 10.108.2.5
```

The DNS server returns two different IPs for the `kubia-headless.default.svc.cluster.local` FQDN. Those are the IPs of the two pods that are reporting being ready. You can confirm this by listing pods with `kubectl get pods -o wide`, which shows the pods’ IPs.

This is different from what DNS returns for regular (non-headless) services, such as for your `kubia` service, where the returned IP is the service's cluster IP:

```
$ kubectl exec dnsutils nslookup kubia
...
Name:      kubia.default.svc.cluster.local
Address:   10.111.249.153
```

Although headless services may seem different from regular services, they aren't that different from the clients' perspective. Even with a headless service, clients can connect to its pods by connecting to the service's DNS name, as they can with regular services. But with headless services, because DNS returns the pods' IPs, clients connect directly to the pods, instead of through the service proxy.

**NOTE** A headless services still provides load balancing across pods, but through the DNS round-robin mechanism instead of through the service proxy.

### 5.6.3 *Discovering all pods—even those that aren't ready*

You've seen that only pods that are ready become endpoints of services. But sometimes you want to use the service discovery mechanism to find all pods matching the service's label selector, even those that aren't ready.

Luckily, you don't have to resort to querying the Kubernetes API server. You can use the DNS lookup mechanism to find even those unready pods. To tell Kubernetes you want all pods added to a service, regardless of the pod's readiness status, you must add the following annotation to the service:

```
kind: Service
metadata:
  annotations:
    service.alpha.kubernetes.io/tolerate-unready-endpoints: "true"
```

**WARNING** As the annotation name suggests, as I'm writing this, this is an alpha feature. The Kubernetes Service API already supports a new service spec field called `publishNotReadyAddresses`, which will replace the `tolerate-unready-endpoints` annotation. In Kubernetes version 1.9.0, the field is not honored yet (the annotation is what determines whether unready endpoints are included in the DNS or not). Check the documentation to see whether that's changed.

## 5.7 *Troubleshooting services*

Services are a crucial Kubernetes concept and the source of frustration for many developers. I've seen many developers lose heaps of time figuring out why they can't connect to their pods through the service IP or FQDN. For this reason, a short look at how to troubleshoot services is in order.

When you're unable to access your pods through the service, you should start by going through the following list:

- First, make sure you’re connecting to the service’s cluster IP from within the cluster, not from the outside.
- Don’t bother pinging the service IP to figure out if the service is accessible (remember, the service’s cluster IP is a virtual IP and pinging it will never work).
- If you’ve defined a readiness probe, make sure it’s succeeding; otherwise the pod won’t be part of the service.
- To confirm that a pod is part of the service, examine the corresponding Endpoints object with `kubectl get endpoints`.
- If you’re trying to access the service through its FQDN or a part of it (for example, `myservice.mynamespace.svc.cluster.local` or `myservice.mynamespace`) and it doesn’t work, see if you can access it using its cluster IP instead of the FQDN.
- Check whether you’re connecting to the port exposed by the service and not the target port.
- Try connecting to the pod IP directly to confirm your pod is accepting connections on the correct port.
- If you can’t even access your app through the pod’s IP, make sure your app isn’t only binding to localhost.

This should help you resolve most of your service-related problems. You’ll learn much more about how services work in chapter 11. By understanding exactly how they’re implemented, it should be much easier for you to troubleshoot them.

## 5.8 Summary

In this chapter, you’ve learned how to create Kubernetes Service resources to expose the services available in your application, regardless of how many pod instances are providing each service. You’ve learned how Kubernetes

- Exposes multiple pods that match a certain label selector under a single, stable IP address and port
- Makes services accessible from inside the cluster by default, but allows you to make the service accessible from outside the cluster by setting its type to either `NodePort` or `LoadBalancer`
- Enables pods to discover services together with their IP addresses and ports by looking up environment variables
- Allows discovery of and communication with services residing outside the cluster by creating a Service resource without specifying a selector, by creating an associated Endpoints resource instead
- Provides a DNS CNAME alias for external services with the `ExternalName` service type
- Exposes multiple HTTP services through a single Ingress (consuming a single IP)

- Uses a pod container's readiness probe to determine whether a pod should or shouldn't be included as a service endpoint
- Enables discovery of pod IPs through DNS when you create a headless service

Along with getting a better understanding of services, you've also learned how to

- Troubleshoot them
- Modify firewall rules in Google Kubernetes/Compute Engine
- Execute commands in pod containers through `kubectl exec`
- Run a bash shell in an existing pod's container
- Modify Kubernetes resources through the `kubectl apply` command
- Run an unmanaged ad hoc pod with `kubectl run --generator=run-pod/v1`

# *Volumes: attaching disk storage to containers*

## **This chapter covers**

- Creating multi-container pods
- Creating a volume to share disk storage between containers
- Using a Git repository inside a pod
- Attaching persistent storage such as a GCE Persistent Disk to pods
- Using pre-provisioned persistent storage
- Dynamic provisioning of persistent storage

In the previous three chapters, we introduced pods and other Kubernetes resources that interact with them, namely ReplicationControllers, ReplicaSets, DaemonSets, Jobs, and Services. Now, we’re going back inside the pod to learn how its containers can access external disk storage and/or share storage between them.

We’ve said that pods are similar to logical hosts where processes running inside them share resources such as CPU, RAM, network interfaces, and others. One would expect the processes to also share disks, but that’s not the case. You’ll remember that each container in a pod has its own isolated filesystem, because the filesystem comes from the container’s image.

Every new container starts off with the exact set of files that was added to the image at build time. Combine this with the fact that containers in a pod get restarted (either because the process died or because the liveness probe signaled to Kubernetes that the container wasn't healthy anymore) and you'll realize that the new container will not see anything that was written to the filesystem by the previous container, even though the newly started container runs in the same pod.

In certain scenarios you want the new container to continue where the last one finished, such as when restarting a process on a physical machine. You may not need (or want) the whole filesystem to be persisted, but you do want to preserve the directories that hold actual data.

Kubernetes provides this by defining storage *volumes*. They aren't top-level resources like pods, but are instead defined as a part of a pod and share the same lifecycle as the pod. This means a volume is created when the pod is started and is destroyed when the pod is deleted. Because of this, a volume's contents will persist across container restarts. After a container is restarted, the new container can see all the files that were written to the volume by the previous container. Also, if a pod contains multiple containers, the volume can be used by all of them at once.

## 6.1 *Introducing volumes*

Kubernetes volumes are a component of a pod and are thus defined in the pod's specification—much like containers. They aren't a standalone Kubernetes object and cannot be created or deleted on their own. A volume is available to all containers in the pod, but it must be mounted in each container that needs to access it. In each container, you can mount the volume in any location of its filesystem.

### 6.1.1 *Explaining volumes in an example*

Imagine you have a pod with three containers (shown in figure 6.1). One container runs a web server that serves HTML pages from the `/var/htdocs` directory and stores the access log to `/var/logs`. The second container runs an agent that creates HTML files and stores them in `/var/html`. The third container processes the logs it finds in the `/var/logs` directory (rotates them, compresses them, analyzes them, or whatever).

Each container has a nicely defined single responsibility, but on its own each container wouldn't be of much use. Creating a pod with these three containers without them sharing disk storage doesn't make any sense, because the content generator would write the generated HTML files inside its own container and the web server couldn't access those files, as it runs in a separate isolated container. Instead, it would serve an empty directory or whatever you put in the `/var/htdocs` directory in its container image. Similarly, the log rotator would never have anything to do, because its `/var/logs` directory would always remain empty with nothing writing logs there. A pod with these three containers and no volumes basically does nothing.

But if you add two volumes to the pod and mount them at appropriate paths inside the three containers, as shown in figure 6.2, you've created a system that's much more

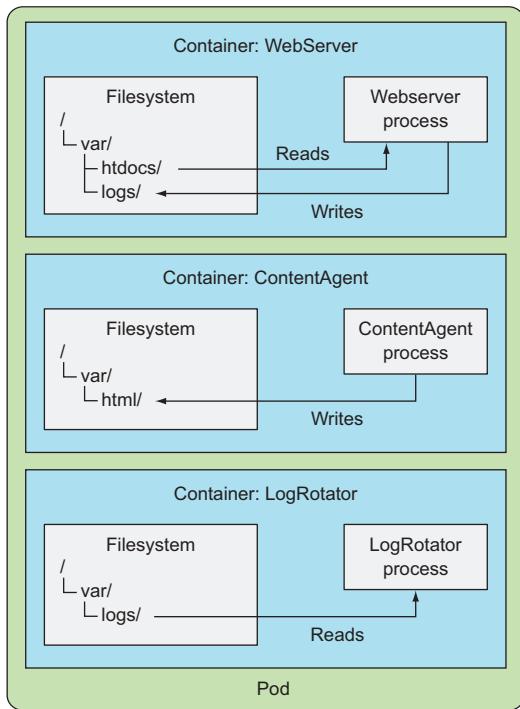


Figure 6.1 Three containers of the same pod without shared storage

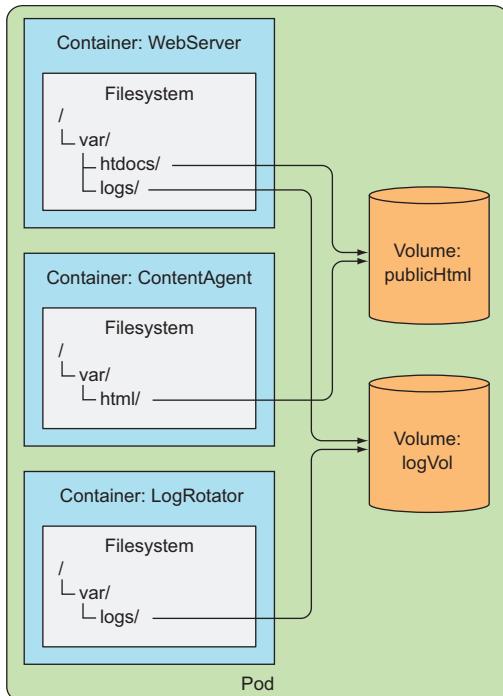


Figure 6.2 Three containers sharing two volumes mounted at various mount paths

than the sum of its parts. Linux allows you to mount a filesystem at arbitrary locations in the file tree. When you do that, the contents of the mounted filesystem are accessible in the directory it's mounted into. By mounting the same volume into two containers, they can operate on the same files. In your case, you're mounting two volumes in three containers. By doing this, your three containers can work together and do something useful. Let me explain how.

First, the pod has a volume called `publicHtml`. This volume is mounted in the `WebServer` container at `/var/htdocs`, because that's the directory the web server serves files from. The same volume is also mounted in the `ContentAgent` container, but at `/var/html`, because that's where the agent writes the files to. By mounting this single volume like that, the web server will now serve the content generated by the content agent.

Similarly, the pod also has a volume called `logVol` for storing logs. This volume is mounted at `/var/logs` in both the `WebServer` and the `LogRotator` containers. Note that it isn't mounted in the `ContentAgent` container. The container cannot access its files, even though the container and the volume are part of the same pod. It's not enough to define a volume in the pod; you need to define a `VolumeMount` inside the container's spec also, if you want the container to be able to access it.

The two volumes in this example can both initially be empty, so you can use a type of volume called `emptyDir`. Kubernetes also supports other types of volumes that are either populated during initialization of the volume from an external source, or an existing directory is mounted inside the volume. This process of populating or mounting a volume is performed before the pod's containers are started.

A volume is bound to the lifecycle of a pod and will stay in existence only while the pod exists, but depending on the volume type, the volume's files may remain intact even after the pod and volume disappear, and can later be mounted into a new volume. Let's see what types of volumes exist.

### 6.1.2 *Introducing available volume types*

A wide variety of volume types is available. Several are generic, while others are specific to the actual storage technologies used underneath. Don't worry if you've never heard of those technologies—I hadn't heard of at least half of them. You'll probably only use volume types for the technologies you already know and use. Here's a list of several of the available volume types:

- `emptyDir`—A simple empty directory used for storing transient data.
- `hostPath`—Used for mounting directories from the worker node's filesystem into the pod.
- `gitRepo`—A volume initialized by checking out the contents of a Git repository.
- `nfs`—An NFS share mounted into the pod.
- `gcePersistentDisk` (Google Compute Engine Persistent Disk), `awsElasticBlockStore` (Amazon Web Services Elastic Block Store Volume), `azureDisk` (Microsoft Azure Disk Volume)—Used for mounting cloud provider-specific storage.

- cinder, cephfs, iscsi, flocker, glusterfs, quobyte, rbd, flexVolume, vsphereVolume, photonPersistentDisk, scaleIO—Used for mounting other types of network storage.
- configMap, secret, downwardAPI—Special types of volumes used to expose certain Kubernetes resources and cluster information to the pod.
- persistentVolumeClaim—A way to use a pre- or dynamically provisioned persistent storage. (We'll talk about them in the last section of this chapter.)

These volume types serve various purposes. You'll learn about some of them in the following sections. Special types of volumes (secret, downwardAPI, configMap) are covered in the next two chapters, because they aren't used for storing data, but for exposing Kubernetes metadata to apps running in the pod.

A single pod can use multiple volumes of different types at the same time, and, as we've mentioned before, each of the pod's containers can either have the volume mounted or not.

## 6.2 Using volumes to share data between containers

Although a volume can prove useful even when used by a single container, let's first focus on how it's used for sharing data between multiple containers in a pod.

### 6.2.1 Using an emptyDir volume

The simplest volume type is the `emptyDir` volume, so let's look at it in the first example of how to define a volume in a pod. As the name suggests, the volume starts out as an empty directory. The app running inside the pod can then write any files it needs to it. Because the volume's lifetime is tied to that of the pod, the volume's contents are lost when the pod is deleted.

An `emptyDir` volume is especially useful for sharing files between containers running in the same pod. But it can also be used by a single container for when a container needs to write data to disk temporarily, such as when performing a sort operation on a large dataset, which can't fit into the available memory. The data could also be written to the container's filesystem itself (remember the top read-write layer in a container?), but subtle differences exist between the two options. A container's filesystem may not even be writable (we'll talk about this toward the end of the book), so writing to a mounted volume might be the only option.

#### USING AN EMPTYDIR VOLUME IN A POD

Let's revisit the previous example where a web server, a content agent, and a log rotator share two volumes, but let's simplify a bit. You'll build a pod with only the web server container and the content agent and a single volume for the HTML.

You'll use Nginx as the web server and the UNIX `fortune` command to generate the HTML content. The `fortune` command prints out a random quote every time you run it. You'll create a script that invokes the `fortune` command every 10 seconds and stores its output in `index.html`. You'll find an existing Nginx image available on

Docker Hub, but you'll need to either create the fortune image yourself or use the one I've already built and pushed to Docker Hub under luksa/fortune. If you want a refresher on how to build Docker images, refer to the sidebar.

### Building the fortune container image

Here's how to build the image. Create a new directory called fortune and then inside it, create a fortuneloop.sh shell script with the following contents:

```
#!/bin/bash
trap "exit" SIGINT
mkdir /var/htdocs
while :
do
    echo $(date) Writing fortune to /var/htdocs/index.html
    /usr/games/fortune > /var/htdocs/index.html
    sleep 10
done
```

Then, in the same directory, create a file called Dockerfile containing the following:

```
FROM ubuntu:latest
RUN apt-get update ; apt-get -y install fortune
ADD fortuneloop.sh /bin/fortuneloop.sh
ENTRYPOINT /bin/fortuneloop.sh
```

The image is based on the ubuntu:latest image, which doesn't include the fortune binary by default. That's why in the second line of the Dockerfile you install it with apt-get. After that, you add the fortuneloop.sh script to the image's /bin folder. In the last line of the Dockerfile, you specify that the fortuneloop.sh script should be executed when the image is run.

After preparing both files, build and upload the image to Docker Hub with the following two commands (replace luksa with your own Docker Hub user ID):

```
$ docker build -t luksa/fortune .
$ docker push luksa/fortune
```

### CREATING THE POD

Now that you have the two images required to run your pod, it's time to create the pod manifest. Create a file called fortune-pod.yaml with the contents shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 6.1 A pod with two containers sharing the same volume: fortune-pod.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: fortune
spec:
  containers:
```

```

- image: luksa/fortune
  name: html-generator
  volumeMounts:
    - name: html
      mountPath: /var/htdocs
- image: nginx:alpine
  name: web-server
  volumeMounts:
    - name: html
      mountPath: /usr/share/nginx/html
      readOnly: true
  ports:
    - containerPort: 80
      protocol: TCP
volumes:
- name: html
  emptyDir: {}

```

The first container is called html-generator and runs the luksa/fortune image.

The volume called html is mounted at /var/htdocs in the container.

The second container is called web-server and runs the nginx:alpine image.

The same volume as above is mounted at /usr/share/nginx/html as read-only.

A single emptyDir volume called html that's mounted in the two containers above

The pod contains two containers and a single volume that's mounted in both of them, yet at different paths. When the html-generator container starts, it starts writing the output of the fortune command to the /var/htdocs/index.html file every 10 seconds. Because the volume is mounted at /var/htdocs, the index.html file is written to the volume instead of the container's top layer. As soon as the web-server container starts, it starts serving whatever HTML files are in the /usr/share/nginx/html directory (this is the default directory Nginx serves files from). Because you mounted the volume in that exact location, Nginx will serve the index.html file written there by the container running the fortune loop. The end effect is that a client sending an HTTP request to the pod on port 80 will receive the current fortune message as the response.

### SEEING THE POD IN ACTION

To see the fortune message, you need to enable access to the pod. You'll do that by forwarding a port from your local machine to the pod:

```
$ kubectl port-forward fortune 8080:80
Forwarding from 127.0.0.1:8080 -> 80
Forwarding from [::1]:8080 -> 80
```

**NOTE** As an exercise, you can also expose the pod through a service instead of using port forwarding.

Now you can access the Nginx server through port 8080 of your local machine. Use curl to do that:

```
$ curl http://localhost:8080
Beware of a tall blond man with one black shoe.
```

If you wait a few seconds and send another request, you should receive a different message. By combining two containers, you created a simple app to see how a volume can glue together two containers and enhance what each of them does.

### SPECIFYING THE MEDIUM TO USE FOR THE EMPTYDIR

The `emptyDir` you used as the volume was created on the actual disk of the worker node hosting your pod, so its performance depends on the type of the node's disks. But you can tell Kubernetes to create the `emptyDir` on a `tmpfs` filesystem (in memory instead of on disk). To do this, set the `emptyDir`'s medium to Memory like this:

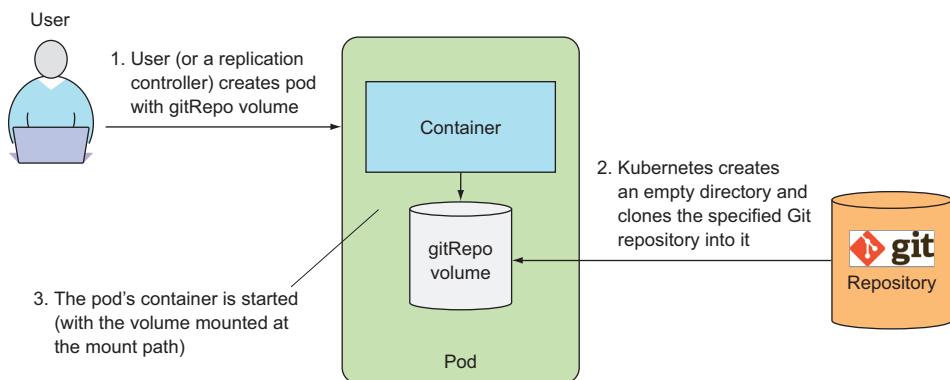
```
volumes:
  - name: html
    emptyDir:
      medium: Memory
```

This emptyDir's files should be stored in memory.

An `emptyDir` volume is the simplest type of volume, but other types build upon it. After the empty directory is created, they populate it with data. One such volume type is the `gitRepo` volume type, which we'll introduce next.

#### 6.2.2 *Using a Git repository as the starting point for a volume*

A `gitRepo` volume is basically an `emptyDir` volume that gets populated by cloning a Git repository and checking out a specific revision when the pod is starting up (but before its containers are created). Figure 6.3 shows how this unfolds.



**Figure 6.3** A `gitRepo` volume is an `emptyDir` volume initially populated with the contents of a Git repository.

**NOTE** After the `gitRepo` volume is created, it isn't kept in sync with the repo it's referencing. The files in the volume will not be updated when you push additional commits to the Git repository. However, if your pod is managed by a `ReplicationController`, deleting the pod will result in a new pod being created and this new pod's volume will then contain the latest commits.

For example, you can use a Git repository to store static HTML files of your website and create a pod containing a web server container and a `gitRepo` volume. Every time the pod is created, it pulls the latest version of your website and starts serving it. The

only drawback to this is that you need to delete the pod every time you push changes to the gitRepo and want to start serving the new version of the website.

Let's do this right now. It's not that different from what you did before.

#### RUNNING A WEB SERVER POD SERVING FILES FROM A CLONED GIT REPOSITORY

Before you create your pod, you'll need an actual Git repository with HTML files in it. I've created a repo on GitHub at <https://github.com/luksa/kubia-website-example.git>. You'll need to fork it (create your own copy of the repo on GitHub) so you can push changes to it later.

Once you've created your fork, you can move on to creating the pod. This time, you'll only need a single Nginx container and a single gitRepo volume in the pod (be sure to point the gitRepo volume to your own fork of my repository), as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 6.2 A pod using a gitRepo volume: gitrepo-volume-pod.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: gitrepo-volume-pod
spec:
  containers:
    - image: nginx:alpine
      name: web-server
      volumeMounts:
        - name: html
          mountPath: /usr/share/nginx/html
          readOnly: true
    ports:
      - containerPort: 80
        protocol: TCP
  volumes:
    - name: html
      gitRepo:
        repository: https://github.com/luksa/kubia-website-example.git
        revision: master
        directory: .
```

The diagram shows three callout boxes pointing to specific parts of the YAML code:

- A box on the left points to the `gitRepo:` section of the `volumes:` block, containing the URL and revision information. It contains the text: "You're creating a gitRepo volume." and "The volume will clone this Git repository."
- A box at the bottom points to the `directory: .` part of the `gitRepo:` section. It contains the text: "You want the repo to be cloned into the root dir of the volume." and "The master branch will be checked out."
- A box on the right points to the `repository:` field, containing the URL.

When you create the pod, the volume is first initialized as an empty directory and then the specified Git repository is cloned into it. If you hadn't set the directory to `.` (dot), the repository would have been cloned into the `kubia-website-example` subdirectory, which isn't what you want. You want the repo to be cloned into the root directory of your volume. Along with the repository, you also specified you want Kubernetes to check out whatever revision the master branch is pointing to at the time the volume is created.

With the pod running, you can try hitting it through port forwarding, a service, or by executing the curl command from within the pod (or any other pod inside the cluster).

### CONFIRMING THE FILES AREN'T KEPT IN SYNC WITH THE GIT REPO

Now you'll make changes to the index.html file in your GitHub repository. If you don't use Git locally, you can edit the file on GitHub directly—click on the file in your GitHub repository to open it and then click on the pencil icon to start editing it. Change the text and then commit the changes by clicking the button at the bottom.

The master branch of the Git repository now includes the changes you made to the HTML file. These changes will not be visible on your Nginx web server yet, because the gitRepo volume isn't kept in sync with the Git repository. You can confirm this by hitting the pod again.

To see the new version of the website, you need to delete the pod and create it again. Instead of having to delete the pod every time you make changes, you could run an additional process, which keeps your volume in sync with the Git repository. I won't explain in detail how to do this. Instead, try doing this yourself as an exercise, but here are a few pointers.

### INTRODUCING SIDECAR CONTAINERS

The Git sync process shouldn't run in the same container as the Nginx web server, but in a second container: a *sidecar container*. A sidecar container is a container that augments the operation of the main container of the pod. You add a sidecar to a pod so you can use an existing container image instead of cramming additional logic into the main app's code, which would make it overly complex and less reusable.

To find an existing container image, which keeps a local directory synchronized with a Git repository, go to Docker Hub and search for "git sync." You'll find many images that do that. Then use the image in a new container in the pod from the previous example, mount the pod's existing gitRepo volume in the new container, and configure the Git sync container to keep the files in sync with your Git repo. If you set everything up correctly, you should see that the files the web server is serving are kept in sync with your GitHub repo.

**NOTE** An example in chapter 18 includes using a Git sync container like the one explained here, so you can wait until you reach chapter 18 and follow the step-by-step instructions there instead of doing this exercise on your own now.

### USING A GITREPO VOLUME WITH PRIVATE GIT REPOSITORIES

There's one other reason for having to resort to Git sync sidecar containers. We haven't talked about whether you can use a gitRepo volume with a private Git repo. It turns out you can't. The current consensus among Kubernetes developers is to keep the gitRepo volume simple and not add any support for cloning private repositories through the SSH protocol, because that would require adding additional config options to the gitRepo volume.

If you want to clone a private Git repo into your container, you should use a git-sync sidecar or a similar method instead of a gitRepo volume.

### WRAPPING UP THE GITREPO VOLUME

A gitRepo volume, like the emptyDir volume, is basically a dedicated directory created specifically for, and used exclusively by, the pod that contains the volume. When the pod is deleted, the volume and its contents are deleted. Other types of volumes, however, don't create a new directory, but instead mount an existing external directory into the pod's container's filesystem. The contents of that volume can survive multiple pod instantiations. We'll learn about those types of volumes next.

## 6.3 Accessing files on the worker node's filesystem

Most pods should be oblivious of their host node, so they shouldn't access any files on the node's filesystem. But certain system-level pods (remember, these will usually be managed by a DaemonSet) do need to either read the node's files or use the node's filesystem to access the node's devices through the filesystem. Kubernetes makes this possible through a hostPath volume.

### 6.3.1 Introducing the hostPath volume

A hostPath volume points to a specific file or directory on the node's filesystem (see figure 6.4). Pods running on the same node and using the same path in their hostPath volume see the same files.

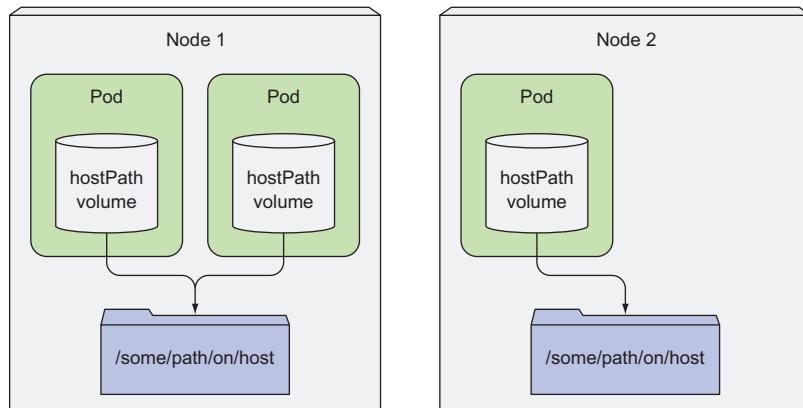


Figure 6.4 A hostPath volume mounts a file or directory on the worker node into the container's filesystem.

hostPath volumes are the first type of persistent storage we're introducing, because both the gitRepo and emptyDir volumes' contents get deleted when a pod is torn down, whereas a hostPath volume's contents don't. If a pod is deleted and the next pod uses a hostPath volume pointing to the same path on the host, the new pod will see whatever was left behind by the previous pod, but only if it's scheduled to the same node as the first pod.

If you’re thinking of using a `hostPath` volume as the place to store a database’s data directory, think again. Because the volume’s contents are stored on a specific node’s filesystem, when the database pod gets rescheduled to another node, it will no longer see the data. This explains why it’s not a good idea to use a `hostPath` volume for regular pods, because it makes the pod sensitive to what node it’s scheduled to.

### 6.3.2 Examining system pods that use `hostPath` volumes

Let’s see how a `hostPath` volume can be used properly. Instead of creating a new pod, let’s see if any existing system-wide pods are already using this type of volume. As you may remember from one of the previous chapters, several such pods are running in the `kube-system` namespace. Let’s list them again:

```
$ kubectl get pod s --namespace kube-system
NAME                  READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
fluentd-kubia-4ebc2f1e-9a3e  1/1     Running   1          4d
fluentd-kubia-4ebc2f1e-e2vz  1/1     Running   1          31d
...
...
```

Pick the first one and see what kinds of volumes it uses (shown in the following listing).

#### Listing 6.3 A pod using `hostPath` volumes to access the node’s logs

```
$ kubectl describe po fluentd-kubia-4ebc2f1e-9a3e --namespace kube-system
Name:           fluentd-cloud-logging-gke-kubia-default-pool-4ebc2f1e-9a3e
Namespace:      kube-system
...
Volumes:
  varlog:
    Type:        HostPath (bare host directory volume)
    Path:        /var/log
  varlibdockercontainers:
    Type:        HostPath (bare host directory volume)
    Path:        /var/lib/docker/containers

```

**TIP** If you’re using Minikube, try the `kube-addon-manager-minikube` pod.

Aha! The pod uses two `hostPath` volumes to gain access to the node’s `/var/log` and the `/var/lib/docker/containers` directories. You’d think you were lucky to find a pod using a `hostPath` volume on the first try, but not really (at least not on GKE). Check the other pods, and you’ll see most use this type of volume either to access the node’s log files, `kubeconfig` (the Kubernetes config file), or the CA certificates.

If you inspect the other pods, you’ll see none of them uses the `hostPath` volume for storing their own data. They all use it to get access to the node’s data. But as we’ll see later in the chapter, `hostPath` volumes are often used for trying out persistent storage in single-node clusters, such as the one created by Minikube. Read on to learn about the types of volumes you should use for storing persistent data properly even in a multi-node cluster.

**TIP** Remember to use hostPath volumes only if you need to read or write system files on the node. Never use them to persist data across pods.

## 6.4 Using persistent storage

When an application running in a pod needs to persist data to disk and have that same data available even when the pod is rescheduled to another node, you can't use any of the volume types we've mentioned so far. Because this data needs to be accessible from any cluster node, it must be stored on some type of network-attached storage (NAS).

To learn about volumes that allow persisting data, you'll create a pod that will run the MongoDB document-oriented NoSQL database. Running a database pod without a volume or with a non-persistent volume doesn't make sense, except for testing purposes, so you'll add an appropriate type of volume to the pod and mount it in the MongoDB container.

### 6.4.1 Using a GCE Persistent Disk in a pod volume

If you've been running these examples on Google Kubernetes Engine, which runs your cluster nodes on Google Compute Engine (GCE), you'll use a GCE Persistent Disk as your underlying storage mechanism.

In the early versions, Kubernetes didn't provision the underlying storage automatically—you had to do that manually. Automatic provisioning is now possible, and you'll learn about it later in the chapter, but first, you'll start by provisioning the storage manually. It will give you a chance to learn exactly what's going on underneath.

#### CREATING A GCE PERSISTENT DISK

You'll start by creating the GCE persistent disk first. You need to create it in the same zone as your Kubernetes cluster. If you don't remember what zone you created the cluster in, you can see it by listing your Kubernetes clusters with the `gcloud` command like this:

```
$ gcloud container clusters list
NAME      ZONE          MASTER_VERSION  MASTER_IP        ...
kubia    europe-west1-b  1.2.5          104.155.84.137  ...
```

This shows you've created your cluster in zone `europe-west1-b`, so you need to create the GCE persistent disk in the same zone as well. You create the disk like this:

```
$ gcloud compute disks create --size=1GiB --zone=europe-west1-b mongodb
WARNING: You have selected a disk size of under [200GB]. This may result in
poor I/O performance. For more information, see:
https://developers.google.com/compute/docs/disks#pdperformance.
Created [https://www.googleapis.com/compute/v1/projects/rapid-pivot-
136513/zones/europe-west1-b/disks/mongodb].
NAME      ZONE          SIZE_GB  TYPE        STATUS
mongodb  europe-west1-b  1         pd-standard  READY
```

This command creates a 1 GiB large GCE persistent disk called `mongodb`. You can ignore the warning about the disk size, because you don't care about the disk's performance for the tests you're about to run.

#### CREATING A POD USING A GCEPERSISTENTDISK VOLUME

Now that you have your physical storage properly set up, you can use it in a volume inside your MongoDB pod. You're going to prepare the YAML for the pod, which is shown in the following listing.

**Listing 6.4 A pod using a `gcePersistentDisk` volume: `mongodb-pod-gcepd.yaml`**

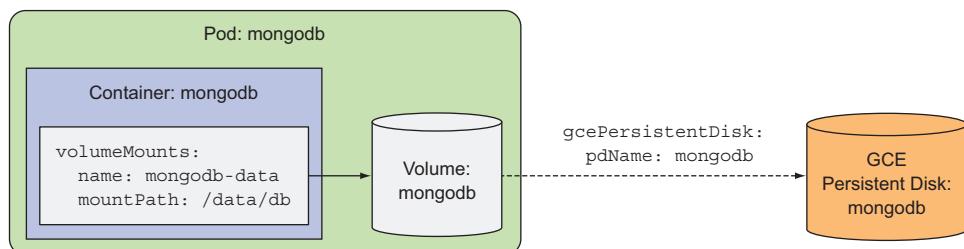
```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: mongodb
spec:
  volumes:
    - name: mongodb-data
      gcePersistentDisk:
        pdName: mongodb
        fsType: ext4
  containers:
    - image: mongo
      name: mongodb
      volumeMounts:
        - name: mongodb-data
          mountPath: /data/db
  ports:
    - containerPort: 27017
      protocol: TCP
```

The annotations explain the configuration:

- The name of the volume (also referenced when mounting the volume)**: Points to the `volumes` section, specifically the `name` field of the first volume definition.
- The type of the volume is a GCE Persistent Disk.**: Points to the `gcePersistentDisk` section of the same volume definition.
- The name of the persistent disk must match the actual PD you created earlier.**: Points to the `pdName` field within the `gcePersistentDisk` section.
- The filesystem type is EXT4 (a type of Linux filesystem).**: Points to the `fsType` field within the `gcePersistentDisk` section.
- The path where MongoDB stores its data**: Points to the `mountPath` field within the `volumeMounts` section of the container configuration.

**NOTE** If you're using Minikube, you can't use a GCE Persistent Disk, but you can deploy `mongodb-pod-hostpath.yaml`, which uses a `hostPath` volume instead of a GCE PD.

The pod contains a single container and a single volume backed by the GCE Persistent Disk you've created (as shown in figure 6.5). You're mounting the volume inside the container at `/data/db`, because that's where MongoDB stores its data.



**Figure 6.5** A pod with a single container running MongoDB, which mounts a volume referencing an external GCE Persistent Disk

**WRITING DATA TO THE PERSISTENT STORAGE BY ADDING DOCUMENTS TO YOUR MONGODB DATABASE**

Now that you've created the pod and the container has been started, you can run the MongoDB shell inside the container and use it to write some data to the data store.

You'll run the shell as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 6.5 Entering the MongoDB shell inside the `mongodb` pod**

```
$ kubectl exec -it mongodb mongo
MongoDB shell version: 3.2.8
connecting to: mongodb://127.0.0.1:27017
Welcome to the MongoDB shell.
For interactive help, type "help".
For more comprehensive documentation, see
    http://docs.mongodb.org/
Questions? Try the support group
    http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-user
...
>
```

MongoDB allows storing JSON documents, so you'll store one to see if it's stored persistently and can be retrieved after the pod is re-created. Insert a new JSON document with the following commands:

```
> use mystore
switched to db mystore
> db.foo.insert({name:'foo'})
WriteResult({ "nInserted" : 1 })
```

You've inserted a simple JSON document with a single property (`name: 'foo'`). Now, use the `find()` command to see the document you inserted:

```
> db.foo.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("57a61eb9de0cf512374cc75"), "name" : "foo" }
```

There it is. The document should be stored in your GCE persistent disk now.

**RE-CREATING THE POD AND VERIFYING THAT IT CAN READ THE DATA PERSISTED BY THE PREVIOUS POD**

You can now exit the `mongodb` shell (type `exit` and press Enter), and then delete the pod and recreate it:

```
$ kubectl delete pod mongodb
pod "mongodb" deleted
$ kubectl create -f mongodb-pod-gcepd.yaml
pod "mongodb" created
```

The new pod uses the exact same GCE persistent disk as the previous pod, so the MongoDB container running inside it should see the exact same data, even if the pod is scheduled to a different node.

**TIP** You can see what node a pod is scheduled to by running `kubectl get po -o wide`.

Once the container is up, you can again run the MongoDB shell and check to see if the document you stored earlier can still be retrieved, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 6.6 Retrieving MongoDB's persisted data in a new pod

```
$ kubectl exec -it mongodb mongo
MongoDB shell version: 3.2.8
connecting to: mongodb://127.0.0.1:27017
Welcome to the MongoDB shell.

...
> use mystore
switched to db mystore
> db.foo.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("57a61eb9de0cf512374cc75") , "name" : "foo" }
```

As expected, the data is still there, even though you deleted the pod and re-created it. This confirms you can use a GCE persistent disk to persist data across multiple pod instances.

You're done playing with the MongoDB pod, so go ahead and delete it again, but hold off on deleting the underlying GCE persistent disk. You'll use it again later in the chapter.

### 6.4.2 Using other types of volumes with underlying persistent storage

The reason you created the GCE Persistent Disk volume is because your Kubernetes cluster runs on Google Kubernetes Engine. When you run your cluster elsewhere, you should use other types of volumes, depending on the underlying infrastructure.

If your Kubernetes cluster is running on Amazon's AWS EC2, for example, you can use an `awsElasticBlockStore` volume to provide persistent storage for your pods. If your cluster runs on Microsoft Azure, you can use the `azureFile` or the `azureDisk` volume. We won't go into detail on how to do that here, but it's virtually the same as in the previous example. First, you need to create the actual underlying storage, and then set the appropriate properties in the volume definition.

#### USING AN AWS ELASTIC BLOCK STORE VOLUME

For example, to use an AWS elastic block store instead of the GCE Persistent Disk, you'd only need to change the volume definition as shown in the following listing (see those lines printed in bold).

#### Listing 6.7 A pod using an `awsElasticBlockStore` volume: `mongodb-pod-aws.yaml`

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: mongodb
spec:
  volumes:
    - name: mongodb-data
      awsElasticBlockStore: <-- Using awsElasticBlockStore instead of gcePersistentDisk
```

```

volumeId: my-volume
fsType: ext4
containers:
- ...

```

The filesystem type is EXT4 as before.

Specify the ID of the EBS volume you created.

## USING AN NFS VOLUME

If your cluster is running on your own set of servers, you have a vast array of other supported options for mounting external storage inside your volume. For example, to mount a simple NFS share, you only need to specify the NFS server and the path exported by the server, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 6.8 A pod using an nfs volume: mongodb-pod-nfs.yaml**

```

volumes:
- name: mongodb-data
  nfs:
    server: 1.2.3.4
    path: /some/path

```

This volume is backed by an NFS share.

The IP of the NFS server

The path exported by the server

## USING OTHER STORAGE TECHNOLOGIES

Other supported options include `iscsi` for mounting an iSCSI disk resource, `glusterfs` for a GlusterFS mount, `rbd` for a RADOS Block Device, `flexVolume`, `cinder`, `cephfs`, `flocker`, `fc` (Fibre Channel), and others. You don't need to know all of them if you're not using them. They're mentioned here to show you that Kubernetes supports a broad range of storage technologies and you can use whichever you prefer and are used to.

To see details on what properties you need to set for each of these volume types, you can either turn to the Kubernetes API definitions in the Kubernetes API reference or look up the information through `kubectl explain`, as shown in chapter 3. If you're already familiar with a particular storage technology, using the `explain` command should allow you to easily figure out how to mount a volume of the proper type and use it in your pods.

But does a developer need to know all this stuff? Should a developer, when creating a pod, have to deal with infrastructure-related storage details, or should that be left to the cluster administrator?

Having a pod's volumes refer to the actual underlying infrastructure isn't what Kubernetes is about, is it? For example, for a developer to have to specify the hostname of the NFS server feels wrong. And that's not even the worst thing about it.

Including this type of infrastructure-related information into a pod definition means the pod definition is pretty much tied to a specific Kubernetes cluster. You can't use the same pod definition in another one. That's why using volumes like this isn't the best way to attach persistent storage to your pods. You'll learn how to improve on this in the next section.

## 6.5 Decoupling pods from the underlying storage technology

All the persistent volume types we've explored so far have required the developer of the pod to have knowledge of the actual network storage infrastructure available in the cluster. For example, to create a NFS-backed volume, the developer has to know the actual server the NFS export is located on. This is against the basic idea of Kubernetes, which aims to hide the actual infrastructure from both the application and its developer, leaving them free from worrying about the specifics of the infrastructure and making apps portable across a wide array of cloud providers and on-premises datacenters.

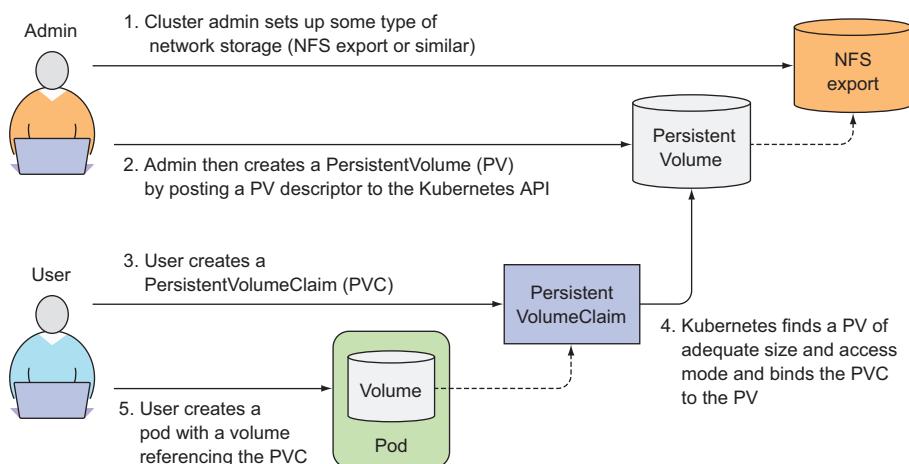
Ideally, a developer deploying their apps on Kubernetes should never have to know what kind of storage technology is used underneath, the same way they don't have to know what type of physical servers are being used to run their pods. Infrastructure-related dealings should be the sole domain of the cluster administrator.

When a developer needs a certain amount of persistent storage for their application, they can request it from Kubernetes, the same way they can request CPU, memory, and other resources when creating a pod. The system administrator can configure the cluster so it can give the apps what they request.

### 6.5.1 Introducing PersistentVolumes and PersistentVolumeClaims

To enable apps to request storage in a Kubernetes cluster without having to deal with infrastructure specifics, two new resources were introduced. They are `PersistentVolume` and `PersistentVolumeClaim`. The names may be a bit misleading, because as you've seen in the previous few sections, even regular Kubernetes volumes can be used to store persistent data.

Using a `PersistentVolume` inside a pod is a little more complex than using a regular pod volume, so let's illustrate how pods, `PersistentVolumeClaims`, `PersistentVolumes`, and the actual underlying storage relate to each other in figure 6.6.



**Figure 6.6** `PersistentVolumes` are provisioned by cluster admins and consumed by pods through `PersistentVolumeClaims`.

Instead of the developer adding a technology-specific volume to their pod, it's the cluster administrator who sets up the underlying storage and then registers it in Kubernetes by creating a PersistentVolume resource through the Kubernetes API server. When creating the PersistentVolume, the admin specifies its size and the access modes it supports.

When a cluster user needs to use persistent storage in one of their pods, they first create a PersistentVolumeClaim manifest, specifying the minimum size and the access mode they require. The user then submits the PersistentVolumeClaim manifest to the Kubernetes API server, and Kubernetes finds the appropriate PersistentVolume and binds the volume to the claim.

The PersistentVolumeClaim can then be used as one of the volumes inside a pod. Other users cannot use the same PersistentVolume until it has been released by deleting the bound PersistentVolumeClaim.

### 6.5.2 Creating a PersistentVolume

Let's revisit the MongoDB example, but unlike before, you won't reference the GCE Persistent Disk in the pod directly. Instead, you'll first assume the role of a cluster administrator and create a PersistentVolume backed by the GCE Persistent Disk. Then you'll assume the role of the application developer and first claim the PersistentVolume and then use it inside your pod.

In section 6.4.1 you set up the physical storage by provisioning the GCE Persistent Disk, so you don't need to do that again. All you need to do is create the PersistentVolume resource in Kubernetes by preparing the manifest shown in the following listing and posting it to the API server.

**Listing 6.9 A gcePersistentDisk PersistentVolume: mongodb-pv-gcep.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolume
metadata:
  name: mongodb-pv
spec:
  capacity:
    storage: 1Gi
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
    - ReadOnlyMany
  persistentVolumeReclaimPolicy: Retain
  gcePersistentDisk:
    pdName: mongodb
    fsType: ext4
```

**Defining the PersistentVolume's size**

It can either be mounted by a single client for reading and writing or by multiple clients for reading only.

The PersistentVolume is backed by the GCE Persistent Disk you created earlier.

After the claim is released, the PersistentVolume should be retained (not erased or deleted).

**NOTE** If you’re using Minikube, create the PV using the `mongodb-pv-hostpath.yaml` file.

When creating a PersistentVolume, the administrator needs to tell Kubernetes what its capacity is and whether it can be read from and/or written to by a single node or by multiple nodes at the same time. They also need to tell Kubernetes what to do with the PersistentVolume when it’s released (when the PersistentVolumeClaim it’s bound to is deleted). And last, but certainly not least, they need to specify the type, location, and other properties of the actual storage this PersistentVolume is backed by. If you look closely, this last part is exactly the same as earlier, when you referenced the GCE Persistent Disk in the pod volume directly (shown again in the following listing).

#### Listing 6.10 Referencing a GCE PD in a pod’s volume

```
spec:
  volumes:
    - name: mongodb-data
      gcePersistentDisk:
        pdName: mongodb
        fsType: ext4
...

```

After you create the PersistentVolume with the `kubectl create` command, it should be ready to be claimed. See if it is by listing all PersistentVolumes:

```
$ kubectl get pv
NAME      CAPACITY   RECLAIMPOLICY   ACCESSMODES   STATUS     CLAIM
mongodb-pv  1Gi        Retain          RWO, ROX    Available
```

**NOTE** Several columns are omitted. Also, `pv` is used as a shorthand for `persistentvolume`.

As expected, the PersistentVolume is shown as Available, because you haven’t yet created the PersistentVolumeClaim.

**NOTE** PersistentVolumes don’t belong to any namespace (see figure 6.7). They’re cluster-level resources like nodes.

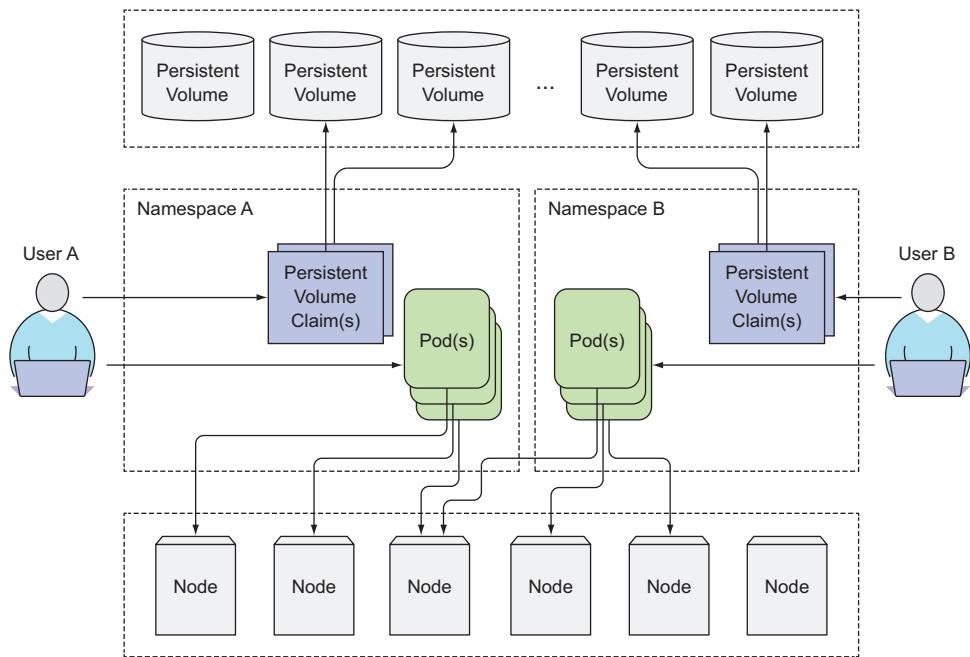


Figure 6.7 PersistentVolumes, like cluster Nodes, don't belong to any namespace, unlike pods and PersistentVolumeClaims.

### 6.5.3 Claiming a PersistentVolume by creating a PersistentVolumeClaim

Now let's lay down our admin hats and put our developer hats back on. Say you need to deploy a pod that requires persistent storage. You'll use the PersistentVolume you created earlier. But you can't use it directly in the pod. You need to claim it first.

Claiming a PersistentVolume is a completely separate process from creating a pod, because you want the same PersistentVolumeClaim to stay available even if the pod is rescheduled (remember, rescheduling means the previous pod is deleted and a new one is created).

#### CREATING A PERSISTENTVOLUMECLAIM

You'll create the claim now. You need to prepare a PersistentVolumeClaim manifest like the one shown in the following listing and post it to the Kubernetes API through `kubectl create`.

#### Listing 6.11 A PersistentVolumeClaim: `mongodb-pvc.yaml`

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  name: mongodb-pvc
```

The name of your claim—you'll need this later when using the claim as the pod's volume.

```
spec:
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 1Gi
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce
  storageClassName: ""
```

**Requesting 1 GiB of storage**

You want the storage to support a single client (performing both reads and writes).

You'll learn about this in the section about dynamic provisioning.

As soon as you create the claim, Kubernetes finds the appropriate PersistentVolume and binds it to the claim. The PersistentVolume's capacity must be large enough to accommodate what the claim requests. Additionally, the volume's access modes must include the access modes requested by the claim. In your case, the claim requests 1 GiB of storage and a ReadWriteOnce access mode. The PersistentVolume you created earlier matches those two requirements so it is bound to your claim. You can see this by inspecting the claim.

### LISTING PERSISTENTVOLUMECLAIMS

List all PersistentVolumeClaims to see the state of your PVC:

```
$ kubectl get pvc
NAME      STATUS      VOLUME      CAPACITY      ACCESSMODES      AGE
mongodb-pvc  Bound      mongodb-pv  1Gi          RWO,ROX        3s
```

**NOTE** We're using pvc as a shorthand for persistentvolumeclaim.

The claim is shown as Bound to PersistentVolume mongodb-pv. Note the abbreviations used for the access modes:

- RWO—ReadWriteOnce—Only a single node can mount the volume for reading and writing.
- ROX—ReadOnlyMany—Multiple nodes can mount the volume for reading.
- RWX—ReadWriteMany—Multiple nodes can mount the volume for both reading and writing.

**NOTE** RWO, ROX, and RWX pertain to the number of worker nodes that can use the volume at the same time, not to the number of pods!

### LISTING PERSISTENTVOLUMES

You can also see that the PersistentVolume is now Bound and no longer Available by inspecting it with kubectl get:

```
$ kubectl get pv
NAME      CAPACITY      ACCESSMODES      STATUS      CLAIM      AGE
mongodb-pv  1Gi          RWO,ROX        Bound      default/mongodb-pvc  1m
```

The PersistentVolume shows it's bound to claim default/mongodb-pvc. The default part is the namespace the claim resides in (you created the claim in the default

namespace). We've already said that PersistentVolume resources are cluster-scoped and thus cannot be created in a specific namespace, but PersistentVolumeClaims can only be created in a specific namespace. They can then only be used by pods in the same namespace.

#### 6.5.4 Using a PersistentVolumeClaim in a pod

The PersistentVolume is now yours to use. Nobody else can claim the same volume until you release it. To use it inside a pod, you need to reference the PersistentVolumeClaim by name inside the pod's volume (yes, the PersistentVolumeClaim, not the PersistentVolume directly!), as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 6.12 A pod using a PersistentVolumeClaim volume: mongodb-pod-pvc.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: mongodb
spec:
  containers:
    - image: mongo
      name: mongodb
      volumeMounts:
        - name: mongodb-data
          mountPath: /data/db
      ports:
        - containerPort: 27017
          protocol: TCP
  volumes:
    - name: mongodb-data
      persistentVolumeClaim:
        claimName: mongodb-pvc
```

Referencing the PersistentVolumeClaim  
by name in the pod volume

Go ahead and create the pod. Now, check to see if the pod is indeed using the same PersistentVolume and its underlying GCE PD. You should see the data you stored earlier by running the MongoDB shell again, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 6.13 Retrieving MongoDB's persisted data in the pod using the PVC and PV**

```
$ kubectl exec -it mongodb mongo
MongoDB shell version: 3.2.8
connecting to: mongodb://127.0.0.1:27017
Welcome to the MongoDB shell.
...
> use mystore
switched to db mystore
> db.foo.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("57a61eb9de0cf512374cc75"), "name" : "foo" }
```

And there it is. You're able to retrieve the document you stored into MongoDB previously.

### 6.5.5 Understanding the benefits of using PersistentVolumes and claims

Examine figure 6.8, which shows both ways a pod can use a GCE Persistent Disk—directly or through a PersistentVolume and claim.

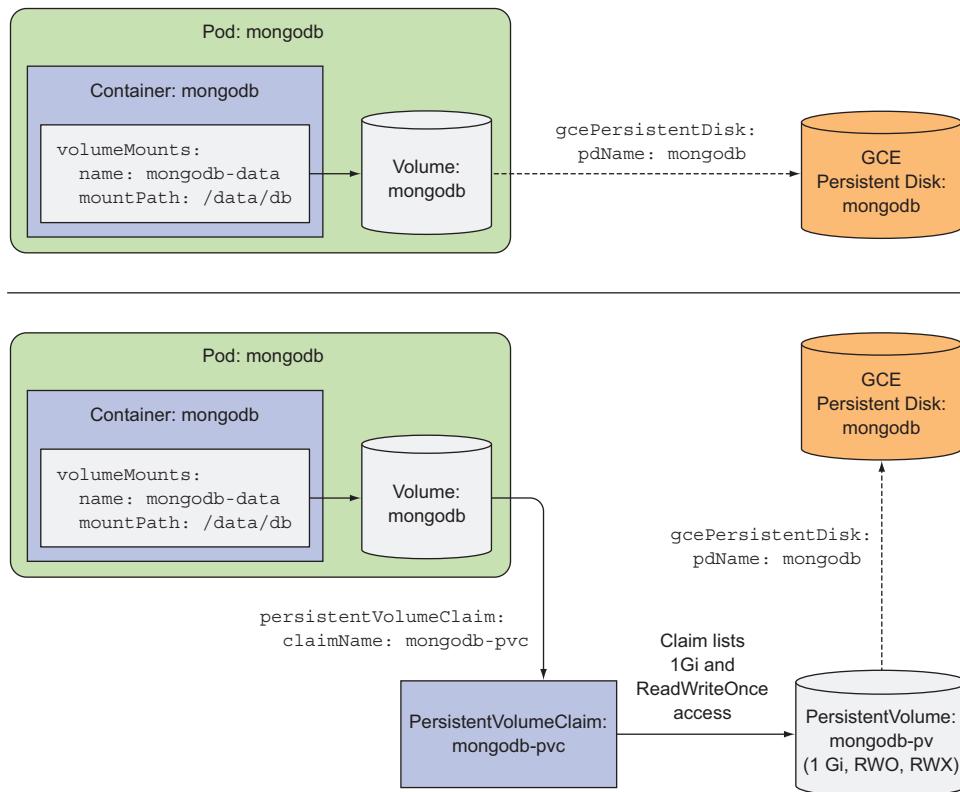


Figure 6.8 Using the GCE Persistent Disk directly or through a PVC and PV

Consider how using this indirect method of obtaining storage from the infrastructure is much simpler for the application developer (or cluster user). Yes, it does require the additional steps of creating the PersistentVolume and the PersistentVolumeClaim, but the developer doesn't have to know anything about the actual storage technology used underneath.

Additionally, the same pod and claim manifests can now be used on many different Kubernetes clusters, because they don't refer to anything infrastructure-specific. The claim states, "I need  $x$  amount of storage and I need to be able to read and write to it by a single client at once," and then the pod references the claim by name in one of its volumes.

### 6.5.6 Recycling PersistentVolumes

Before you wrap up this section on PersistentVolumes, let's do one last quick experiment. Delete the pod and the PersistentVolumeClaim:

```
$ kubectl delete pod mongodb
pod "mongodb" deleted
$ kubectl delete pvc mongodb-pvc
persistentvolumeclaim "mongodb-pvc" deleted
```

What if you create the PersistentVolumeClaim again? Will it be bound to the PersistentVolume or not? After you create the claim, what does `kubectl get pvc` show?

```
$ kubectl get pvc
NAME      STATUS      VOLUME      CAPACITY      ACCESSMODES      AGE
mongodb-pvc  Pending
```

The claim's status is shown as `Pending`. Interesting. When you created the claim earlier, it was immediately bound to the PersistentVolume, so why wasn't it bound now? Maybe listing the PersistentVolumes can shed more light on this:

```
$ kubectl get pv
NAME      CAPACITY      ACCESSMODES      STATUS      CLAIM      REASON      AGE
mongodb-pv  1Gi          RWO,ROX        Released    default/mongodb-pvc
```

The `STATUS` column shows the PersistentVolume as `Released`, not `Available` like before. Because you've already used the volume, it may contain data and shouldn't be bound to a completely new claim without giving the cluster admin a chance to clean it up. Without this, a new pod using the same PersistentVolume could read the data stored there by the previous pod, even if the claim and pod were created in a different namespace (and thus likely belong to a different cluster tenant).

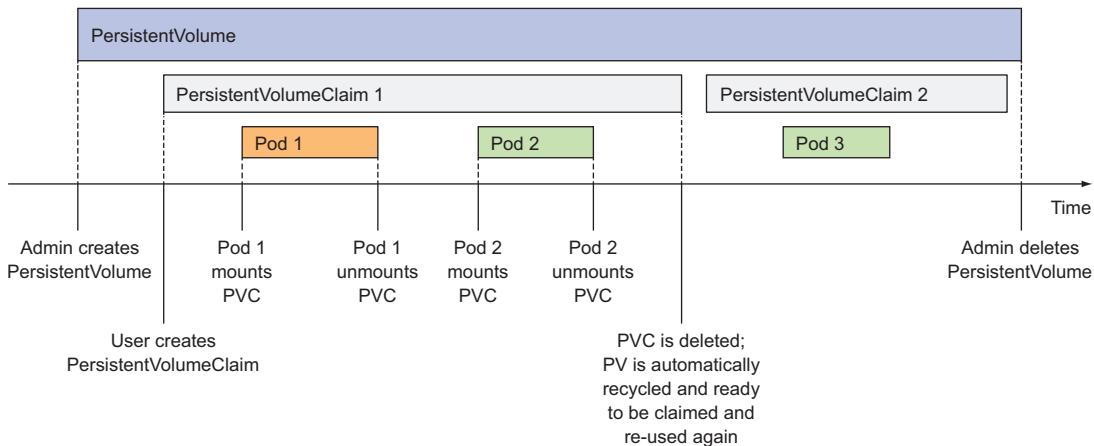
#### RECLAIMING PERSISTENTVOLUMES MANUALLY

You told Kubernetes you wanted your PersistentVolume to behave like this when you created it—by setting its `persistentVolumeReclaimPolicy` to `Retain`. You wanted Kubernetes to retain the volume and its contents after it's released from its claim. As far as I'm aware, the only way to manually recycle the PersistentVolume to make it available again is to delete and recreate the PersistentVolume resource. As you do that, it's your decision what to do with the files on the underlying storage: you can either delete them or leave them alone so they can be reused by the next pod.

#### RECLAIMING PERSISTENTVOLUMES AUTOMATICALLY

Two other possible reclaim policies exist: `Recycle` and `Delete`. The first one deletes the volume's contents and makes the volume available to be claimed again. This way, the PersistentVolume can be reused multiple times by different PersistentVolume-Claims and different pods, as you can see in figure 6.9.

The `Delete` policy, on the other hand, deletes the underlying storage. Note that the `Recycle` option is currently not available for GCE Persistent Disks. This type of



**Figure 6.9** The lifespan of a PersistentVolume, PersistentVolumeClaims, and pods using them

A PersistentVolume only supports the Retain or Delete policies. Other PersistentVolume types may or may not support each of these options, so before creating your own PersistentVolume, be sure to check what reclaim policies are supported for the specific underlying storage you'll use in the volume.

**TIP** You can change the PersistentVolume reclaim policy on an existing PersistentVolume. For example, if it's initially set to Delete, you can easily change it to Retain to prevent losing valuable data.

## 6.6 Dynamic provisioning of PersistentVolumes

You've seen how using PersistentVolumes and PersistentVolumeClaims makes it easy to obtain persistent storage without the developer having to deal with the actual storage technology used underneath. But this still requires a cluster administrator to provision the actual storage up front. Luckily, Kubernetes can also perform this job automatically through dynamic provisioning of PersistentVolumes.

The cluster admin, instead of creating PersistentVolumes, can deploy a PersistentVolume provisioner and define one or more StorageClass objects to let users choose what type of PersistentVolume they want. The users can refer to the StorageClass in their PersistentVolumeClaims and the provisioner will take that into account when provisioning the persistent storage.

**NOTE** Similar to PersistentVolumes, StorageClass resources aren't namespaced.

Kubernetes includes provisioners for the most popular cloud providers, so the administrator doesn't always need to deploy a provisioner. But if Kubernetes is deployed on-premises, a custom provisioner needs to be deployed.

Instead of the administrator pre-provisioning a bunch of PersistentVolumes, they need to define one or two (or more) StorageClasses and let the system create a new PersistentVolume each time one is requested through a PersistentVolumeClaim. The great thing about this is that it's impossible to run out of PersistentVolumes (obviously, you can run out of storage space).

### 6.6.1 Defining the available storage types through `StorageClass` resources

Before a user can create a PersistentVolumeClaim, which will result in a new PersistentVolume being provisioned, an admin needs to create one or more StorageClass resources. Let's look at an example of one in the following listing.

**Listing 6.14 A `StorageClass` definition: `storageclass-fast-gcepd.yaml`**

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: fast
provisioner: kubernetes.io/gce-pd
parameters:
  type: pd-ssd
  zone: europe-west1-b
```

The volume plugin to use for provisioning the PersistentVolume

The parameters passed to the provisioner

**NOTE** If using Minikube, deploy the file `storageclass-fast-hostpath.yaml`.

The StorageClass resource specifies which provisioner should be used for provisioning the PersistentVolume when a PersistentVolumeClaim requests this StorageClass. The parameters defined in the StorageClass definition are passed to the provisioner and are specific to each provisioner plugin.

The StorageClass uses the Google Compute Engine (GCE) Persistent Disk (PD) provisioner, which means it can be used when Kubernetes is running in GCE. For other cloud providers, other provisioners need to be used.

### 6.6.2 Requesting the storage class in a `PersistentVolumeClaim`

After the StorageClass resource is created, users can refer to the storage class by name in their PersistentVolumeClaims.

#### CREATING A PVC DEFINITION REQUESTING A SPECIFIC STORAGE CLASS

You can modify your `mongodb-pvc` to use dynamic provisioning. The following listing shows the updated YAML definition of the PVC.

**Listing 6.15 A PVC with dynamic provisioning: `mongodb-pvc-dp.yaml`**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  name: mongodb-pvc
```

```

spec:
  storageClassName: fast
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 100Mi
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce

```

← This PVC requests the custom storage class.

Apart from specifying the size and access modes, your PersistentVolumeClaim now also specifies the class of storage you want to use. When you create the claim, the PersistentVolume is created by the provisioner referenced in the `fast` StorageClass resource. The provisioner is used even if an existing manually provisioned PersistentVolume matches the PersistentVolumeClaim.

**NOTE** If you reference a non-existing storage class in a PVC, the provisioning of the PV will fail (you'll see a `ProvisioningFailed` event when you use `kubectl describe` on the PVC).

### EXAMINING THE CREATED PVC AND THE DYNAMICALLY PROVISIONED PV

Next you'll create the PVC and then use `kubectl get` to see it:

```
$ kubectl get pvc mongodb-pvc
NAME      STATUS  VOLUME        CAPACITY  ACCESSMODES  STORAGECLASS
mongodb-pvc  Bound   pvc-1e6bc048  1Gi       RWO          fast
```

The `VOLUME` column shows the PersistentVolume that's bound to this claim (the actual name is longer than what's shown above). You can try listing PersistentVolumes now to see that a new PV has indeed been created automatically:

```
$ kubectl get pv
NAME      CAPACITY  ACCESSMODES  RECLAIMPOLICY  STATUS  STORAGECLASS
mongodb-pv  1Gi       RWO, ROX   Retain         Released
pvc-1e6bc048  1Gi       RWO       Delete         Bound   fast
```

**NOTE** Only pertinent columns are shown.

You can see the dynamically provisioned PersistentVolume. Its capacity and access modes are what you requested in the PVC. Its reclaim policy is `Delete`, which means the PersistentVolume will be deleted when the PVC is deleted. Beside the PV, the provisioner also provisioned the actual storage. Your `fast` StorageClass is configured to use the `kubernetes.io/gce-pd` provisioner, which provisions GCE Persistent Disks. You can see the disk with the following command:

```
$ gcloud compute disks list
NAME           ZONE        SIZE_GB  TYPE      STATUS
gke-kubia-dyn-pvc-1e6bc048  europe-west1-d  1        pd-ssd    READY
gke-kubia-default-pool-71df  europe-west1-d  100     pd-standard  READY
gke-kubia-default-pool-79cd  europe-west1-d  100     pd-standard  READY
gke-kubia-default-pool-blc4  europe-west1-d  100     pd-standard  READY
mongodb          europe-west1-d  1        pd-standard  READY
```

As you can see, the first persistent disk's name suggests it was provisioned dynamically and its type shows it's an SSD, as specified in the storage class you created earlier.

#### **UNDERSTANDING HOW TO USE STORAGE CLASSES**

The cluster admin can create multiple storage classes with different performance or other characteristics. The developer then decides which one is most appropriate for each claim they create.

The nice thing about StorageClasses is the fact that claims refer to them by name. The PVC definitions are therefore portable across different clusters, as long as the StorageClass names are the same across all of them. To see this portability yourself, you can try running the same example on Minikube, if you've been using GKE up to this point. As a cluster admin, you'll have to create a different storage class (but with the same name). The storage class defined in the storageclass-fast-hostpath.yaml file is tailor-made for use in Minikube. Then, once you deploy the storage class, you as a cluster user can deploy the exact same PVC manifest and the exact same pod manifest as before. This shows how the pods and PVCs are portable across different clusters.

### **6.6.3 Dynamic provisioning without specifying a storage class**

As we've progressed through this chapter, attaching persistent storage to pods has become ever simpler. The sections in this chapter reflect how provisioning of storage has evolved from early Kubernetes versions to now. In this final section, we'll look at the latest and simplest way of attaching a PersistentVolume to a pod.

#### **LISTING STORAGE CLASSES**

When you created your custom storage class called `fast`, you didn't check if any existing storage classes were already defined in your cluster. Why don't you do that now? Here are the storage classes available in GKE:

```
$ kubectl get sc
NAME          TYPE
fast          kubernetes.io/gce-pd
standard (default)  kubernetes.io/gce-pd
```

**NOTE** We're using `sc` as shorthand for `storageclass`.

Beside the `fast` storage class, which you created yourself, a `standard` storage class exists and is marked as default. You'll learn what that means in a moment. Let's list the storage classes available in Minikube, so we can compare:

```
$ kubectl get sc
NAME          TYPE
fast          k8s.io/minikube-hostpath
standard (default)  k8s.io/minikube-hostpath
```

Again, the `fast` storage class was created by you and a default `standard` storage class exists here as well. Comparing the `TYPE` columns in the two listings, you see GKE is

using the `kubernetes.io/gce-pd` provisioner, whereas Minikube is using `k8s.io/minikube-hostpath`.

### EXAMINING THE DEFAULT STORAGE CLASS

You're going to use `kubectl get` to see more info about the standard storage class in a GKE cluster, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 6.16 The definition of the standard storage class on GKE

```
$ kubectl get sc standard -o yaml
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  annotations:
    storageclass.beta.kubernetes.io/is-default-class: "true" ← This annotation marks the storage class as default.
  creationTimestamp: 2017-05-16T15:24:11Z
  labels:
    addonmanager.kubernetes.io/mode: EnsureExists
    kubernetes.io/cluster-service: "true"
  name: standard
  resourceVersion: "180"
  selfLink: /apis/storage.k8s.io/v1/storageclassesstandard
  uid: b6498511-3a4b-11e7-ba2c-42010a840014
parameters:
  type: pd-standard ← The type parameter is used by the provisioner to know what type of GCE PD to create.
provisioner: kubernetes.io/gce-pd ← The GCE Persistent Disk provisioner is used to provision PVs of this class.
```

If you look closely toward the top of the listing, the storage class definition includes an annotation, which makes this the default storage class. The default storage class is what's used to dynamically provision a PersistentVolume if the PersistentVolumeClaim doesn't explicitly say which storage class to use.

### CREATING A PERSISTENTVOLUMECLAIM WITHOUT SPECIFYING A STORAGE CLASS

You can create a PVC without specifying the `storageClassName` attribute and (on Google Kubernetes Engine) a GCE Persistent Disk of type `pd-standard` will be provisioned for you. Try this by creating a claim from the YAML in the following listing.

#### Listing 6.17 PVC with no storage class defined: `mongodb-pvc-dp-nostorageclass.yaml`

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  name: mongodb-pvc2
spec:
  resources:
    requests:
      storage: 100Mi
  accessModes:
    - ReadWriteOnce ← You're not specifying the storageClassName attribute (unlike earlier examples).
```

This PVC definition includes only the storage size request and the desired access modes, but no storage class. When you create the PVC, whatever storage class is marked as default will be used. You can confirm that's the case:

```
$ kubectl get pvc mongodb-pvc2
NAME      STATUS    VOLUME      CAPACITY  ACCESSMODES  STORAGECLASS
mongodb-pvc2  Bound    pvc-95a5ec12  1Gi       RWO          standard

$ kubectl get pv pvc-95a5ec12
NAME      CAPACITY  ACCESSMODES  RECLAIMPOLICY  STATUS    STORAGECLASS
pvc-95a5ec12  1Gi       RWO          Delete        Bound    standard

$ gcloud compute disks list
NAME            ZONE      SIZE_GB  TYPE      STATUS
gke-kubia-dyn-pvc-95a5ec12  europe-west1-d  1        pd-standard  READY
...
```

### FORCING A PERSISTENTVOLUMECLAIM TO BE BOUND TO ONE OF THE PRE-PROVISIONED PERSISTENTVOLUMES

This finally brings us to why you set `storageClassName` to an empty string in listing 6.11 (when you wanted the PVC to bind to the PV you'd provisioned manually). Let me repeat the relevant lines of that PVC definition here:

```
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
spec:
  storageClassName: ""
```

Specifying an empty string as the storage class name ensures the PVC binds to a pre-provisioned PV instead of dynamically provisioning a new one.

If you hadn't set the `storageClassName` attribute to an empty string, the dynamic volume provisioner would have provisioned a new PersistentVolume, despite there being an appropriate pre-provisioned PersistentVolume. At that point, I wanted to demonstrate how a claim gets bound to a manually pre-provisioned PersistentVolume. I didn't want the dynamic provisioner to interfere.

**TIP** Explicitly set `storageClassName` to `""` if you want the PVC to use a pre-provisioned PersistentVolume.

### UNDERSTANDING THE COMPLETE PICTURE OF DYNAMIC PERSISTENTVOLUME PROVISIONING

This brings us to the end of this chapter. To summarize, the best way to attach persistent storage to a pod is to only create the PVC (with an explicitly specified `storageClassName` if necessary) and the pod (which refers to the PVC by name). Everything else is taken care of by the dynamic PersistentVolume provisioner.

To get a complete picture of the steps involved in getting a dynamically provisioned PersistentVolume, examine figure 6.10.

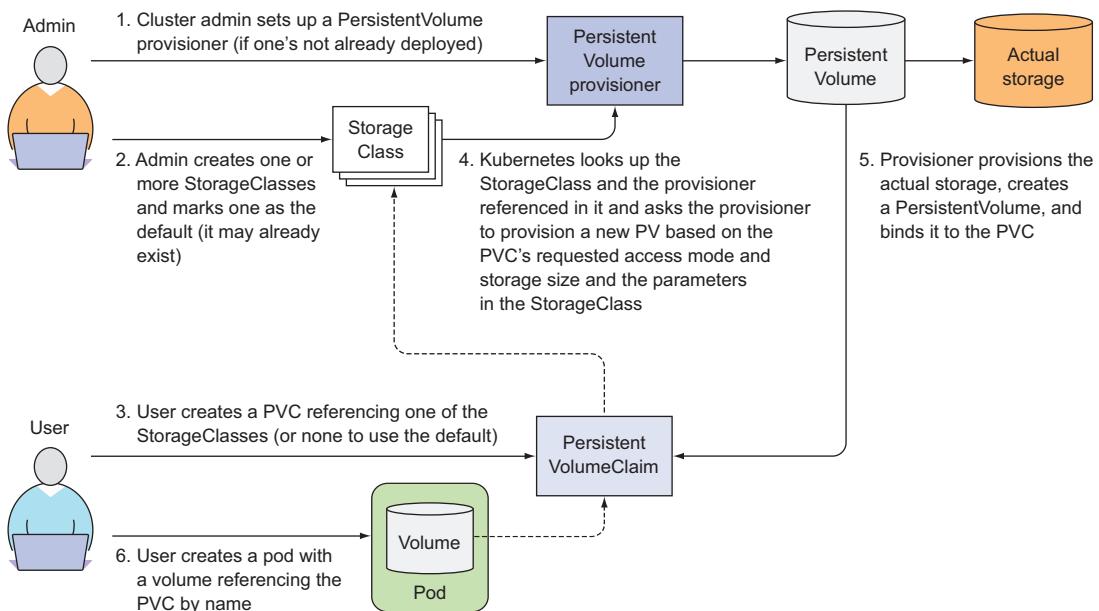


Figure 6.10 The complete picture of dynamic provisioning of PersistentVolumes

## 6.7 Summary

This chapter has shown you how volumes are used to provide either temporary or persistent storage to a pod’s containers. You’ve learned how to

- Create a multi-container pod and have the pod’s containers operate on the same files by adding a volume to the pod and mounting it in each container
- Use the `emptyDir` volume to store temporary, non-persistent data
- Use the `gitRepo` volume to easily populate a directory with the contents of a Git repository at pod startup
- Use the `hostPath` volume to access files from the host node
- Mount external storage in a volume to persist pod data across pod restarts
- Decouple the pod from the storage infrastructure by using PersistentVolumes and PersistentVolumeClaims
- Have PersistentVolumes of the desired (or the default) storage class dynamically provisioned for each PersistentVolumeClaim
- Prevent the dynamic provisioner from interfering when you want the PersistentVolumeClaim to be bound to a pre-provisioned PersistentVolume

In the next chapter, you’ll see what mechanisms Kubernetes provides to deliver configuration data, secret information, and metadata about the pod and container to the processes running inside a pod. This is done with the special types of volumes we’ve mentioned in this chapter, but not yet explored.



# *ConfigMaps and Secrets: configuring applications*

## This chapter covers

- Changing the main process of a container
- Passing command-line options to the app
- Setting environment variables exposed to the app
- Configuring apps through ConfigMaps
- Passing sensitive information through Secrets

Up to now you haven't had to pass any kind of configuration data to the apps you've run in the exercises in this book. Because almost all apps require configuration (settings that differ between deployed instances, credentials for accessing external systems, and so on), which shouldn't be baked into the built app itself, let's see how to pass configuration options to your app when running it in Kubernetes.

### **7.1    *Configuring containerized applications***

Before we go over how to pass configuration data to apps running in Kubernetes, let's look at how containerized applications are usually configured.

If you skip the fact that you can bake the configuration into the application itself, when starting development of a new app, you usually start off by having the

app configured through command-line arguments. Then, as the list of configuration options grows, you can move the configuration into a config file.

Another way of passing configuration options to an application that's widely popular in containerized applications is through environment variables. Instead of having the app read a config file or command-line arguments, the app looks up the value of a certain environment variable. The official MySQL container image, for example, uses an environment variable called `MYSQL_ROOT_PASSWORD` for setting the password for the root super-user account.

But why are environment variables so popular in containers? Using configuration files inside Docker containers is a bit tricky, because you'd have to bake the config file into the container image itself or mount a volume containing the file into the container. Obviously, baking files into the image is similar to hardcoding configuration into the source code of the application, because it requires you to rebuild the image every time you want to change the config. Plus, everyone with access to the image can see the config, including any information that should be kept secret, such as credentials or encryption keys. Using a volume is better, but still requires you to make sure the file is written to the volume before the container is started.

If you've read the previous chapter, you might think of using a `gitRepo` volume as a configuration source. That's not a bad idea, because it allows you to keep the config nicely versioned and enables you to easily rollback a config change if necessary. But a simpler way allows you to put the configuration data into a top-level Kubernetes resource and store it and all the other resource definitions in the same Git repository or in any other file-based storage. The Kubernetes resource for storing configuration data is called a ConfigMap. We'll learn how to use it in this chapter.

Regardless if you're using a ConfigMap to store configuration data or not, you can configure your apps by

- Passing command-line arguments to containers
- Setting custom environment variables for each container
- Mounting configuration files into containers through a special type of volume

We'll go over all these options in the next few sections, but before we start, let's look at config options from a security perspective. Though most configuration options don't contain any sensitive information, several can. These include credentials, private encryption keys, and similar data that needs to be kept secure. This type of information needs to be handled with special care, which is why Kubernetes offers another type of first-class object called a Secret. We'll learn about it in the last part of this chapter.

## 7.2 ***Passing command-line arguments to containers***

In all the examples so far, you've created containers that ran the default command defined in the container image, but Kubernetes allows overriding the command as part of the pod's container definition when you want to run a different executable

instead of the one specified in the image, or want to run it with a different set of command-line arguments. We'll look at how to do that now.

### 7.2.1 Defining the command and arguments in Docker

The first thing I need to explain is that the whole command that gets executed in the container is composed of two parts: the *command* and the *arguments*.

#### UNDERSTANDING ENTRYPPOINT AND CMD

In a Dockerfile, two instructions define the two parts:

- ENTRYPPOINT defines the executable invoked when the container is started.
- CMD specifies the arguments that get passed to the ENTRYPPOINT.

Although you can use the `CMD` instruction to specify the command you want to execute when the image is run, the correct way is to do it through the `ENTRYPPOINT` instruction and to only specify the `CMD` if you want to define the default arguments. The image can then be run without specifying any arguments

```
$ docker run <image>
```

or with additional arguments, which override whatever's set under `CMD` in the Dockerfile:

```
$ docker run <image> <arguments>
```

#### UNDERSTANDING THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THE SHELL AND EXEC FORMS

But there's more. Both instructions support two different forms:

- shell form—for example, `ENTRYPPOINT node app.js`.
- exec form—for example, `ENTRYPPOINT ["node", "app.js"]`.

The difference is whether the specified command is invoked inside a shell or not.

In the `kubia` image you created in chapter 2, you used the `exec` form of the `ENTRYPPOINT` instruction:

```
ENTRYPPOINT ["node", "app.js"]
```

This runs the `node` process directly (not inside a shell), as you can see by listing the processes running inside the container:

```
$ docker exec 4675d ps x
 PID TTY      STAT    TIME COMMAND
   1 ?        Ssl      0:00 node app.js
  12 ?        Rs       0:00 ps x
```

If you'd used the shell form (`ENTRYPPOINT node app.js`), these would have been the container's processes:

```
$ docker exec -it e4bad ps x
 PID TTY      STAT    TIME COMMAND
   1 ?        Ss       0:00 /bin/sh -c node app.js
```

```
7 ?      S1      0:00 node app.js
13 ?     Rs+     0:00 ps x
```

As you can see, in that case, the main process (PID 1) would be the shell process instead of the node process. The node process (PID 7) would be started from that shell. The shell process is unnecessary, which is why you should always use the exec form of the ENTRYPOINT instruction.

### MAKING THE INTERVAL CONFIGURABLE IN YOUR FORTUNE IMAGE

Let's modify your fortune script and image so the delay interval in the loop is configurable. You'll add an INTERVAL variable and initialize it with the value of the first command-line argument, as shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing 7.1 Fortune script with interval configurable through argument: fortune-args/fortuneloop.sh**

```
#!/bin/bash
trap "exit" SIGINT
INTERVAL=$1
echo Configured to generate new fortune every $INTERVAL seconds
mkdir -p /var/htdocs
while :
do
    echo $(date) Writing fortune to /var/htdocs/index.html
    /usr/games/fortune > /var/htdocs/index.html
    sleep $INTERVAL
done
```

You've added or modified the lines in bold font. Now, you'll modify the Dockerfile so it uses the exec version of the ENTRYPOINT instruction and sets the default interval to 10 seconds using the CMD instruction, as shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing 7.2 Dockerfile for the updated fortune image: fortune-args/Dockerfile**

```
FROM ubuntu:latest
RUN apt-get update ; apt-get -y install fortune
ADD fortuneloop.sh /bin/fortuneloop.sh
ENTRYPOINT ["/bin/fortuneloop.sh"]
CMD ["10"]
```

You can now build and push the image to Docker Hub. This time, you'll tag the image as args instead of latest:

```
$ docker build -t docker.io/luksa/fortune:args .
$ docker push docker.io/luksa/fortune:args
```

You can test the image by running it locally with Docker:

```
$ docker run -it docker.io/luksa/fortune:args
Configured to generate new fortune every 10 seconds
Fri May 19 10:39:44 UTC 2017 Writing fortune to /var/htdocs/index.html
```

**NOTE** You can stop the script with Control+C.

And you can override the default sleep interval by passing it as an argument:

```
$ docker run -it docker.io/luksa/fortune:args 15
Configured to generate new fortune every 15 seconds
```

Now that you're sure your image honors the argument passed to it, let's see how to use it in a pod.

### 7.2.2 Overriding the command and arguments in Kubernetes

In Kubernetes, when specifying a container, you can choose to override both ENTRYPOINT and CMD. To do that, you set the properties command and args in the container specification, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 7.3 A pod definition specifying a custom command and arguments

```
kind: Pod
spec:
  containers:
    - image: some/image
      command: ["/bin/command"]
      args: ["arg1", "arg2", "arg3"]
```

In most cases, you'll only set custom arguments and rarely override the command (except in general-purpose images such as busybox, which doesn't define an ENTRYPOINT at all).

**NOTE** The command and args fields can't be updated after the pod is created.

The two Dockerfile instructions and the equivalent pod spec fields are shown in table 7.1.

Table 7.1 Specifying the executable and its arguments in Docker vs Kubernetes

| Docker     | Kubernetes | Description   |
|------------|------------|---|
| ENTRYPOINT | command    | The executable that's executed inside the container |
| CMD        | args       | The arguments passed to the executable              |

#### RUNNING THE FORTUNE POD WITH A CUSTOM INTERVAL

To run the fortune pod with a custom delay interval, you'll copy your fortune-pod.yaml into fortune-pod-args.yaml and modify it as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 7.4 Passing an argument in the pod definition: fortune-pod-args.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: fortune2s
```

You changed the  
pod's name.

```

spec:
  containers:
    - image: luksa/fortune:args
      args: ["2"]
      name: html-generator
      volumeMounts:
        - name: html
          mountPath: /var/htdocs
...

```

Using fortune:args  
instead of fortune:latest

This argument makes the  
script generate a new fortune  
every two seconds.

You added the `args` array to the container definition. Try creating this pod now. The values of the array will be passed to the container as command-line arguments when it is run.

The array notation used in this listing is great if you have one argument or a few. If you have several, you can also use the following notation:

```

args:
- foo
- bar
- "15"

```

**TIP** You don't need to enclose string values in quotations marks (but you must enclose numbers).

Specifying arguments is one way of passing config options to your containers through command-line arguments. Next, you'll see how to do it through environment variables.

### 7.3 Setting environment variables for a container

As I've already mentioned, containerized applications often use environment variables as a source of configuration options. Kubernetes allows you to specify a custom list of environment variables for each container of a pod, as shown in figure 7.1. Although it would be useful to also define environment variables at the pod level and have them be inherited by its containers, no such option currently exists.

**NOTE** Like the container's command and arguments, the list of environment variables also cannot be updated after the pod is created.

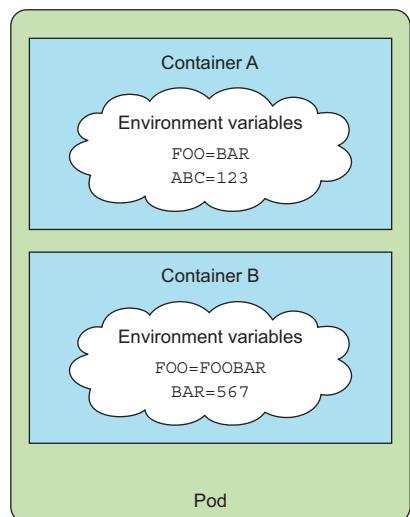


Figure 7.1 Environment variables can be set per container.

## MAKING THE INTERVAL IN YOUR FORTUNE IMAGE CONFIGURABLE THROUGH AN ENVIRONMENT VARIABLE

Let's see how to modify your `fortuneloop.sh` script once again to allow it to be configured from an environment variable, as shown in the following listing.

### Listing 7.5 Fortune script with interval configurable through env var: fortune-env/fortuneloop.sh

```
#!/bin/bash
trap "exit" SIGINT
echo Configured to generate new fortune every $INTERVAL seconds
mkdir -p /var/htdocs
while :
do
    echo $(date) Writing fortune to /var/htdocs/index.html
    /usr/games/fortune > /var/htdocs/index.html
    sleep $INTERVAL
done
```

All you had to do was remove the row where the `INTERVAL` variable is initialized. Because your “app” is a simple bash script, you didn’t need to do anything else. If the app was written in Java you’d use `System.getenv("INTERVAL")`, whereas in Node.JS you’d use `process.env.INTERVAL`, and in Python you’d use `os.environ['INTERVAL']`.

### 7.3.1 Specifying environment variables in a container definition

After building the new image (I’ve tagged it as `luksa/fortune:env` this time) and pushing it to Docker Hub, you can run it by creating a new pod, in which you pass the environment variable to the script by including it in your container definition, as shown in the following listing.

### Listing 7.6 Defining an environment variable in a pod: fortune-pod-env.yaml

```
kind: Pod
spec:
  containers:
  - image: luksa/fortune:env
    env:
      - name: INTERVAL
        value: "30"
    name: html-generator
...

```

Adding a single variable to  
the environment variable list

As mentioned previously, you set the environment variable inside the container definition, not at the pod level.

**NOTE** Don’t forget that in each container, Kubernetes also automatically exposes environment variables for each service in the same namespace. These environment variables are basically auto-injected configuration.

### 7.3.2 Referring to other environment variables in a variable's value

In the previous example, you set a fixed value for the environment variable, but you can also reference previously defined environment variables or any other existing variables by using the `$ (VAR)` syntax. If you define two environment variables, the second one can include the value of the first one as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 7.7 Referring to an environment variable inside another one

```
env:
- name: FIRST_VAR
  value: "foo"
- name: SECOND_VAR
  value: "${FIRST_VAR}bar"
```

In this case, the `SECOND_VAR`'s value will be `"foobar"`. Similarly, both the `command` and `args` attributes you learned about in section 7.2 can also refer to environment variables like this. You'll use this method in section 7.4.5.

### 7.3.3 Understanding the drawback of hardcoded environment variables

Having values effectively hardcoded in the pod definition means you need to have separate pod definitions for your production and your development pods. To reuse the same pod definition in multiple environments, it makes sense to decouple the configuration from the pod descriptor. Luckily, you can do that using a ConfigMap resource and using it as a source for environment variable values using the `valueFrom` instead of the `value` field. You'll learn about this next.

## 7.4 Decoupling configuration with a ConfigMap

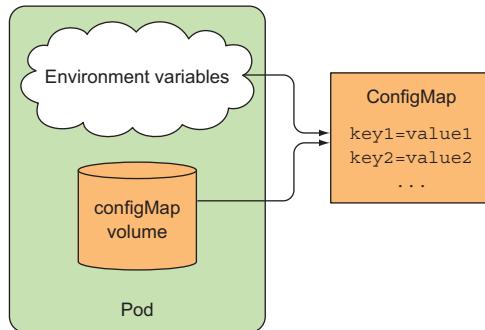
The whole point of an app's configuration is to keep the config options that vary between environments, or change frequently, separate from the application's source code. If you think of a pod descriptor as source code for your app (and in microservices architectures that's what it really is, because it defines how to compose the individual components into a functioning system), it's clear you should move the configuration out of the pod description.

### 7.4.1 Introducing ConfigMaps

Kubernetes allows separating configuration options into a separate object called a ConfigMap, which is a map containing key/value pairs with the values ranging from short literals to full config files.

An application doesn't need to read the ConfigMap directly or even know that it exists. The contents of the map are instead passed to containers as either environment variables or as files in a volume (see figure 7.2). And because environment

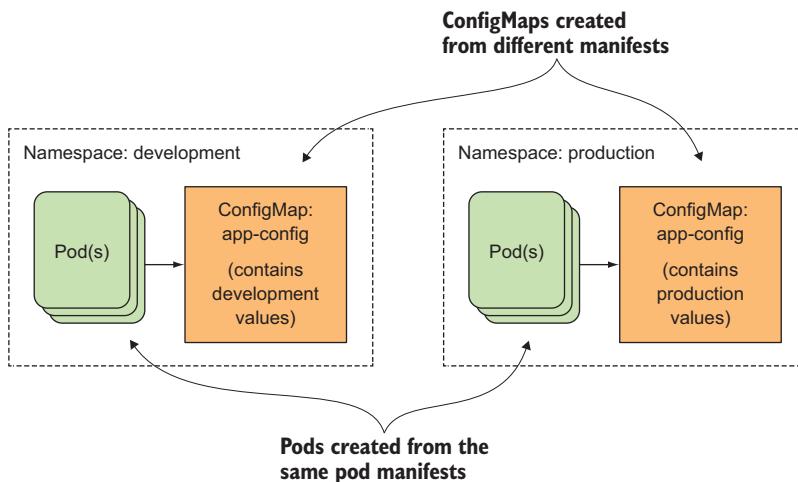
variables can be referenced in command-line arguments using the `$(ENV_VAR)` syntax, you can also pass ConfigMap entries to processes as command-line arguments.



**Figure 7.2** Pods use ConfigMaps through environment variables and configMap volumes.

Sure, the application can also read the contents of a ConfigMap directly through the Kubernetes REST API endpoint if needed, but unless you have a real need for this, you should keep your app Kubernetes-agnostic as much as possible.

Regardless of how an app consumes a ConfigMap, having the config in a separate standalone object like this allows you to keep multiple manifests for ConfigMaps with the same name, each for a different environment (development, testing, QA, production, and so on). Because pods reference the ConfigMap by name, you can use a different config in each environment while using the same pod specification across all of them (see figure 7.3).



**Figure 7.3** Two different ConfigMaps with the same name used in different environments

## 7.4.2 Creating a ConfigMap

Let's see how to use a ConfigMap in one of your pods. To start with the simplest example, you'll first create a map with a single key and use it to fill the `INTERVAL` environment variable from your previous example. You'll create the ConfigMap with the special `kubectl create configmap` command instead of posting a YAML with the generic `kubectl create -f` command.

### USING THE KUBECTL CREATE CONFIGMAP COMMAND

You can define the map's entries by passing literals to the `kubectl` command or you can create the ConfigMap from files stored on your disk. Use a simple literal first:

```
$ kubectl create configmap fortune-config --from-literal=sleep-interval=25
configmap "fortune-config" created
```

**NOTE** ConfigMap keys must be a valid DNS subdomain (they may only contain alphanumeric characters, dashes, underscores, and dots). They may optionally include a leading dot.

This creates a ConfigMap called `fortune-config` with the single-entry `sleep-interval =25` (figure 7.4).

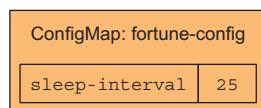


Figure 7.4 The `fortune-config` ConfigMap containing a single entry

ConfigMaps usually contain more than one entry. To create a ConfigMap with multiple literal entries, you add multiple `--from-literal` arguments:

```
$ kubectl create configmap myconfigmap
  --from-literal=foo=bar --from-literal=bar=baz --from-literal=one=two
```

Let's inspect the YAML descriptor of the ConfigMap you created by using the `kubectl get` command, as shown in the following listing.

### Listing 7.8 A ConfigMap definition

```
$ kubectl get configmap fortune-config -o yaml
apiVersion: v1
data:
  sleep-interval: "25"
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
  creationTimestamp: 2016-08-11T20:31:08Z
  name: fortune-config
  namespace: default
  resourceVersion: "910025"
  selfLink: /api/v1/namespaces/default/configmaps/fortune-config
  uid: 88c4167e-6002-11e6-a50d-42010af00237
```

Nothing extraordinary. You could easily have written this YAML yourself (you wouldn’t need to specify anything but the name in the `metadata` section, of course) and posted it to the Kubernetes API with the well-known

```
$ kubectl create -f fortune-config.yaml
```

#### CREATING A CONFIGMAP ENTRY FROM THE CONTENTS OF A FILE

ConfigMaps can also store coarse-grained config data, such as complete config files. To do this, the `kubectl create configmap` command also supports reading files from disk and storing them as individual entries in the ConfigMap:

```
$ kubectl create configmap my-config --from-file=config-file.conf
```

When you run the previous command, `kubectl` looks for the file `config-file.conf` in the directory you run `kubectl` in. It will then store the contents of the file under the key `config-file.conf` in the ConfigMap (the filename is used as the map key), but you can also specify a key manually like this:

```
$ kubectl create configmap my-config --from-file=customkey=config-file.conf
```

This command will store the file’s contents under the key `customkey`. As with literals, you can add multiple files by using the `--from-file` argument multiple times.

#### CREATING A CONFIGMAP FROM FILES IN A DIRECTORY

Instead of importing each file individually, you can even import all files from a file directory:

```
$ kubectl create configmap my-config --from-file=/path/to/dir
```

In this case, `kubectl` will create an individual map entry for each file in the specified directory, but only for files whose name is a valid ConfigMap key.

#### COMBINING DIFFERENT OPTIONS

When creating ConfigMaps, you can use a combination of all the options mentioned here (note that these files aren’t included in the book’s code archive—you can create them yourself if you’d like to try out the command):

```
$ kubectl create configmap my-config
  --from-file=foo.json
  --from-file=bar=foobar.conf
  --from-file=config-opts/
  --from-literal=some=thing
```

The diagram illustrates the four ways to create a ConfigMap entry using the `--from-file` option:

- A single file:** Represented by a bracket pointing to the first command line argument, `--from-file=foo.json`.
- A file stored under a custom key:** Represented by a bracket pointing to the second command line argument, `--from-file=bar=foobar.conf`.
- A whole directory:** Represented by a bracket pointing to the third command line argument, `--from-file=config-opts/`.
- A literal value:** Represented by a bracket pointing to the fourth command line argument, `--from-literal=some=thing`.

Here, you’ve created the ConfigMap from multiple sources: a whole directory, a file, another file (but stored under a custom key instead of using the filename as the key), and a literal value. Figure 7.5 shows all these sources and the resulting ConfigMap.

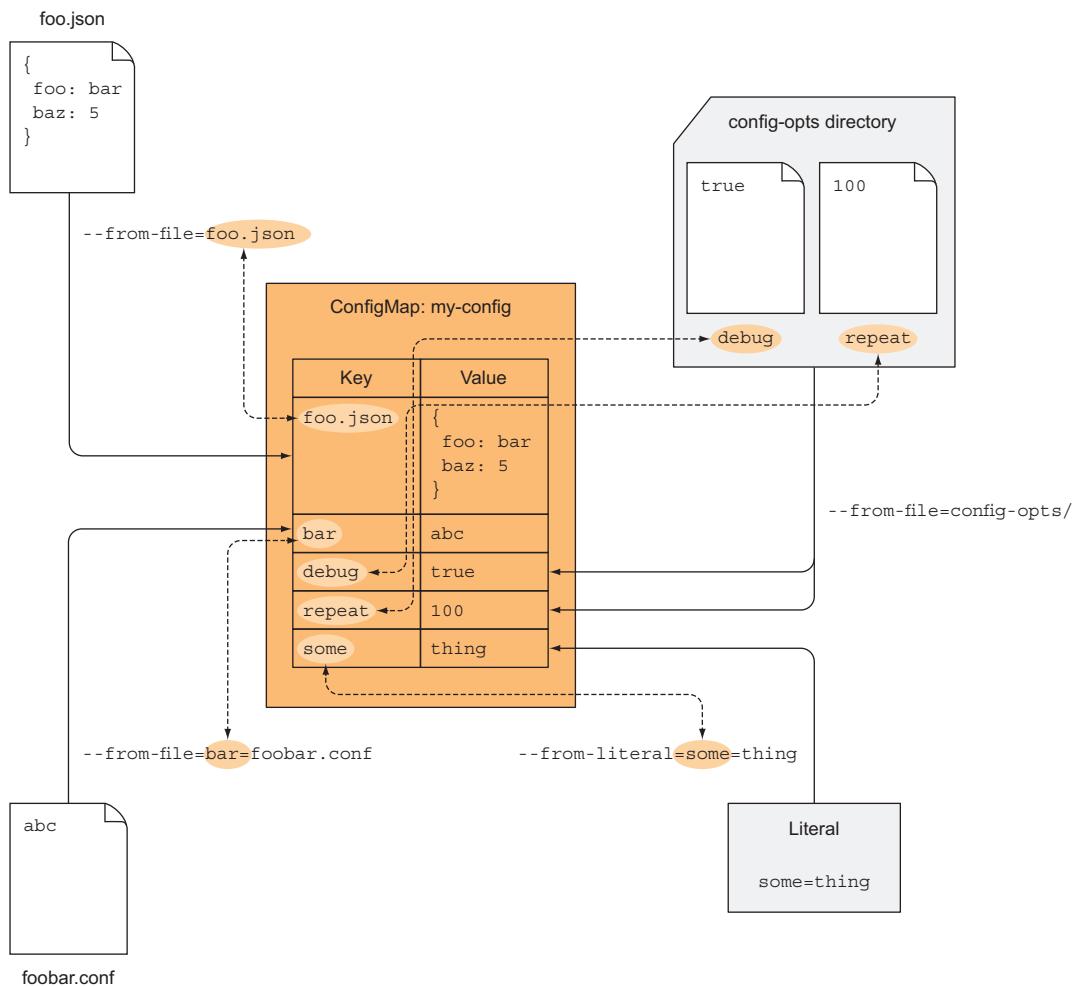


Figure 7.5 Creating a ConfigMap from individual files, a directory, and a literal value

### 7.4.3 Passing a ConfigMap entry to a container as an environment variable

How do you now get the values from this map into a pod's container? You have three options. Let's start with the simplest—setting an environment variable. You'll use the `valueFrom` field I mentioned in section 7.3.3. The pod descriptor should look like the following listing.

#### Listing 7.9 Pod with env var from a config map: fortune-pod-env-configmap.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
```

```

metadata:
  name: fortune-env-from-configmap
spec:
  containers:
    - image: luksa/fortune:env
      env:
        - name: INTERVAL
          valueFrom:
            configMapKeyRef:
              name: fortune-config
              key: sleep-interval
...

```

You're setting the environment variable called INTERVAL.

Instead of setting a fixed value, you're initializing it from a ConfigMap key.

The name of the ConfigMap you're referencing

You're setting the variable to whatever is stored under this key in the ConfigMap.

You defined an environment variable called `INTERVAL` and set its value to whatever is stored in the `fortune-config` ConfigMap under the key `sleep-interval`. When the process running in the `html-generator` container reads the `INTERVAL` environment variable, it will see the value `25` (shown in figure 7.6).

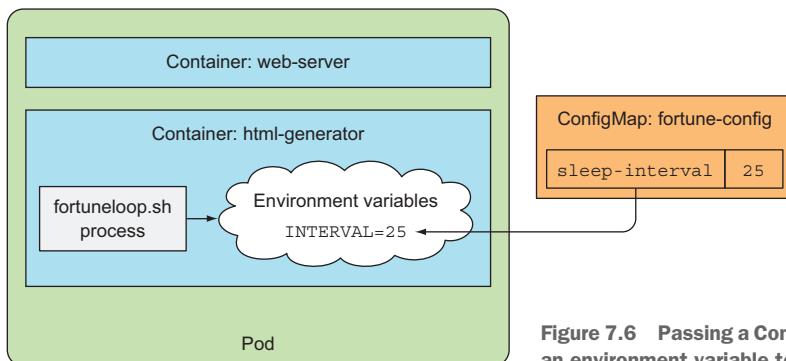


Figure 7.6 Passing a ConfigMap entry as an environment variable to a container

### REFERENCING NON-EXISTING CONFIGMAPS IN A POD

You might wonder what happens if the referenced ConfigMap doesn't exist when you create the pod. Kubernetes schedules the pod normally and tries to run its containers. The container referencing the non-existing ConfigMap will fail to start, but the other container will start normally. If you then create the missing ConfigMap, the failed container is started without requiring you to recreate the pod.

**NOTE** You can also mark a reference to a ConfigMap as optional (by setting `configMapKeyRef.optional: true`). In that case, the container starts even if the ConfigMap doesn't exist.

This example shows you how to decouple the configuration from the pod specification. This allows you to keep all the configuration options closely together (even for multiple pods) instead of having them splattered around the pod definition (or duplicated across multiple pod manifests).

#### 7.4.4 Passing all entries of a ConfigMap as environment variables at once

When your ConfigMap contains more than just a few entries, it becomes tedious and error-prone to create environment variables from each entry individually. Luckily, Kubernetes version 1.6 provides a way to expose all entries of a ConfigMap as environment variables.

Imagine having a ConfigMap with three keys called FOO, BAR, and FOO-BAR. You can expose them all as environment variables by using the `envFrom` attribute, instead of `env` the way you did in previous examples. The following listing shows an example.

##### Listing 7.10 Pod with env vars from all entries of a ConfigMap

```
spec:
  containers:
    - image: some-image
      envFrom:
        - prefix: CONFIG_
          configMapRef:
            name: my-config-map
      ...

```

The code snippet shows a portion of a YAML configuration for a pod's container. It includes an `envFrom` section where a `configMapRef` named `my-config-map` is used. Three annotations are overlaid on the code:

- Using `envFrom` instead of `env`**: Points to the `envFrom` key.
- All environment variables will be prefixed with `CONFIG_`.**: Points to the `prefix: CONFIG_` line.
- Referencing the ConfigMap called `my-config-map`**: Points to the `name: my-config-map` line.

As you can see, you can also specify a prefix for the environment variables (`CONFIG_` in this case). This results in the following two environment variables being present inside the container: `CONFIG_FOO` and `CONFIG_BAR`.

**NOTE** The prefix is optional, so if you omit it the environment variables will have the same name as the keys.

Did you notice I said two variables, but earlier, I said the ConfigMap has three entries (FOO, BAR, and FOO-BAR)? Why is there no environment variable for the FOO-BAR ConfigMap entry?

The reason is that `CONFIG_FOO-BAR` isn't a valid environment variable name because it contains a dash. Kubernetes doesn't convert the keys in any way (it doesn't convert dashes to underscores, for example). If a ConfigMap key isn't in the proper format, it skips the entry (but it does record an event informing you it skipped it).

#### 7.4.5 Passing a ConfigMap entry as a command-line argument

Now, let's also look at how to pass values from a ConfigMap as arguments to the main process running in the container. You can't reference ConfigMap entries directly in the `pod.spec.containers.args` field, but you can first initialize an environment variable from the ConfigMap entry and then refer to the variable inside the arguments as shown in figure 7.7.

Listing 7.11 shows an example of how to do this in the YAML.

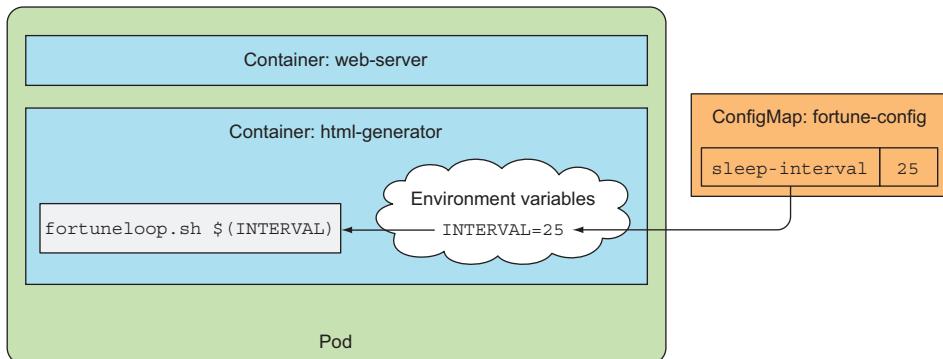


Figure 7.7 Passing a ConfigMap entry as a command-line argument

**Listing 7.11 Using ConfigMap entries as arguments: fortune-pod-args-configmap.yaml**

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: fortune-args-from-configmap
spec:
  containers:
    - image: luksa/fortune:args
      env:
        - name: INTERVAL
          valueFrom:
            configMapKeyRef:
              name: fortune-config
              key: sleep-interval
      args: ["$(INTERVAL)"]
...

```

Using the image that takes the interval from the first argument, not from an environment variable

Defining the environment variable exactly as before

Referencing the environment variable in the argument

You defined the environment variable exactly as you did before, but then you used the `$(ENV_VARIABLE_NAME)` syntax to have Kubernetes inject the value of the variable into the argument.

#### 7.4.6 Using a configMap volume to expose ConfigMap entries as files

Passing configuration options as environment variables or command-line arguments is usually used for short variable values. A ConfigMap, as you've seen, can also contain whole config files. When you want to expose those to the container, you can use one of the special volume types I mentioned in the previous chapter, namely a configMap volume.

A configMap volume will expose each entry of the ConfigMap as a file. The process running in the container can obtain the entry's value by reading the contents of the file.

Although this method is mostly meant for passing large config files to the container, nothing prevents you from passing short single values this way.

### CREATING THE CONFIGMAP

Instead of modifying your `fortuneloop.sh` script once again, you'll now try a different example. You'll use a config file to configure the Nginx web server running inside the `fortune` pod's web-server container. Let's say you want your Nginx server to compress responses it sends to the client. To enable compression, the config file for Nginx needs to look like the following listing.

#### **Listing 7.12 An Nginx config with enabled gzip compression: my-nginx-config.conf**

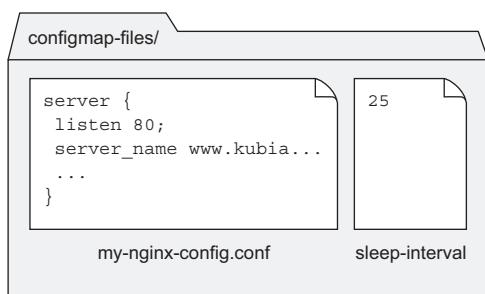
```
server {
    listen          80;
    server_name    www.kubia-example.com;

    gzip on;
    gzip_types text/plain application/xml; | This enables gzip compression
                                              for plain text and XML files.

    location / {
        root   /usr/share/nginx/html;
        index index.html index.htm;
    }
}
```

Now delete your existing `fortune-config` ConfigMap with `kubectl delete configmap fortune-config`, so that you can replace it with a new one, which will include the Nginx config file. You'll create the ConfigMap from files stored on your local disk.

Create a new directory called `configmap-files` and store the Nginx config from the previous listing into `configmap-files/my-nginx-config.conf`. To make the ConfigMap also contain the `sleep-interval` entry, add a plain text file called `sleep-interval` to the same directory and store the number 25 in it (see figure 7.8).



**Figure 7.8** The contents of the `configmap-files` directory and its files

Now create a ConfigMap from all the files in the directory like this:

```
$ kubectl create configmap fortune-config --from-file=configmap-files
configmap "fortune-config" created
```

The following listing shows what the YAML of this ConfigMap looks like.

**Listing 7.13 YAML definition of a config map created from a file**

```
$ kubectl get configmap fortune-config -o yaml
apiVersion: v1
data:
  my-nginx-config.conf: |
    server {
      listen          80;
      server_name     www.kubia-example.com;

      gzip on;
      gzip_types text/plain application/xml;

      location / {
        root   /usr/share/nginx/html;
        index index.html index.htm;
      }
    }
  sleep-interval: |
    25
kind: ConfigMap
...
```

The entry holding the Nginx config file's contents

The sleep-interval entry

**NOTE** The pipeline character after the colon in the first line of both entries signals that a literal multi-line value follows.

The ConfigMap contains two entries, with keys corresponding to the actual names of the files they were created from. You'll now use the ConfigMap in both of your pod's containers.

#### USING THE CONFIGMAP'S ENTRIES IN A VOLUME

Creating a volume populated with the contents of a ConfigMap is as easy as creating a volume that references the ConfigMap by name and mounting the volume in a container. You already learned how to create volumes and mount them, so the only thing left to learn is how to initialize the volume with files created from a ConfigMap's entries.

Nginx reads its config file from `/etc/nginx/nginx.conf`. The Nginx image already contains this file with default configuration options, which you don't want to override, so you don't want to replace this file as a whole. Luckily, the default config file automatically includes all `.conf` files in the `/etc/nginx/conf.d/` subdirectory as well, so you should add your config file in there. Figure 7.9 shows what you want to achieve.

The pod descriptor is shown in listing 7.14 (the irrelevant parts are omitted, but you'll find the complete file in the code archive).

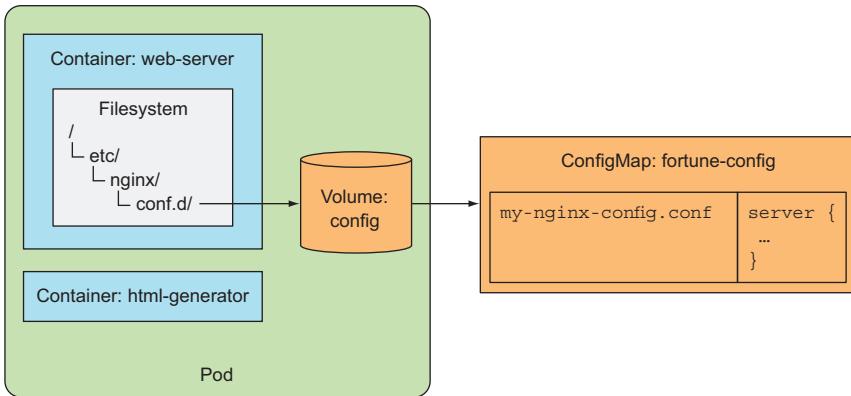


Figure 7.9 Passing ConfigMap entries to a pod as files in a volume

**Listing 7.14 A pod with ConfigMap entries mounted as files: fortune-pod-configmap-volume.yaml**

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: fortune-configmap-volume
spec:
  containers:
    - image: nginx:alpine
      name: web-server
      volumeMounts:
        ...
        - name: config
          mountPath: /etc/nginx/conf.d
          readOnly: true
        ...
  volumes:
    ...
    - name: config
      configMap:
        name: fortune-config

```

You're mounting the configMap volume at this location.

The volume refers to your fortune-config ConfigMap.

This pod definition includes a volume, which references your `fortune-config` ConfigMap. You mount the volume into the `/etc/nginx/conf.d` directory to make Nginx use it.

#### VERIFYING NGINX IS USING THE MOUNTED CONFIG FILE

The web server should now be configured to compress the responses it sends. You can verify this by enabling port-forwarding from `localhost:8080` to the pod's port 80 and checking the server's response with `curl`, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 7.15 Seeing if nginx responses have compression enabled**

```
$ kubectl port-forward fortune-configmap-volume 8080:80 &
Forwarding from 127.0.0.1:8080 -> 80
Forwarding from [::1]:8080 -> 80
$ curl -H "Accept-Encoding: gzip" -I localhost:8080
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Server: nginx/1.11.1
Date: Thu, 18 Aug 2016 11:52:57 GMT
Content-Type: text/html
Last-Modified: Thu, 18 Aug 2016 11:52:55 GMT
Connection: keep-alive
ETag: W/"57b5a197-37"
Content-Encoding: gzip
```

This shows the response  
is compressed.

**EXAMINING THE MOUNTED CONFIGMAP VOLUME'S CONTENTS**

The response shows you achieved what you wanted, but let's look at what's in the /etc/nginx/conf.d directory now:

```
$ kubectl exec fortune-configmap-volume -c web-server ls /etc/nginx/conf.d
my-nginx-config.conf
sleep-interval
```

Both entries from the ConfigMap have been added as files to the directory. The sleep-interval entry is also included, although it has no business being there, because it's only meant to be used by the fortuneloop container. You could create two different ConfigMaps and use one to configure the fortuneloop container and the other one to configure the web-server container. But somehow it feels wrong to use multiple ConfigMaps to configure containers of the same pod. After all, having containers in the same pod implies that the containers are closely related and should probably also be configured as a unit.

**EXPOSING CERTAIN CONFIGMAP ENTRIES IN THE VOLUME**

Luckily, you can populate a configMap volume with only part of the ConfigMap's entries—in your case, only the my-nginx-config.conf entry. This won't affect the fortuneloop container, because you're passing the sleep-interval entry to it through an environment variable and not through the volume.

To define which entries should be exposed as files in a configMap volume, use the volume's items attribute as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 7.16 A pod with a specific ConfigMap entry mounted into a file directory:  
fortune-pod-configmap-volume-with-items.yaml**

```
volumes:
- name: config
  configMap:
    name: fortune-config
    items:
      - key: my-nginx-config.conf
        path: gzip.conf
```

Selecting which entries to include  
in the volume by listing them

You want the entry  
under this key included.

The entry's value should  
be stored in this file.

When specifying individual entries, you need to set the filename for each individual entry, along with the entry's key. If you run the pod from the previous listing, the `/etc/nginx/conf.d` directory is kept nice and clean, because it only contains the `gzip.conf` file and nothing else.

#### UNDERSTANDING THAT MOUNTING A DIRECTORY HIDES EXISTING FILES IN THAT DIRECTORY

There's one important thing to discuss at this point. In both this and in your previous example, you mounted the volume as a directory, which means you've hidden any files that are stored in the `/etc/nginx/conf.d` directory in the container image itself.

This is generally what happens in Linux when you mount a filesystem into a non-empty directory. The directory then only contains the files from the mounted filesystem, whereas the original files in that directory are inaccessible for as long as the filesystem is mounted.

In your case, this has no terrible side effects, but imagine mounting a volume to the `/etc` directory, which usually contains many important files. This would most likely break the whole container, because all of the original files that should be in the `/etc` directory would no longer be there. If you need to add a file to a directory like `/etc`, you can't use this method at all.

#### MOUNTING INDIVIDUAL CONFIGMAP ENTRIES AS FILES WITHOUT HIDING OTHER FILES IN THE DIRECTORY

Naturally, you're now wondering how to add individual files from a ConfigMap into an existing directory without hiding existing files stored in it. An additional `subPath` property on the `volumeMount` allows you to mount either a single file or a single directory from the volume instead of mounting the whole volume. Perhaps this is easier to explain visually (see figure 7.10).

Say you have a `configMap` volume containing a `myconfig.conf` file, which you want to add to the `/etc` directory as `someconfig.conf`. You can use the `subPath` property to mount it there without affecting any other files in that directory. The relevant part of the pod definition is shown in the following listing.

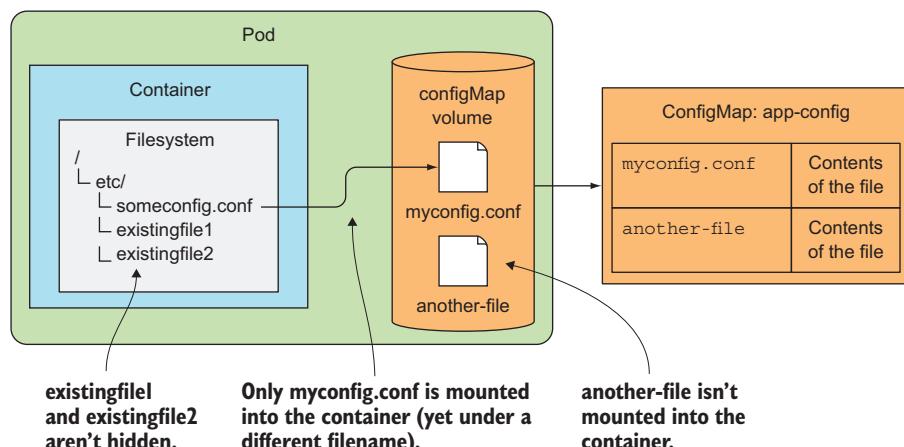


Figure 7.10 Mounting a single file from a volume

**Listing 7.17 A pod with a specific config map entry mounted into a specific file**

```
spec:
  containers:
    - image: some/image
      volumeMounts:
        - name: myvolume
          mountPath: /etc/someconfig.conf
          subPath: myconfig.conf
```

The `subPath` property can be used when mounting any kind of volume. Instead of mounting the whole volume, you can mount part of it. But this method of mounting individual files has a relatively big deficiency related to updating files. You'll learn more about this in the following section, but first, let's finish talking about the initial state of a configMap volume by saying a few words about file permissions.

**SETTING THE FILE PERMISSIONS FOR FILES IN A CONFIGMAP VOLUME**

By default, the permissions on all files in a configMap volume are set to 644 (`-rw-r--r--`). You can change this by setting the `defaultMode` property in the volume spec, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 7.18 Setting file permissions: fortune-pod-configmap-volume-defaultMode.yaml**

```
volumes:
  - name: config
    configMap:
      name: fortune-config
      defaultMode: "6600"
```

Although ConfigMaps should be used for non-sensitive configuration data, you may want to make the file readable and writable only to the user and group the file is owned by, as the example in the previous listing shows.

#### 7.4.7 Updating an app's config without having to restart the app

We've said that one of the drawbacks of using environment variables or command-line arguments as a configuration source is the inability to update them while the process is running. Using a ConfigMap and exposing it through a volume brings the ability to update the configuration without having to recreate the pod or even restart the container.

When you update a ConfigMap, the files in all the volumes referencing it are updated. It's then up to the process to detect that they've been changed and reload them. But Kubernetes will most likely eventually also support sending a signal to the container after updating the files.

**WARNING** Be aware that as I'm writing this, it takes a surprisingly long time for the files to be updated after you update the ConfigMap (it can take up to one whole minute).

### EDITING A CONFIGMAP

Let's see how you can change a ConfigMap and have the process running in the pod reload the files exposed in the configMap volume. You'll modify the Nginx config file from your previous example and make Nginx use the new config without restarting the pod. Try switching gzip compression off by editing the fortune-config ConfigMap with kubectl edit:

```
$ kubectl edit configmap fortune-config
```

Once your editor opens, change the gzip on line to gzip off, save the file, and then close the editor. The ConfigMap is then updated, and soon afterward, the actual file in the volume is updated as well. You can confirm this by printing the contents of the file with kubectl exec:

```
$ kubectl exec fortune-configmap-volume -c web-server
  cat /etc/nginx/conf.d/my-nginx-config.conf
```

If you don't see the update yet, wait a while and try again. It takes a while for the files to get updated. Eventually, you'll see the change in the config file, but you'll find this has no effect on Nginx, because it doesn't watch the files and reload them automatically.

### SIGNALING NGINX TO RELOAD THE CONFIG

Nginx will continue to compress its responses until you tell it to reload its config files, which you can do with the following command:

```
$ kubectl exec fortune-configmap-volume -c web-server -- nginx -s reload
```

Now, if you try hitting the server again with curl, you should see the response is no longer compressed (it no longer contains the Content-Encoding: gzip header). You've effectively changed the app's config without having to restart the container or recreate the pod.

### UNDERSTANDING HOW THE FILES ARE UPDATED ATOMICALLY

You may wonder what happens if an app can detect config file changes on its own and reloads them before Kubernetes has finished updating all the files in the configMap volume. Luckily, this can't happen, because all the files are updated atomically, which means all updates occur at once. Kubernetes achieves this by using symbolic links. If you list all the files in the mounted configMap volume, you'll see something like the following listing.

#### **Listing 7.19 Files in a mounted configMap volume**

```
$ kubectl exec -it fortune-configmap-volume -c web-server -- ls -la
  /etc/nginx/conf.d
total 4
drwxr-xr-x ... 12:15 ..4984_09_04_12_15_06.865837643
```

```
lrwxrwxrwx  ... 12:15 ..data -> ..4984_09_04_12_15_06.865837643
lrwxrwxrwx  ... 12:15 my-nginx-config.conf -> ..data/my-nginx-config.conf
lrwxrwxrwx  ... 12:15 sleep-interval -> ..data/sleep-interval
```

As you can see, the files in the mounted configMap volume are symbolic links pointing to files in the ..data dir. The ..data dir is also a symbolic link pointing to a directory called ..4984\_09\_04\_something. When the ConfigMap is updated, Kubernetes creates a new directory like this, writes all the files to it, and then re-links the ..data symbolic link to the new directory, effectively changing all files at once.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THAT FILES MOUNTED INTO EXISTING DIRECTORIES DON'T GET UPDATED**

One big caveat relates to updating ConfigMap-backed volumes. If you've mounted a single file in the container instead of the whole volume, the file will not be updated! At least, this is true at the time of writing this chapter.

For now, if you need to add an individual file and have it updated when you update its source ConfigMap, one workaround is to mount the whole volume into a different directory and then create a symbolic link pointing to the file in question. The symlink can either be created in the container image itself, or you could create the symlink when the container starts.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE CONSEQUENCES OF UPDATING A CONFIGMAP**

One of the most important features of containers is their immutability, which allows us to be certain that no differences exist between multiple running containers created from the same image, so is it wrong to bypass this immutability by modifying a ConfigMap used by running containers?

The main problem occurs when the app doesn't support reloading its configuration. This results in different running instances being configured differently—those pods that are created after the ConfigMap is changed will use the new config, whereas the old pods will still use the old one. And this isn't limited to new pods. If a pod's container is restarted (for whatever reason), the new process will also see the new config. Therefore, if the app doesn't reload its config automatically, modifying an existing ConfigMap (while pods are using it) may not be a good idea.

If the app does support reloading, modifying the ConfigMap usually isn't such a big deal, but you do need to be aware that because files in the ConfigMap volumes aren't updated synchronously across all running instances, the files in individual pods may be out of sync for up to a whole minute.

## **7.5 Using Secrets to pass sensitive data to containers**

All the information you've passed to your containers so far is regular, non-sensitive configuration data that doesn't need to be kept secure. But as we mentioned at the start of the chapter, the config usually also includes sensitive information, such as credentials and private encryption keys, which need to be kept secure.

### 7.5.1 Introducing Secrets

To store and distribute such information, Kubernetes provides a separate object called a Secret. Secrets are much like ConfigMaps—they’re also maps that hold key-value pairs. They can be used the same way as a ConfigMap. You can

- Pass Secret entries to the container as environment variables
- Expose Secret entries as files in a volume

Kubernetes helps keep your Secrets safe by making sure each Secret is only distributed to the nodes that run the pods that need access to the Secret. Also, on the nodes themselves, Secrets are always stored in memory and never written to physical storage, which would require wiping the disks after deleting the Secrets from them.

On the master node itself (more specifically in etcd), Secrets used to be stored in unencrypted form, which meant the master node needs to be secured to keep the sensitive data stored in Secrets secure. This didn’t only include keeping the etcd storage secure, but also preventing unauthorized users from using the API server, because anyone who can create pods can mount the Secret into the pod and gain access to the sensitive data through it. From Kubernetes version 1.7, etcd stores Secrets in encrypted form, making the system much more secure. Because of this, it’s imperative you properly choose when to use a Secret or a ConfigMap. Choosing between them is simple:

- Use a ConfigMap to store non-sensitive, plain configuration data.
- Use a Secret to store any data that is sensitive in nature and needs to be kept under key. If a config file includes both sensitive and not-sensitive data, you should store the file in a Secret.

You already used Secrets in chapter 5, when you created a Secret to hold the TLS certificate needed for the Ingress resource. Now you’ll explore Secrets in more detail.

### 7.5.2 Introducing the default token Secret

You’ll start learning about Secrets by examining a Secret that’s mounted into every container you run. You may have noticed it when using `kubectl describe` on a pod. The command’s output has always contained something like this:

```
Volumes:
default-token-cfee9:
  Type:      Secret (a volume populated by a Secret)
  SecretName: default-token-cfee9
```

Every pod has a secret volume attached to it automatically. The volume in the previous `kubectl describe` output refers to a Secret called `default-token-cfee9`. Because Secrets are resources, you can list them with `kubectl get secrets` and find the `default-token` Secret in that list. Let’s see:

```
$ kubectl get secrets
NAME          TYPE
default-token-cfee9  kubernetes.io/service-account-token
```

| NAME                | TYPE                                | DATA | AGE |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|------|-----|
| default-token-cfee9 | kubernetes.io/service-account-token | 3    | 39d |

You can also use `kubectl describe` to learn a bit more about it, as shown in the following listing.

### Listing 7.20 Describing a Secret

```
$ kubectl describe secrets
Name:           default-token-cfee9
Namespace:      default
Labels:         <none>
Annotations:   kubernetes.io/service-account.name=default
                kubernetes.io/service-account.uid=cc04bb39-b53f-42010af00237
Type:          kubernetes.io/service-account-token

Data
=====
ca.crt:       1139 bytes
namespace:    7 bytes
token:        eyJhbGciOiJSUzI1NiIsInR5cCI6IkpXVCJ9...
```

This secret  
contains three  
entries.

You can see that the Secret contains three entries—`ca.crt`, `namespace`, and `token`—which represent everything you need to securely talk to the Kubernetes API server from within your pods, should you need to do that. Although ideally you want your application to be completely Kubernetes-agnostic, when there's no alternative other than to talk to Kubernetes directly, you'll use the files provided through this `secret` volume.

The `kubectl describe pod` command shows where the `secret` volume is mounted:

```
Mounts:
  /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount from default-token-cfee9
```

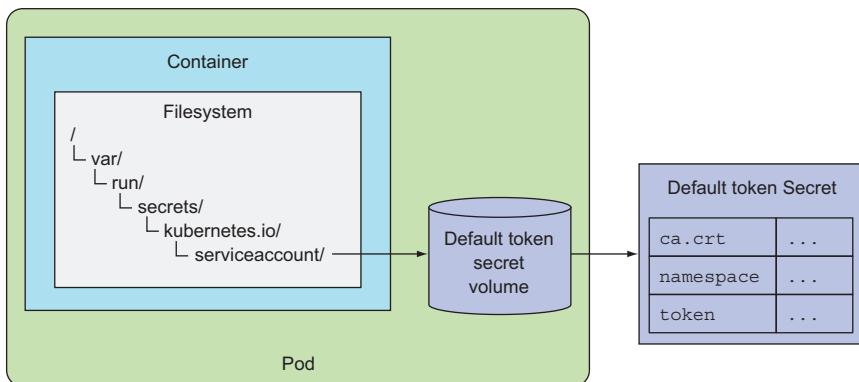
**NOTE** By default, the `default-token` Secret is mounted into every container, but you can disable that in each pod by setting the `automountServiceAccountToken` field in the pod spec to `false` or by setting it to `false` on the service account the pod is using. (You'll learn about service accounts later in the book.)

To help you visualize where and how the default token Secret is mounted, see figure 7.11.

We've said Secrets are like ConfigMaps, so because this Secret contains three entries, you can expect to see three files in the directory the `secret` volume is mounted into. You can check this easily with `kubectl exec`:

```
$ kubectl exec mypod ls /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/
ca.crt
namespace
token
```

You'll see how your app can use these files to access the API server in the next chapter.



**Figure 7.11** The default-token Secret is created automatically and a corresponding volume is mounted in each pod automatically.

### 7.5.3 Creating a Secret

Now, you'll create your own little Secret. You'll improve your fortune-serving Nginx container by configuring it to also serve HTTPS traffic. For this, you need to create a certificate and a private key. The private key needs to be kept secure, so you'll put it and the certificate into a Secret.

First, generate the certificate and private key files (do this on your local machine). You can also use the files in the book's code archive (the cert and key files are in the `fortune-https` directory):

```
$ openssl genrsa -out https.key 2048
$ openssl req -new -x509 -key https.key -out https.cert -days 3650 -subj
  /CN=www.kubia-example.com
```

Now, to help better demonstrate a few things about Secrets, create an additional dummy file called `foo` and make it contain the string `bar`. You'll understand why you need to do this in a moment or two:

```
$ echo bar > foo
```

Now you can use `kubectl create secret` to create a Secret from the three files:

```
$ kubectl create secret generic fortune-https --from-file=https.key
  --from-file=https.cert --from-file=foo
secret "fortune-https" created
```

This isn't very different from creating ConfigMaps. In this case, you're creating a generic Secret called `fortune-https` and including two entries in it (`https.key` with the contents of the `https.key` file and likewise for the `https.cert` key/file). As you learned earlier, you could also include the whole directory with `--from-file=fortune-https` instead of specifying each file individually.

**NOTE** You’re creating a generic Secret, but you could also have created a `tls` Secret with the `kubectl create secret tls` command, as you did in chapter 5. This would create the Secret with different entry names, though.

### 7.5.4 Comparing ConfigMaps and Secrets

Secrets and ConfigMaps have a pretty big difference. This is what drove Kubernetes developers to create ConfigMaps after Kubernetes had already supported Secrets for a while. The following listing shows the YAML of the Secret you created.

**Listing 7.21 A Secret’s YAML definition**

```
$ kubectl get secret fortune-https -o yaml
apiVersion: v1
data:
  foo: YmFyCg==
  https.cert: LS0tLS1CRUdJTiBDRVJUSUZJQ0FURS0tLS0tCk1JSURCe kNDQ...
  https.key: LS0tLS1CRUdJTiBSU0EgUFJJV kFURSBLRVktLS0tLQpNSU1FcE...
kind: Secret
...
```

Now compare this to the YAML of the ConfigMap you created earlier, which is shown in the following listing.

**Listing 7.22 A ConfigMap’s YAML definition**

```
$ kubectl get configmap fortune-config -o yaml
apiVersion: v1
data:
  my-nginx-config.conf: |
    server {
      ...
    }
  sleep-interval: |
    25
kind: ConfigMap
...
```

Notice the difference? The contents of a Secret’s entries are shown as Base64-encoded strings, whereas those of a ConfigMap are shown in clear text. This initially made working with Secrets in YAML and JSON manifests a bit more painful, because you had to encode and decode them when setting and reading their entries.

#### USING SECRETS FOR BINARY DATA

The reason for using Base64 encoding is simple. A Secret’s entries can contain binary values, not only plain-text. Base64 encoding allows you to include the binary data in YAML or JSON, which are both plain-text formats.

**TIP** You can use Secrets even for non-sensitive binary data, but be aware that the maximum size of a Secret is limited to 1MB.

## INTRODUCING THE STRINGDATA FIELD

Because not all sensitive data is in binary form, Kubernetes also allows setting a Secret's values through the `stringData` field. The following listing shows how it's used.

### Listing 7.23 Adding plain text entries to a Secret using the `stringData` field

```
kind: Secret
apiVersion: v1
stringData:
  foo: plain text
data:
  https.cert: LS0tLS1CRUDJTiBDRVJUSUZJQ0FURS0tLS0tCk1JSURCeKNDQ...
  https.key: LS0tLS1CRUDJTiBSU0EgUFJJVkJURSBLRVktLS0tLQpNSU1FcE...
```

The `stringData` field is write-only (note: write-only, not read-only). It can only be used to set values. When you retrieve the Secret's YAML with `kubectl get -o yaml`, the `stringData` field will not be shown. Instead, all entries you specified in the `stringData` field (such as the `foo` entry in the previous example) will be shown under `data` and will be Base64-encoded like all the other entries.

## READING A SECRET'S ENTRY IN A POD

When you expose the Secret to a container through a `secret` volume, the value of the Secret entry is decoded and written to the file in its actual form (regardless if it's plain text or binary). The same is also true when exposing the Secret entry through an environment variable. In both cases, the app doesn't need to decode it, but can read the file's contents or look up the environment variable value and use it directly.

### 7.5.5 Using the Secret in a pod

With your `fortune-https` Secret containing both the cert and key files, all you need to do now is configure Nginx to use them.

## MODIFYING THE FORTUNE-CONFIG CONFIGMAP TO ENABLE HTTPS

For this, you need to modify the config file again by editing the ConfigMap:

```
$ kubectl edit configmap fortune-config
```

After the text editor opens, modify the part that defines the contents of the `my-nginx-config.conf` entry so it looks like the following listing.

### Listing 7.24 Modifying the `fortune-config` ConfigMap's data

```
...
data:
  my-nginx-config.conf: |
    server {
      listen          80;
      listen          443 ssl;
      server_name     www.kubia-example.com;
```

```
ssl_certificate      certs/https.cert;
ssl_certificate_key certs/https.key;
ssl_protocols       TLSv1 TLSv1.1 TLSv1.2;
ssl_ciphers         HIGH:!aNULL:!MD5;

location / {
    root   /usr/share/nginx/html;
    index  index.html index.htm;
}
sleep-interval: |

...

```

The paths are relative to /etc/nginx.

This configures the server to read the certificate and key files from /etc/nginx/certs, so you'll need to mount the secret volume there.

#### MOUNTING THE FORTUNE-HTTPS SECRET IN A POD

Next, you'll create a new fortune-https pod and mount the secret volume holding the certificate and key into the proper location in the web-server container, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 7.25 YAML definition of the fortune-https pod: fortune-pod-https.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: fortune-https
spec:
  containers:
    - image: luksa/fortune:env
      name: html-generator
      env:
        - name: INTERVAL
          valueFrom:
            configMapKeyRef:
              name: fortune-config
              key: sleep-interval
      volumeMounts:
        - name: html
          mountPath: /var/htdocs
    - image: nginx:alpine
      name: web-server
      volumeMounts:
        - name: html
          mountPath: /usr/share/nginx/html
          readOnly: true
        - name: config
          mountPath: /etc/nginx/conf.d
          readOnly: true
        - name: certs
          mountPath: /etc/nginx/certs/
          readOnly: true
  ports:
    - containerPort: 80

```

You configured Nginx to read the cert and key file from /etc/nginx/certs, so you need to mount the Secret volume there.

```

    - containerPort: 443
volumes:
- name: html
  emptyDir: {}
- name: config
  configMap:
    name: fortune-config
    items:
    - key: my-nginx-config.conf
      path: https.conf
- name: certs
  secret:
    secretName: fortune-https

```

You define the secret volume here, referring to the fortune-https Secret.

Much is going on in this pod descriptor, so let me help you visualize it. Figure 7.12 shows the components defined in the YAML. The default-token Secret, volume, and volume mount, which aren't part of the YAML, but are added to your pod automatically, aren't shown in the figure.

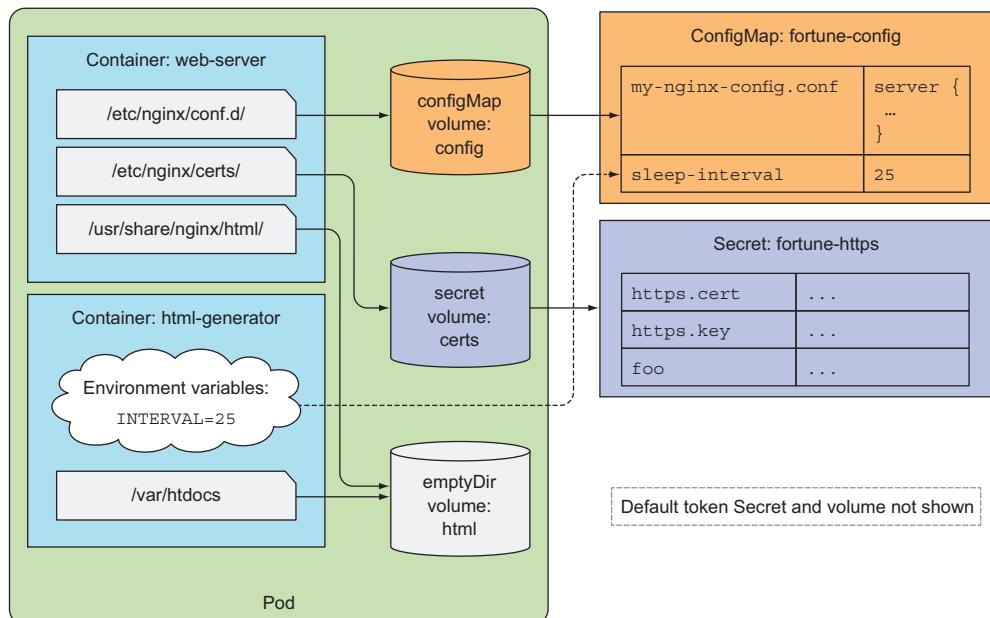


Figure 7.12 Combining a ConfigMap and a Secret to run your fortune-https pod

**NOTE** Like configMap volumes, secret volumes also support specifying file permissions for the files exposed in the volume through the `defaultMode` property.

## TESTING WHETHER NGINX IS USING THE CERT AND KEY FROM THE SECRET

Once the pod is running, you can see if it's serving HTTPS traffic by opening a port-forward tunnel to the pod's port 443 and using it to send a request to the server with curl:

```
$ kubectl port-forward fortune-https 8443:443 &
Forwarding from 127.0.0.1:8443 -> 443
Forwarding from [::1]:8443 -> 443
$ curl https://localhost:8443 -k
```

If you configured the server properly, you should get a response. You can check the server's certificate to see if it matches the one you generated earlier. This can also be done with curl by turning on verbose logging using the `-v` option, as shown in the following listing.

### Listing 7.26 Displaying the server certificate sent by Nginx

```
$ curl https://localhost:8443 -k -v
* About to connect() to localhost port 8443 (#0)
*   Trying ::1...
* Connected to localhost (::1) port 8443 (#0)
* Initializing NSS with certpath: sql:/etc/pki/nssdb
* skipping SSL peer certificate verification
* SSL connection using TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384
* Server certificate:
*   subject: CN=www.kubia-example.com
*   start date: aug 16 18:43:13 2016 GMT
*   expire date: aug 14 18:43:13 2026 GMT
*   common name: www.kubia-example.com
*   issuer: CN=www.kubia-example.com
```

The certificate  
matches the one you  
created and stored  
in the Secret.

## UNDERSTANDING SECRET VOLUMES ARE STORED IN MEMORY

You successfully delivered your certificate and private key to your container by mounting a secret volume in its directory tree at `/etc/nginx/certs`. The secret volume uses an in-memory filesystem (`tmpfs`) for the Secret files. You can see this if you list mounts in the container:

```
$ kubectl exec fortune-https -c web-server -- mount | grep certs
tmpfs on /etc/nginx/certs type tmpfs (ro,relatime)
```

Because `tmpfs` is used, the sensitive data stored in the Secret is never written to disk, where it could be compromised.

## EXPOSING A SECRET'S ENTRIES THROUGH ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

Instead of using a volume, you could also have exposed individual entries from the secret as environment variables, the way you did with the `sleep-interval` entry from the ConfigMap. For example, if you wanted to expose the `foo` key from your Secret as environment variable `FOO_SECRET`, you'd add the snippet from the following listing to the container definition.

### Listing 7.27 Exposing a Secret's entry as an environment variable

```
env:
- name: FOO_SECRET
  valueFrom:
    secretKeyRef:
      name: fortune-https
      key: foo
```

The variable should be set from the entry of a Secret.

The name of the Secret holding the key to expose

The key of the Secret to expose

This is almost exactly like when you set the INTERVAL environment variable, except that this time you’re referring to a Secret by using `secretKeyRef` instead of `configMapKeyRef`, which is used to refer to a ConfigMap.

Even though Kubernetes enables you to expose Secrets through environment variables, it may not be the best idea to use this feature. Applications usually dump environment variables in error reports or even write them to the application log at startup, which may unintentionally expose them. Additionally, child processes inherit all the environment variables of the parent process, so if your app runs a third-party binary, you have no way of knowing what happens with your secret data.

**TIP** Think twice before using environment variables to pass your Secrets to your container, because they may get exposed inadvertently. To be safe, always use secret volumes for exposing Secrets.

#### 7.5.6 **Understanding Image pull Secrets**

You’ve learned how to pass Secrets to your applications and use the data they contain. But sometimes Kubernetes itself requires you to pass credentials to it—for example, when you’d like to use images from a private container image registry. This is also done through Secrets.

Up to now all your container images have been stored on public image registries, which don’t require any special credentials to pull images from them. But most organizations don’t want their images to be available to everyone and thus use a private image registry. When deploying a pod, whose container images reside in a private registry, Kubernetes needs to know the credentials required to pull the image. Let’s see how to do that.

##### **USING A PRIVATE IMAGE REPOSITORY ON DOCKER HUB**

Docker Hub, in addition to public image repositories, also allows you to create private repositories. You can mark a repository as private by logging in at <http://hub.docker.com> with your web browser, finding the repository and checking a checkbox.

To run a pod, which uses an image from the private repository, you need to do two things:

- Create a Secret holding the credentials for the Docker registry.
- Reference that Secret in the `imagePullSecrets` field of the pod manifest.

## CREATING A SECRET FOR AUTHENTICATING WITH A DOCKER REGISTRY

Creating a Secret holding the credentials for authenticating with a Docker registry isn't that different from creating the generic Secret you created in section 7.5.3. You use the same `kubectl create secret` command, but with a different type and options:

```
$ kubectl create secret docker-registry mydockerhubsecret \
--docker-username=myusername --docker-password=mypassword \
--docker-email=my.email@provider.com
```

Rather than create a generic secret, you're creating a `docker-registry` Secret called `mydockerhubsecret`. You're specifying your Docker Hub username, password, and email. If you inspect the contents of the newly created Secret with `kubectl describe`, you'll see that it includes a single entry called `.dockercfg`. This is equivalent to the `.dockercfg` file in your home directory, which is created by Docker when you run the `docker login` command.

## USING THE DOCKER-REGISTRY SECRET IN A POD DEFINITION

To have Kubernetes use the Secret when pulling images from your private Docker Hub repository, all you need to do is specify the Secret's name in the pod spec, as shown in the following listing.

### Listing 7.28 A pod definition using an image pull Secret: pod-with-private-image.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: private-pod
spec:
  imagePullSecrets:
    - name: mydockerhubsecret
  containers:
    - image: username/private:tag
      name: main
```

**This enables pulling images from a private image registry.**

In the pod definition in the previous listing, you're specifying the `mydockerhubsecret` Secret as one of the `imagePullSecrets`. I suggest you try this out yourself, because it's likely you'll deal with private container images soon.

## NOT HAVING TO SPECIFY IMAGE PULL SECRETS ON EVERY POD

Given that people usually run many different pods in their systems, it makes you wonder if you need to add the same image pull Secrets to every pod. Luckily, that's not the case. In chapter 12 you'll learn how image pull Secrets can be added to all your pods automatically if you add the Secrets to a ServiceAccount.

## 7.6 Summary

This wraps up this chapter on how to pass configuration data to containers. You've learned how to

- Override the default command defined in a container image in the pod definition
- Pass command-line arguments to the main container process
- Set environment variables for a container
- Decouple configuration from a pod specification and put it into a ConfigMap
- Store sensitive data in a Secret and deliver it securely to containers
- Create a docker-registry Secret and use it to pull images from a private image registry

In the next chapter, you'll learn how to pass pod and container metadata to applications running inside them. You'll also see how the default token Secret, which we learned about in this chapter, is used to talk to the API server from within a pod.

# *Accessing pod metadata and other resources from applications*

---

## **This chapter covers**

- Using the Downward API to pass information into containers
- Exploring the Kubernetes REST API
- Leaving authentication and server verification to `kubectl proxy`
- Accessing the API server from within a container
- Understanding the ambassador container pattern
- Using Kubernetes client libraries

Applications often need information about the environment they’re running in, including details about themselves and that of other components in the cluster. You’ve already seen how Kubernetes enables service discovery through environment variables or DNS, but what about other information? In this chapter, you’ll see how certain pod and container metadata can be passed to the container and how easy it is for an app running inside a container to talk to the Kubernetes API server to get information about the resources deployed in the cluster and even how to create or modify those resources.

## 8.1 Passing metadata through the Downward API

In the previous chapter you saw how you can pass configuration data to your applications through environment variables or through configMap and secret volumes. This works well for data that you set yourself and that is known before the pod is scheduled to a node and run there. But what about data that isn't known up until that point—such as the pod's IP, the host node's name, or even the pod's own name (when the name is generated; for example, when the pod is created by a ReplicaSet or similar controller)? And what about data that's already specified elsewhere, such as a pod's labels and annotations? You don't want to repeat the same information in multiple places.

Both these problems are solved by the Kubernetes Downward API. It allows you to pass metadata about the pod and its environment through environment variables or files (in a downwardAPI volume). Don't be confused by the name. The Downward API isn't like a REST endpoint that your app needs to hit so it can get the data. It's a way of having environment variables or files populated with values from the pod's specification or status, as shown in figure 8.1.

**Used to initialize environment variables and files in the downwardAPI volume**

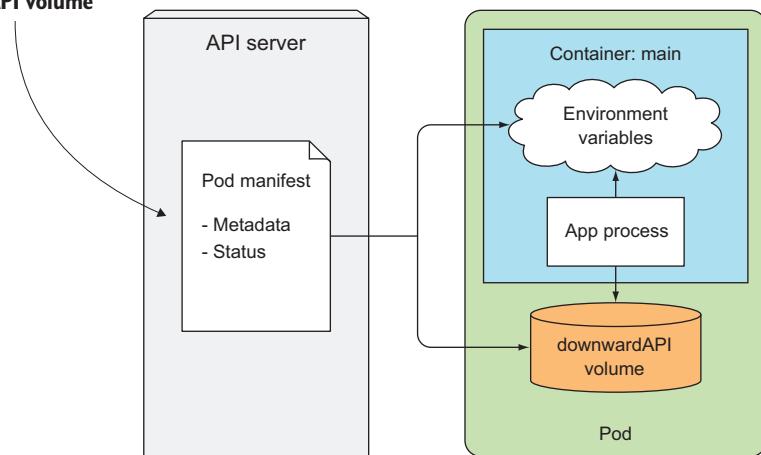


Figure 8.1 The Downward API exposes pod metadata through environment variables or files.

### 8.1.1 Understanding the available metadata

The Downward API enables you to expose the pod's own metadata to the processes running inside that pod. Currently, it allows you to pass the following information to your containers:

- The pod's name
- The pod's IP address

- The namespace the pod belongs to
- The name of the node the pod is running on
- The name of the service account the pod is running under
- The CPU and memory requests for each container
- The CPU and memory limits for each container
- The pod's labels
- The pod's annotations

Most of the items in the list shouldn't require further explanation, except perhaps the service account and CPU/memory requests and limits, which we haven't introduced yet. We'll cover service accounts in detail in chapter 12. For now, all you need to know is that a service account is the account that the pod authenticates as when talking to the API server. CPU and memory requests and limits are explained in chapter 14. They're the amount of CPU and memory guaranteed to a container and the maximum amount it can get.

Most items in the list can be passed to containers either through environment variables or through a `downwardAPI` volume, but labels and annotations can only be exposed through the volume. Part of the data can be acquired by other means (for example, from the operating system directly), but the Downward API provides a simpler alternative.

Let's look at an example to pass metadata to your containerized process.

### 8.1.2 Exposing metadata through environment variables

First, let's look at how you can pass the pod's and container's metadata to the container through environment variables. You'll create a simple single-container pod from the following listing's manifest.

**Listing 8.1 Downward API used in environment variables: downward-api-env.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: downward
spec:
  containers:
    - name: main
      image: busybox
      command: ["sleep", "9999999"]
      resources:
        requests:
          cpu: 15m
          memory: 100Ki
        limits:
          cpu: 100m
          memory: 4Mi
  env:
    - name: POD_NAME
```

```

valueFrom:
  fieldRef:
    fieldPath: metadata.name
- name: POD_NAMESPACE
  valueFrom:
    fieldRef:
      fieldPath: metadata.namespace
- name: POD_IP
  valueFrom:
    fieldRef:
      fieldPath: status.podIP
- name: NODE_NAME
  valueFrom:
    fieldRef:
      fieldPath: spec.nodeName
- name: SERVICE_ACCOUNT
  valueFrom:
    fieldRef:
      fieldPath: spec.serviceAccountName
- name: CONTAINER_CPU_REQUEST_MILLICORES
  valueFrom:
    resourceFieldRef:
      resource: requests.cpu
      divisor: 1m
- name: CONTAINER_MEMORY_LIMIT_KIBIBYTES
  valueFrom:
    resourceFieldRef:
      resource: limits.memory
      divisor: 1Ki

```

Instead of specifying an absolute value, you're referencing the `metadata.name` field from the pod manifest.

A container's CPU and memory requests and limits are referenced by using `resourceFieldRef` instead of `fieldRef`.

For resource fields, you define a divisor to get the value in the unit you need.

When your process runs, it can look up all the environment variables you defined in the pod spec. Figure 8.2 shows the environment variables and the sources of their values. The pod's name, IP, and namespace will be exposed through the `POD_NAME`, `POD_IP`, and `POD_NAMESPACE` environment variables, respectively. The name of the node the container is running on will be exposed through the `NODE_NAME` variable. The name of the service account is made available through the `SERVICE_ACCOUNT` environment variable. You're also creating two environment variables that will hold the amount of CPU requested for this container and the maximum amount of memory the container is allowed to consume.

For environment variables exposing resource limits or requests, you specify a divisor. The actual value of the limit or the request will be divided by the divisor and the result exposed through the environment variable. In the previous example, you're setting the divisor for CPU requests to `1m` (one milli-core, or one one-thousandth of a CPU core). Because you've set the CPU request to `15m`, the environment variable `CONTAINER_CPU_REQUEST_MILLICORES` will be set to `15`. Likewise, you set the memory limit to `4Mi` (4 mebibytes) and the divisor to `1Ki` (1 Kibibyte), so the `CONTAINER_MEMORY_LIMIT_KIBIBYTES` environment variable will be set to `4096`.

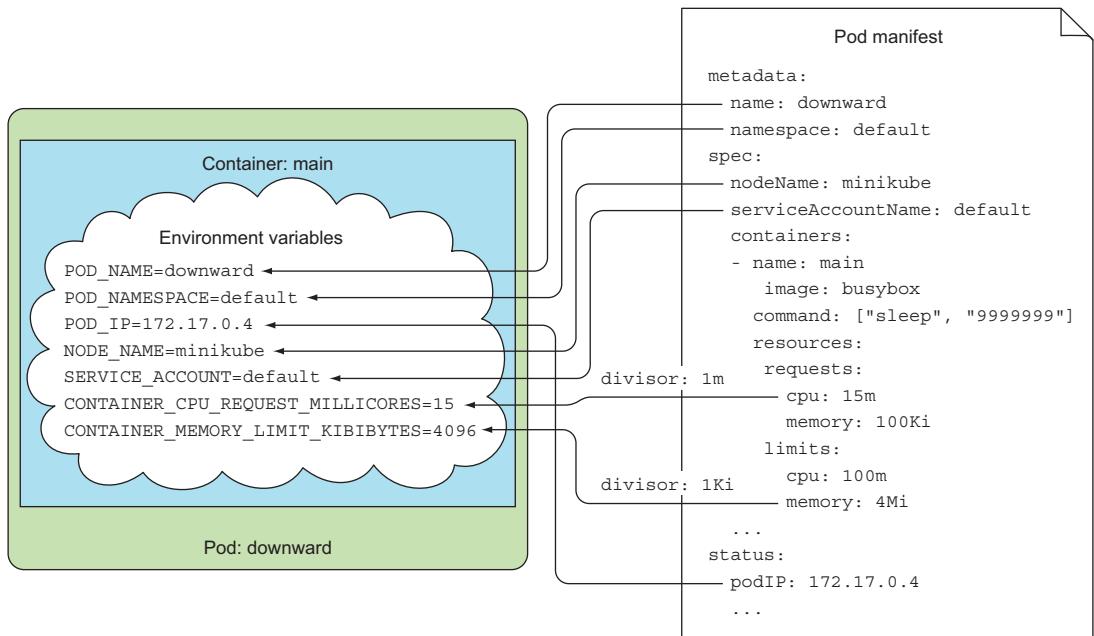


Figure 8.2 Pod metadata and attributes can be exposed to the pod through environment variables.

The divisor for CPU limits and requests can be either 1, which means one whole core, or 1m, which is one millicore. The divisor for memory limits/requests can be 1 (byte), 1k (kilobyte) or 1Ki (kibibyte), 1M (megabyte) or 1Mi (mebibyte), and so on.

After creating the pod, you can use `kubectl exec` to see all these environment variables in your container, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 8.2 Environment variables in the downward pod

```
$ kubectl exec downward env
PATH=/usr/local/sbin:/usr/local/bin:/usr/sbin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/bin
HOSTNAME=downward
CONTAINER_MEMORY_LIMIT_KIBIBYTES=4096
POD_NAME=downward
POD_NAMESPACE=default
POD_IP=10.0.0.10
NODE_NAME=gke-kubia-default-pool-32a2cac8-sgl7
SERVICE_ACCOUNT=default
CONTAINER_CPU_REQUEST_MILLICORES=15
KUBERNETES_SERVICE_HOST=10.3.240.1
KUBERNETES_SERVICE_PORT=443
...
```

All processes running inside the container can read those variables and use them however they need.

### 8.1.3 Passing metadata through files in a downwardAPI volume

If you prefer to expose the metadata through files instead of environment variables, you can define a downwardAPI volume and mount it into your container. You must use a downwardAPI volume for exposing the pod's labels or its annotations, because neither can be exposed through environment variables. We'll discuss why later.

As with environment variables, you need to specify each metadata field explicitly if you want to have it exposed to the process. Let's see how to modify the previous example to use a volume instead of environment variables, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 8.3 Pod with a downwardAPI volume: downward-api-volume.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: downward
  labels:
    foo: bar
  annotations:
    key1: value1
    key2: |
      multi
      line
      value
spec:
  containers:
  - name: main
    image: busybox
    command: ["sleep", "9999999"]
    resources:
      requests:
        cpu: 15m
        memory: 100Ki
      limits:
        cpu: 100m
        memory: 4Mi
    volumeMounts:
    - name: downward
      mountPath: /etc/downward
  volumes:
  - name: downward
    downwardAPI:
      items:
      - path: "podName"
        fieldRef:
          fieldPath: metadata.name
      - path: "podNamespace"
        fieldRef:
          fieldPath: metadata.namespace
```

**These labels and annotations will be exposed through the downwardAPI volume.**

**You're mounting the downward volume under /etc/downward.**

**You're defining a downwardAPI volume with the name downward.**

**The pod's name (from the metadata.name field in the manifest) will be written to the podName file.**

```

- path: "labels"
  fieldRef:
    fieldPath: metadata.labels
- path: "annotations"
  fieldRef:
    fieldPath: metadata.annotations
- path: "containerCpuRequestMilliCores"
  resourceFieldRef:
    containerName: main
    resource: requests.cpu
    divisor: 1m
- path: "containerMemoryLimitBytes"
  resourceFieldRef:
    containerName: main
    resource: limits.memory
    divisor: 1

```

The pod's labels will be written to the /etc/downward/labels file.

The pod's annotations will be written to the /etc/downward/annotations file.

Instead of passing the metadata through environment variables, you're defining a volume called downward and mounting it in your container under /etc/downward. The files this volume will contain are configured under the `downwardAPI.items` attribute in the volume specification.

Each item specifies the path (the filename) where the metadata should be written to and references either a pod-level field or a container resource field whose value you want stored in the file (see figure 8.3).

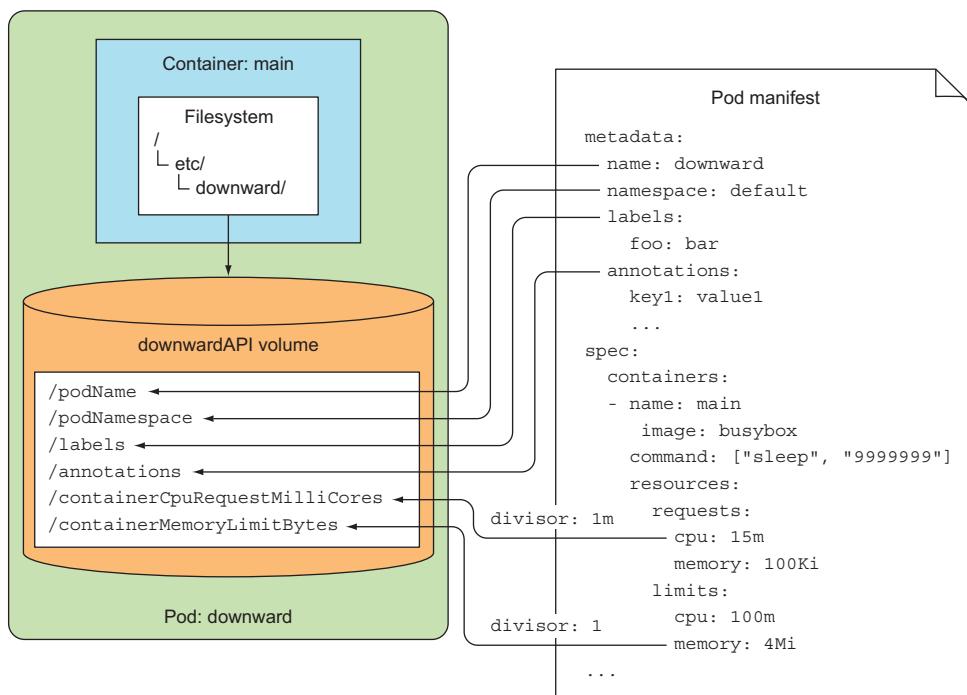


Figure 8.3 Using a downwardAPI volume to pass metadata to the container

Delete the previous pod and create a new one from the manifest in the previous listing. Then look at the contents of the mounted downwardAPI volume directory. You mounted the volume under /etc/downward/, so list the files in there, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 8.4 Files in the downwardAPI volume

```
$ kubectl exec downward ls -lL /etc/downward
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 134 May 25 10:23 annotations
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 2 May 25 10:23 containerCpuRequestMilliCores
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 7 May 25 10:23 containerMemoryLimitBytes
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 9 May 25 10:23 labels
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 8 May 25 10:23 podName
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 7 May 25 10:23 podNamespace
```

**NOTE** As with the configMap and secret volumes, you can change the file permissions through the downwardAPI volume’s defaultMode property in the pod spec.

Each file corresponds to an item in the volume’s definition. The contents of files, which correspond to the same metadata fields as in the previous example, are the same as the values of environment variables you used before, so we won’t show them here. But because you couldn’t expose labels and annotations through environment variables before, examine the following listing for the contents of the two files you exposed them in.

#### Listing 8.5 Displaying labels and annotations in the downwardAPI volume

```
$ kubectl exec downward cat /etc/downward/labels
foo="bar"

$ kubectl exec downward cat /etc/downward/annotations
key1="value1"
key2="multi\nline\nvalue\n"
kubernetes.io/config.seen="2016-11-28T14:27:45.664924282Z"
kubernetes.io/config.source="api"
```

As you can see, each label/annotation is written in the key=value format on a separate line. Multi-line values are written to a single line with newline characters denoted with \n.

#### UPDATING LABELS AND ANNOTATIONS

You may remember that labels and annotations can be modified while a pod is running. As you might expect, when they change, Kubernetes updates the files holding them, allowing the pod to always see up-to-date data. This also explains why labels and annotations can’t be exposed through environment variables. Because environment variable values can’t be updated afterward, if the labels or annotations of a pod were exposed through environment variables, there’s no way to expose the new values after they’re modified.

### REFERRING TO CONTAINER-LEVEL METADATA IN THE VOLUME SPECIFICATION

Before we wrap up this section, we need to point out one thing. When exposing container-level metadata, such as a container’s resource limit or requests (done using `resourceFieldRef`), you need to specify the name of the container whose resource field you’re referencing, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 8.6 Referring to container-level metadata in a downwardAPI volume**

```
spec:
  volumes:
    - name: downward
      downwardAPI:
        items:
          - path: "containerCpuRequestMilliCores"
            resourceFieldRef:
              containerName: main
              resource: requests.cpu
              divisor: 1m
```



**Container name  
must be specified**

The reason for this becomes obvious if you consider that volumes are defined at the pod level, not at the container level. When referring to a container’s resource field inside a volume specification, you need to explicitly specify the name of the container you’re referring to. This is true even for single-container pods.

Using volumes to expose a container’s resource requests and/or limits is slightly more complicated than using environment variables, but the benefit is that it allows you to pass one container’s resource fields to a different container if needed (but both containers need to be in the same pod). With environment variables, a container can only be passed its own resource limits and requests.

### UNDERSTANDING WHEN TO USE THE DOWNWARD API

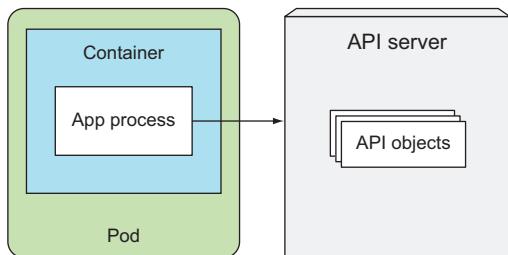
As you’ve seen, using the Downward API isn’t complicated. It allows you to keep the application Kubernetes-agnostic. This is especially useful when you’re dealing with an existing application that expects certain data in environment variables. The Downward API allows you to expose the data to the application without having to rewrite the application or wrap it in a shell script, which collects the data and then exposes it through environment variables.

But the metadata available through the Downward API is fairly limited. If you need more, you’ll need to obtain it from the Kubernetes API server directly. You’ll learn how to do that next.

## 8.2 Talking to the Kubernetes API server

We’ve seen how the Downward API provides a simple way to pass certain pod and container metadata to the process running inside them. It only exposes the pod’s own metadata and a subset of all of the pod’s data. But sometimes your app will need to know more about other pods and even other resources defined in your cluster. The Downward API doesn’t help in those cases.

As you've seen throughout the book, information about services and pods can be obtained by looking at the service-related environment variables or through DNS. But when the app needs data about other resources or when it requires access to the most up-to-date information as possible, it needs to talk to the API server directly (as shown in figure 8.4).



**Figure 8.4 Talking to the API server from inside a pod to get information about other API objects**

Before you see how apps within pods can talk to the Kubernetes API server, let's first explore the server's REST endpoints from your local machine, so you can see what talking to the API server looks like.

### 8.2.1 Exploring the Kubernetes REST API

You've learned about different Kubernetes resource types. But if you're planning on developing apps that talk to the Kubernetes API, you'll want to know the API first.

To do that, you can try hitting the API server directly. You can get its URL by running `kubectl cluster-info`:

```
$ kubectl cluster-info
Kubernetes master is running at https://192.168.99.100:8443
```

Because the server uses HTTPS and requires authentication, it's not simple to talk to it directly. You can try accessing it with `curl` and using `curl`'s `--insecure` (or `-k`) option to skip the server certificate check, but that doesn't get you far:

```
$ curl https://192.168.99.100:8443 -k
Unauthorized
```

Luckily, rather than dealing with authentication yourself, you can talk to the server through a proxy by running the `kubectl proxy` command.

#### ACCESSING THE API SERVER THROUGH KUBECTL PROXY

The `kubectl proxy` command runs a proxy server that accepts HTTP connections on your local machine and proxies them to the API server while taking care of authentication, so you don't need to pass the authentication token in every request. It also makes sure you're talking to the actual API server and not a man in the middle (by verifying the server's certificate on each request).

Running the proxy is trivial. All you need to do is run the following command:

```
$ kubectl proxy  
Starting to serve on 127.0.0.1:8001
```

You don't need to pass in any other arguments, because `kubectl` already knows everything it needs (the API server URL, authorization token, and so on). As soon as it starts up, the proxy starts accepting connections on local port 8001. Let's see if it works:

```
$ curl localhost:8001  
{  
  "paths": [  
    "/api",  
    "/api/v1",  
    ...
```

Voila! You sent the request to the proxy, it sent a request to the API server, and then the proxy returned whatever the server returned. Now, let's start exploring.

#### EXPLORING THE KUBERNETES API THROUGH THE KUBECTL PROXY

You can continue to use `curl`, or you can open your web browser and point it to <http://localhost:8001>. Let's examine what the API server returns when you hit its base URL more closely. The server responds with a list of paths, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 8.7 Listing the API server's REST endpoints: http://localhost:8001**

```
$ curl http://localhost:8001  
{  
  "paths": [  
    "/api",  
    "/api/v1",  
    "/apis",  
    "/apis/apps",  
    "/apis/apps/v1beta1",  
    ...  
    "/apis/batch",  
    "/apis/batch/v1",  
    "/apis/batch/v2alpha1",  
    ...
```



Most resource types  
can be found here.

The batch API  
group and its  
two versions

These paths correspond to the API groups and versions you specify in your resource definitions when creating resources such as Pods, Services, and so on.

You may recognize the `batch/v1` in the `/apis/batch/v1` path as the API group and version of the `Job` resources you learned about in chapter 4. Likewise, the `/api/v1` corresponds to the `apiVersion: v1` you refer to in the common resources you created (Pods, Services, ReplicationControllers, and so on). The most common resource types, which were introduced in the earliest versions of Kubernetes, don't belong to

any specific group, because Kubernetes initially didn't even use the concept of API groups; they were introduced later.

**NOTE** These initial resource types without an API group are now considered to belong to the core API group.

### EXPLORING THE BATCH API GROUP'S REST ENDPOINT

Let's explore the Job resource API. You'll start by looking at what's behind the /apis/batch path (you'll omit the version for now), as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 8.8 Listing endpoints under /apis/batch: <http://localhost:8001/apis/batch>**

```
$ curl http://localhost:8001/apis/batch
{
  "kind": "APIGroup",
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  "name": "batch",
  "versions": [
    {
      "groupVersion": "batch/v1",
      "version": "v1"
    },
    {
      "groupVersion": "batch/v2alpha1",
      "version": "v2alpha1"
    }
  ],
  "preferredVersion": {
    "groupVersion": "batch/v1",
    "version": "v1"
  },
  "serverAddressByClientCIDRs": null
}
```

The batch API group contains two versions.

Clients should use the v1 version instead of v2alpha1.

The response shows a description of the batch API group, including the available versions and the preferred version clients should use. Let's continue and see what's behind the /apis/batch/v1 path. It's shown in the following listing.

**Listing 8.9 Resource types in batch/v1: <http://localhost:8001/apis/batch/v1>**

```
$ curl http://localhost:8001/apis/batch/v1
{
  "kind": "APIResourceList",
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  "groupVersion": "batch/v1",
  "resources": [
    {
      "name": "jobs",
      "namespaced": true,
      "kind": "Job",
    }
  ]
}
```

This is a list of API resources in the batch/v1 API group.

This describes the Job resource, which is namespaced.

Here's an array holding all the resource types in this group.

```

    "verbs": [
        "create",
        "delete",
        "deletecollection",
        "get",
        "list",
        "patch",
        "update",
        "watch"
    ]
},
{
    "name": "jobs/status",
    "namespaced": true,
    "kind": "Job",
    "verbs": [
        "get",
        "patch",
        "update"
    ]
}
]
}

```

**Here are the verbs that can be used with this resource (you can create Jobs; delete individual ones or a collection of them; and retrieve, watch, and update them).**

**Resources also have a special REST endpoint for modifying their status.**

**The status can be retrieved, patched, or updated.**

As you can see, the API server returns a list of resource types and REST endpoints in the batch/v1 API group. One of those is the Job resource. In addition to the name of the resource and the associated kind, the API server also includes information on whether the resource is namespaced or not, its short name (if it has one; Jobs don't), and a list of verbs you can use with the resource.

The returned list describes the REST resources exposed in the API server. The "name": "jobs" line tells you that the API contains the /apis/batch/v1/jobs endpoint. The "verbs" array says you can retrieve, update, and delete Job resources through that endpoint. For certain resources, additional API endpoints are also exposed (such as the jobs/status path, which allows modifying only the status of a Job).

#### LISTING ALL JOB INSTANCES IN THE CLUSTER

To get a list of Jobs in your cluster, perform a GET request on path /apis/batch/v1/jobs, as shown in the following listing.

##### Listing 8.10 List of Jobs: <http://localhost:8001/apis/batch/v1/jobs>

```
$ curl http://localhost:8001/apis/batch/v1/jobs
{
    "kind": "JobList",
    "apiVersion": "batch/v1",
    "metadata": {
        "selfLink": "/apis/batch/v1/jobs",
        "resourceVersion": "225162"
    },
}
```

```
"items": [
  {
    "metadata": {
      "name": "my-job",
      "namespace": "default",
      ...
    }
  }
]
```

You probably have no Job resources deployed in your cluster, so the items array will be empty. You can try deploying the Job in Chapter08/my-job.yaml and hitting the REST endpoint again to get the same output as in listing 8.10.

#### **RETRIEVING A SPECIFIC JOB INSTANCE BY NAME**

The previous endpoint returned a list of all Jobs across all namespaces. To get back only one specific Job, you need to specify its name and namespace in the URL. To retrieve the Job shown in the previous listing (name: my-job; namespace: default), you need to request the following path: /apis/batch/v1/namespaces/default/jobs/my-job, as shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing 8.11 Retrieving a resource in a specific namespace by name**

```
$ curl http://localhost:8001/apis/batch/v1/namespaces/default/jobs/my-job
{
  "kind": "Job",
  "apiVersion": "batch/v1",
  "metadata": {
    "name": "my-job",
    "namespace": "default",
    ...
  }
}
```

As you can see, you get back the complete JSON definition of the my-job Job resource, exactly like you do if you run:

```
$ kubectl get job my-job -o json
```

You've seen that you can browse the Kubernetes REST API server without using any special tools, but to fully explore the REST API and interact with it, a better option is described at the end of this chapter. For now, exploring it with curl like this is enough to make you understand how an application running in a pod talks to Kubernetes.

#### **8.2.2 Talking to the API server from within a pod**

You've learned how to talk to the API server from your local machine, using the kubectl proxy. Now, let's see how to talk to it from within a pod, where you (usually) don't have kubectl. Therefore, to talk to the API server from inside a pod, you need to take care of three things:

- Find the location of the API server.
- Make sure you're talking to the API server and not something impersonating it.
- Authenticate with the server; otherwise it won't let you see or do anything.

You'll see how this is done in the next three sections.

### RUNNING A POD TO TRY OUT COMMUNICATION WITH THE API SERVER

The first thing you need is a pod from which to talk to the API server. You'll run a pod that does nothing (it runs the `sleep` command in its only container), and then run a shell in the container with `kubectl exec`. Then you'll try to access the API server from within that shell using `curl`.

Therefore, you need to use a container image that contains the `curl` binary. If you search for such an image on, say, Docker Hub, you'll find the `tutum/curl` image, so use it (you can also use any other existing image containing the `curl` binary or you can build your own). The pod definition is shown in the following listing.

**Listing 8.12 A pod for trying out communication with the API server: curl.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: curl
spec:
  containers:
    - name: main
      image: tutum/curl
      command: ["sleep", "9999999"]
```

Using the tutum/curl image, because you need curl available in the container

You're running the sleep command with a long delay to keep your container running.

After creating the pod, run `kubectl exec` to run a bash shell inside its container:

```
$ kubectl exec -it curl bash
root@curl:/#
```

You're now ready to talk to the API server.

### FINDING THE API SERVER'S ADDRESS

First, you need to find the IP and port of the Kubernetes API server. This is easy, because a Service called `kubernetes` is automatically exposed in the default namespace and configured to point to the API server. You may remember seeing it every time you listed services with `kubectl get svc`:

```
$ kubectl get svc
NAME      CLUSTER-IP     EXTERNAL-IP   PORT(S)      AGE
kubernetes  10.0.0.1      <none>        443/TCP     46d
```

And you'll remember from chapter 5 that environment variables are configured for each service. You can get both the IP address and the port of the API server by looking up the `KUBERNETES_SERVICE_HOST` and `KUBERNETES_SERVICE_PORT` variables (inside the container):

```
root@curl:/# env | grep KUBERNETES_SERVICE
KUBERNETES_SERVICE_PORT=443
KUBERNETES_SERVICE_HOST=10.0.0.1
KUBERNETES_SERVICE_PORT_HTTPS=443
```

You may also remember that each service also gets a DNS entry, so you don't even need to look up the environment variables, but instead simply point curl to <https://kubernetes>. To be fair, if you don't know which port the service is available at, you also either need to look up the environment variables or perform a DNS SRV record lookup to get the service's actual port number.

The environment variables shown previously say that the API server is listening on port 443, which is the default port for HTTPS, so try hitting the server through HTTPS:

```
root@curl:/# curl https://kubernetes
curl: (60) SSL certificate problem: unable to get local issuer certificate
...
If you'd like to turn off curl's verification of the certificate, use
the -k (or --insecure) option.
```

Although the simplest way to get around this is to use the proposed -k option (and this is what you'd normally use when playing with the API server manually), let's look at the longer (and correct) route. Instead of blindly trusting that the server you're connecting to is the authentic API server, you'll verify its identity by having curl check its certificate.

**TIP** Never skip checking the server's certificate in an actual application. Doing so could make your app expose its authentication token to an attacker using a man-in-the-middle attack.

#### VERIFYING THE SERVER'S IDENTITY

In the previous chapter, while discussing Secrets, we looked at an automatically created Secret called `default-token-xyz`, which is mounted into each container at `/var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/`. Let's see the contents of that Secret again, by listing files in that directory:

```
root@curl:/# ls /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/
ca.crt      namespace      token
```

The Secret has three entries (and therefore three files in the Secret volume). Right now, we'll focus on the `ca.crt` file, which holds the certificate of the certificate authority (CA) used to sign the Kubernetes API server's certificate. To verify you're talking to the API server, you need to check if the server's certificate is signed by the CA. curl allows you to specify the CA certificate with the `--cacert` option, so try hitting the API server again:

```
root@curl:/# curl --cacert /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount
               ↗ /ca.crt https://kubernetes
Unauthorized
```

**NOTE** You may see a longer error description than “Unauthorized.”

Okay, you've made progress. curl verified the server's identity because its certificate was signed by the CA you trust. As the Unauthorized response suggests, you still need to take care of authentication. You'll do that in a moment, but first let's see how to make life easier by setting the CURL\_CA\_BUNDLE environment variable, so you don't need to specify --cacert every time you run curl:

```
root@curl:/# export CURL_CA_BUNDLE=/var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/
               ↳ serviceaccount/ca.crt
```

You can now hit the API server without using --cacert:

```
root@curl:/# curl https://kubernetes
Unauthorized
```

This is much nicer now. Your client (curl) trusts the API server now, but the API server itself says you're not authorized to access it, because it doesn't know who you are.

#### AUTHENTICATING WITH THE API SERVER

You need to authenticate with the server, so it allows you to read and even update and/or delete the API objects deployed in the cluster. To authenticate, you need an authentication token. Luckily, the token is provided through the default-token Secret mentioned previously, and is stored in the token file in the secret volume. As the Secret's name suggests, that's the primary purpose of the Secret.

You're going to use the token to access the API server. First, load the token into an environment variable:

```
root@curl:/# TOKEN=$(cat /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/
               ↳ serviceaccount/token)
```

The token is now stored in the TOKEN environment variable. You can use it when sending requests to the API server, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 8.13 Getting a proper response from the API server

```
root@curl:/# curl -H "Authorization: Bearer $TOKEN" https://kubernetes
{
  "paths": [
    "/api",
    "/api/v1",
    "/apis",
    "/apis/apps",
    "/apis/apps/v1beta1",
    "/apis/authorization.k8s.io",
    ...
    "/ui/",
    "/version"
  ]
}
```

### Disabling role-based access control (RBAC)

If you're using a Kubernetes cluster with RBAC enabled, the service account may not be authorized to access (parts of) the API server. You'll learn about service accounts and RBAC in chapter 12. For now, the simplest way to allow you to query the API server is to work around RBAC by running the following command:

```
$ kubectl create clusterrolebinding permissive-binding \
  --clusterrole=cluster-admin \
  --group=system:serviceaccounts
```

This gives all service accounts (we could also say all pods) cluster-admin privileges, allowing them to do whatever they want. Obviously, doing this is dangerous and should never be done on production clusters. For test purposes, it's fine.

As you can see, you passed the token inside the Authorization HTTP header in the request. The API server recognized the token as authentic and returned a proper response. You can now explore all the resources in your cluster, the way you did a few sections ago.

For example, you could list all the pods in the same namespace. But first you need to know what namespace the curl pod is running in.

#### GETTING THE NAMESPACE THE POD IS RUNNING IN

In the first part of this chapter, you saw how to pass the namespace to the pod through the Downward API. But if you're paying attention, you probably noticed your secret volume also contains a file called namespace. It contains the namespace the pod is running in, so you can read the file instead of having to explicitly pass the namespace to your pod through an environment variable. Load the contents of the file into the NS environment variable and then list all the pods, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 8.14 Listing pods in the pod's own namespace

```
root@curl:/# NS=$(cat /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/
  ↪ serviceaccount/namespace)
root@curl:/# curl -H "Authorization: Bearer $TOKEN"
  ↪ https://kubernetes/api/v1/namespaces/$NS/pods
{
  "kind": "PodList",
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  ...
```

And there you go. By using the three files in the mounted secret volume directory, you listed all the pods running in the same namespace as your pod. In the same manner, you could also retrieve other API objects and even update them by sending PUT or PATCH instead of simple GET requests.

### RECAPPING HOW PODS TALK TO KUBERNETES

Let's recap how an app running inside a pod can access the Kubernetes API properly:

- The app should verify whether the API server's certificate is signed by the certificate authority, whose certificate is in the ca.crt file.
- The app should authenticate itself by sending the Authorization header with the bearer token from the token file.
- The namespace file should be used to pass the namespace to the API server when performing CRUD operations on API objects inside the pod's namespace.

**DEFINITION** CRUD stands for Create, Read, Update, and Delete. The corresponding HTTP methods are POST, GET, PATCH/PUT, and DELETE, respectively.

All three aspects of pod to API server communication are displayed in figure 8.5.

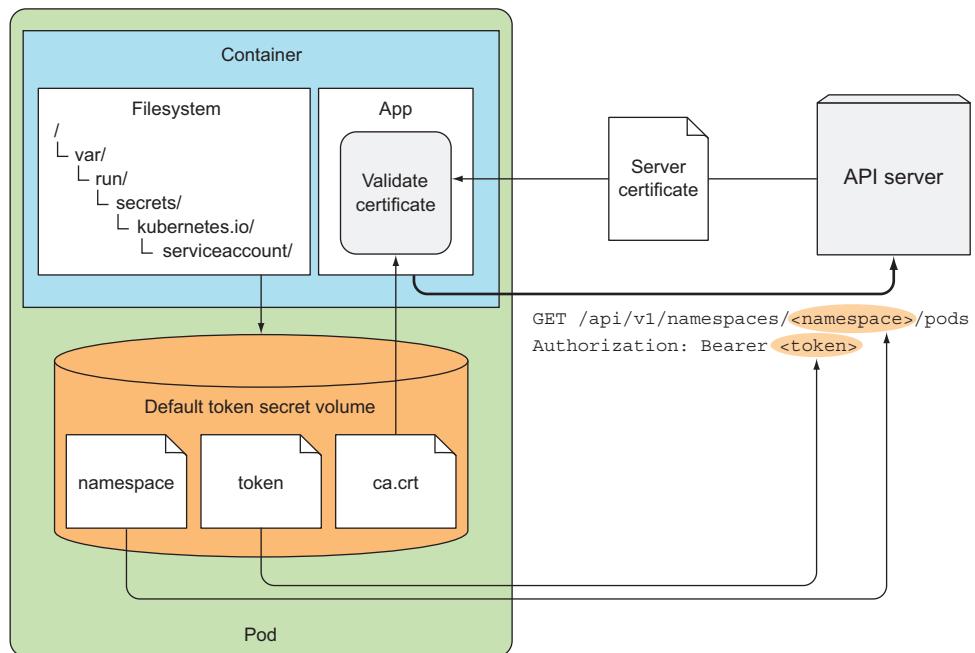


Figure 8.5 Using the files from the default-token Secret to talk to the API server

#### 8.2.3 Simplifying API server communication with ambassador containers

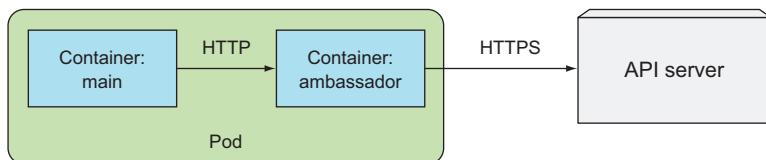
Dealing with HTTPS, certificates, and authentication tokens sometimes seems too complicated to developers. I've seen developers disable validation of server certificates on way too many occasions (and I'll admit to doing it myself a few times). Luckily, you can make the communication much simpler while keeping it secure.

Remember the `kubectl proxy` command we mentioned in section 8.2.1? You ran the command on your local machine to make it easier to access the API server. Instead of sending requests to the API server directly, you sent them to the proxy and let it take care of authentication, encryption, and server verification. The same method can be used inside your pods, as well.

### INTRODUCING THE AMBASSADOR CONTAINER PATTERN

Imagine having an application that (among other things) needs to query the API server. Instead of it talking to the API server directly, as you did in the previous section, you can run `kubectl proxy` in an ambassador container alongside the main container and communicate with the API server through it.

Instead of talking to the API server directly, the app in the main container can connect to the ambassador through HTTP (instead of HTTPS) and let the ambassador proxy handle the HTTPS connection to the API server, taking care of security transparently (see figure 8.6). It does this by using the files from the default token's secret volume.



**Figure 8.6** Using an ambassador to connect to the API server

Because all containers in a pod share the same loopback network interface, your app can access the proxy through a port on localhost.

### RUNNING THE CURL POD WITH AN ADDITIONAL AMBASSADOR CONTAINER

To see the ambassador container pattern in action, you'll create a new pod like the curl pod you created earlier, but this time, instead of running a single container in the pod, you'll run an additional ambassador container based on a general-purpose `kubectl-proxy` container image I've created and pushed to Docker Hub. You'll find the Dockerfile for the image in the code archive (in `/Chapter08/kubectl-proxy/`) if you want to build it yourself.

The pod's manifest is shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 8.15 A pod with an ambassador container: `curl-with-ambassador.yaml`

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: curl-with-ambassador
spec:
  containers:
  - name: main
  
```

```
image: tutum/curl
command: ["sleep", "9999999"]
- name: ambassador
  image: luksa/kubectl-proxy:1.6.2
```

The ambassador container, running the kubectl-proxy image

The pod spec is almost the same as before, but with a different pod name and an additional container. Run the pod and then enter the main container with

```
$ kubectl exec -it curl-with-ambassador -c main bash
root@curl-with-ambassador:/#
```

Your pod now has two containers, and you want to run bash in the `main` container, hence the `-c main` option. You don't need to specify the container explicitly if you want to run the command in the pod's first container. But if you want to run a command inside any other container, you do need to specify the container's name using the `-c` option.

#### TALKING TO THE API SERVER THROUGH THE AMBASSADOR

Next you'll try connecting to the API server through the ambassador container. By default, `kubectl proxy` binds to port 8001, and because both containers in the pod share the same network interfaces, including loopback, you can point `curl` to `localhost:8001`, as shown in the following listing.

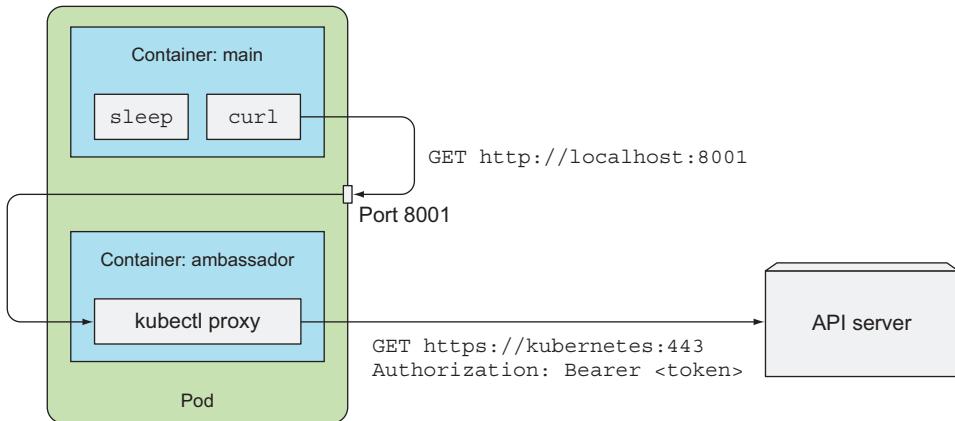
#### Listing 8.16 Accessing the API server through the ambassador container

```
root@curl-with-ambassador:/# curl localhost:8001
{
  "paths": [
    "/api",
    ...
  ]
}
```

Success! The output printed by `curl` is the same response you saw earlier, but this time you didn't need to deal with authentication tokens and server certificates.

To get a clear picture of what exactly happened, refer to figure 8.7. `curl` sent the plain HTTP request (without any authentication headers) to the proxy running inside the ambassador container, and then the proxy sent an HTTPS request to the API server, handling the client authentication by sending the token and checking the server's identity by validating its certificate.

This is a great example of how an ambassador container can be used to hide the complexities of connecting to an external service and simplify the app running in the main container. The ambassador container is reusable across many different apps, regardless of what language the main app is written in. The downside is that an additional process is running and consuming additional resources.



**Figure 8.7 Offloading encryption, authentication, and server verification to `kubectl proxy` in an ambassador container**

#### 8.2.4 Using client libraries to talk to the API server

If your app only needs to perform a few simple operations on the API server, you can often use a regular HTTP client library and perform simple HTTP requests, especially if you take advantage of the `kubectl-proxy` ambassador container the way you did in the previous example. But if you plan on doing more than simple API requests, it's better to use one of the existing Kubernetes API client libraries.

##### USING EXISTING CLIENT LIBRARIES

Currently, two Kubernetes API client libraries exist that are supported by the API Machinery special interest group (SIG):

- *Golang client*—<https://github.com/kubernetes/client-go>
- *Python*—<https://github.com/kubernetes-incubator/client-python>

**NOTE** The Kubernetes community has a number of Special Interest Groups (SIGs) and Working Groups that focus on specific parts of the Kubernetes ecosystem. You'll find a list of them at <https://github.com/kubernetes/community/blob/master/sig-list.md>.

In addition to the two officially supported libraries, here's a list of user-contributed client libraries for many other languages:

- *Java client by Fabric8*—<https://github.com/fabric8io/kubernetes-client>
- *Java client by Amdatu*—<https://bitbucket.org/amdatulabs/amdatu-kubernetes>
- *Node.js client by tenxcloud*—<https://github.com/tenxcloud/node-kubernetes-client>
- *Node.js client by GoDaddy*—<https://github.com/godaddy/kubernetes-client>
- *PHP*—<https://github.com/devstub/kubernetes-api-php-client>
- *Another PHP client*—<https://github.com/maclof/kubernetes-client>

- *Ruby*—<https://github.com/Ch00k/kubr>
- *Another Ruby client*—<https://github.com/abonas/kubeclient>
- *Clojure*—<https://github.com/yanatan16/clj-kubernetes-api>
- *Scala*—<https://github.com/doriordan/skuber>
- *Perl*—<https://metacpan.org/pod/Net::Kubernetes>

These libraries usually support HTTPS and take care of authentication, so you won't need to use the ambassador container.

#### AN EXAMPLE OF INTERACTING WITH KUBERNETES WITH THE FABRIC8 JAVA CLIENT

To give you a sense of how client libraries enable you to talk to the API server, the following listing shows an example of how to list services in a Java app using the Fabric8 Kubernetes client.

##### **Listing 8.17 Listing, creating, updating, and deleting pods with the Fabric8 Java client**

```
import java.util.Arrays;
import io.fabric8.kubernetes.api.model.Pod;
import io.fabric8.kubernetes.api.model.PodList;
import io.fabric8.kubernetes.client.DefaultKubernetesClient;
import io.fabric8.kubernetes.client.KubernetesClient;

public class Test {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
        KubernetesClient client = new DefaultKubernetesClient();

        // list pods in the default namespace
        PodList pods = client.pods().inNamespace("default").list();
        pods.getItems().stream()
            .forEach(s -> System.out.println("Found pod: " +
                s.getMetadata().getName()));

        // create a pod
        System.out.println("Creating a pod");
        Pod pod = client.pods().inNamespace("default")
            .createNew()
            .withNewMetadata()
            .withName("programmatically-created-pod")
            .endMetadata()
            .withNewSpec()
            .addNewContainer()
            .withName("main")
            .withImage("busybox")
            .withCommand(Arrays.asList("sleep", "99999"))
            .endContainer()
            .endSpec()
            .done();
        System.out.println("Created pod: " + pod);

        // edit the pod (add a label to it)
        client.pods().inNamespace("default")
            .withName("programmatically-created-pod")
            .edit()
            .editMetadata()
```

```

        .addToLabels("foo", "bar")
    .endMetadata()
    .done();
System.out.println("Added label foo=bar to pod");

System.out.println("Waiting 1 minute before deleting pod...");
Thread.sleep(60000);

// delete the pod
client.pods().inNamespace("default")
    .withName("programmatically-created-pod")
    .delete();
System.out.println("Deleted the pod");
}
}

```

The code should be self-explanatory, especially because the Fabric8 client exposes a nice, fluent Domain-Specific-Language (DSL) API, which is easy to read and understand.

### BUILDING YOUR OWN LIBRARY WITH SWAGGER AND OPENAPI

If no client is available for your programming language of choice, you can use the Swagger API framework to generate the client library and documentation. The Kubernetes API server exposes Swagger API definitions at /swaggerapi and OpenAPI spec at /swagger.json.

To find out more about the Swagger framework, visit the website at <http://swagger.io>.

### EXPLORING THE API WITH SWAGGER UI

Earlier in the chapter I said I'd point you to a better way of exploring the REST API instead of hitting the REST endpoints with curl. Swagger, which I mentioned in the previous section, is not just a tool for specifying an API, but also provides a web UI for exploring REST APIs if they expose the Swagger API definitions. The better way of exploring REST APIs is through this UI.

Kubernetes not only exposes the Swagger API, but it also has Swagger UI integrated into the API server, though it's not enabled by default. You can enable it by running the API server with the --enable-swagger-ui=true option.

**TIP** If you're using Minikube, you can enable Swagger UI when starting the cluster: `minikube start --extra-config=apiserver.Features.EnableSwaggerUI=true`

After you enable the UI, you can open it in your browser by pointing it to:

```
http(s)://<api server>:<port>/swagger-ui
```

I urge you to give Swagger UI a try. It not only allows you to browse the Kubernetes API, but also interact with it (you can POST JSON resource manifests, PATCH resources, or DELETE them, for example).

### 8.3 Summary

After reading this chapter, you now know how your app, running inside a pod, can get data about itself, other pods, and other components deployed in the cluster. You've learned

- How a pod's name, namespace, and other metadata can be exposed to the process either through environment variables or files in a `downwardAPI` volume
- How CPU and memory requests and limits are passed to your app in any unit the app requires
- How a pod can use `downwardAPI` volumes to get up-to-date metadata, which may change during the lifetime of the pod (such as labels and annotations)
- How you can browse the Kubernetes REST API through `kubectl proxy`
- How pods can find the API server's location through environment variables or DNS, similar to any other Service defined in Kubernetes
- How an application running in a pod can verify that it's talking to the API server and how it can authenticate itself
- How using an ambassador container can make talking to the API server from within an app much simpler
- How client libraries can get you interacting with Kubernetes in minutes

In this chapter, you learned how to talk to the API server, so the next step is learning more about how it works. You'll do that in chapter 11, but before we dive into such details, you still need to learn about two other Kubernetes resources—Deployments and StatefulSets. They're explained in the next two chapters.



# *Deployments: updating applications declaratively*

---

## This chapter covers

- Replacing pods with newer versions
- Updating managed pods
- Updating pods declaratively using Deployment resources
- Performing rolling updates
- Automatically blocking rollouts of bad versions
- Controlling the rate of the rollout
- Reverting pods to a previous version

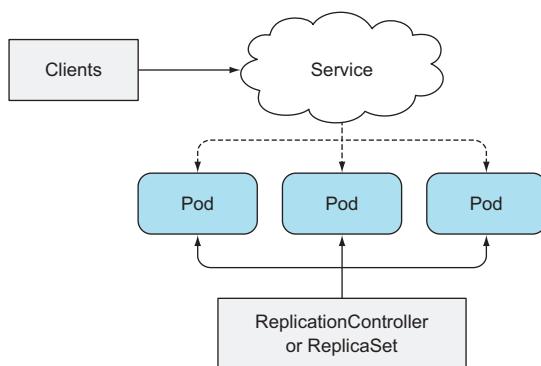
You now know how to package your app components into containers, group them into pods, provide them with temporary or permanent storage, pass both secret and non-secret config data to them, and allow pods to find and talk to each other. You know how to run a full-fledged system composed of independently running smaller components—microservices, if you will. Is there anything else?

Eventually, you’re going to want to update your app. This chapter covers how to update apps running in a Kubernetes cluster and how Kubernetes helps you move toward a true zero-downtime update process. Although this can be achieved using only ReplicationControllers or ReplicaSets, Kubernetes also provides a Deployment

resource that sits on top of ReplicaSets and enables declarative application updates. If you’re not completely sure what that means, keep reading—it’s not as complicated as it sounds.

## 9.1 **Updating applications running in pods**

Let’s start off with a simple example. Imagine having a set of pod instances providing a service to other pods and/or external clients. After reading this book up to this point, you likely recognize that these pods are backed by a ReplicationController or a ReplicaSet. A Service also exists through which clients (apps running in other pods or external clients) access the pods. This is how a basic application looks in Kubernetes (shown in figure 9.1).



**Figure 9.1** The basic outline of an application running in Kubernetes

Initially, the pods run the first version of your application—let’s suppose its image is tagged as v1. You then develop a newer version of the app and push it to an image repository as a new image, tagged as v2. You’d next like to replace all the pods with this new version. Because you can’t change an existing pod’s image after the pod is created, you need to remove the old pods and replace them with new ones running the new image.

You have two ways of updating all those pods. You can do one of the following:

- Delete all existing pods first and then start the new ones.
- Start new ones and, once they’re up, delete the old ones. You can do this either by adding all the new pods and then deleting all the old ones at once, or sequentially, by adding new pods and removing old ones gradually.

Both these strategies have their benefits and drawbacks. The first option would lead to a short period of time when your application is unavailable. The second option requires your app to handle running two versions of the app at the same time. If your app stores data in a data store, the new version shouldn’t modify the data schema or the data in such a way that breaks the previous version.

How do you perform these two update methods in Kubernetes? First, let's look at how to do this manually; then, once you know what's involved in the process, you'll learn how to have Kubernetes perform the update automatically.

### 9.1.1 Deleting old pods and replacing them with new ones

You already know how to get a ReplicationController to replace all its pod instances with pods running a new version. You probably remember the pod template of a ReplicationController can be updated at any time. When the ReplicationController creates new instances, it uses the updated pod template to create them.

If you have a ReplicationController managing a set of v1 pods, you can easily replace them by modifying the pod template so it refers to version v2 of the image and then deleting the old pod instances. The ReplicationController will notice that no pods match its label selector and it will spin up new instances. The whole process is shown in figure 9.2.

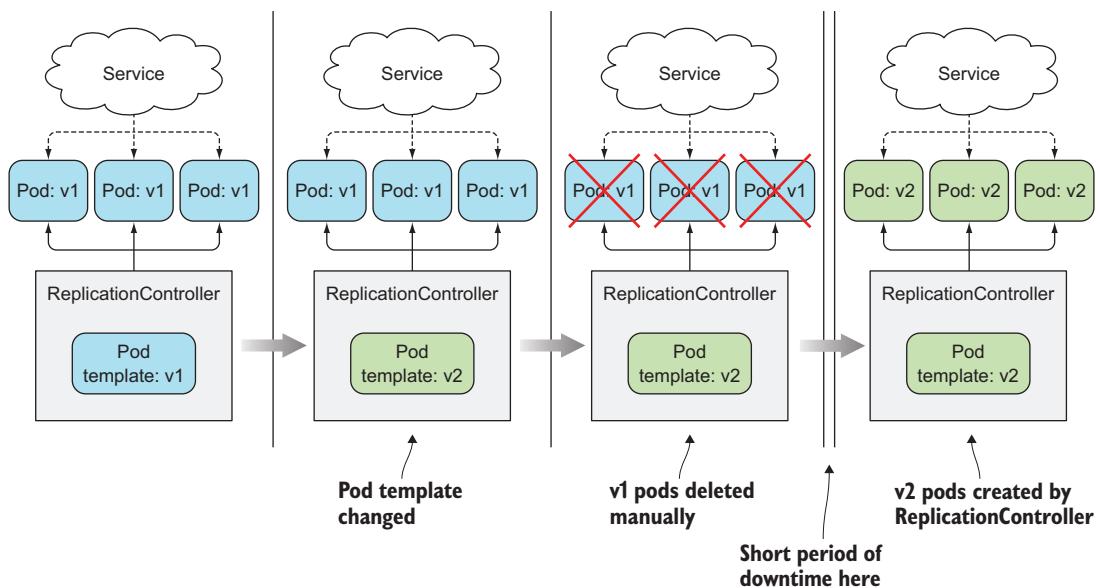


Figure 9.2 Updating pods by changing a ReplicationController's pod template and deleting old Pods

This is the simplest way to update a set of pods, if you can accept the short downtime between the time the old pods are deleted and new ones are started.

### 9.1.2 Spinning up new pods and then deleting the old ones

If you don't want to see any downtime and your app supports running multiple versions at once, you can turn the process around and first spin up all the new pods and

only then delete the old ones. This will require more hardware resources, because you'll have double the number of pods running at the same time for a short while.

This is a slightly more complex method compared to the previous one, but you should be able to do it by combining what you've learned about ReplicationControllers and Services so far.

#### SWITCHING FROM THE OLD TO THE NEW VERSION AT ONCE

Pods are usually fronted by a Service. It's possible to have the Service front only the initial version of the pods while you bring up the pods running the new version. Then, once all the new pods are up, you can change the Service's label selector and have the Service switch over to the new pods, as shown in figure 9.3. This is called a *blue-green deployment*. After switching over, and once you're sure the new version functions correctly, you're free to delete the old pods by deleting the old ReplicationController.

**NOTE** You can change a Service's pod selector with the `kubectl set selector` command.

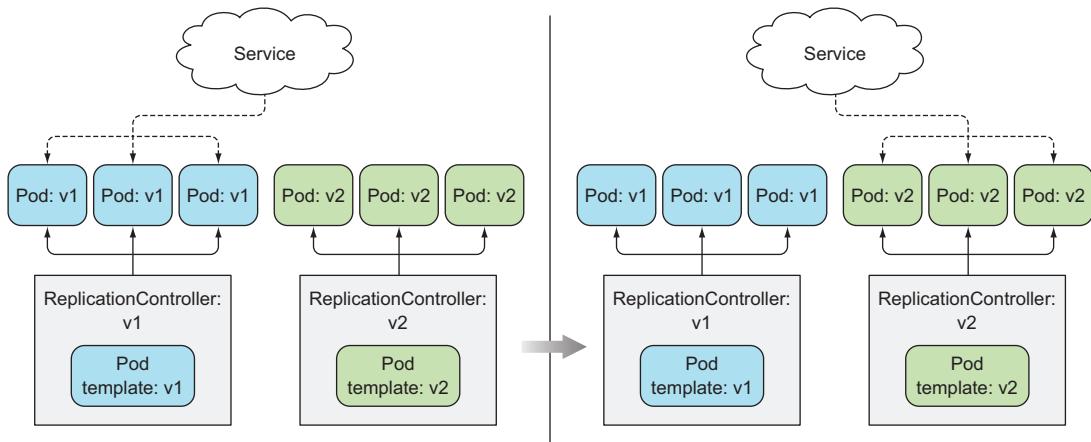


Figure 9.3 Switching a Service from the old pods to the new ones

#### PERFORMING A ROLLING UPDATE

Instead of bringing up all the new pods and deleting the old pods at once, you can also perform a rolling update, which replaces pods step by step. You do this by slowly scaling down the previous ReplicationController and scaling up the new one. In this case, you'll want the Service's pod selector to include both the old and the new pods, so it directs requests toward both sets of pods. See figure 9.4.

Doing a rolling update manually is laborious and error-prone. Depending on the number of replicas, you'd need to run a dozen or more commands in the proper order to perform the update process. Luckily, Kubernetes allows you to perform the rolling update with a single command. You'll learn how in the next section.

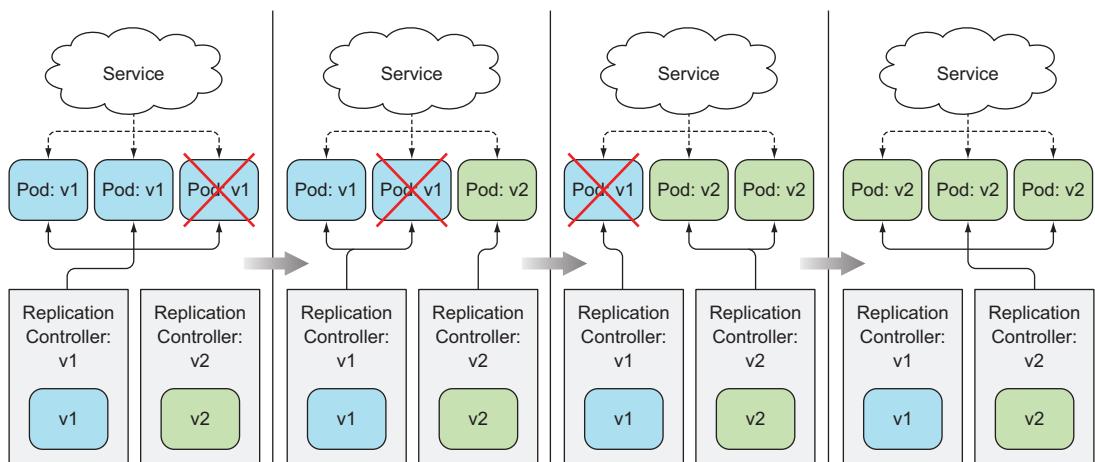


Figure 9.4 A rolling update of pods using two ReplicationControllers

## 9.2 Performing an automatic rolling update with a ReplicationController

Instead of performing rolling updates using ReplicationControllers manually, you can have `kubectl` perform them. Using `kubectl` to perform the update makes the process much easier, but, as you'll see later, this is now an outdated way of updating apps. Nevertheless, we'll walk through this option first, because it was historically the first way of doing an automatic rolling update, and also allows us to discuss the process without introducing too many additional concepts.

### 9.2.1 Running the initial version of the app

Obviously, before you can update an app, you need to have an app deployed. You're going to use a slightly modified version of the `kubia` NodeJS app you created in chapter 2 as your initial version. In case you don't remember what it does, it's a simple web-app that returns the pod's hostname in the HTTP response.

#### CREATING THE V1 APP

You'll change the app so it also returns its version number in the response, which will allow you to distinguish between the different versions you're about to build. I've already built and pushed the app image to Docker Hub under `luksa/kubia:v1`. The following listing shows the app's code.

#### Listing 9.1 The v1 version of our app: v1/app.js

```
const http = require('http');
const os = require('os');

console.log("Kubia server starting...");
```

```
var handler = function(request, response) {  
    console.log("Received request from " + request.connection.remoteAddress);  
    response.writeHead(200);  
    response.end("This is v1 running in pod " + os.hostname() + "\n");  
};  
  
var www = http.createServer(handler);  
www.listen(8080);
```

### RUNNING THE APP AND EXPOSING IT THROUGH A SERVICE USING A SINGLE YAML FILE

To run your app, you'll create a ReplicationController and a LoadBalancer Service to enable you to access the app externally. This time, rather than create these two resources separately, you'll create a single YAML for both of them and post it to the Kubernetes API with a single `kubectl create` command. A YAML manifest can contain multiple objects delimited with a line containing three dashes, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 9.2 A YAML containing an RC and a Service: kubia-rc-and-service-v1.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1  
kind: ReplicationController  
metadata:  
  name: kubia-v1  
spec:  
  replicas: 3  
  template:  
    metadata:  
      name: kubia  
      labels:  
        app: kubia  
    spec:  
      containers:  
      - image: luksa/kubia:v1  
        name: nodejs  
---  
apiVersion: v1  
kind: Service  
metadata:  
  name: kubia  
spec:  
  type: LoadBalancer  
  selector:  
    app: kubia  
  ports:  
  - port: 80  
    targetPort: 8080
```

You're creating a ReplicationController for pods running this image.

YAML files can contain multiple resource definitions separated by a line with three dashes.

The Service fronts all pods created by the ReplicationController.

The YAML defines a ReplicationController called `kubia-v1` and a Service called `kubia`. Go ahead and post the YAML to Kubernetes. After a while, your three v1 pods and the load balancer should all be running, so you can look up the Service's external IP and start hitting the service with `curl`, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 9.3 Getting the Service's external IP and hitting the service in a loop with curl**

```
$ kubectl get svc kubia
NAME      CLUSTER-IP      EXTERNAL-IP      PORT(S)      AGE
kubia     10.3.246.195    130.211.109.222  80:32143/TCP  5m
$ while true; do curl http://130.211.109.222; done
This is v1 running in pod kubia-v1-qr192
This is v1 running in pod kubia-v1-kbtksk
This is v1 running in pod kubia-v1-qr192
This is v1 running in pod kubia-v1-2321o
...

```

**NOTE** If you’re using Minikube or any other Kubernetes cluster where load balancer services aren’t supported, you can use the Service’s node port to access the app. This was explained in chapter 5.

### 9.2.2 Performing a rolling update with kubectl

Next you’ll create version 2 of the app. To keep things simple, all you’ll do is change the response to say, “This is v2”:

```
response.end("This is v2 running in pod " + os.hostname() + "\n");
```

This new version is available in the image `luksa/kubia:v2` on Docker Hub, so you don’t need to build it yourself.

#### Pushing updates to the same image tag

Modifying an app and pushing the changes to the same image tag isn’t a good idea, but we all tend to do that during development. If you’re modifying the `latest` tag, that’s not a problem, but when you’re tagging an image with a different tag (for example, tag `v1` instead of `latest`), once the image is pulled by a worker node, the image will be stored on the node and not pulled again when a new pod using the same image is run (at least that’s the default policy for pulling images).

That means any changes you make to the image won’t be picked up if you push them to the same tag. If a new pod is scheduled to the same node, the Kubelet will run the old version of the image. On the other hand, nodes that haven’t run the old version will pull and run the new image, so you might end up with two different versions of the pod running. To make sure this doesn’t happen, you need to set the container’s `imagePullPolicy` property to `Always`.

You need to be aware that the default `imagePullPolicy` depends on the image tag. If a container refers to the `latest` tag (either explicitly or by not specifying the tag at all), `imagePullPolicy` defaults to `Always`, but if the container refers to any other tag, the policy defaults to `IfNotPresent`.

When using a tag other than `latest`, you need to set the `imagePullPolicy` properly if you make changes to an image without changing the tag. Or better yet, make sure you always push changes to an image under a new tag.

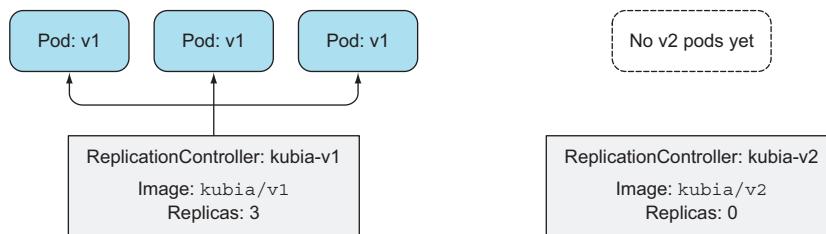
Keep the curl loop running and open another terminal, where you'll get the rolling update started. To perform the update, you'll run the `kubectl rolling-update` command. All you need to do is tell it which ReplicationController you're replacing, give a name for the new ReplicationController, and specify the new image you'd like to replace the original one with. The following listing shows the full command for performing the rolling update.

**Listing 9.4 Initiating a rolling-update of a ReplicationController using kubectl**

```
$ kubectl rolling-update kubia-v1 kubia-v2 --image=luksa/kubia:v2
Created kubia-v2
Scaling up kubia-v2 from 0 to 3, scaling down kubia-v1 from 3 to 0 (keep 3
pods available, don't exceed 4 pods)
...
```

Because you're replacing ReplicationController `kubia-v1` with one running version 2 of your `kubia` app, you'd like the new ReplicationController to be called `kubia-v2` and use the `luksa/kubia:v2` container image.

When you run the command, a new ReplicationController called `kubia-v2` is created immediately. The state of the system at this point is shown in figure 9.5.



**Figure 9.5** The state of the system immediately after starting the rolling update

The new ReplicationController's pod template references the `luksa/kubia:v2` image and its initial desired replica count is set to 0, as you can see in the following listing.

**Listing 9.5 Describing the new ReplicationController created by the rolling update**

```
$ kubectl describe rc kubia-v2
Name:      kubia-v2
Namespace: default
Image(s):   luksa/kubia:v2
Selector:  app=kubia,deployment=757d16a0f02f6a5c387f2b5edb62b155
Labels:    app=kubia
Replicas:  0 current / 0 desired
...
```

The new ReplicationController refers to the v2 image.

Initially, the desired number of replicas is zero.

### UNDERSTANDING THE STEPS PERFORMED BY KUBECTL BEFORE THE ROLLING UPDATE COMMENCES

kubectl created this ReplicationController by copying the kubia-v1 controller and changing the image in its pod template. If you look closely at the controller's label selector, you'll notice it has been modified, too. It includes not only a simple app=kubia label, but also an additional deployment label which the pods must have in order to be managed by this ReplicationController.

You probably know this already, but this is necessary to avoid having both the new and the old ReplicationControllers operating on the same set of pods. But even if pods created by the new controller have the additional deployment label in addition to the app=kubia label, doesn't this mean they'll be selected by the first ReplicationController's selector, because it's set to app=kubia?

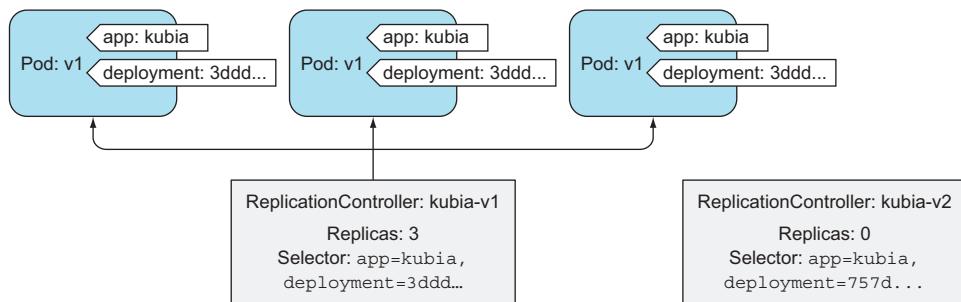
Yes, that's exactly what would happen, but there's a catch. The rolling-update process has modified the selector of the first ReplicationController, as well:

```
$ kubectl describe rc kubia-v1
Name:           kubia-v1
Namespace:      default
Image(s):      luksa/kubia:v1
Selector:      app=kubia,deployment=3ddd307978b502a5b975ed4045ae4964-orig
```

Okay, but doesn't this mean the first controller now sees zero pods matching its selector, because the three pods previously created by it contain only the app=kubia label? No, because kubectl had also modified the labels of the live pods just before modifying the ReplicationController's selector:

```
$ kubectl get po --show-labels
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   LABELS
kubia-v1-m33mv  1/1    Running   0          2m    app=kubia,deployment=3ddd...
kubia-v1-nmzw9  1/1    Running   0          2m    app=kubia,deployment=3ddd...
kubia-v1-cdtey  1/1    Running   0          2m    app=kubia,deployment=3ddd...
```

If this is getting too complicated, examine figure 9.6, which shows the pods, their labels, and the two ReplicationControllers, along with their pod selectors.



**Figure 9.6** Detailed state of the old and new ReplicationControllers and pods at the start of a rolling update

kubectl had to do all this before even starting to scale anything up or down. Now imagine doing the rolling update manually. It's easy to see yourself making a mistake here and possibly having the ReplicationController kill off all your pods—pods that are actively serving your production clients!

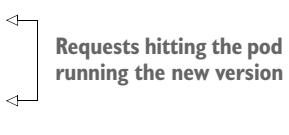
#### REPLACING OLD PODS WITH NEW ONES BY SCALING THE TWO REPLICATIONCONTROLLERS

After setting up all this, kubectl starts replacing pods by first scaling up the new controller to 1. The controller thus creates the first v2 pod. kubectl then scales down the old ReplicationController by 1. This is shown in the next two lines printed by kubectl:

```
Scaling kubia-v2 up to 1
Scaling kubia-v1 down to 2
```

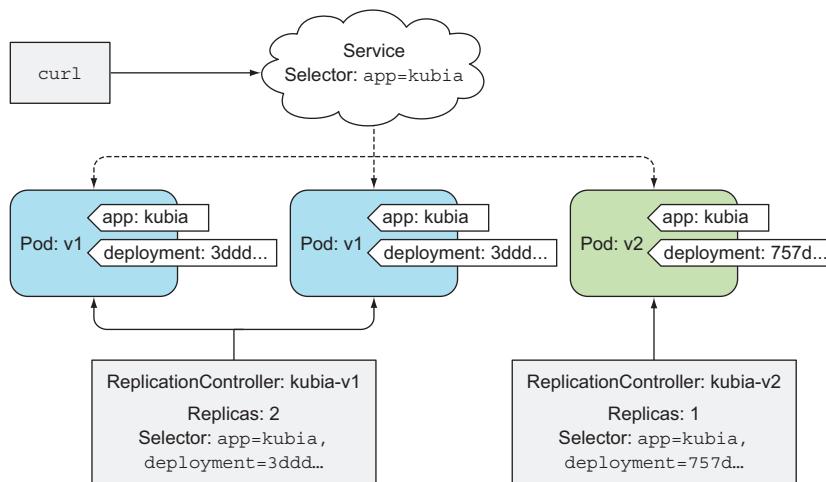
Because the Service is targeting all pods with the `app=kubia` label, you should start seeing your curl requests redirected to the new v2 pod every few loop iterations:

```
This is v2 running in pod kubia-v2-nmzw9
This is v1 running in pod kubia-v1-kbtksk
This is v1 running in pod kubia-v1-2321o
This is v2 running in pod kubia-v2-nmzw9
...
...
```



A vertical double-headed arrow pointing from the text "Requests hitting the pod running the new version" to the line "This is v2 running in pod kubia-v2-nmzw9".

Figure 9.7 shows the current state of the system.



**Figure 9.7** The Service is redirecting requests to both the old and new pods during the rolling update.

As kubectl continues with the rolling update, you start seeing a progressively bigger percentage of requests hitting v2 pods, as the update process deletes more of the v1 pods and replaces them with those running your new image. Eventually, the original

ReplicationController is scaled to zero, causing the last v1 pod to be deleted, which means the Service will now be backed by v2 pods only. At that point, `kubectl` will delete the original ReplicationController and the update process will be finished, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 9.6 The final steps performed by `kubectl rolling-update`

```
...
Scaling kubia-v2 up to 2
Scaling kubia-v1 down to 1
Scaling kubia-v2 up to 3
Scaling kubia-v1 down to 0
Update succeeded. Deleting kubia-v1
replicationcontroller "kubia-v1" rolling updated to "kubia-v2"
```

You're now left with only the `kubia-v2` ReplicationController and three v2 pods. All throughout this update process, you've hit your service and gotten a response every time. You have, in fact, performed a rolling update with zero downtime.

### 9.2.3 Understanding why `kubectl rolling-update` is now obsolete

At the beginning of this section, I mentioned an even better way of doing updates than through `kubectl rolling-update`. What's so wrong with this process that a better one had to be introduced?

Well, for starters, I, for one, don't like Kubernetes modifying objects I've created. Okay, it's perfectly fine for the scheduler to assign a node to my pods after I create them, but Kubernetes modifying the labels of my pods and the label selectors of my ReplicationControllers is something that I don't expect and could cause me to go around the office yelling at my colleagues, "Who's been messing with my controllers!?!?"

But even more importantly, if you've paid close attention to the words I've used, you probably noticed that all this time I said explicitly that the `kubectl` client was the one performing all these steps of the rolling update.

You can see this by turning on verbose logging with the `--v` option when triggering the rolling update:

```
$ kubectl rolling-update kubia-v1 kubia-v2 --image=luksa/kubia:v2 --v 6
```

**TIP** Using the `--v 6` option increases the logging level enough to let you see the requests `kubectl` is sending to the API server.

Using this option, `kubectl` will print out each HTTP request it sends to the Kubernetes API server. You'll see PUT requests to

```
/api/v1/namespaces/default/replicationcontrollers/kubia-v1
```

which is the RESTful URL representing your `kubia-v1` ReplicationController resource. These requests are the ones scaling down your ReplicationController, which shows

that the `kubectl` client is the one doing the scaling, instead of it being performed by the Kubernetes master.

**TIP** Use the verbose logging option when running other `kubectl` commands, to learn more about the communication between `kubectl` and the API server.

But why is it such a bad thing that the update process is being performed by the client instead of on the server? Well, in your case, the update went smoothly, but what if you lost network connectivity while `kubectl` was performing the update? The update process would be interrupted mid-way. Pods and ReplicationControllers would end up in an intermediate state.

Another reason why performing an update like this isn't as good as it could be is because it's imperative. Throughout this book, I've stressed how Kubernetes is about you telling it the desired state of the system and having Kubernetes achieve that state on its own, by figuring out the best way to do it. This is how pods are deployed and how pods are scaled up and down. You never tell Kubernetes to add an additional pod or remove an excess one—you change the number of desired replicas and that's it.

Similarly, you will also want to change the desired image tag in your pod definitions and have Kubernetes replace the pods with new ones running the new image. This is exactly what drove the introduction of a new resource called a Deployment, which is now the preferred way of deploying applications in Kubernetes.

### 9.3 Using Deployments for updating apps declaratively

A Deployment is a higher-level resource meant for deploying applications and updating them declaratively, instead of doing it through a ReplicationController or a ReplicaSet, which are both considered lower-level concepts.

When you create a Deployment, a ReplicaSet resource is created underneath (eventually more of them). As you may remember from chapter 4, ReplicaSets are a new generation of ReplicationControllers, and should be used instead of them. ReplicaSets replicate and manage pods, as well. When using a Deployment, the actual pods are created and managed by the Deployment's ReplicaSets, not by the Deployment directly (the relationship is shown in figure 9.8).



**Figure 9.8** A Deployment is backed by a ReplicaSet, which supervises the deployment's pods.

You might wonder why you'd want to complicate things by introducing another object on top of a ReplicationController or ReplicaSet, when they're what suffices to keep a set of pod instances running. As the rolling update example in section 9.2 demonstrates, when updating the app, you need to introduce an additional ReplicationController and

coordinate the two controllers to dance around each other without stepping on each other's toes. You need something coordinating this dance. A Deployment resource takes care of that (it's not the Deployment resource itself, but the controller process running in the Kubernetes control plane that does that; but we'll get to that in chapter 11).

Using a Deployment instead of the lower-level constructs makes updating an app much easier, because you're defining the desired state through the single Deployment resource and letting Kubernetes take care of the rest, as you'll see in the next few pages.

### 9.3.1 Creating a Deployment

Creating a Deployment isn't that different from creating a ReplicationController. A Deployment is also composed of a label selector, a desired replica count, and a pod template. In addition to that, it also contains a field, which specifies a deployment strategy that defines how an update should be performed when the Deployment resource is modified.

#### CREATING A DEPLOYMENT MANIFEST

Let's see how to use the `kubia-v1` ReplicationController example from earlier in this chapter and modify it so it describes a Deployment instead of a ReplicationController. As you'll see, this requires only three trivial changes. The following listing shows the modified YAML.

#### Listing 9.7 A Deployment definition: `kubia-deployment-v1.yaml`

```
apiVersion: apps/v1beta1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  replicas: 3
  template:
    metadata:
      name: kubia
      labels:
        app: kubia
  spec:
    containers:
      - image: luksa/kubia:v1
        name: nodejs
```

The code block has three annotations:

- A callout pointing to the first line: "Deployments are in the `apps` API group, version `v1beta1`. This is a key difference from the original ReplicationController manifest.
- A callout pointing to the `kind: Deployment` line: "You've changed the kind from `ReplicationController` to `Deployment`. This is the primary change being demonstrated.
- A callout pointing to the `name: kubia` line under `template`: "There's no need to include the version in the name of the Deployment. The Deployment's name (`kubia`) now encompasses the application version (`v1`), making the separate `image` field redundant.

**NOTE** You'll find an older version of the Deployment resource in `extensions/v1beta1`, and a newer one in `apps/v1beta2` with different required fields and different defaults. Be aware that `kubectl explain` shows the older version.

Because the ReplicationController from before was managing a specific version of the pods, you called it `kubia-v1`. A Deployment, on the other hand, is above that version stuff. At a given point in time, the Deployment can have multiple pod versions running under its wing, so its name shouldn't reference the app version.

## CREATING THE DEPLOYMENT RESOURCE

Before you create this Deployment, make sure you delete any ReplicationControllers and pods that are still running, but keep the kubia Service for now. You can use the `--all` switch to delete all those ReplicationControllers like this:

```
$ kubectl delete rc --all
```

You're now ready to create the Deployment:

```
$ kubectl create -f kubia-deployment-v1.yaml --record
deployment "kubia" created
```

**TIP** Be sure to include the `--record` command-line option when creating it. This records the command in the revision history, which will be useful later.

## DISPLAYING THE STATUS OF THE DEPLOYMENT ROLLOUT

You can use the usual `kubectl get deployment` and the `kubectl describe deployment` commands to see details of the Deployment, but let me point you to an additional command, which is made specifically for checking a Deployment's status:

```
$ kubectl rollout status deployment kubia
deployment kubia successfully rolled out
```

According to this, the Deployment has been successfully rolled out, so you should see the three pod replicas up and running. Let's see:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME                  READY     STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-1506449474-otnnh 1/1      Running   0          14s
kubia-1506449474-vmn7s 1/1      Running   0          14s
kubia-1506449474-xis6m 1/1      Running   0          14s
```

## UNDERSTANDING HOW DEPLOYMENTS CREATE REPLICASETS, WHICH THEN CREATE THE PODS

Take note of the names of these pods. Earlier, when you used a ReplicationController to create pods, their names were composed of the name of the controller plus a randomly generated string (for example, `kubia-v1-m33mv`). The three pods created by the Deployment include an additional numeric value in the middle of their names. What is that exactly?

The number corresponds to the hashed value of the pod template in the Deployment and the ReplicaSet managing these pods. As we said earlier, a Deployment doesn't manage pods directly. Instead, it creates ReplicaSets and leaves the managing to them, so let's look at the ReplicaSet created by your Deployment:

```
$ kubectl get replicaset
NAME        DESIRED   CURRENT   AGE
kubia-1506449474  3         3         10s
```

The ReplicaSet's name also contains the hash value of its pod template. As you'll see later, a Deployment creates multiple ReplicaSets—one for each version of the pod

template. Using the hash value of the pod template like this allows the Deployment to always use the same (possibly existing) ReplicaSet for a given version of the pod template.

#### ACCESSING THE PODS THROUGH THE SERVICE

With the three replicas created by this ReplicaSet now running, you can use the Service you created a while ago to access them, because you made the new pods' labels match the Service's label selector.

Up until this point, you probably haven't seen a good-enough reason why you should use Deployments over ReplicationControllers. Luckily, creating a Deployment also hasn't been any harder than creating a ReplicationController. Now, you'll start doing things with this Deployment, which will make it clear why Deployments are superior. This will become clear in the next few moments, when you see how updating the app through a Deployment resource compares to updating it through a ReplicationController.

### 9.3.2 *Updating a Deployment*

Previously, when you ran your app using a ReplicationController, you had to explicitly tell Kubernetes to perform the update by running `kubectl rolling-update`. You even had to specify the name for the new ReplicationController that should replace the old one. Kubernetes replaced all the original pods with new ones and deleted the original ReplicationController at the end of the process. During the process, you basically had to stay around, keeping your terminal open and waiting for `kubectl` to finish the rolling update.

Now compare this to how you're about to update a Deployment. The only thing you need to do is modify the pod template defined in the Deployment resource and Kubernetes will take all the steps necessary to get the actual system state to what's defined in the resource. Similar to scaling a ReplicationController or ReplicaSet up or down, all you need to do is reference a new image tag in the Deployment's pod template and leave it to Kubernetes to transform your system so it matches the new desired state.

#### UNDERSTANDING THE AVAILABLE DEPLOYMENT STRATEGIES

How this new state should be achieved is governed by the deployment strategy configured on the Deployment itself. The default strategy is to perform a rolling update (the strategy is called `RollingUpdate`). The alternative is the `Recreate` strategy, which deletes all the old pods at once and then creates new ones, similar to modifying a ReplicationController's pod template and then deleting all the pods (we talked about this in section 9.1.1).

The `Recreate` strategy causes all old pods to be deleted before the new ones are created. Use this strategy when your application doesn't support running multiple versions in parallel and requires the old version to be stopped completely before the new one is started. This strategy does involve a short period of time when your app becomes completely unavailable.

The RollingUpdate strategy, on the other hand, removes old pods one by one, while adding new ones at the same time, keeping the application available throughout the whole process, and ensuring there's no drop in its capacity to handle requests. This is the default strategy. The upper and lower limits for the number of pods above or below the desired replica count are configurable. You should use this strategy only when your app can handle running both the old and new version at the same time.

### SLOWING DOWN THE ROLLING UPDATE FOR DEMO PURPOSES

In the next exercise, you'll use the RollingUpdate strategy, but you need to slow down the update process a little, so you can see that the update is indeed performed in a rolling fashion. You can do that by setting the `minReadySeconds` attribute on the Deployment. We'll explain what this attribute does by the end of this chapter. For now, set it to 10 seconds with the `kubectl patch` command.

```
$ kubectl patch deployment kubia -p '{"spec": {"minReadySeconds": 10}}'  
"kubia" patched
```

**TIP** The `kubectl patch` command is useful for modifying a single property or a limited number of properties of a resource without having to edit its definition in a text editor.

You used the `patch` command to change the spec of the Deployment. This doesn't cause any kind of update to the pods, because you didn't change the pod template. Changing other Deployment properties, like the desired replica count or the deployment strategy, also doesn't trigger a rollout, because it doesn't affect the existing individual pods in any way.

### TRIGGERING THE ROLLING UPDATE

If you'd like to track the update process as it progresses, first run the `curl` loop again in another terminal to see what's happening with the requests (don't forget to replace the IP with the actual external IP of your service):

```
$ while true; do curl http://130.211.109.222; done
```

To trigger the actual rollout, you'll change the image used in the single pod container to `luksa/kubia:v2`. Instead of editing the whole YAML of the Deployment object or using the `patch` command to change the image, you'll use the `kubectl set image` command, which allows changing the image of any resource that contains a container (ReplicationControllers, ReplicaSets, Deployments, and so on). You'll use it to modify your Deployment like this:

```
$ kubectl set image deployment kubia nodejs=luksa/kubia:v2  
deployment "kubia" image updated
```

When you execute this command, you're updating the `kubia` Deployment's pod template so the image used in its `nodejs` container is changed to `luksa/kubia:v2` (from `:v1`). This is shown in figure 9.9.

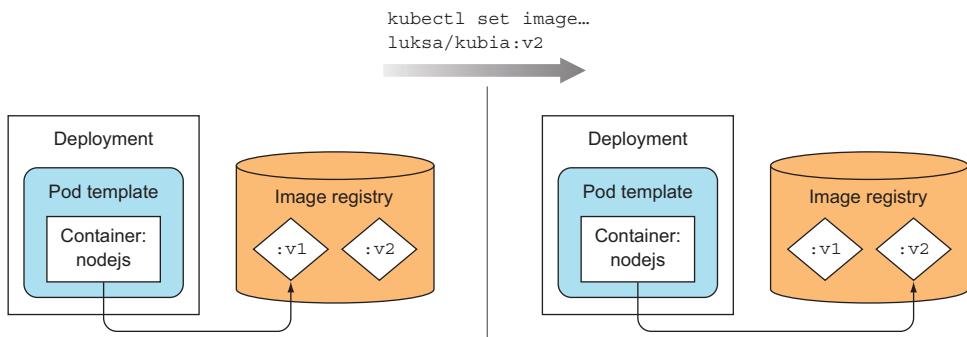


Figure 9.9 Updating a Deployment's pod template to point to a new image

### Ways of modifying Deployments and other resources

Over the course of this book, you've learned several ways how to modify an existing object. Let's list all of them together to refresh your memory.

Table 9.1 Modifying an existing resource in Kubernetes

| Method            | What it does  |
|-------------------|---|
| kubectl edit      | Opens the object's manifest in your default editor. After making changes, saving the file, and exiting the editor, the object is updated.<br>Example: <code>kubectl edit deployment kubia</code>  |
| kubectl patch     | Modifies individual properties of an object.<br>Example: <code>kubectl patch deployment kubia -p '{"spec": {"template": {"spec": {"containers": [{"name": "nodejs", "image": "luksa/kubia:v2"}]} }}}'</code>  |
| kubectl apply     | Modifies the object by applying property values from a full YAML or JSON file. If the object specified in the YAML/JSON doesn't exist yet, it's created. The file needs to contain the full definition of the resource (it can't include only the fields you want to update, as is the case with <code>kubectl patch</code> ).<br>Example: <code>kubectl apply -f kubia-deployment-v2.yaml</code> |
| kubectl replace   | Replaces the object with a new one from a YAML/JSON file. In contrast to the <code>apply</code> command, this command requires the object to exist; otherwise it prints an error.<br>Example: <code>kubectl replace -f kubia-deployment-v2.yaml</code>  |
| kubectl set image | Changes the container image defined in a Pod, ReplicationController's template, Deployment, DaemonSet, Job, or ReplicaSet.<br>Example: <code>kubectl set image deployment kubia nodejs=luksa/kubia:v2</code>  |

All these methods are equivalent as far as Deployments go. What they do is change the Deployment's specification. This change then triggers the rollout process.

If you've run the curl loop, you'll see requests initially hitting only the v1 pods; then more and more of them hit the v2 pods until, finally, all of them hit only the remaining v2 pods, after all v1 pods are deleted. This works much like the rolling update performed by kubectl.

### UNDERSTANDING THE AWESOMENESS OF DEPLOYMENTS

Let's think about what has happened. By changing the pod template in your Deployment resource, you've updated your app to a newer version—by changing a single field!

The controllers running as part of the Kubernetes control plane then performed the update. The process wasn't performed by the kubectl client, like it was when you used `kubectl rolling-update`. I don't know about you, but I think that's simpler than having to run a special command telling Kubernetes what to do and then waiting around for the process to be completed.

**NOTE** Be aware that if the pod template in the Deployment references a ConfigMap (or a Secret), modifying the ConfigMap will not trigger an update. One way to trigger an update when you need to modify an app's config is to create a new ConfigMap and modify the pod template so it references the new ConfigMap.

The events that occurred below the Deployment's surface during the update are similar to what happened during the `kubectl rolling-update`. An additional ReplicaSet was created and it was then scaled up slowly, while the previous ReplicaSet was scaled down to zero (the initial and final states are shown in figure 9.10).

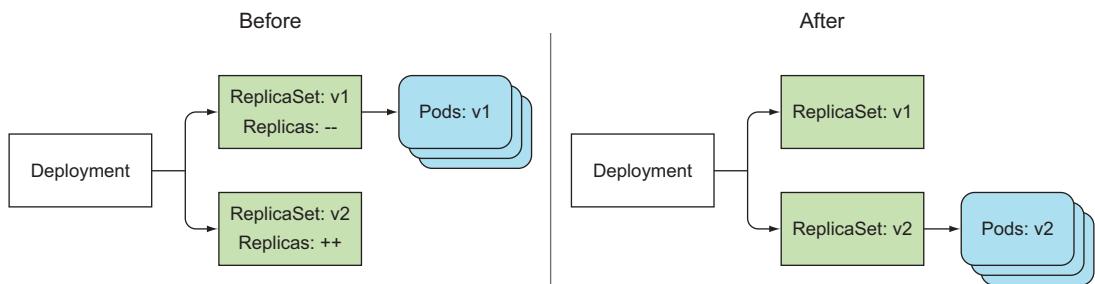


Figure 9.10 A Deployment at the start and end of a rolling update

You can still see the old ReplicaSet next to the new one if you list them:

```
$ kubectl get rs
NAME          DESIRED   CURRENT   AGE
kubia-1506449474  0         0        24m
kubia-1581357123  3         3        23m
```

Similar to ReplicationControllers, all your new pods are now managed by the new ReplicaSet. Unlike before, the old ReplicaSet is still there, whereas the old ReplicationController was deleted at the end of the rolling-update process. You'll soon see what the purpose of this inactive ReplicaSet is.

But you shouldn't care about ReplicaSets here, because you didn't create them directly. You created and operated only on the Deployment resource; the underlying ReplicaSets are an implementation detail. You'll agree that managing a single Deployment object is much easier compared to dealing with and keeping track of multiple ReplicationControllers.

Although this difference may not be so apparent when everything goes well with a rollout, it becomes much more obvious when you hit a problem during the rollout process. Let's simulate one problem right now.

### 9.3.3 Rolling back a deployment

You're currently running version v2 of your image, so you'll need to prepare version 3 first.

#### CREATING VERSION 3 OF YOUR APP

In version 3, you'll introduce a bug that makes your app handle only the first four requests properly. All requests from the fifth request onward will return an internal server error (HTTP status code 500). You'll simulate this by adding an `if` statement at the beginning of the handler function. The following listing shows the new code, with all required changes shown in bold.

#### Listing 9.8 Version 3 of our app (a broken version): v3/app.js

```
const http = require('http');
const os = require('os');

var requestCount = 0;

console.log("Kubia server starting...");

var handler = function(request, response) {
  console.log("Received request from " + request.connection.remoteAddress);
  if (++requestCount >= 5) {
    response.writeHead(500);
    response.end("Some internal error has occurred! This is pod " +
      os.hostname() + "\n");
    return;
  }
  response.writeHead(200);
  response.end("This is v3 running in pod " + os.hostname() + "\n");
};

var www = http.createServer(handler);
www.listen(8080);
```

As you can see, on the fifth and all subsequent requests, the code returns a 500 error with the message “Some internal error has occurred...”

## DEPLOYING VERSION 3

I've made the v3 version of the image available as `luksa/kubia:v3`. You'll deploy this new version by changing the image in the Deployment specification again:

```
$ kubectl set image deployment kubia nodejs=luksa/kubia:v3
deployment "kubia" image updated
```

You can follow the progress of the rollout with `kubectl rollout status`:

```
$ kubectl rollout status deployment kubia
Waiting for rollout to finish: 1 out of 3 new replicas have been updated...
Waiting for rollout to finish: 2 out of 3 new replicas have been updated...
Waiting for rollout to finish: 1 old replicas are pending termination...
deployment "kubia" successfully rolled out
```

The new version is now live. As the following listing shows, after a few requests, your web clients start receiving errors.

### Listing 9.9 Hitting your broken version 3

```
$ while true; do curl http://130.211.109.222; done
This is v3 running in pod kubia-1914148340-lalmx
This is v3 running in pod kubia-1914148340-bz35w
This is v3 running in pod kubia-1914148340-w0voh
...
This is v3 running in pod kubia-1914148340-w0voh
Some internal error has occurred! This is pod kubia-1914148340-bz35w
This is v3 running in pod kubia-1914148340-w0voh
Some internal error has occurred! This is pod kubia-1914148340-lalmx
This is v3 running in pod kubia-1914148340-w0voh
Some internal error has occurred! This is pod kubia-1914148340-lalmx
Some internal error has occurred! This is pod kubia-1914148340-bz35w
Some internal error has occurred! This is pod kubia-1914148340-w0voh
```

## UNDOING A ROLLOUT

You can't have your users experiencing internal server errors, so you need to do something about it fast. In section 9.3.6 you'll see how to block bad rollouts automatically, but for now, let's see what you can do about your bad rollout manually. Luckily, Deployments make it easy to roll back to the previously deployed version by telling Kubernetes to undo the last rollout of a Deployment:

```
$ kubectl rollout undo deployment kubia
deployment "kubia" rolled back
```

This rolls the Deployment back to the previous revision.

**TIP** The `undo` command can also be used while the rollout process is still in progress to essentially abort the rollout. Pods already created during the rollout process are removed and replaced with the old ones again.

### DISPLAYING A DEPLOYMENT'S ROLLOUT HISTORY

Rolling back a rollout is possible because Deployments keep a revision history. As you'll see later, the history is stored in the underlying ReplicaSets. When a rollout completes, the old ReplicaSet isn't deleted, and this enables rolling back to any revision, not only the previous one. The revision history can be displayed with the `kubectl rollout history deployment kubia` command:

```
$ kubectl rollout history deployment kubia
deployments "kubia":
REVISION    CHANGE-CAUSE
2           kubectl set image deployment kubia nodejs=luksa/kubia:v2
3           kubectl set image deployment kubia nodejs=luksa/kubia:v3
```

Remember the `--record` command-line option you used when creating the Deployment? Without it, the `CHANGE-CAUSE` column in the revision history would be empty, making it much harder to figure out what's behind each revision.

### ROLLING BACK TO A SPECIFIC DEPLOYMENT REVISION

You can roll back to a specific revision by specifying the revision in the `undo` command. For example, if you want to roll back to the first version, you'd execute the following command:

```
$ kubectl rollout undo deployment kubia --to-revision=1
```

Remember the inactive ReplicaSet left over when you modified the Deployment the first time? The ReplicaSet represents the first revision of your Deployment. All ReplicaSets created by a Deployment represent the complete revision history, as shown in figure 9.11. Each ReplicaSet stores the complete information of the Deployment at that specific revision, so you shouldn't delete it manually. If you do, you'll lose that specific revision from the Deployment's history, preventing you from rolling back to it.

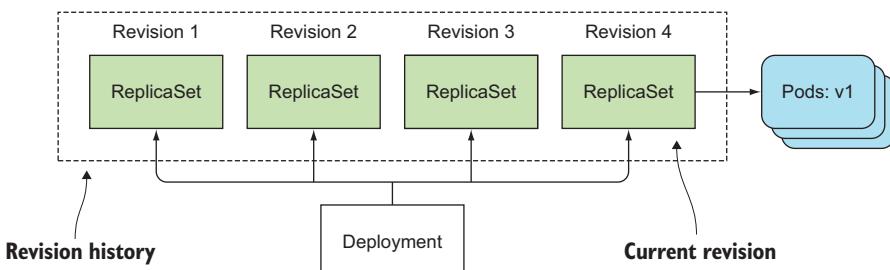


Figure 9.11 A Deployment's ReplicaSets also act as its revision history.

But having old ReplicaSets cluttering your ReplicaSet list is not ideal, so the length of the revision history is limited by the `revisionHistoryLimit` property on the Deployment resource. It defaults to two, so normally only the current and the previous revision are shown in the history (and only the current and the previous ReplicaSet are preserved). Older ReplicaSets are deleted automatically.

**NOTE** The extensions/v1beta1 version of Deployments doesn't have a default revisionHistoryLimit, whereas the default in version apps/v1beta2 is 10.

### 9.3.4 Controlling the rate of the rollout

When you performed the rollout to v3 and tracked its progress with the kubectl rollout status command, you saw that first a new pod was created, and when it became available, one of the old pods was deleted and another new pod was created. This continued until there were no old pods left. The way new pods are created and old ones are deleted is configurable through two additional properties of the rolling update strategy.

#### INTRODUCING THE MAXSURGE AND MAXUNAVAILABLE PROPERTIES OF THE ROLLING UPDATE STRATEGY

Two properties affect how many pods are replaced at once during a Deployment's rolling update. They are `maxSurge` and `maxUnavailable` and can be set as part of the `rollingUpdate` sub-property of the Deployment's `strategy` attribute, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 9.10 Specifying parameters for the rollingUpdate strategy

```
spec:
  strategy:
    rollingUpdate:
      maxSurge: 1
      maxUnavailable: 0
    type: RollingUpdate
```

What these properties do is explained in table 9.2.

Table 9.2 Properties for configuring the rate of the rolling update

| Property                    | What it does  |
|-----------------------------|---|
| <code>maxSurge</code>       | Determines how many pod instances you allow to exist above the desired replica count configured on the Deployment. It defaults to 25%, so there can be at most 25% more pod instances than the desired count. If the desired replica count is set to four, there will never be more than five pod instances running at the same time during an update. When converting a percentage to an absolute number, the number is rounded up. Instead of a percentage, the value can also be an absolute value (for example, one or two additional pods can be allowed).   |
| <code>maxUnavailable</code> | Determines how many pod instances can be unavailable relative to the desired replica count during the update. It also defaults to 25%, so the number of available pod instances must never fall below 75% of the desired replica count. Here, when converting a percentage to an absolute number, the number is rounded down. If the desired replica count is set to four and the percentage is 25%, only one pod can be unavailable. There will always be at least three pod instances available to serve requests during the whole rollout. As with <code>maxSurge</code> , you can also specify an absolute value instead of a percentage. |

Because the desired replica count in your case was three, and both these properties default to 25%, `maxSurge` allowed the number of all pods to reach four, and

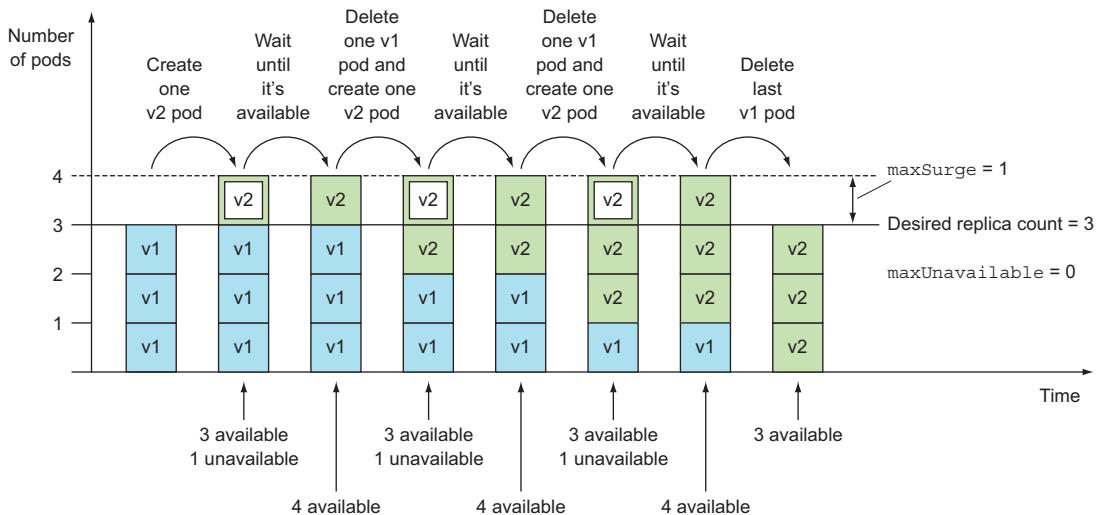


Figure 9.12 Rolling update of a Deployment with three replicas and default `maxSurge` and `maxUnavailable`

`maxUnavailable` disallowed having any unavailable pods (in other words, three pods had to be available at all times). This is shown in figure 9.12.

#### UNDERSTANDING THE MAXUNAVAILABLE PROPERTY

The extensions/v1beta1 version of Deployments uses different defaults—it sets both `maxSurge` and `maxUnavailable` to 1 instead of 25%. In the case of three replicas, `maxSurge` is the same as before, but `maxUnavailable` is different (1 instead of 0). This makes the rollout process unwind a bit differently, as shown in figure 9.13.

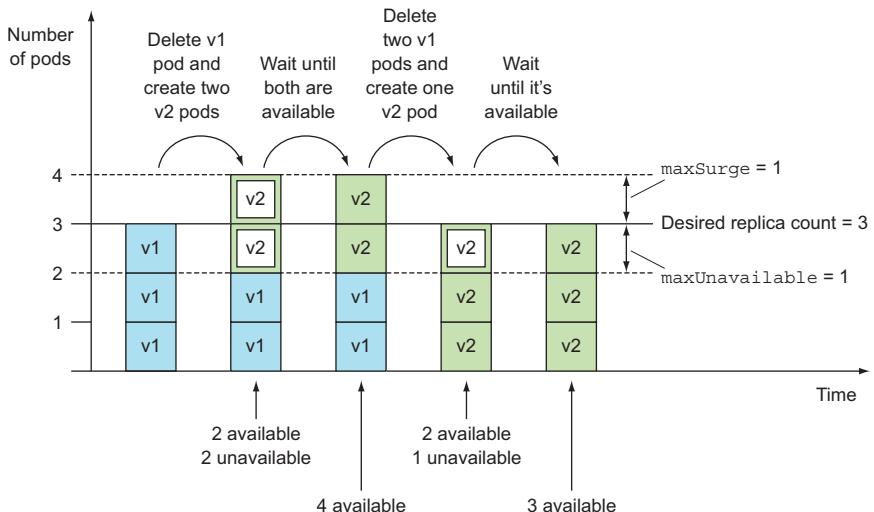


Figure 9.13 Rolling update of a Deployment with the `maxSurge=1` and `maxUnavailable=1`

In this case, one replica can be unavailable, so if the desired replica count is three, only two of them need to be available. That's why the rollout process immediately deletes one pod and creates two new ones. This ensures two pods are available and that the maximum number of pods isn't exceeded (the maximum is four in this case—three plus one from `maxSurge`). As soon as the two new pods are available, the two remaining old pods are deleted.

This is a bit hard to grasp, especially since the `maxUnavailable` property leads you to believe that that's the maximum number of unavailable pods that are allowed. If you look at the previous figure closely, you'll see two unavailable pods in the second column even though `maxUnavailable` is set to 1.

It's important to keep in mind that `maxUnavailable` is relative to the desired replica count. If the replica count is set to three and `maxUnavailable` is set to one, that means that the update process must always keep at least two (3 minus 1) pods available, while the number of pods that aren't available can exceed one.

### 9.3.5 Pausing the rollout process

After the bad experience with version 3 of your app, imagine you've now fixed the bug and pushed version 4 of your image. You're a little apprehensive about rolling it out across all your pods the way you did before. What you want is to run a single v4 pod next to your existing v2 pods and see how it behaves with only a fraction of all your users. Then, once you're sure everything's okay, you can replace all the old pods with new ones.

You could achieve this by running an additional pod either directly or through an additional Deployment, ReplicationController, or ReplicaSet, but you do have another option available on the Deployment itself. A Deployment can also be paused during the rollout process. This allows you to verify that everything is fine with the new version before proceeding with the rest of the rollout.

#### PAUSING THE ROLLOUT

I've prepared the v4 image, so go ahead and trigger the rollout by changing the image to `luksa/kubia:v4`, but then immediately (within a few seconds) pause the rollout:

```
$ kubectl set image deployment kubia nodejs=luksa/kubia:v4
deployment "kubia" image updated

$ kubectl rollout pause deployment kubia
deployment "kubia" paused
```

A single new pod should have been created, but all original pods should also still be running. Once the new pod is up, a part of all requests to the service will be redirected to the new pod. This way, you've effectively run a canary release. A canary release is a technique for minimizing the risk of rolling out a bad version of an application and it affects all your users. Instead of rolling out the new version to everyone, you replace only one or a small number of old pods with new ones. This way only a small number of users will initially hit the new version. You can then verify whether the new version

is working fine or not and then either continue the rollout across all remaining pods or roll back to the previous version.

#### RESUMING THE ROLLOUT

In your case, by pausing the rollout process, only a small portion of client requests will hit your v4 pod, while most will still hit the v3 pods. Once you're confident the new version works as it should, you can resume the deployment to replace all the old pods with new ones:

```
$ kubectl rollout resume deployment kubia
deployment "kubia" resumed
```

Obviously, having to pause the deployment at an exact point in the rollout process isn't what you want to do. In the future, a new upgrade strategy may do that automatically, but currently, the proper way of performing a canary release is by using two different Deployments and scaling them appropriately.

#### USING THE PAUSE FEATURE TO PREVENT ROLLOUTS

Pausing a Deployment can also be used to prevent updates to the Deployment from kicking off the rollout process, allowing you to make multiple changes to the Deployment and starting the rollout only when you're done making all the necessary changes. Once you're ready for changes to take effect, you resume the Deployment and the rollout process will start.

**NOTE** If a Deployment is paused, the `undo` command won't undo it until you resume the Deployment.

### 9.3.6 **Blocking rollouts of bad versions**

Before you conclude this chapter, we need to discuss one more property of the Deployment resource. Remember the `minReadySeconds` property you set on the Deployment at the beginning of section 9.3.2? You used it to slow down the rollout, so you could see it was indeed performing a rolling update and not replacing all the pods at once. The main function of `minReadySeconds` is to prevent deploying malfunctioning versions, not slowing down a deployment for fun.

#### UNDERSTANDING THE APPLICABILITY OF MINREADYSECONDS

The `minReadySeconds` property specifies how long a newly created pod should be ready before the pod is treated as available. Until the pod is available, the rollout process will not continue (remember the `maxUnavailable` property?). A pod is ready when readiness probes of all its containers return a success. If a new pod isn't functioning properly and its readiness probe starts failing before `minReadySeconds` have passed, the rollout of the new version will effectively be blocked.

You used this property to slow down your rollout process by having Kubernetes wait 10 seconds after a pod was ready before continuing with the rollout. Usually, you'd set `minReadySeconds` to something much higher to make sure pods keep reporting they're ready after they've already started receiving actual traffic.

Although you should obviously test your pods both in a test and in a staging environment before deploying them into production, using `minReadySeconds` is like an airbag that saves your app from making a big mess after you've already let a buggy version slip into production.

With a properly configured readiness probe and a proper `minReadySeconds` setting, Kubernetes would have prevented us from deploying the buggy v3 version earlier. Let me show you how.

#### DEFINING A READINESS PROBE TO PREVENT OUR V3 VERSION FROM BEING ROLLED OUT FULLY

You're going to deploy version v3 again, but this time, you'll have the proper readiness probe defined on the pod. Your Deployment is currently at version v4, so before you start, roll back to version v2 again so you can pretend this is the first time you're upgrading to v3. If you wish, you can go straight from v4 to v3, but the text that follows assumes you returned to v2 first.

Unlike before, where you only updated the image in the pod template, you're now also going to introduce a readiness probe for the container at the same time. Up until now, because there was no explicit readiness probe defined, the container and the pod were always considered ready, even if the app wasn't truly ready or was returning errors. There was no way for Kubernetes to know that the app was malfunctioning and shouldn't be exposed to clients.

To change the image and introduce the readiness probe at once, you'll use the `kubectl apply` command. You'll use the following YAML to update the deployment (you'll store it as `kubia-deployment-v3-with-readinesscheck.yaml`), as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 9.11 Deployment with a readiness probe: kubia-deployment-v3-with-readinesscheck.yaml**

```
apiVersion: apps/v1beta1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  replicas: 3
  minReadySeconds: 10
  strategy:
    rollingUpdate:
      maxSurge: 1
      maxUnavailable: 0
      type: RollingUpdate
  template:
    metadata:
      name: kubia
      labels:
        app: kubia
    spec:
      containers:
        - image: luksa/kubia:v3
```

You're keeping  
minReadySeconds  
set to 10.

You're keeping  
maxUnavailable  
set to 0 to make the deployment  
replace pods one by one

```
name: nodejs
readinessProbe:
  periodSeconds: 1
  httpGet:
    path: /
    port: 8080
```

You're defining a readiness probe that will be executed every second.

The readiness probe will perform an HTTP GET request against our container.

## UPDATING A DEPLOYMENT WITH KUBECTL APPLY

To update the Deployment this time, you'll use kubectl apply like this:

```
$ kubectl apply -f kubia-deployment-v3-with-readinesscheck.yaml
deployment "kubia" configured
```

The apply command updates the Deployment with everything that's defined in the YAML file. It not only updates the image but also adds the readiness probe definition and anything else you've added or modified in the YAML. If the new YAML also contains the replicas field, which doesn't match the number of replicas on the existing Deployment, the apply operation will also scale the Deployment, which isn't usually what you want.

**TIP** To keep the desired replica count unchanged when updating a Deployment with kubectl apply, don't include the replicas field in the YAML.

Running the apply command will kick off the update process, which you can again follow with the rollout status command:

```
$ kubectl rollout status deployment kubia
Waiting for rollout to finish: 1 out of 3 new replicas have been updated...
```

Because the status says one new pod has been created, your service should be hitting it occasionally, right? Let's see:

```
$ while true; do curl http://130.211.109.222; done
This is v2 running in pod kubia-1765119474-jvslk
This is v2 running in pod kubia-1765119474-jvslk
This is v2 running in pod kubia-1765119474-xk5g3
This is v2 running in pod kubia-1765119474-pmb26
This is v2 running in pod kubia-1765119474-pmb26
This is v2 running in pod kubia-1765119474-xk5g3
...

```

Nope, you never hit the v3 pod. Why not? Is it even there? List the pods:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME                  READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-1163142519-7ws0i  0/1     Running   0          30s
kubia-1765119474-jvslk  1/1     Running   0          9m
kubia-1765119474-pmb26  1/1     Running   0          9m
kubia-1765119474-xk5g3  1/1     Running   0          8m
```

Aha! There's your problem (or as you'll learn soon, your blessing)! The pod is shown as not ready, but I guess you've been expecting that, right? What has happened?

#### UNDERSTANDING HOW A READINESS PROBE PREVENTS BAD VERSIONS FROM BEING ROLLED OUT

As soon as your new pod starts, the readiness probe starts being hit every second (you set the probe's interval to one second in the pod spec). On the fifth request the readiness probe began failing, because your app starts returning HTTP status code 500 from the fifth request onward.

As a result, the pod is removed as an endpoint from the service (see figure 9.14). By the time you start hitting the service in the curl loop, the pod has already been marked as not ready. This explains why you never hit the new pod with curl. And that's exactly what you want, because you don't want clients to hit a pod that's not functioning properly.

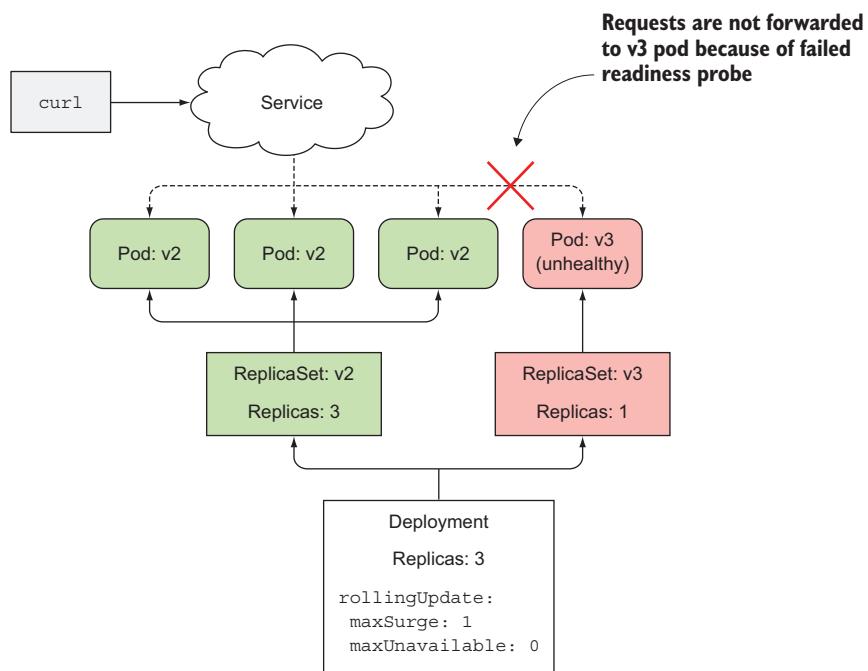


Figure 9.14 Deployment blocked by a failing readiness probe in the new pod

But what about the rollout process? The `rollout status` command shows only one new replica has started. Thankfully, the rollout process will not continue, because the new pod will never become available. To be considered available, it needs to be ready for at least 10 seconds. Until it's available, the rollout process will not create any new pods, and it also won't remove any original pods because you've set the `maxUnavailable` property to 0.

The fact that the deployment is stuck is a good thing, because if it had continued replacing the old pods with the new ones, you'd end up with a completely non-working service, like you did when you first rolled out version 3, when you weren't using the readiness probe. But now, with the readiness probe in place, there was virtually no negative impact on your users. A few users may have experienced the internal server error, but that's not as big of a problem as if the rollout had replaced all pods with the faulty version 3.

**TIP** If you only define the readiness probe without setting `minReadySeconds` properly, new pods are considered available immediately when the first invocation of the readiness probe succeeds. If the readiness probe starts failing shortly after, the bad version is rolled out across all pods. Therefore, you should set `minReadySeconds` appropriately.

#### CONFIGURING A DEADLINE FOR THE ROLLOUT

By default, after the rollout can't make any progress in 10 minutes, it's considered as failed. If you use the `kubectl describe deployment` command, you'll see it display a `ProgressDeadlineExceeded` condition, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 9.12 Seeing the conditions of a Deployment with `kubectl describe`

```
$ kubectl describe deploy kubia
Name:           kubia
...
Conditions:
  Type      Status  Reason
  ----      -----  -----
  Available  True    MinimumReplicasAvailable
  Progressing False   ProgressDeadlineExceeded
```

The Deployment took too long to make progress.

The time after which the Deployment is considered failed is configurable through the `progressDeadlineSeconds` property in the Deployment spec.

**NOTE** The `extensions/v1beta1` version of Deployments doesn't set a deadline.

#### ABORTING A BAD ROLLOUT

Because the rollout will never continue, the only thing to do now is abort the rollout by undoing it:

```
$ kubectl rollout undo deployment kubia
deployment "kubia" rolled back
```

**NOTE** In future versions, the rollout will be aborted automatically when the time specified in `progressDeadlineSeconds` is exceeded.

## 9.4 Summary

This chapter has shown you how to make your life easier by using a declarative approach to deploying and updating applications in Kubernetes. Now that you've read this chapter, you should know how to

- Perform a rolling update of pods managed by a ReplicationController
- Create Deployments instead of lower-level ReplicationControllers or ReplicaSets
- Update your pods by editing the pod template in the Deployment specification
- Roll back a Deployment either to the previous revision or to any earlier revision still listed in the revision history
- Abort a Deployment mid-way
- Pause a Deployment to inspect how a single instance of the new version behaves in production before allowing additional pod instances to replace the old ones
- Control the rate of the rolling update through `maxSurge` and `maxUnavailable` properties
- Use `minReadySeconds` and readiness probes to have the rollout of a faulty version blocked automatically

In addition to these Deployment-specific tasks, you also learned how to

- Use three dashes as a separator to define multiple resources in a single YAML file
- Turn on `kubectl`'s verbose logging to see exactly what it's doing behind the curtains

You now know how to deploy and manage sets of pods created from the same pod template and thus share the same persistent storage. You even know how to update them declaratively. But what about running sets of pods, where each instance needs to use its own persistent storage? We haven't looked at that yet. That's the subject of our next chapter.

# 10

## *StatefulSets: deploying replicated stateful applications*

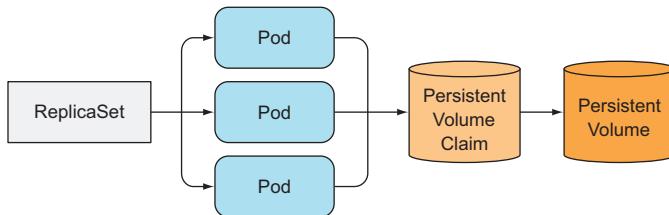
### This chapter covers

- Deploying stateful clustered applications
- Providing separate storage for each instance of a replicated pod
- Guaranteeing a stable name and hostname for pod replicas
- Starting and stopping pod replicas in a predictable order
- Discovering peers through DNS SRV records

You now know how to run both single-instance and replicated stateless pods, and even stateful pods utilizing persistent storage. You can run several replicated web-server pod instances and you can run a single database pod instance that uses persistent storage, provided either through plain pod volumes or through PersistentVolumes bound by a PersistentVolumeClaim. But can you employ a ReplicaSet to replicate the database pod?

## 10.1 Replicating stateful pods

ReplicaSets create multiple pod replicas from a single pod template. These replicas don't differ from each other, apart from their name and IP address. If the pod template includes a volume, which refers to a specific PersistentVolumeClaim, all replicas of the ReplicaSet will use the exact same PersistentVolumeClaim and therefore the same PersistentVolume bound by the claim (shown in figure 10.1).



**Figure 10.1** All pods from the same ReplicaSet always use the same PersistentVolumeClaim and PersistentVolume.

Because the reference to the claim is in the pod template, which is used to stamp out multiple pod replicas, you can't make each replica use its own separate PersistentVolumeClaim. You can't use a ReplicaSet to run a distributed data store, where each instance needs its own separate storage—at least not by using a single ReplicaSet. To be honest, none of the API objects you've seen so far make running such a data store possible. You need something else.

### 10.1.1 Running multiple replicas with separate storage for each

How does one run multiple replicas of a pod and have each pod use its own storage volume? ReplicaSets create exact copies (replicas) of a pod; therefore you can't use them for these types of pods. What can you use?

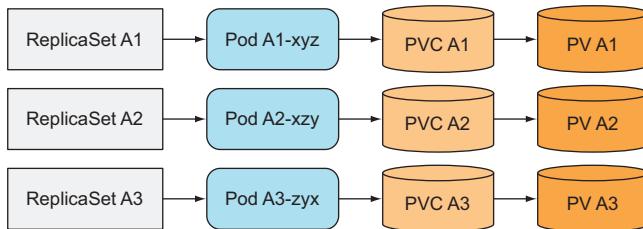
#### CREATING PODS MANUALLY

You could create pods manually and have each of them use its own PersistentVolumeClaim, but because no ReplicaSet looks after them, you'd need to manage them manually and recreate them when they disappear (as in the event of a node failure). Therefore, this isn't a viable option.

#### USING ONE REPLICASET PER POD INSTANCE

Instead of creating pods directly, you could create multiple ReplicaSets—one for each pod with each ReplicaSet's desired replica count set to one, and each ReplicaSet's pod template referencing a dedicated PersistentVolumeClaim (as shown in figure 10.2).

Although this takes care of the automatic rescheduling in case of node failures or accidental pod deletions, it's much more cumbersome compared to having a single ReplicaSet. For example, think about how you'd scale the pods in that case. You



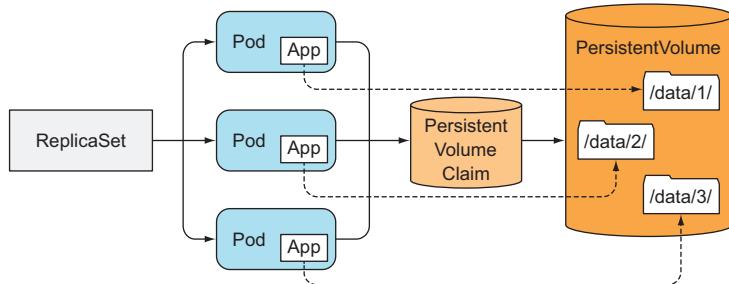
**Figure 10.2** Using one ReplicaSet for each pod instance

couldn't change the desired replica count—you'd have to create additional ReplicaSets instead.

Using multiple ReplicaSets is therefore not the best solution. But could you maybe use a single ReplicaSet and have each pod instance keep its own persistent state, even though they're all using the same storage volume?

#### USING MULTIPLE DIRECTORIES IN THE SAME VOLUME

A trick you can use is to have all pods use the same PersistentVolume, but then have a separate file directory inside that volume for each pod (this is shown in figure 10.3).



**Figure 10.3** Working around the shared storage problem by having the app in each pod use a different file directory

Because you can't configure pod replicas differently from a single pod template, you can't tell each instance what directory it should use, but you can make each instance automatically select (and possibly also create) a data directory that isn't being used by any other instance at that time. This solution does require coordination between the instances, and isn't easy to do correctly. It also makes the shared storage volume the bottleneck.

#### 10.1.2 Providing a stable identity for each pod

In addition to storage, certain clustered applications also require that each instance has a long-lived stable identity. Pods can be killed from time to time and replaced with

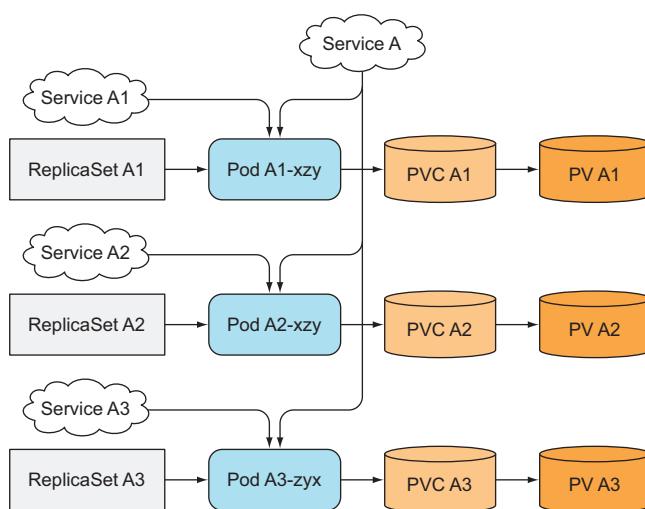
new ones. When a ReplicaSet replaces a pod, the new pod is a completely new pod with a new hostname and IP, although the data in its storage volume may be that of the killed pod. For certain apps, starting up with the old instance's data but with a completely new network identity may cause problems.

Why do certain apps mandate a stable network identity? This requirement is fairly common in distributed stateful applications. Certain apps require the administrator to list all the other cluster members and their IP addresses (or hostnames) in each member's configuration file. But in Kubernetes, every time a pod is rescheduled, the new pod gets both a new hostname and a new IP address, so the whole application cluster would have to be reconfigured every time one of its members is rescheduled.

#### USING A DEDICATED SERVICE FOR EACH POD INSTANCE

A trick you can use to work around this problem is to provide a stable network address for cluster members by creating a dedicated Kubernetes Service for each individual member. Because service IPs are stable, you can then point to each member through its service IP (rather than the pod IP) in the configuration.

This is similar to creating a ReplicaSet for each member to provide them with individual storage, as described previously. Combining these two techniques results in the setup shown in figure 10.4 (an additional service covering all the cluster members is also shown, because you usually need one for clients of the cluster).



**Figure 10.4** Using one Service and ReplicaSet per pod to provide a stable network address and an individual volume for each pod, respectively

The solution is not only ugly, but it still doesn't solve everything. The individual pods can't know which Service they are exposed through (and thus can't know their stable IP), so they can't self-register in other pods using that IP.

Luckily, Kubernetes saves us from resorting to such complex solutions. The proper clean and simple way of running these special types of applications in Kubernetes is through a StatefulSet.

## 10.2 Understanding StatefulSets

Instead of using a ReplicaSet to run these types of pods, you create a StatefulSet resource, which is specifically tailored to applications where instances of the application must be treated as non-fungible individuals, with each one having a stable name and state.

### 10.2.1 Comparing StatefulSets with ReplicaSets

To understand the purpose of StatefulSets, it's best to compare them to ReplicaSets or ReplicationControllers. But first let me explain them with a little analogy that's widely used in the field.

#### UNDERSTANDING STATEFUL PODS WITH THE PETS VS. CATTLE ANALOGY

You may have already heard of the pets vs. cattle analogy. If not, let me explain it. We can treat our apps either as pets or as cattle.

**NOTE** StatefulSets were initially called PetSets. That name comes from the pets vs. cattle analogy explained here.

We tend to treat our app instances as pets, where we give each instance a name and take care of each instance individually. But it's usually better to treat instances as cattle and not pay special attention to each individual instance. This makes it easy to replace unhealthy instances without giving it a second thought, similar to the way a farmer replaces unhealthy cattle.

Instances of a stateless app, for example, behave much like heads of cattle. It doesn't matter if an instance dies—you can create a new instance and people won't notice the difference.

On the other hand, with stateful apps, an app instance is more like a pet. When a pet dies, you can't go buy a new one and expect people not to notice. To replace a lost pet, you need to find a new one that looks and behaves exactly like the old one. In the case of apps, this means the new instance needs to have the same state and identity as the old one.

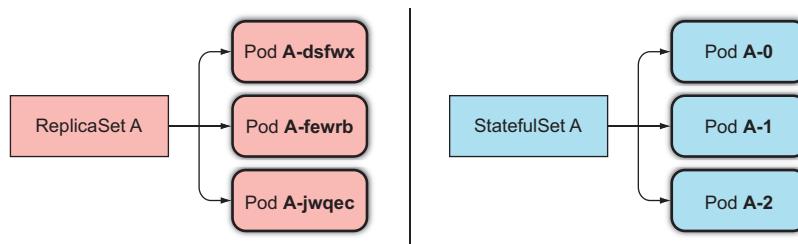
#### COMPARING STATEFULSETS WITH REPLICASETS OR REPLICATIONCONTROLLERS

Pod replicas managed by a ReplicaSet or ReplicationController are much like cattle. Because they're mostly stateless, they can be replaced with a completely new pod replica at any time. Stateful pods require a different approach. When a stateful pod instance dies (or the node it's running on fails), the pod instance needs to be resurrected on another node, but the new instance needs to get the same name, network identity, and state as the one it's replacing. This is what happens when the pods are managed through a StatefulSet.

A StatefulSet makes sure pods are rescheduled in such a way that they retain their identity and state. It also allows you to easily scale the number of pods up and down. A StatefulSet, like a ReplicaSet, has a desired replica count field that determines how many pods you want running at that time. Similar to ReplicaSets, pods are created from a pod template specified as part of the StatefulSet (remember the cookie-cutter analogy?). But unlike pods created by ReplicaSets, pods created by the StatefulSet aren't exact replicas of each other. Each can have its own set of volumes—in other words, storage (and thus persistent state)—which differentiates it from its peers. Pod pods also have a predictable (and stable) identity instead of each new pod instance getting a completely random one.

### 10.2.2 Providing a stable network identity

Each pod created by a StatefulSet is assigned an ordinal index (zero-based), which is then used to derive the pod's name and hostname, and to attach stable storage to the pod. The names of the pods are thus predictable, because each pod's name is derived from the StatefulSet's name and the ordinal index of the instance. Rather than the pods having random names, they're nicely organized, as shown in the next figure.



**Figure 10.5** Pods created by a StatefulSet have predictable names (and hostnames), unlike those created by a ReplicaSet

### INTRODUCING THE GOVERNING SERVICE

But it's not all about the pods having a predictable name and hostname. Unlike regular pods, stateful pods sometimes need to be addressable by their hostname, whereas stateless pods usually don't. After all, each stateless pod is like any other. When you need one, you pick any one of them. But with stateful pods, you usually want to operate on a specific pod from the group, because they differ from each other (they hold different state, for example).

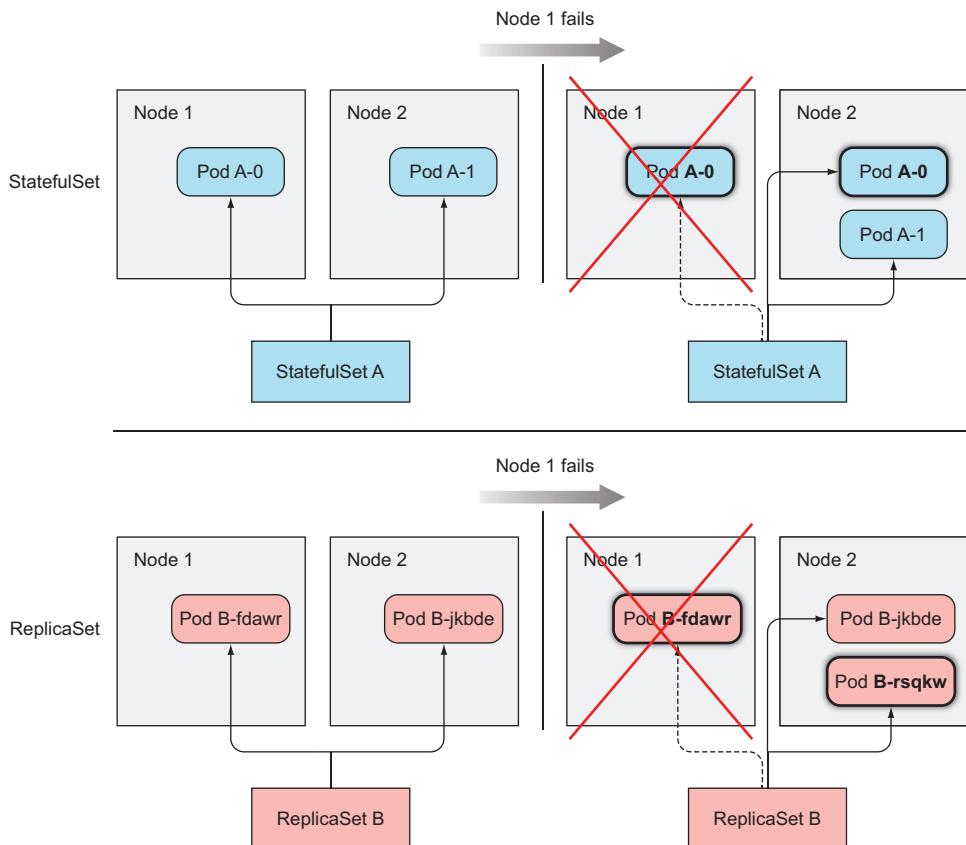
For this reason, a StatefulSet requires you to create a corresponding governing headless Service that's used to provide the actual network identity to each pod. Through this Service, each pod gets its own DNS entry, so its peers and possibly other clients in the cluster can address the pod by its hostname. For example, if the governing Service belongs to the default namespace and is called `foo`, and one of the pods

is called A-0, you can reach the pod through its fully qualified domain name, which is `a-0.foo.default.svc.cluster.local`. You can't do that with pods managed by a ReplicaSet.

Additionally, you can also use DNS to look up all the StatefulSet's pods' names by looking up SRV records for the `foo.default.svc.cluster.local` domain. We'll explain SRV records in section 10.4 and learn how they're used to discover members of a StatefulSet.

### REPLACING LOST PETS

When a pod instance managed by a StatefulSet disappears (because the node the pod was running on has failed, it was evicted from the node, or someone deleted the pod object manually), the StatefulSet makes sure it's replaced with a new instance—similar to how ReplicaSets do it. But in contrast to ReplicaSets, the replacement pod gets the same name and hostname as the pod that has disappeared (this distinction between ReplicaSets and StatefulSets is illustrated in figure 10.6).



**Figure 10.6** A StatefulSet replaces a lost pod with a new one with the same identity, whereas a ReplicaSet replaces it with a completely new unrelated pod.

The new pod isn't necessarily scheduled to the same node, but as you learned early on, what node a pod runs on shouldn't matter. This holds true even for stateful pods. Even if the pod is scheduled to a different node, it will still be available and reachable under the same hostname as before.

### SCALING A STATEFULSET

Scaling the StatefulSet creates a new pod instance with the next unused ordinal index. If you scale up from two to three instances, the new instance will get index 2 (the existing instances obviously have indexes 0 and 1).

The nice thing about scaling down a StatefulSet is the fact that you always know what pod will be removed. Again, this is also in contrast to scaling down a ReplicaSet, where you have no idea what instance will be deleted, and you can't even specify which one you want removed first (but this feature may be introduced in the future). Scaling down a StatefulSet always removes the instances with the highest ordinal index first (shown in figure 10.7). This makes the effects of a scale-down predictable.

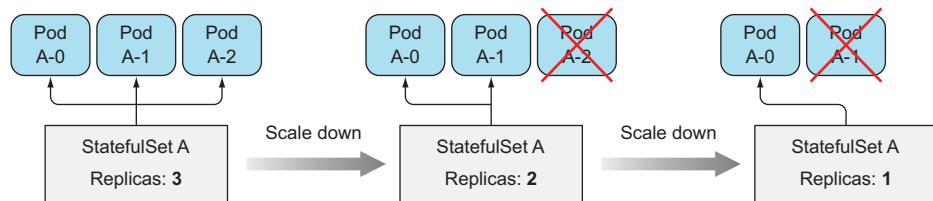


Figure 10.7 Scaling down a StatefulSet always removes the pod with the highest ordinal index first.

Because certain stateful applications don't handle rapid scale-downs nicely, StatefulSets scale down only one pod instance at a time. A distributed data store, for example, may lose data if multiple nodes go down at the same time. For example, if a replicated data store is configured to store two copies of each data entry, in cases where two nodes go down at the same time, a data entry would be lost if it was stored on exactly those two nodes. If the scale-down was sequential, the distributed data store has time to create an additional replica of the data entry somewhere else to replace the (single) lost copy.

For this exact reason, StatefulSets also never permit scale-down operations if any of the instances are unhealthy. If an instance is unhealthy, and you scale down by one at the same time, you've effectively lost two cluster members at once.

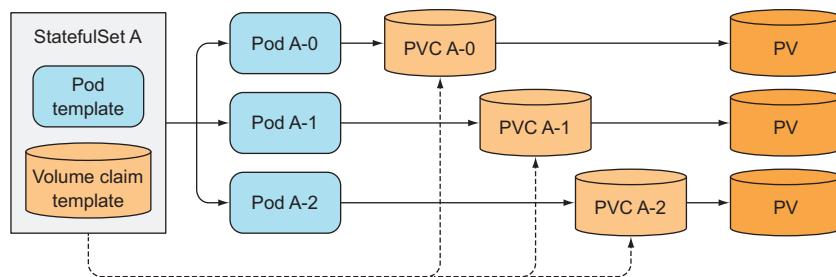
#### 10.2.3 Providing stable dedicated storage to each stateful instance

You've seen how StatefulSets ensure stateful pods have a stable identity, but what about storage? Each stateful pod instance needs to use its own storage, plus if a stateful pod is rescheduled (replaced with a new instance but with the same identity as before), the new instance must have the same storage attached to it. How do StatefulSets achieve this?

Obviously, storage for stateful pods needs to be persistent and decoupled from the pods. In chapter 6 you learned about PersistentVolumes and PersistentVolumeClaims, which allow persistent storage to be attached to a pod by referencing the PersistentVolumeClaim in the pod by name. Because PersistentVolumeClaims map to PersistentVolumes one-to-one, each pod of a StatefulSet needs to reference a different PersistentVolumeClaim to have its own separate PersistentVolume. Because all pod instances are stamped from the same pod template, how can they each refer to a different PersistentVolumeClaim? And who creates these claims? Surely you’re not expected to create as many PersistentVolumeClaims as the number of pods you plan to have in the StatefulSet upfront? Of course not.

#### TEAMING UP POD TEMPLATES WITH VOLUME CLAIM TEMPLATES

The StatefulSet has to create the PersistentVolumeClaims as well, the same way it’s creating the pods. For this reason, a StatefulSet can also have one or more volume claim templates, which enable it to stamp out PersistentVolumeClaims along with each pod instance (see figure 10.8).



**Figure 10.8** A StatefulSet creates both pods and PersistentVolumeClaims.

The PersistentVolumes for the claims can either be provisioned up-front by an administrator or just in time through dynamic provisioning of PersistentVolumes, as explained at the end of chapter 6.

#### UNDERSTANDING THE CREATION AND DELETION OF PERSISTENTVOLUMECLAIMS

Scaling up a StatefulSet by one creates two or more API objects (the pod and one or more PersistentVolumeClaims referenced by the pod). Scaling down, however, deletes only the pod, leaving the claims alone. The reason for this is obvious, if you consider what happens when a claim is deleted. After a claim is deleted, the PersistentVolume it was bound to gets recycled or deleted and its contents are lost.

Because stateful pods are meant to run stateful applications, which implies that the data they store in the volume is important, deleting the claim on scale-down of a StatefulSet could be catastrophic—especially since triggering a scale-down is as simple as decreasing the `replicas` field of the StatefulSet. For this reason, you’re required to delete PersistentVolumeClaims manually to release the underlying PersistentVolume.

### REATTACHING THE PERSISTENTVOLUMECLAIM TO THE NEW INSTANCE OF THE SAME POD

The fact that the PersistentVolumeClaim remains after a scale-down means a subsequent scale-up can reattach the same claim along with the bound PersistentVolume and its contents to the new pod instance (shown in figure 10.9). If you accidentally scale down a StatefulSet, you can undo the mistake by scaling up again and the new pod will get the same persisted state again (as well as the same name).

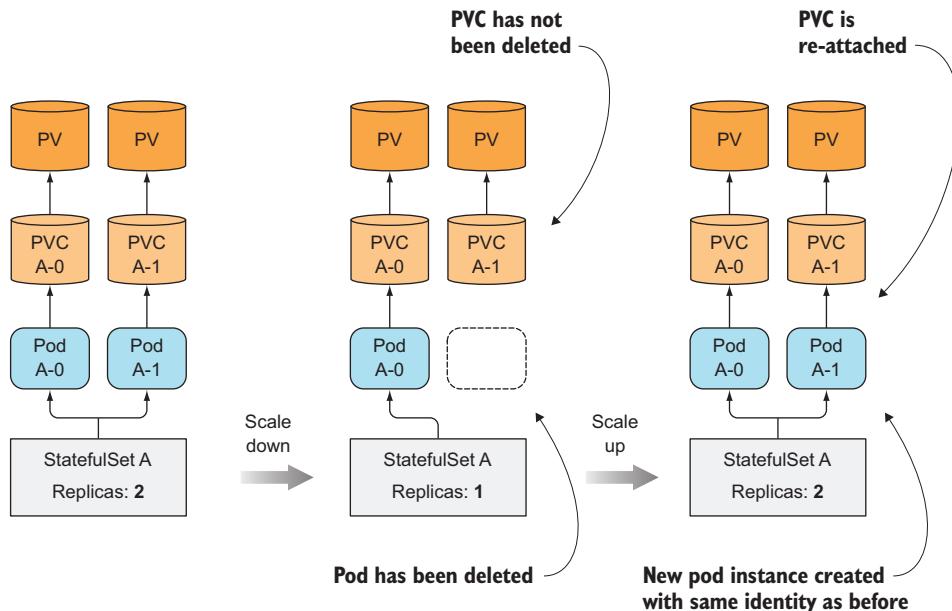


Figure 10.9 StatefulSets don't delete PersistentVolumeClaims when scaling down; then they reattach them when scaling back up.

#### 10.2.4 Understanding StatefulSet guarantees

As you've seen so far, StatefulSets behave differently from ReplicaSets or ReplicationControllers. But this doesn't end with the pods having a stable identity and storage. StatefulSets also have different guarantees regarding their pods.

##### UNDERSTANDING THE IMPLICATIONS OF STABLE IDENTITY AND STORAGE

While regular, stateless pods are fungible, stateful pods aren't. We've already seen how a stateful pod is always replaced with an identical pod (one having the same name and hostname, using the same persistent storage, and so on). This happens when Kubernetes sees that the old pod is no longer there (for example, when you delete the pod manually).

But what if Kubernetes can't be sure about the state of the pod? If it creates a replacement pod with the same identity, two instances of the app with the same identity might be running in the system. The two would also be bound to the same storage,

so two processes with the same identity would be writing over the same files. With pods managed by a ReplicaSet, this isn't a problem, because the apps are obviously made to work on the same files. Also, ReplicaSets create pods with a randomly generated identity, so there's no way for two processes to run with the same identity.

#### INTRODUCING STATEFULSET'S AT-MOST-ONE SEMANTICS

Kubernetes must thus take great care to ensure two stateful pod instances are never running with the same identity and are bound to the same PersistentVolumeClaim. A StatefulSet must guarantee *at-most-one* semantics for stateful pod instances.

This means a StatefulSet must be absolutely certain that a pod is no longer running before it can create a replacement pod. This has a big effect on how node failures are handled. We'll demonstrate this later in the chapter. Before we can do that, however, you need to create a StatefulSet and see how it behaves. You'll also learn a few more things about them along the way.

## 10.3 Using a StatefulSet

To properly show StatefulSets in action, you'll build your own little clustered data store. Nothing fancy—more like a data store from the Stone Age.

### 10.3.1 Creating the app and container image

You'll use the kubia app you've used throughout the book as your starting point. You'll expand it so it allows you to store and retrieve a single data entry on each pod instance.

The important parts of the source code of your data store are shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 10.1 A simple stateful app: kubia-pet-image/app.js

```
...
const dataFile = "/var/data/kubia.txt";
...
var handler = function(request, response) {
  if (request.method == 'POST') {
    var file = fs.createWriteStream(dataFile);
    file.on('open', function (fd) {
      request.pipe(file);
      console.log("New data has been received and stored.");
      response.writeHead(200);
      response.end("Data stored on pod " + os.hostname() + "\n");
    });
  } else {
    var data = fileExists(dataFile)
      ? fs.readFileSync(dataFile, 'utf8')
      : "No data posted yet";
    response.writeHead(200);
    response.write("You've hit " + os.hostname() + "\n");
    response.end("Data stored on this pod: " + data + "\n");
  }
};
```

**On POST requests, store the request's body into a data file.**

**On GET (and all other types of) requests, return your hostname and the contents of the data file.**

```
var www = http.createServer(handler);  
www.listen(8080);
```

Whenever the app receives a POST request, it writes the data it receives in the body of the request to the file /var/data/kubia.txt. Upon a GET request, it returns the hostname and the stored data (contents of the file). Simple enough, right? This is the first version of your app. It's not clustered yet, but it's enough to get you started. You'll expand the app later in the chapter.

The Dockerfile for building the container image is shown in the following listing and hasn't changed from before.

#### Listing 10.2 Dockerfile for the stateful app: kubia-pet-image/Dockerfile

```
FROM node:7  
ADD app.js /app.js  
ENTRYPOINT ["node", "app.js"]
```

Go ahead and build the image now, or use the one I pushed to docker.io/luksa/kubia-pet.

### 10.3.2 Deploying the app through a StatefulSet

To deploy your app, you'll need to create two (or three) different types of objects:

- PersistentVolumes for storing your data files (you'll need to create these only if the cluster doesn't support dynamic provisioning of PersistentVolumes).
- A governing Service required by the StatefulSet.
- The StatefulSet itself.

For each pod instance, the StatefulSet will create a PersistentVolumeClaim that will bind to a PersistentVolume. If your cluster supports dynamic provisioning, you don't need to create any PersistentVolumes manually (you can skip the next section). If it doesn't, you'll need to create them as explained in the next section.

#### CREATING THE PERSISTENT VOLUMES

You'll need three PersistentVolumes, because you'll be scaling the StatefulSet up to three replicas. You must create more if you plan on scaling the StatefulSet up more than that.

If you're using Minikube, deploy the PersistentVolumes defined in the Chapter06/persistent-volumes-hostpath.yaml file in the book's code archive.

If you're using Google Kubernetes Engine, you'll first need to create the actual GCE Persistent Disks like this:

```
$ gcloud compute disks create --size=1GiB --zone=europe-west1-b pv-a  
$ gcloud compute disks create --size=1GiB --zone=europe-west1-b pv-b  
$ gcloud compute disks create --size=1GiB --zone=europe-west1-b pv-c
```

**NOTE** Make sure to create the disks in the same zone that your nodes are running in.

Then create the PersistentVolumes from the persistent-volumes-gcepd.yaml file, which is shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 10.3 Three PersistentVolumes: persistent-volumes-gcepd.yaml

```

kind: List
apiVersion: v1
items:
- apiVersion: v1
  kind: PersistentVolume
  metadata:
    name: pv-a
  spec:
    capacity:
      storage: 1Mi
    accessModes:
      - ReadWriteOnce
    persistentVolumeReclaimPolicy: Recycle
    gcePersistentDisk:
      pdName: pv-a
      fsType: nfs4
- apiVersion: v1
  kind: PersistentVolume
  metadata:
    name: pv-b
...

```

The annotations provide the following information:

- File describes a list of three persistent volumes**: Points to the `kind: List` line.
- Persistent volumes' names are pv-a, pv-b, and pv-c**: Points to the `name: pv-a` and `name: pv-b` lines.
- Capacity of each persistent volume is 1 Mebibyte**: Points to the `storage: 1Mi` line.
- When the volume is released by the claim, it's recycled to be used again.**: Points to the `persistentVolumeReclaimPolicy: Recycle` line.
- The volume uses a GCE Persistent Disk as the underlying storage mechanism.**: Points to the `gcePersistentDisk` section.

**NOTE** In the previous chapter you specified multiple resources in the same YAML by delimiting them with a three-dash line. Here you’re using a different approach by defining a `List` object and listing the resources as items of the object. Both methods are equivalent.

This manifest creates PersistentVolumes called `pv-a`, `pv-b`, and `pv-c`. They use GCE Persistent Disks as the underlying storage mechanism, so they’re not appropriate for clusters that aren’t running on Google Kubernetes Engine or Google Compute Engine. If you’re running the cluster elsewhere, you must modify the `PersistentVolume` definition and use an appropriate volume type, such as NFS (Network File System), or similar.

#### CREATING THE GOVERNING SERVICE

As explained earlier, before deploying a StatefulSet, you first need to create a headless Service, which will be used to provide the network identity for your stateful pods. The following listing shows the Service manifest.

#### Listing 10.4 Headless service to be used in the StatefulSet: kubia-service-headless.yaml

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  clusterIP: None

```

The annotations provide the following information:

- Name of the Service**: Points to the `name: kubia` line.
- The StatefulSet's governing Service must be headless.**: Points to the `clusterIP: None` line.

```

selector:
  app: kubia
ports:
- name: http
  port: 80

```

All pods with the `app=kubia` label belong to this service.

You're setting the `clusterIP` field to `None`, which makes this a headless Service. It will enable peer discovery between your pods (you'll need this later). Once you create the Service, you can move on to creating the actual StatefulSet.

### CREATING THE STATEFULSET MANIFEST

Now you can finally create the StatefulSet. The following listing shows the manifest.

**Listing 10.5 StatefulSet manifest: kubia-statefulset.yaml**

```

apiVersion: apps/v1beta1
kind: StatefulSet
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  serviceName: kubia
  replicas: 2
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: kubia
    spec:
      containers:
        - name: kubia
          image: luksa/kubia-pet
          ports:
            - name: http
              containerPort: 8080
          volumeMounts:
            - name: data
              mountPath: /var/data
      volumeClaimTemplates:
        - metadata:
            name: data
          spec:
            resources:
              requests:
                storage: 1Mi
            accessModes:
              - ReadWriteOnce

```

Pods created by the StatefulSet will have the `app=kubia` label.

The container inside the pod will mount the pvc volume at this path.

The PersistentVolumeClaims will be created from this template.

The StatefulSet manifest isn't that different from ReplicaSet or Deployment manifests you've created so far. What's new is the `volumeClaimTemplates` list. In it, you're defining one volume claim template called `data`, which will be used to create a PersistentVolumeClaim for each pod. As you may remember from chapter 6, a pod references a claim by including a `persistentVolumeClaim` volume in the manifest. In the previous

pod template, you'll find no such volume. The StatefulSet adds it to the pod specification automatically and configures the volume to be bound to the claim the StatefulSet created for the specific pod.

### CREATING THE STATEFULSET

You'll create the StatefulSet now:

```
$ kubectl create -f kubia-statefulset.yaml
statefulset "kubia" created
```

Now, list your pods:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY     STATUS            RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-0   0/1      ContainerCreating   0          1s
```

Notice anything strange? Remember how a ReplicationController or a ReplicaSet creates all the pod instances at the same time? Your StatefulSet is configured to create two replicas, but it created a single pod.

Don't worry, nothing is wrong. The second pod will be created only after the first one is up and ready. StatefulSets behave this way because certain clustered stateful apps are sensitive to race conditions if two or more cluster members come up at the same time, so it's safer to bring each member up fully before continuing to bring up the rest.

List the pods again to see how the pod creation is progressing:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY     STATUS            RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-0   1/1      Running           0          8s
kubia-1   0/1      ContainerCreating   0          2s
```

See, the first pod is now running, and the second one has been created and is being started.

### EXAMINING THE GENERATED STATEFUL POD

Let's take a closer look at the first pod's spec in the following listing to see how the StatefulSet has constructed the pod from the pod template and the PersistentVolumeClaim template.

#### **Listing 10.6 A stateful pod created by the StatefulSet**

```
$ kubectl get po kubia-0 -o yaml
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
...
spec:
  containers:
  - image: luksa/kubia-pet
  ...

```

```

volumeMounts:
- mountPath: /var/data
  name: data
- mountPath: /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount
  name: default-token-r2m41
  readOnly: true
...
volumes:
- name: data
  persistentVolumeClaim:
    claimName: data-kubia-0
- name: default-token-r2m41
  secret:
    secretName: default-token-r2m41

```

The annotations explain the relationships in the StatefulSet manifest:

- A callout points to the first volume mount with the text "The volume mount, as specified in the manifest".
- A callout points to the "volumes:" section with the text "The volume created by the StatefulSet".
- A callout points to the "secret:" field under the second volume with the text "The claim referenced by this volume".

The PersistentVolumeClaim template was used to create the PersistentVolumeClaim and the volume inside the pod, which refers to the created PersistentVolumeClaim.

### EXAMINING THE GENERATED PERSISTENTVOLUMECLAIMS

Now list the generated PersistentVolumeClaims to confirm they were created:

```
$ kubectl get pvc
NAME           STATUS      VOLUME      CAPACITY   ACCESSMODES   AGE
data-kubia-0   Bound       pv-c        0          RWO          37s
data-kubia-1   Bound       pv-a        0          RWO          37s
```

The names of the generated PersistentVolumeClaims are composed of the name defined in the volumeClaimTemplate and the name of each pod. You can examine the claims' YAML to see that they match the template.

#### 10.3.3 Playing with your pods

With the nodes of your data store cluster now running, you can start exploring it. You can't communicate with your pods through the Service you created because it's headless. You'll need to connect to individual pods directly (or create a regular Service, but that wouldn't allow you to talk to a specific pod).

You've already seen ways to connect to a pod directly: by piggybacking on another pod and running curl inside it, by using port-forwarding, and so on. This time, you'll try another option. You'll use the API server as a proxy to the pods.

### COMMUNICATING WITH PODS THROUGH THE API SERVER

One useful feature of the API server is the ability to proxy connections directly to individual pods. If you want to perform requests against your kubia-0 pod, you hit the following URL:

```
<apiServerHost>:<port>/api/v1/namespaces/default/pods/kubia-0/proxy/<path>
```

Because the API server is secured, sending requests to pods through the API server is cumbersome (among other things, you need to pass the authorization token in each request). Luckily, in chapter 8 you learned how to use kubectl proxy to talk to the

API server without having to deal with authentication and SSL certificates. Run the proxy again:

```
$ kubectl proxy
Starting to serve on 127.0.0.1:8001
```

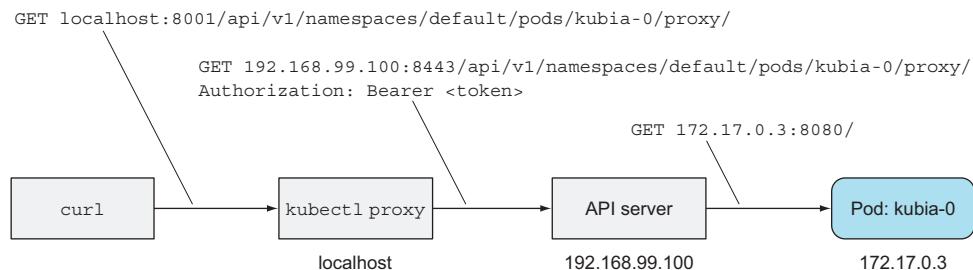
Now, because you'll be talking to the API server through the `kubectl proxy`, you'll use `localhost:8001` rather than the actual API server host and port. You'll send a request to the `kubia-0` pod like this:

```
$ curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/default/pods/kubia-0/proxy/
You've hit kubia-0
Data stored on this pod: No data posted yet
```

The response shows that the request was indeed received and handled by the app running in your pod `kubia-0`.

**NOTE** If you receive an empty response, make sure you haven't left out that last slash character at the end of the URL (or make sure `curl` follows redirects by using its `-L` option).

Because you're communicating with the pod through the API server, which you're connecting to through the `kubectl proxy`, the request went through two different proxies (the first was the `kubectl proxy` and the other was the API server, which proxied the request to the pod). For a clearer picture, examine figure 10.10.



**Figure 10.10** Connecting to a pod through both the `kubectl proxy` and API server proxy

The request you sent to the pod was a `GET` request, but you can also send `POST` requests through the API server. This is done by sending a `POST` request to the same proxy URL as the one you sent the `GET` request to.

When your app receives a `POST` request, it stores whatever's in the request body into a local file. Send a `POST` request to the `kubia-0` pod:

```
$ curl -X POST -d "Hey there! This greeting was submitted to kubia-0."
→ localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/default/pods/kubia-0/proxy/
Data stored on pod kubia-0
```

The data you sent should now be stored in that pod. Let's see if it returns the stored data when you perform a GET request again:

```
$ curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/default/pods/kubia-0/proxy/
You've hit kubia-0
Data stored on this pod: Hey there! This greeting was submitted to kubia-0.
```

Okay, so far so good. Now let's see what the other cluster node (the kubia-1 pod) says:

```
$ curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/default/pods/kubia-1/proxy/
You've hit kubia-1
Data stored on this pod: No data posted yet
```

As expected, each node has its own state. But is that state persisted? Let's find out.

#### **DELETING A STATEFUL POD TO SEE IF THE RESCHEDULED POD IS REATTACHED TO THE SAME STORAGE**

You're going to delete the kubia-0 pod and wait for it to be rescheduled. Then you'll see if it's still serving the same data as before:

```
$ kubectl delete po kubia-0
pod "kubia-0" deleted
```

If you list the pods, you'll see that the pod is terminating:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY     STATUS        RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-0   1/1      Terminating   0          3m
kubia-1   1/1      Running       0          3m
```

As soon as it terminates successfully, a new pod with the same name is created by the StatefulSet:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY     STATUS           RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-0   0/1      ContainerCreating   0          6s
kubia-1   1/1      Running          0          4m
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY     STATUS     RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-0   1/1      Running    0          9s
kubia-1   1/1      Running    0          4m
```

Let me remind you again that this new pod may be scheduled to any node in the cluster, not necessarily the same node that the old pod was scheduled to. The old pod's whole identity (the name, hostname, and the storage) is effectively moved to the new node (as shown in figure 10.11). If you're using Minikube, you can't see this because it only runs a single node, but in a multi-node cluster, you may see the pod scheduled to a different node than before.

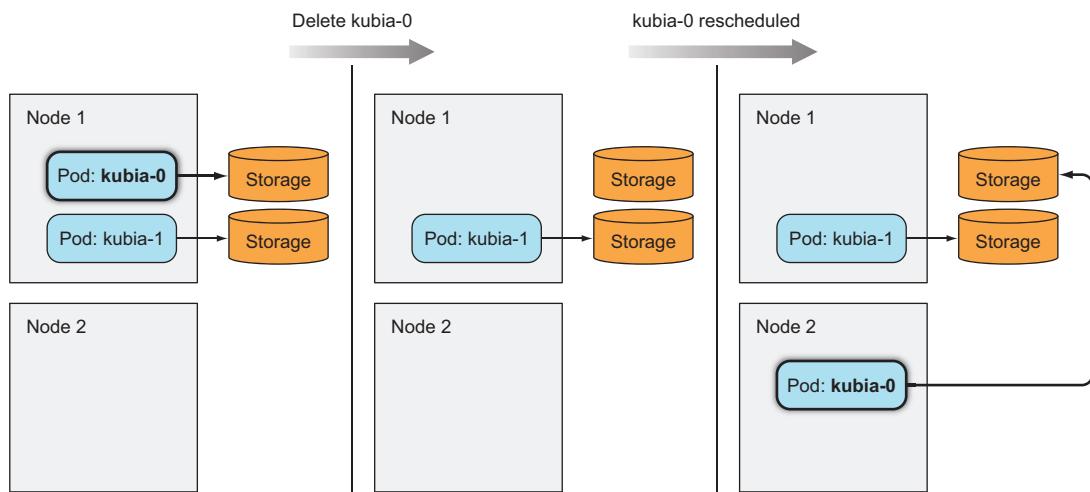


Figure 10.11 A stateful pod may be rescheduled to a different node, but it retains the name, hostname, and storage.

With the new pod now running, let's check to see if it has the exact same identity as in its previous incarnation. The pod's name is the same, but what about the hostname and persistent data? You can ask the pod itself to confirm:

```
$ curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/default/pods/kubia-0/proxy/
You've hit kubia-0
Data stored on this pod: Hey there! This greeting was submitted to kubia-0.
```

The pod's response shows that both the hostname and the data are the same as before, confirming that a StatefulSet always replaces a deleted pod with what's effectively the exact same pod.

### SCALING A STATEFULSET

Scaling down a StatefulSet and scaling it back up after an extended time period should be no different than deleting a pod and having the StatefulSet recreate it immediately. Remember that scaling down a StatefulSet only deletes the pods, but leaves the PersistentVolumeClaims untouched. I'll let you try scaling down the StatefulSet yourself and confirm this behavior.

The key thing to remember is that scaling down (and up) is performed gradually—similar to how individual pods are created when the StatefulSet is created initially. When scaling down by more than one instance, the pod with the highest ordinal number is deleted first. Only after the pod terminates completely is the pod with the second highest ordinal number deleted.

### EXPOSING STATEFUL PODS THROUGH A REGULAR, NON-HEADLESS SERVICE

Before you move on to the last part of this chapter, you're going to add a proper, non-headless Service in front of your pods, because clients usually connect to the pods through a Service rather than connecting directly.

You know how to create the Service by now, but in case you don't, the following listing shows the manifest.

**Listing 10.7 A regular Service for accessing the stateful pods: kubia-service-public.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: kubia-public
spec:
  selector:
    app: kubia
  ports:
  - port: 80
    targetPort: 8080
```

Because this isn't an externally exposed Service (it's a regular ClusterIP Service, not a NodePort or a LoadBalancer-type Service), you can only access it from inside the cluster. You'll need a pod to access it from, right? Not necessarily.

**CONNECTING TO CLUSTER-INTERNAL SERVICES THROUGH THE API SERVER**

Instead of using a piggyback pod to access the service from inside the cluster, you can use the same proxy feature provided by the API server to access the service the way you've accessed individual pods.

The URI path for proxy-ing requests to Services is formed like this:

```
/api/v1/namespaces/<namespace>/services/<service name>/proxy/<path>
```

Therefore, you can run curl on your local machine and access the service through the kubectl proxy like this (you ran kubectl proxy earlier and it should still be running):

```
$ curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/default/services/kubia-
→ public/proxy/
You've hit kubia-1
Data stored on this pod: No data posted yet
```

Likewise, clients (inside the cluster) can use the kubia-public service for storing to and reading data from your clustered data store. Of course, each request lands on a random cluster node, so you'll get the data from a random node each time. You'll improve this next.

## 10.4 Discovering peers in a StatefulSet

We still need to cover one more important thing. An important requirement of clustered apps is peer discovery—the ability to find other members of the cluster. Each member of a StatefulSet needs to easily find all the other members. Sure, it could do that by talking to the API server, but one of Kubernetes' aims is to expose features that help keep applications completely Kubernetes-agnostic. Having apps talk to the Kubernetes API is therefore undesirable.

How can a pod discover its peers without talking to the API? Is there an existing, well-known technology you can use that makes this possible? How about the Domain Name System (DNS)? Depending on how much you know about DNS, you probably understand what an A, CNAME, or MX record is used for. Other lesser-known types of DNS records also exist. One of them is the SRV record.

### INTRODUCING SRV RECORDS

SRV records are used to point to hostnames and ports of servers providing a specific service. Kubernetes creates SRV records to point to the hostnames of the pods backing a headless service.

You’re going to list the SRV records for your stateful pods by running the `dig` DNS lookup tool inside a new temporary pod. This is the command you’ll use:

```
$ kubectl run -it srvlookup --image=tutum/dnsutils --rm
➥ --restart=Never -- dig SRV kubia.default.svc.cluster.local
```

The command runs a one-off pod (`--restart=Never`) called `srvlookup`, which is attached to the console (`-it`) and is deleted as soon as it terminates (`--rm`). The pod runs a single container from the `tutum/dnsutils` image and runs the following command:

```
dig SRV kubia.default.svc.cluster.local
```

The following listing shows what the command prints out.

#### Listing 10.8 Listing DNS SRV records of your headless Service

```
...
;; ANSWER SECTION:
k.d.s.c.l. 30 IN SRV      10 33 0 kubia-0.kubia.default.svc.cluster.local.
k.d.s.c.l. 30 IN SRV      10 33 0 kubia-1.kubia.default.svc.cluster.local.

;; ADDITIONAL SECTION:
kubia-0.kubia.default.svc.cluster.local. 30 IN A 172.17.0.4
kubia-1.kubia.default.svc.cluster.local. 30 IN A 172.17.0.6
...
```

**NOTE** I’ve had to shorten the actual name to get records to fit into a single line, so `kubia.d.s.c.l` is actually `kubia.default.svc.cluster.local`.

The ANSWER SECTION shows two SRV records pointing to the two pods backing your headless service. Each pod also gets its own A record, as shown in ADDITIONAL SECTION.

For a pod to get a list of all the other pods of a StatefulSet, all you need to do is perform an SRV DNS lookup. In Node.js, for example, the lookup is performed like this:

```
dns.resolveSrv("kubia.default.svc.cluster.local", callBackFunction);
```

You’ll use this command in your app to enable each pod to discover its peers.

**NOTE** The order of the returned SRV records is random, because they all have the same priority. Don't expect to always see kubia-0 listed before kubia-1.

### 10.4.1 Implementing peer discovery through DNS

Your Stone Age data store isn't clustered yet. Each data store node runs completely independently of all the others—no communication exists between them. You'll get them talking to each other next.

Data posted by clients connecting to your data store cluster through the kubia-public Service lands on a random cluster node. The cluster can store multiple data entries, but clients currently have no good way to see all those entries. Because services forward requests to pods randomly, a client would need to perform many requests until it hit all the pods if it wanted to get the data from all the pods.

You can improve this by having the node respond with data from all the cluster nodes. To do this, the node needs to find all its peers. You're going to use what you learned about StatefulSets and SRV records to do this.

You'll modify your app's source code as shown in the following listing (the full source is available in the book's code archive; the listing shows only the important parts).

**Listing 10.9 Discovering peers in a sample app: kubia-pet-peers-image/app.js**

```
...
const dns = require('dns');

const dataFile = "/var/data/kubia.txt";
const serviceName = "kubia.default.svc.cluster.local";
const port = 8080;
...

var handler = function(request, response) {
  if (request.method == 'POST') {
    ...
  } else {
    response.writeHead(200);
    if (request.url == '/data') {
      var data = fileExists(dataFile)
        ? fs.readFileSync(dataFile, 'utf8')
        : "No data posted yet";
      response.end(data);
    } else {
      response.write("You've hit " + os.hostname() + "\n");
      response.write("Data stored in the cluster:\n");
      dns.resolveSrv(serviceName, function (err, addresses) { ←
        if (err) {
          response.end("Could not look up DNS SRV records: " + err);
          return;
        }
        var numResponses = 0;
        if (addresses.length == 0) {
          response.end("No peers discovered.");
        } else {
```

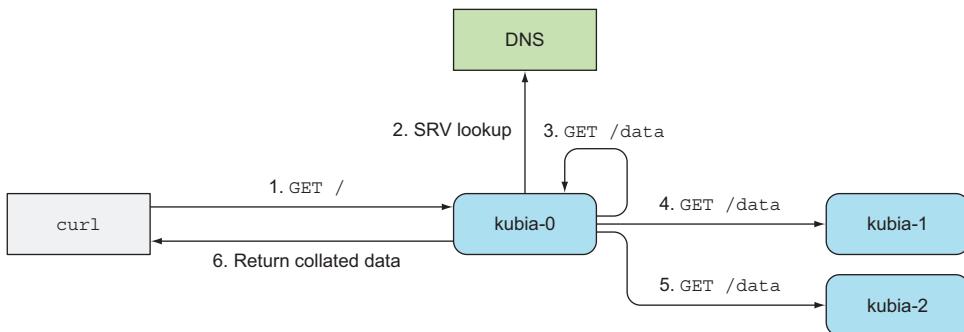
The app performs a DNS lookup to obtain SRV records.

```
addresses.forEach(function (item) {
    var requestOptions = {
        host: item.name,
        port: port,
        path: '/data'
    };
    httpGet(requestOptions, function (returnedData) {
        numResponses++;
        response.write("- " + item.name + ": " + returnedData);
        response.write("\n");
        if (numResponses == addresses.length) {
            response.end();
        }
    });
});
});
});
}
};

...;
```

Each pod pointed to by an SRV record is then contacted to get its data.

Figure 10.12 shows what happens when a GET request is received by your app. The server that receives the request first performs a lookup of SRV records for the headless kubia service and then sends a GET request to each of the pods backing the service (even to itself, which obviously isn't necessary, but I wanted to keep the code as simple as possible). It then returns a list of all the nodes along with the data stored on each of them.



**Figure 10.12** The operation of your simplistic distributed data store

The container image containing this new version of the app is available at [docker.io/luksa/kubia-pet-peers](https://docker.io/luksa/kubia-pet-peers).

## 10.4.2 Updating a StatefulSet

Your StatefulSet is already running, so let's see how to update its pod template so the pods use the new image. You'll also set the replica count to 3 at the same time. To

update the StatefulSet, use the `kubectl edit` command (the `patch` command would be another option):

```
$ kubectl edit statefulset kubia
```

This opens the StatefulSet definition in your default editor. In the definition, change `spec.replicas` to 3 and modify the `spec.template.spec.containers.image` attribute so it points to the new image (`luksa/kubia-pet-peers` instead of `luksa/kubia-pet`). Save the file and exit the editor to update the StatefulSet. Two replicas were running previously, so you should now see an additional replica called `kubia-2` starting. List the pods to confirm:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY   STATUS        RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-0   1/1    Running       0          25m
kubia-1   1/1    Running       0          26m
kubia-2   0/1    ContainerCreating   0          4s
```

The new pod instance is running the new image. But what about the existing two replicas? Judging from their age, they don't seem to have been updated. This is expected, because initially, StatefulSets were more like ReplicaSets and not like Deployments, so they don't perform a rollout when the template is modified. You need to delete the replicas manually and the StatefulSet will bring them up again based on the new template:

```
$ kubectl delete po kubia-0 kubia-1
pod "kubia-0" deleted
pod "kubia-1" deleted
```

**NOTE** Starting from Kubernetes version 1.7, StatefulSets support rolling updates the same way Deployments and DaemonSets do. See the StatefulSet's `spec.updateStrategy` field documentation using `kubectl explain` for more information.

#### 10.4.3 Trying out your clustered data store

Once the two pods are up, you can see if your shiny new Stone Age data store works as expected. Post a few requests to the cluster, as shown in the following listing.

##### Listing 10.10 Writing to the clustered data store through the service

```
$ curl -X POST -d "The sun is shining" \
  ↵ localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/default/services/kubia-public/proxy/
Data stored on pod kubia-1

$ curl -X POST -d "The weather is sweet" \
  ↵ localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/default/services/kubia-public/proxy/
Data stored on pod kubia-0
```

Now, read the stored data, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 10.11 Reading from the data store**

```
$ curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/default/services
  ↗ /kubia-public/proxy/
You've hit kubia-2
Data stored on each cluster node:
- kubia-0.kubia.default.svc.cluster.local: The weather is sweet
- kubia-1.kubia.default.svc.cluster.local: The sun is shining
- kubia-2.kubia.default.svc.cluster.local: No data posted yet
```

Nice! When a client request reaches one of your cluster nodes, it discovers all its peers, gathers data from them, and sends all the data back to the client. Even if you scale the StatefulSet up or down, the pod servicing the client's request can always find all the peers running at that time.

The app itself isn't that useful, but I hope you found it a fun way to show how instances of a replicated stateful app can discover their peers and handle horizontal scaling with ease.

## **10.5 Understanding how StatefulSets deal with node failures**

In section 10.2.4 we stated that Kubernetes must be absolutely sure that a stateful pod is no longer running before creating its replacement. When a node fails abruptly, Kubernetes can't know the state of the node or its pods. It can't know whether the pods are no longer running, or if they still are and are possibly even still reachable, and it's only the Kubelet that has stopped reporting the node's state to the master.

Because a StatefulSet guarantees that there will never be two pods running with the same identity and storage, when a node appears to have failed, the StatefulSet cannot and should not create a replacement pod until it knows for certain that the pod is no longer running.

It can only know that when the cluster administrator tells it so. To do that, the admin needs to either delete the pod or delete the whole node (doing so then deletes all the pods scheduled to the node).

As your final exercise in this chapter, you'll look at what happens to StatefulSets and their pods when one of the cluster nodes gets disconnected from the network.

### **10.5.1 Simulating a node's disconnection from the network**

As in chapter 4, you'll simulate the node disconnecting from the network by shutting down the node's eth0 network interface. Because this example requires multiple nodes, you can't run it on Minikube. You'll use Google Kubernetes Engine instead.

#### **SHUTTING DOWN THE NODE'S NETWORK ADAPTER**

To shut down a node's eth0 interface, you need to ssh into one of the nodes like this:

```
$ gcloud compute ssh gke-kubia-default-pool-32a2cac8-m0g1
```

Then, inside the node, run the following command:

```
$ sudo ifconfig eth0 down
```

Your ssh session will stop working, so you'll need to open another terminal to continue.

#### CHECKING THE NODE'S STATUS AS SEEN BY THE KUBERNETES MASTER

With the node's network interface down, the Kubelet running on the node can no longer contact the Kubernetes API server and let it know that the node and all its pods are still running.

After a while, the control plane will mark the node as `NotReady`. You can see this when listing nodes, as the following listing shows.

#### Listing 10.12 Observing a failed node's status change to `NotReady`

```
$ kubectl get node
NAME           STATUS    AGE     VERSION
gke-kubia-default-pool-32a2cac8-596v  Ready    16m    v1.6.2
gke-kubia-default-pool-32a2cac8-m0g1  NotReady 16m    v1.6.2
gke-kubia-default-pool-32a2cac8-sgl7  Ready    16m    v1.6.2
```

Because the control plane is no longer getting status updates from the node, the status of all pods on that node is `Unknown`. This is shown in the pod list in the following listing.

#### Listing 10.13 Observing the pod's status change after its node becomes `NotReady`

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-0   1/1     Unknown   0          15m
kubia-1   1/1     Running   0          14m
kubia-2   1/1     Running   0          13m
```

As you can see, the `kubia-0` pod's status is no longer known because the pod was (and still is) running on the node whose network interface you shut down.

#### UNDERSTANDING WHAT HAPPENS TO PODS WHOSE STATUS IS UNKNOWN

If the node were to come back online and report its and its pod statuses again, the pod would again be marked as `Running`. But if the pod's status remains unknown for more than a few minutes (this time is configurable), the pod is automatically evicted from the node. This is done by the master (the Kubernetes control plane). It evicts the pod by deleting the pod resource.

When the Kubelet sees that the pod has been marked for deletion, it starts terminating the pod. In your case, the Kubelet can no longer reach the master (because you disconnected the node from the network), which means the pod will keep running.

Let's examine the current situation. Use `kubectl describe` to display details about the `kubia-0` pod, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 10.14 Displaying details of the pod with the unknown status

```
$ kubectl describe po kubia-0
Name:           kubia-0
Namespace:      default
Node:          gke-kubia-default-pool-32a2cac8-m0g1/10.132.0.2
...
Status:        Terminating (expires Tue, 23 May 2017 15:06:09 +0200)
Reason:        NodeLost
Message:       Node gke-kubia-default-pool-32a2cac8-m0g1 which was
               running pod kubia-0 is unresponsive
```

The pod is shown as `Terminating`, with `NodeLost` listed as the reason for the termination. The message says the node is considered lost because it's unresponsive.

**NOTE** What's shown here is the control plane's view of the world. In reality, the pod's container is still running perfectly fine. It isn't terminating at all.

### 10.5.2 Deleting the pod manually

You know the node isn't coming back, but you need all three pods running to handle clients properly. You need to get the `kubia-0` pod rescheduled to a healthy node. As mentioned earlier, you need to delete the node or the pod manually.

#### DELETING THE POD IN THE USUAL WAY

Delete the pod the way you've always deleted pods:

```
$ kubectl delete po kubia-0
pod "kubia-0" deleted
```

All done, right? By deleting the pod, the StatefulSet should immediately create a replacement pod, which will get scheduled to one of the remaining nodes. List the pods again to confirm:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY     STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-0   1/1      Unknown   0          15m
kubia-1   1/1      Running   0          14m
kubia-2   1/1      Running   0          13m
```

That's strange. You deleted the pod a moment ago and `kubectl` said it had deleted it. Why is the same pod still there?

**NOTE** The `kubia-0` pod in the listing isn't a new pod with the same name—this is clear by looking at the `AGE` column. If it were new, its age would be merely a few seconds.

### UNDERSTANDING WHY THE POD ISN'T DELETED

The pod was marked for deletion even before you deleted it. That's because the control plane itself already deleted it (in order to evict it from the node).

If you look at listing 10.14 again, you'll see that the pod's status is Terminating. The pod was already marked for deletion earlier and will be removed as soon as the Kubelet on its node notifies the API server that the pod's containers have terminated. Because the node's network is down, this will never happen.

### FORCIBLY DELETING THE POD

The only thing you can do is tell the API server to delete the pod without waiting for the Kubelet to confirm that the pod is no longer running. You do that like this:

```
$ kubectl delete po kubia-0 --force --grace-period 0
warning: Immediate deletion does not wait for confirmation that the running
resource has been terminated. The resource may continue to run on the
cluster indefinitely.
pod "kubia-0" deleted
```

You need to use both the `--force` and `--grace-period 0` options. The warning displayed by `kubectl` notifies you of what you did. If you list the pods again, you'll finally see a new `kubia-0` pod created:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY     STATUS            RESTARTS   AGE
kubia-0    0/1      ContainerCreating   0          8s
kubia-1    1/1      Running           0          20m
kubia-2    1/1      Running           0          19m
```

**WARNING** Don't delete stateful pods forcibly unless you know the node is no longer running or is unreachable (and will remain so forever).

Before continuing, you may want to bring the node you disconnected back online. You can do that by restarting the node through the GCE web console or in a terminal by issuing the following command:

```
$ gcloud compute instances reset <node name>
```

## 10.6 Summary

This concludes the chapter on using StatefulSets to deploy stateful apps. This chapter has shown you how to

- Give replicated pods individual storage
- Provide a stable identity to a pod
- Create a StatefulSet and a corresponding headless governing Service
- Scale and update a StatefulSet
- Discover other members of the StatefulSet through DNS

- Connect to other members through their host names
- Forcibly delete stateful pods

Now that you know the major building blocks you can use to have Kubernetes run and manage your apps, we can look more closely at how it does that. In the next chapter, you'll learn about the individual components that control the Kubernetes cluster and keep your apps running.

# 11

## *Understanding Kubernetes internals*

---

### This chapter covers

- What components make up a Kubernetes cluster
- What each component does and how it does it
- How creating a Deployment object results in a running pod
- What a running pod is
- How the network between pods works
- How Kubernetes Services work
- How high-availability is achieved

By reading this book up to this point, you've become familiar with what Kubernetes has to offer and what it does. But so far, I've intentionally not spent much time explaining exactly how it does all this because, in my opinion, it makes no sense to go into details of how a system works until you have a good understanding of what the system does. That's why we haven't talked about exactly how a pod is scheduled or how the various controllers running inside the Controller Manager make deployed resources come to life. Because you now know most resources that can be deployed in Kubernetes, it's time to dive into how they're implemented.

## 11.1 Understanding the architecture

Before you look at how Kubernetes does what it does, let's take a closer look at the components that make up a Kubernetes cluster. In chapter 1, you saw that a Kubernetes cluster is split into two parts:

- The Kubernetes Control Plane
- The (worker) nodes

Let's look more closely at what these two parts do and what's running inside them.

### COMPONENTS OF THE CONTROL PLANE

The Control Plane is what controls and makes the whole cluster function. To refresh your memory, the components that make up the Control Plane are

- The etcd distributed persistent storage
- The API server
- The Scheduler
- The Controller Manager

These components store and manage the state of the cluster, but they aren't what runs the application containers.

### COMPONENTS RUNNING ON THE WORKER NODES

The task of running your containers is up to the components running on each worker node:

- The Kubelet
- The Kubernetes Service Proxy (kube-proxy)
- The Container Runtime (Docker, rkt, or others)

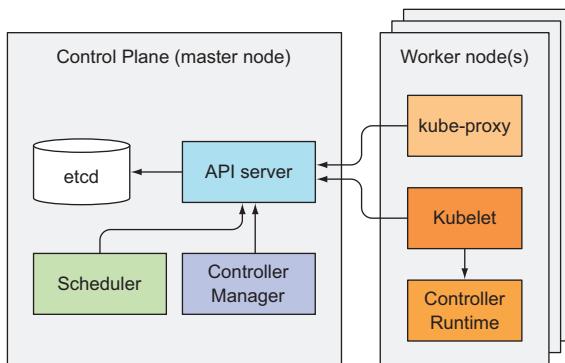
### ADD-ON COMPONENTS

Beside the Control Plane components and the components running on the nodes, a few add-on components are required for the cluster to provide everything discussed so far. This includes

- The Kubernetes DNS server
- The Dashboard
- An Ingress controller
- Heapster, which we'll talk about in chapter 14
- The Container Network Interface network plugin (we'll explain it later in this chapter)

### 11.1.1 The distributed nature of Kubernetes components

The previously mentioned components all run as individual processes. The components and their inter-dependencies are shown in figure 11.1.



**Figure 11.1** Kubernetes components of the Control Plane and the worker nodes

To get all the features Kubernetes provides, all these components need to be running. But several can also perform useful work individually without the other components. You'll see how as we examine each of them.

### Checking the status of the Control Plane components

The API server exposes an API resource called ComponentStatus, which shows the health status of each Control Plane component. You can list the components and their statuses with kubectl:

```
$ kubectl get componentstatuses
NAME           STATUS  MESSAGE           ERROR
scheduler      Healthy ok
controller-manager  Healthy ok
etcd-0         Healthy {"health": "true"}
```

### HOW THESE COMPONENTS COMMUNICATE

Kubernetes system components communicate only with the API server. They don't talk to each other directly. The API server is the only component that communicates with etcd. None of the other components communicate with etcd directly, but instead modify the cluster state by talking to the API server.

Connections between the API server and the other components are almost always initiated by the components, as shown in figure 11.1. But the API server does connect to the Kubelet when you use kubectl to fetch logs, use kubectl attach to connect to a running container, or use the kubectl port-forward command.

**NOTE** The kubectl attach command is similar to kubectl exec, but it attaches to the main process running in the container instead of running an additional one.

### RUNNING MULTIPLE INSTANCES OF INDIVIDUAL COMPONENTS

Although the components on the worker nodes all need to run on the same node, the components of the Control Plane can easily be split across multiple servers. There

can be more than one instance of each Control Plane component running to ensure high availability. While multiple instances of etcd and API server can be active at the same time and do perform their jobs in parallel, only a single instance of the Scheduler and the Controller Manager may be active at a given time—with the others in standby mode.

### HOW COMPONENTS ARE RUN

The Control Plane components, as well as kube-proxy, can either be deployed on the system directly or they can run as pods (as shown in listing 11.1). You may be surprised to hear this, but it will all make sense later when we talk about the Kubelet.

The Kubelet is the only component that always runs as a regular system component, and it's the Kubelet that then runs all the other components as pods. To run the Control Plane components as pods, the Kubelet is also deployed on the master. The next listing shows pods in the `kube-system` namespace in a cluster created with `kubeadm`, which is explained in appendix B.

#### **Listing 11.1** Kubernetes components running as pods

```
$ kubectl get po -o custom-columns=POD:metadata.name,NODE:spec.nodeName
➤ --sort-by spec.nodeName -n kube-system
POD                               NODE
kube-controller-manager-master    master
kube-dns-2334855451-37d9k       master
etcd-master                       master
kube-apiserver-master            master
kube-scheduler-master            master
kube-flannel-ds-tgj9k             node1
kube-proxy-ny3xm                 node1
kube-flannel-ds-0eek8             node2
kube-proxy-sp362                 node2
kube-flannel-ds-r5yf4              node3
kube-proxy-og9ac                 node3
```

etcd, API server, Scheduler, Controller Manager, and the DNS server are running on the master.

The three nodes each run a Kube Proxy pod and a Flannel networking pod.

As you can see in the listing, all the Control Plane components are running as pods on the master node. There are three worker nodes, and each one runs the kube-proxy and a Flannel pod, which provides the overlay network for the pods (we'll talk about Flannel later).

**TIP** As shown in the listing, you can tell `kubectl` to display custom columns with the `-o custom-columns` option and sort the resource list with `--sort-by`.

Now, let's look at each of the components up close, starting with the lowest level component of the Control Plane—the persistent storage.

#### **11.1.2** How Kubernetes uses etcd

All the objects you've created throughout this book—Pods, ReplicationControllers, Services, Secrets, and so on—need to be stored somewhere in a persistent manner so their manifests survive API server restarts and failures. For this, Kubernetes uses etcd,

which is a fast, distributed, and consistent key-value store. Because it's distributed, you can run more than one etcd instance to provide both high availability and better performance.

The only component that talks to etcd directly is the Kubernetes API server. All other components read and write data to etcd indirectly through the API server. This brings a few benefits, among them a more robust optimistic locking system as well as validation; and, by abstracting away the actual storage mechanism from all the other components, it's much simpler to replace it in the future. It's worth emphasizing that etcd is the *only* place Kubernetes stores cluster state and metadata.

### About optimistic concurrency control

Optimistic concurrency control (sometimes referred to as optimistic locking) is a method where instead of locking a piece of data and preventing it from being read or updated while the lock is in place, the piece of data includes a version number. Every time the data is updated, the version number increases. When updating the data, the version number is checked to see if it has increased between the time the client read the data and the time it submits the update. If this happens, the update is rejected and the client must re-read the new data and try to update it again.

The result is that when two clients try to update the same data entry, only the first one succeeds.

All Kubernetes resources include a `metadata.resourceVersion` field, which clients need to pass back to the API server when updating an object. If the version doesn't match the one stored in etcd, the API server rejects the update.

### HOW RESOURCES ARE STORED IN ETCD

As I'm writing this, Kubernetes can use either etcd version 2 or version 3, but version 3 is now recommended because of improved performance. etcd v2 stores keys in a hierarchical key space, which makes key-value pairs similar to files in a file system. Each key in etcd is either a directory, which contains other keys, or is a regular key with a corresponding value. etcd v3 doesn't support directories, but because the key format remains the same (keys can include slashes), you can still think of them as being grouped into directories. Kubernetes stores all its data in etcd under `/registry`. The following listing shows a list of keys stored under `/registry`.

#### Listing 11.2 Top-level entries stored in etcd by Kubernetes

```
$ etcdctl ls /registry
/registry/configmaps
/registry/daemonsets
/registry/deployments
/registry/events
/registry/namespaces
/registry/pods
...
```

You'll recognize that these keys correspond to the resource types you learned about in the previous chapters.

**NOTE** If you're using v3 of the etcd API, you can't use the `ls` command to see the contents of a directory. Instead, you can list all keys that start with a given prefix with `etcdctl get /registry --prefix=true`.

The following listing shows the contents of the `/registry/pods` directory.

#### Listing 11.3 Keys in the `/registry/pods` directory

```
$ etcdctl ls /registry/pods
/registry/pods/default
/registry/pods/kube-system
```

As you can infer from the names, these two entries correspond to the `default` and the `kube-system` namespaces, which means pods are stored per namespace. The following listing shows the entries in the `/registry/pods/default` directory.

#### Listing 11.4 etcd entries for pods in the `default` namespace

```
$ etcdctl ls /registry/pods/default
/registry/pods/default/kubia-159041347-xk0vc
/registry/pods/default/kubia-159041347-wt6ga
/registry/pods/default/kubia-159041347-hp2o5
```

Each entry corresponds to an individual pod. These aren't directories, but key-value entries. The following listing shows what's stored in one of them.

#### Listing 11.5 An etcd entry representing a pod

```
$ etcdctl get /registry/pods/default/kubia-159041347-wt6ga
{"kind": "Pod", "apiVersion": "v1", "metadata": {"name": "kubia-159041347-wt6ga", "generateName": "kubia-159041347-", "namespace": "default", "selfLink": ...}}
```

You'll recognize that this is nothing other than a pod definition in JSON format. The API server stores the complete JSON representation of a resource in etcd. Because of etcd's hierarchical key space, you can think of all the stored resources as JSON files in a filesystem. Simple, right?

**WARNING** Prior to Kubernetes version 1.7, the JSON manifest of a Secret resource was also stored like this (it wasn't encrypted). If someone got direct access to etcd, they knew all your Secrets. From version 1.7, Secrets are encrypted and thus stored much more securely.

#### ENSURING THE CONSISTENCY AND VALIDITY OF STORED OBJECTS

Remember Google's Borg and Omega systems mentioned in chapter 1, which are what Kubernetes is based on? Like Kubernetes, Omega also uses a centralized store to hold the state of the cluster, but in contrast, multiple Control Plane components access the store directly. All these components need to make sure they all adhere to

the same optimistic locking mechanism to handle conflicts properly. A single component not adhering fully to the mechanism may lead to inconsistent data.

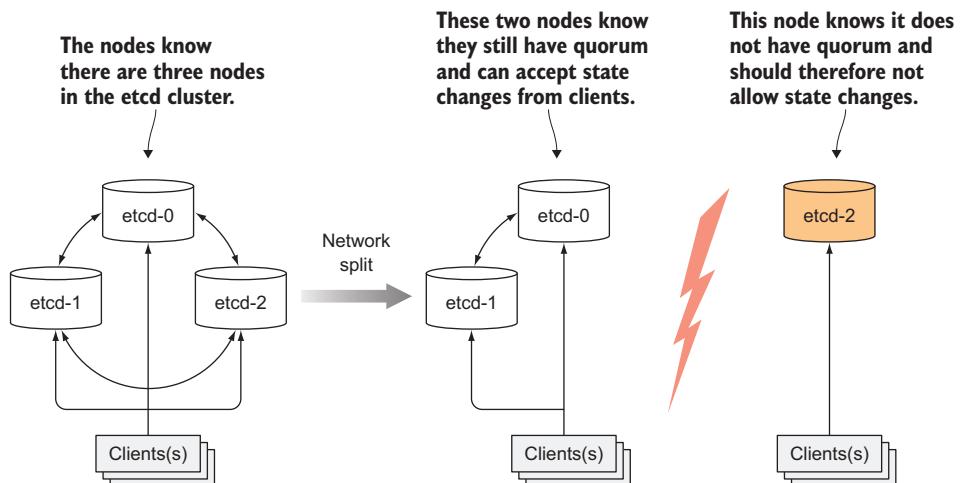
Kubernetes improves this by requiring all other Control Plane components to go through the API server. This way updates to the cluster state are always consistent, because the optimistic locking mechanism is implemented in a single place, so less chance exists, if any, of error. The API server also makes sure that the data written to the store is always valid and that changes to the data are only performed by authorized clients.

#### ENSURING CONSISTENCY WHEN ETCD IS CLUSTERED

For ensuring high availability, you'll usually run more than a single instance of etcd. Multiple etcd instances will need to remain consistent. Such a distributed system needs to reach a consensus on what the actual state is. etcd uses the RAFT consensus algorithm to achieve this, which ensures that at any given moment, each node's state is either what the majority of the nodes agrees is the current state or is one of the previously agreed upon states.

Clients connecting to different nodes of an etcd cluster will either see the actual current state or one of the states from the past (in Kubernetes, the only etcd client is the API server, but there may be multiple instances).

The consensus algorithm requires a majority (or quorum) for the cluster to progress to the next state. As a result, if the cluster splits into two disconnected groups of nodes, the state in the two groups can never diverge, because to transition from the previous state to the new one, there needs to be more than half of the nodes taking part in the state change. If one group contains the majority of all nodes, the other one obviously doesn't. The first group can modify the cluster state, whereas the other one can't. When the two groups reconnect, the second group can catch up with the state in the first group (see figure 11.2).



**Figure 11.2** In a split-brain scenario, only the side which still has the majority (quorum) accepts state changes.

## WHY THE NUMBER OF ETCD INSTANCES SHOULD BE AN ODD NUMBER

etcd is usually deployed with an odd number of instances. I'm sure you'd like to know why. Let's compare having two vs. having one instance. Having two instances requires both instances to be present to have a majority. If either of them fails, the etcd cluster can't transition to a new state because no majority exists. Having two instances is worse than having only a single instance. By having two, the chance of the whole cluster failing has increased by 100%, compared to that of a single-node cluster failing.

The same applies when comparing three vs. four etcd instances. With three instances, one instance can fail and a majority (of two) still exists. With four instances, you need three nodes for a majority (two aren't enough). In both three- and four-instance clusters, only a single instance may fail. But when running four instances, if one fails, a higher possibility exists of an additional instance of the three remaining instances failing (compared to a three-node cluster with one failed node and two remaining nodes).

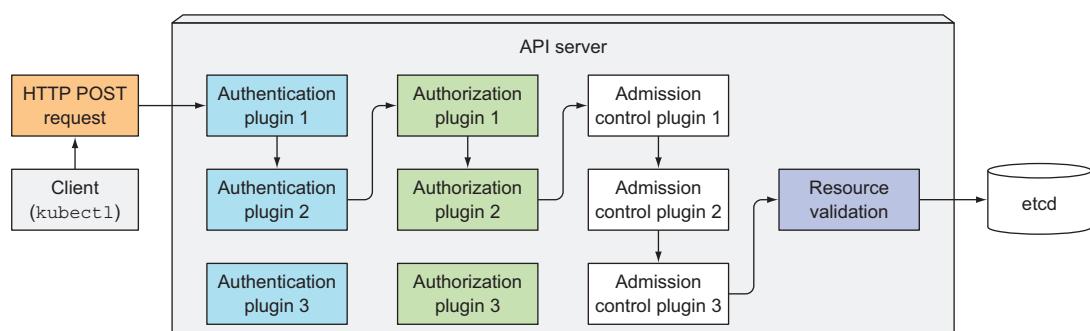
Usually, for large clusters, an etcd cluster of five or seven nodes is sufficient. It can handle a two- or a three-node failure, respectively, which suffices in almost all situations.

### 11.1.3 What the API server does

The Kubernetes API server is the central component used by all other components and by clients, such as `kubectl`. It provides a CRUD (Create, Read, Update, Delete) interface for querying and modifying the cluster state over a RESTful API. It stores that state in etcd.

In addition to providing a consistent way of storing objects in etcd, it also performs validation of those objects, so clients can't store improperly configured objects (which they could if they were writing to the store directly). Along with validation, it also handles optimistic locking, so changes to an object are never overridden by other clients in the event of concurrent updates.

One of the API server's clients is the command-line tool `kubectl` you've been using from the beginning of the book. When creating a resource from a JSON file, for example, `kubectl` posts the file's contents to the API server through an HTTP POST request. Figure 11.3 shows what happens inside the API server when it receives the request. This is explained in more detail in the next few paragraphs.



**Figure 11-3** The operation of the API server

### AUTHENTICATING THE CLIENT WITH AUTHENTICATION PLUGINS

First, the API server needs to authenticate the client sending the request. This is performed by one or more authentication plugins configured in the API server. The API server calls these plugins in turn, until one of them determines who is sending the request. It does this by inspecting the HTTP request.

Depending on the authentication method, the user can be extracted from the client's certificate or an HTTP header, such as `Authorization`, which you used in chapter 8. The plugin extracts the client's username, user ID, and groups the user belongs to. This data is then used in the next stage, which is authorization.

### AUTHORIZING THE CLIENT WITH AUTHORIZATION PLUGINS

Besides authentication plugins, the API server is also configured to use one or more authorization plugins. Their job is to determine whether the authenticated user can perform the requested action on the requested resource. For example, when creating pods, the API server consults all authorization plugins in turn, to determine whether the user can create pods in the requested namespace. As soon as a plugin says the user can perform the action, the API server progresses to the next stage.

### VALIDATING AND/OR MODIFYING THE RESOURCE IN THE REQUEST WITH ADMISSION CONTROL PLUGINS

If the request is trying to create, modify, or delete a resource, the request is sent through Admission Control. Again, the server is configured with multiple Admission Control plugins. These plugins can modify the resource for different reasons. They may initialize fields missing from the resource specification to the configured default values or even override them. They may even modify other related resources, which aren't in the request, and can also reject a request for whatever reason. The resource passes through all Admission Control plugins.

**NOTE** When the request is only trying to read data, the request doesn't go through the Admission Control.

Examples of Admission Control plugins include

- `AlwaysPullImages`—Overrides the pod's `imagePullPolicy` to `Always`, forcing the image to be pulled every time the pod is deployed.
- `ServiceAccount`—Applies the default service account to pods that don't specify it explicitly.
- `NamespaceLifecycle`—Prevents creation of pods in namespaces that are in the process of being deleted, as well as in non-existing namespaces.
- `ResourceQuota`—Ensures pods in a certain namespace only use as much CPU and memory as has been allotted to the namespace. We'll learn more about this in chapter 14.

You'll find a list of additional Admission Control plugins in the Kubernetes documentation at <https://kubernetes.io/docs/admin/admission-controllers/>.

### VALIDATING THE RESOURCE AND STORING IT PERSISTENTLY

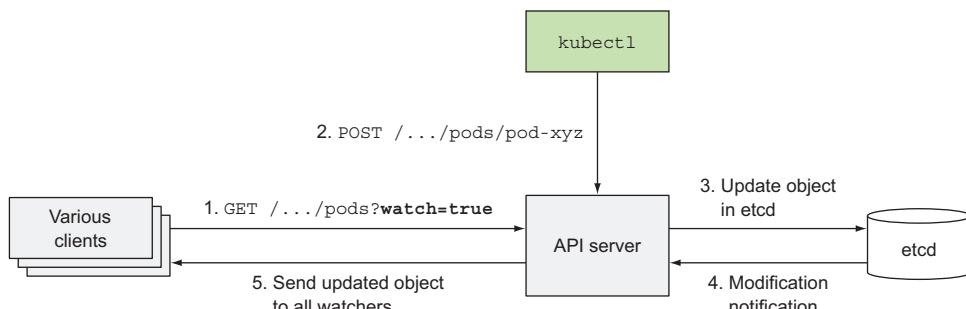
After letting the request pass through all the Admission Control plugins, the API server then validates the object, stores it in etcd, and returns a response to the client.

#### 11.1.4 Understanding how the API server notifies clients of resource changes

The API server doesn't do anything else except what we've discussed. For example, it doesn't create pods when you create a ReplicaSet resource and it doesn't manage the endpoints of a service. That's what controllers in the Controller Manager do.

But the API server doesn't even tell these controllers what to do. All it does is enable those controllers and other components to observe changes to deployed resources. A Control Plane component can request to be notified when a resource is created, modified, or deleted. This enables the component to perform whatever task it needs in response to a change of the cluster metadata.

Clients watch for changes by opening an HTTP connection to the API server. Through this connection, the client will then receive a stream of modifications to the watched objects. Every time an object is updated, the server sends the new version of the object to all connected clients watching the object. Figure 11.4 shows how clients can watch for changes to pods and how a change to one of the pods is stored into etcd and then relayed to all clients watching pods at that moment.



**Figure 11.4** When an object is updated, the API server sends the updated object to all interested watchers.

One of the API server's clients is the `kubectl` tool, which also supports watching resources. For example, when deploying a pod, you don't need to constantly poll the list of pods by repeatedly executing `kubectl get pods`. Instead, you can use the `--watch` flag and be notified of each creation, modification, or deletion of a pod, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 11.6 Watching a pod being created and then deleted

```
$ kubectl get pods --watch
NAME      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE

```

|                       |     |                   |   |     |
|-----------------------|-----|-------------------|---|-----|
| kubia-159041347-14j3i | 0/1 | Pending           | 0 | 0s  |
| kubia-159041347-14j3i | 0/1 | Pending           | 0 | 0s  |
| kubia-159041347-14j3i | 0/1 | ContainerCreating | 0 | 1s  |
| kubia-159041347-14j3i | 0/1 | Running           | 0 | 3s  |
| kubia-159041347-14j3i | 1/1 | Running           | 0 | 5s  |
| kubia-159041347-14j3i | 1/1 | Terminating       | 0 | 9s  |
| kubia-159041347-14j3i | 0/1 | Terminating       | 0 | 17s |
| kubia-159041347-14j3i | 0/1 | Terminating       | 0 | 17s |
| kubia-159041347-14j3i | 0/1 | Terminating       | 0 | 17s |

You can even have kubectl print out the whole YAML on each watch event like this:

```
$ kubectl get pods -o yaml --watch
```

The watch mechanism is also used by the Scheduler, which is the next Control Plane component you’re going to learn more about.

### 11.1.5 Understanding the Scheduler

You’ve already learned that you don’t usually specify which cluster node a pod should run on. This is left to the Scheduler. From afar, the operation of the Scheduler looks simple. All it does is wait for newly created pods through the API server’s watch mechanism and assign a node to each new pod that doesn’t already have the node set.

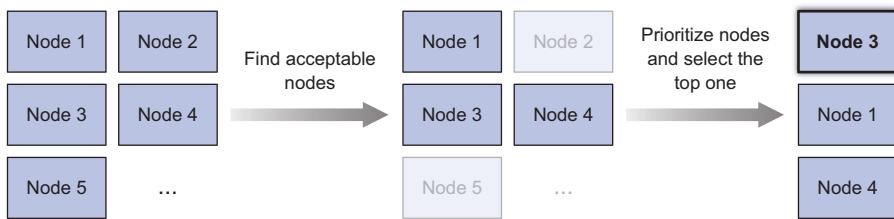
The Scheduler doesn’t instruct the selected node (or the Kubelet running on that node) to run the pod. All the Scheduler does is update the pod definition through the API server. The API server then notifies the Kubelet (again, through the watch mechanism described previously) that the pod has been scheduled. As soon as the Kubelet on the target node sees the pod has been scheduled to its node, it creates and runs the pod’s containers.

Although a coarse-grained view of the scheduling process seems trivial, the actual task of selecting the best node for the pod isn’t that simple. Sure, the simplest Scheduler could pick a random node and not care about the pods already running on that node. On the other side of the spectrum, the Scheduler could use advanced techniques such as machine learning to anticipate what kind of pods are about to be scheduled in the next minutes or hours and schedule pods to maximize future hardware utilization without requiring any rescheduling of existing pods. Kubernetes’ default Scheduler falls somewhere in between.

#### UNDERSTANDING THE DEFAULT SCHEDULING ALGORITHM

The selection of a node can be broken down into two parts, as shown in figure 11.5:

- Filtering the list of all nodes to obtain a list of acceptable nodes the pod can be scheduled to.
- Prioritizing the acceptable nodes and choosing the best one. If multiple nodes have the highest score, round-robin is used to ensure pods are deployed across all of them evenly.



**Figure 11.5** The Scheduler finds acceptable nodes for a pod and then selects the best node for the pod.

### FINDING ACCEPTABLE NODES

To determine which nodes are acceptable for the pod, the Scheduler passes each node through a list of configured predicate functions. These check various things such as

- Can the node fulfill the pod’s requests for hardware resources? You’ll learn how to specify them in chapter 14.
- Is the node running out of resources (is it reporting a memory or a disk pressure condition)?
- If the pod requests to be scheduled to a specific node (by name), is this the node?
- Does the node have a label that matches the node selector in the pod specification (if one is defined)?
- If the pod requests to be bound to a specific host port (discussed in chapter 13), is that port already taken on this node or not?
- If the pod requests a certain type of volume, can this volume be mounted for this pod on this node, or is another pod on the node already using the same volume?
- Does the pod tolerate the taints of the node? Taints and tolerations are explained in chapter 16.
- Does the pod specify node and/or pod affinity or anti-affinity rules? If yes, would scheduling the pod to this node break those rules? This is also explained in chapter 16.

All these checks must pass for the node to be eligible to host the pod. After performing these checks on every node, the Scheduler ends up with a subset of the nodes. Any of these nodes could run the pod, because they have enough available resources for the pod and conform to all requirements you’ve specified in the pod definition.

### SELECTING THE BEST NODE FOR THE POD

Even though all these nodes are acceptable and can run the pod, several may be a better choice than others. Suppose you have a two-node cluster. Both nodes are eligible, but one is already running 10 pods, while the other, for whatever reason, isn’t running any pods right now. It’s obvious the Scheduler should favor the second node in this case.

Or is it? If these two nodes are provided by the cloud infrastructure, it may be better to schedule the pod to the first node and relinquish the second node back to the cloud provider to save money.

#### ADVANCED SCHEDULING OF PODS

Consider another example. Imagine having multiple replicas of a pod. Ideally, you'd want them spread across as many nodes as possible instead of having them all scheduled to a single one. Failure of that node would cause the service backed by those pods to become unavailable. But if the pods were spread across different nodes, a single node failure would barely leave a dent in the service's capacity.

Pods belonging to the same Service or ReplicaSet are spread across multiple nodes by default. It's not guaranteed that this is always the case. But you can force pods to be spread around the cluster or kept close together by defining pod affinity and anti-affinity rules, which are explained in chapter 16.

Even these two simple cases show how complex scheduling can be, because it depends on a multitude of factors. Because of this, the Scheduler can either be configured to suit your specific needs or infrastructure specifics, or it can even be replaced with a custom implementation altogether. You could also run a Kubernetes cluster without a Scheduler, but then you'd have to perform the scheduling manually.

#### USING MULTIPLE SCHEDULERS

Instead of running a single Scheduler in the cluster, you can run multiple Schedulers. Then, for each pod, you specify the Scheduler that should schedule this particular pod by setting the `schedulerName` property in the pod spec.

Pods without this property set are scheduled using the default Scheduler, and so are pods with `schedulerName` set to `default-scheduler`. All other pods are ignored by the default Scheduler, so they need to be scheduled either manually or by another Scheduler watching for such pods.

You can implement your own Schedulers and deploy them in the cluster, or you can deploy an additional instance of Kubernetes' Scheduler with different configuration options.

### 11.1.6 Introducing the controllers running in the Controller Manager

As previously mentioned, the API server doesn't do anything except store resources in etcd and notify clients about the change. The Scheduler only assigns a node to the pod, so you need other active components to make sure the actual state of the system converges toward the desired state, as specified in the resources deployed through the API server. This work is done by controllers running inside the Controller Manager.

The single Controller Manager process currently combines a multitude of controllers performing various reconciliation tasks. Eventually those controllers will be split up into separate processes, enabling you to replace each one with a custom implementation if necessary. The list of these controllers includes the

- Replication Manager (a controller for ReplicationController resources)
- ReplicaSet, DaemonSet, and Job controllers

- Deployment controller
- StatefulSet controller
- Node controller
- Service controller
- Endpoints controller
- Namespace controller
- PersistentVolume controller
- Others

What each of these controllers does should be evident from its name. From the list, you can tell there's a controller for almost every resource you can create. Resources are descriptions of what should be running in the cluster, whereas the controllers are the active Kubernetes components that perform actual work as a result of the deployed resources.

#### **UNDERSTANDING WHAT CONTROLLERS DO AND HOW THEY DO IT**

Controllers do many different things, but they all watch the API server for changes to resources (Deployments, Services, and so on) and perform operations for each change, whether it's a creation of a new object or an update or deletion of an existing object. Most of the time, these operations include creating other resources or updating the watched resources themselves (to update the object's status, for example).

In general, controllers run a reconciliation loop, which reconciles the actual state with the desired state (specified in the resource's spec section) and writes the new actual state to the resource's status section. Controllers use the watch mechanism to be notified of changes, but because using watches doesn't guarantee the controller won't miss an event, they also perform a re-list operation periodically to make sure they haven't missed anything.

Controllers never talk to each other directly. They don't even know any other controllers exist. Each controller connects to the API server and, through the watch mechanism described in section 11.1.3, asks to be notified when a change occurs in the list of resources of any type the controller is responsible for.

We'll briefly look at what each of the controllers does, but if you'd like an in-depth view of what they do, I suggest you look at their source code directly. The sidebar explains how to get started.

#### **A few pointers on exploring the controllers' source code**

If you're interested in seeing exactly how these controllers operate, I strongly encourage you to browse through their source code. To make it easier, here are a few tips:

The source code for the controllers is available at <https://github.com/kubernetes/kubernetes/blob/master/pkg/controller>.

Each controller usually has a constructor in which it creates an `Informer`, which is basically a listener that gets called every time an API object gets updated. Usually,

an Informer listens for changes to a specific type of resource. Looking at the constructor will show you which resources the controller is watching.

Next, go look for the `worker()` method. In it, you'll find the method that gets invoked each time the controller needs to do something. The actual function is often stored in a field called `syncHandler` or something similar. This field is also initialized in the constructor, so that's where you'll find the name of the function that gets called. That function is the place where all the magic happens.

### THE REPLICATION MANAGER

The controller that makes `ReplicationController` resources come to life is called the Replication Manager. We talked about how `ReplicationControllers` work in chapter 4. It's not the `ReplicationControllers` that do the actual work, but the Replication Manager. Let's quickly review what the controller does, because this will help you understand the rest of the controllers.

In chapter 4, we said that the operation of a `ReplicationController` could be thought of as an infinite loop, where in each iteration, the controller finds the number of pods matching its pod selector and compares the number to the desired replica count.

Now that you know how the API server can notify clients through the watch mechanism, it's clear that the controller doesn't poll the pods in every iteration, but is instead notified by the watch mechanism of each change that may affect the desired replica count or the number of matched pods (see figure 11.6). Any such changes trigger the controller to recheck the desired vs. actual replica count and act accordingly.

You already know that when too few pod instances are running, the `ReplicationController` runs additional instances. But it doesn't actually run them itself. It creates

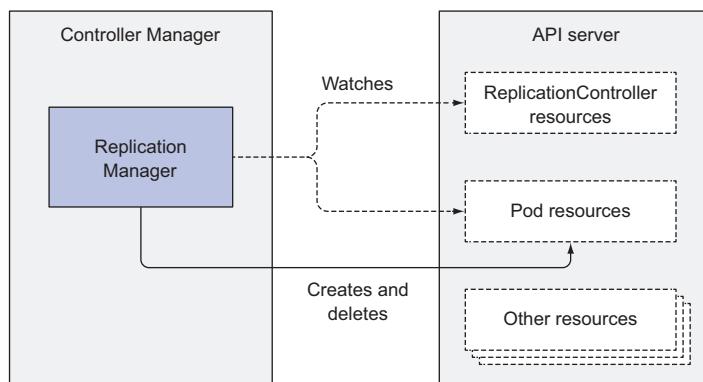


Figure 11.6 The Replication Manager watches for changes to API objects.

new Pod manifests, posts them to the API server, and lets the Scheduler and the Kubelet do their job of scheduling and running the pod.

The Replication Manager performs its work by manipulating Pod API objects through the API server. This is how all controllers operate.

### THE REPLICASET, THE DAEMONSET, AND THE JOB CONTROLLERS

The ReplicaSet controller does almost the same thing as the Replication Manager described previously, so we don't have much to add here. The DaemonSet and Job controllers are similar. They create Pod resources from the pod template defined in their respective resources. Like the Replication Manager, these controllers don't run the pods, but post Pod definitions to the API server, letting the Kubelet create their containers and run them.

### THE DEPLOYMENT CONTROLLER

The Deployment controller takes care of keeping the actual state of a deployment in sync with the desired state specified in the corresponding Deployment API object.

The Deployment controller performs a rollout of a new version each time a Deployment object is modified (if the modification should affect the deployed pods). It does this by creating a ReplicaSet and then appropriately scaling both the old and the new ReplicaSet based on the strategy specified in the Deployment, until all the old pods have been replaced with new ones. It doesn't create any pods directly.

### THE STATEFULSET CONTROLLER

The StatefulSet controller, similarly to the ReplicaSet controller and other related controllers, creates, manages, and deletes Pods according to the spec of a StatefulSet resource. But while those other controllers only manage Pods, the StatefulSet controller also instantiates and manages PersistentVolumeClaims for each Pod instance.

### THE NODE CONTROLLER

The Node controller manages the Node resources, which describe the cluster's worker nodes. Among other things, a Node controller keeps the list of Node objects in sync with the actual list of machines running in the cluster. It also monitors each node's health and evicts pods from unreachable nodes.

The Node controller isn't the only component making changes to Node objects. They're also changed by the Kubelet, and can obviously also be modified by users through REST API calls.

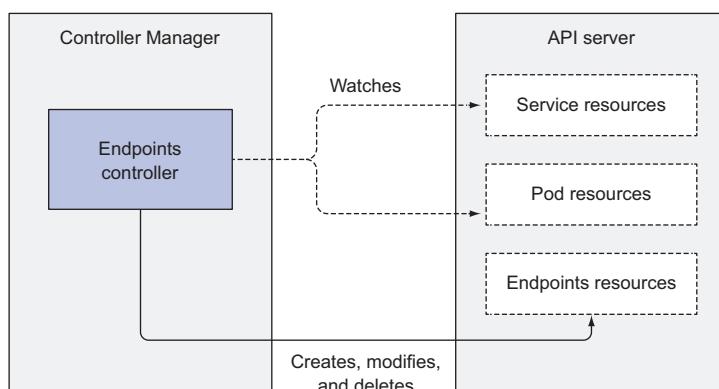
### THE SERVICE CONTROLLER

In chapter 5, when we talked about Services, you learned that a few different types exist. One of them was the LoadBalancer service, which requests a load balancer from the infrastructure to make the service available externally. The Service controller is the one requesting and releasing a load balancer from the infrastructure, when a LoadBalancer-type Service is created or deleted.

### THE ENDPOINTS CONTROLLER

You'll remember that Services aren't linked directly to pods, but instead contain a list of endpoints (IPs and ports), which is created and updated either manually or automatically according to the pod selector defined on the Service. The Endpoints controller is the active component that keeps the endpoint list constantly updated with the IPs and ports of pods matching the label selector.

As figure 11.7 shows, the controller watches both Services and Pods. When Services are added or updated or Pods are added, updated, or deleted, it selects Pods matching the Service's pod selector and adds their IPs and ports to the Endpoints resource. Remember, the Endpoints object is a standalone object, so the controller creates it if necessary. Likewise, it also deletes the Endpoints object when the Service is deleted.



**Figure 11.7** The Endpoints controller watches Service and Pod resources, and manages Endpoints.

### THE NAMESPACE CONTROLLER

Remember namespaces (we talked about them in chapter 3)? Most resources belong to a specific namespace. When a Namespace resource is deleted, all the resources in that namespace must also be deleted. This is what the Namespace controller does. When it's notified of the deletion of a Namespace object, it deletes all the resources belonging to the namespace through the API server.

### THE PERSISTENTVOLUME CONTROLLER

In chapter 6 you learned about PersistentVolumes and PersistentVolumeClaims. Once a user creates a PersistentVolumeClaim, Kubernetes must find an appropriate PersistentVolume and bind it to the claim. This is performed by the PersistentVolume controller.

When a PersistentVolumeClaim pops up, the controller finds the best match for the claim by selecting the smallest PersistentVolume with the access mode matching the one requested in the claim and the declared capacity above the capacity requested

in the claim. It does this by keeping an ordered list of PersistentVolumes for each access mode by ascending capacity and returning the first volume from the list.

Then, when the user deletes the PersistentVolumeClaim, the volume is unbound and reclaimed according to the volume's reclaim policy (left as is, deleted, or emptied).

#### **CONTROLLER WRAP-UP**

You should now have a good feel for what each controller does and how controllers work in general. Again, all these controllers operate on the API objects through the API server. They don't communicate with the Kubelets directly or issue any kind of instructions to them. In fact, they don't even know Kubelets exist. After a controller updates a resource in the API server, the Kubelets and Kubernetes Service Proxies, also oblivious of the controllers' existence, perform their work, such as spinning up a pod's containers and attaching network storage to them, or in the case of services, setting up the actual load balancing across pods.

The Control Plane handles one part of the operation of the whole system, so to fully understand how things unfold in a Kubernetes cluster, you also need to understand what the Kubelet and the Kubernetes Service Proxy do. We'll learn that next.

### **11.1.7 What the Kubelet does**

In contrast to all the controllers, which are part of the Kubernetes Control Plane and run on the master node(s), the Kubelet and the Service Proxy both run on the worker nodes, where the actual pods containers run. What does the Kubelet do exactly?

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE KUBELET'S JOB**

In a nutshell, the Kubelet is the component responsible for everything running on a worker node. Its initial job is to register the node it's running on by creating a Node resource in the API server. Then it needs to continuously monitor the API server for Pods that have been scheduled to the node, and start the pod's containers. It does this by telling the configured container runtime (which is Docker, CoreOS' rkt, or something else) to run a container from a specific container image. The Kubelet then constantly monitors running containers and reports their status, events, and resource consumption to the API server.

The Kubelet is also the component that runs the container liveness probes, restarting containers when the probes fail. Lastly, it terminates containers when their Pod is deleted from the API server and notifies the server that the pod has terminated.

#### **RUNNING STATIC PODS WITHOUT THE API SERVER**

Although the Kubelet talks to the Kubernetes API server and gets the pod manifests from there, it can also run pods based on pod manifest files in a specific local directory as shown in figure 11.8. This feature is used to run the containerized versions of the Control Plane components as pods, as you saw in the beginning of the chapter.

Instead of running Kubernetes system components natively, you can put their pod manifests into the Kubelet's manifest directory and have the Kubelet run and manage

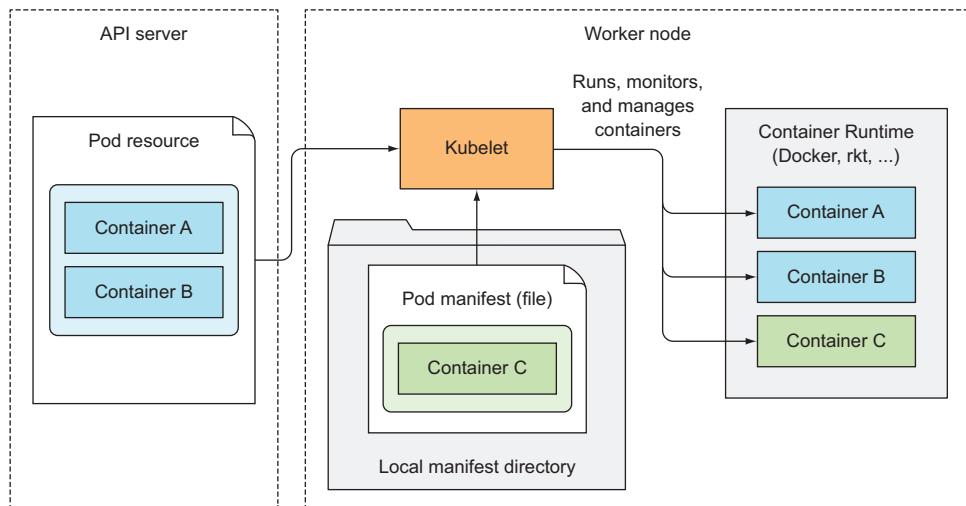


Figure 11.8 The Kubelet runs pods based on pod specs from the API server and a local file directory.

them. You can also use the same method to run your custom system containers, but doing it through a DaemonSet is the recommended method.

### 11.1.8 The role of the Kubernetes Service Proxy

Beside the Kubelet, every worker node also runs the kube-proxy, whose purpose is to make sure clients can connect to the services you define through the Kubernetes API. The kube-proxy makes sure connections to the service IP and port end up at one of the pods backing that service (or other, non-pod service endpoints). When a service is backed by more than one pod, the proxy performs load balancing across those pods.

#### WHY IT'S CALLED A PROXY

The initial implementation of the kube-proxy was the userspace proxy. It used an actual server process to accept connections and proxy them to the pods. To intercept connections destined to the service IPs, the proxy configured iptables rules (iptables is the tool for managing the Linux kernel's packet filtering features) to redirect the connections to the proxy server. A rough diagram of the userspace proxy mode is shown in figure 11.9.

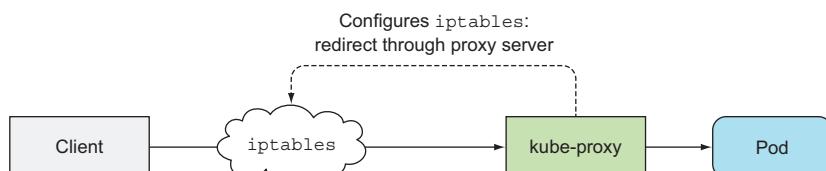
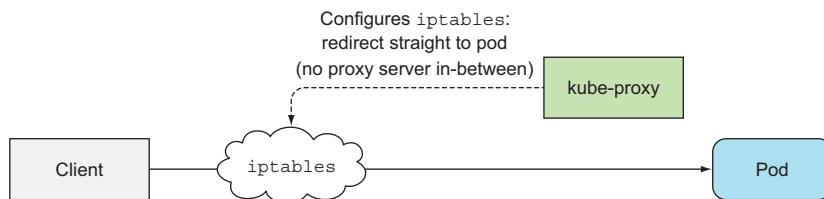


Figure 11.9 The userspace proxy mode

The kube-proxy got its name because it was an actual proxy, but the current, much better performing implementation only uses iptables rules to redirect packets to a randomly selected backend pod without passing them through an actual proxy server. This mode is called the `iptables` proxy mode and is shown in figure 11.10.



**Figure 11.10** The `iptables` proxy mode

The major difference between these two modes is whether packets pass through the kube-proxy and must be handled in user space, or whether they’re handled only by the Kernel (in kernel space). This has a major impact on performance.

Another smaller difference is that the userspace proxy mode balanced connections across pods in a true round-robin fashion, while the `iptables` proxy mode doesn’t—it selects pods randomly. When only a few clients use a service, they may not be spread evenly across pods. For example, if a service has two backing pods but only five or so clients, don’t be surprised if you see four clients connect to pod A and only one client connect to pod B. With a higher number of clients or pods, this problem isn’t so apparent.

You’ll learn exactly how `iptables` proxy mode works in section 11.5.

### 11.1.9 Introducing Kubernetes add-ons

We’ve now discussed the core components that make a Kubernetes cluster work. But in the beginning of the chapter, we also listed a few add-ons, which although not always required, enable features such as DNS lookup of Kubernetes services, exposing multiple HTTP services through a single external IP address, the Kubernetes web dashboard, and so on.

#### HOW ADD-ONS ARE DEPLOYED

These components are available as add-ons and are deployed as pods by submitting YAML manifests to the API server, the way you’ve been doing throughout the book. Some of these components are deployed through a Deployment resource or a ReplicationController resource, and some through a DaemonSet.

For example, as I’m writing this, in Minikube, the Ingress controller and the dashboard add-ons are deployed as ReplicationControllers, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 11.7 Add-ons deployed with ReplicationControllers in Minikube**

```
$ kubectl get rc -n kube-system
NAME             DESIRED   CURRENT   READY   AGE
default-http-backend   1         1         1       6d
kubernetes-dashboard   1         1         1       6d
nginx-ingress-controller   1         1         1       6d
```

The DNS add-on is deployed as a Deployment, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 11.8 The kube-dns Deployment**

```
$ kubectl get deploy -n kube-system
NAME      DESIRED   CURRENT   UP-TO-DATE   AVAILABLE   AGE
kube-dns   1         1         1           1           6d
```

Let's see how DNS and the Ingress controllers work.

#### **HOW THE DNS SERVER WORKS**

All the pods in the cluster are configured to use the cluster's internal DNS server by default. This allows pods to easily look up services by name or even the pod's IP addresses in the case of headless services.

The DNS server pod is exposed through the `kube-dns` service, allowing the pod to be moved around the cluster, like any other pod. The service's IP address is specified as the nameserver in the `/etc/resolv.conf` file inside every container deployed in the cluster. The `kube-dns` pod uses the API server's watch mechanism to observe changes to Services and Endpoints and updates its DNS records with every change, allowing its clients to always get (fairly) up-to-date DNS information. I say fairly because during the time between the update of the Service or Endpoints resource and the time the DNS pod receives the watch notification, the DNS records may be invalid.

#### **How (Most) Ingress Controllers Work**

Unlike the DNS add-on, you'll find a few different implementations of Ingress controllers, but most of them work in the same way. An Ingress controller runs a reverse proxy server (like Nginx, for example), and keeps it configured according to the Ingress, Service, and Endpoints resources defined in the cluster. The controller thus needs to observe those resources (again, through the watch mechanism) and change the proxy server's config every time one of them changes.

Although the Ingress resource's definition points to a Service, Ingress controllers forward traffic to the service's pod directly instead of going through the service IP. This affects the preservation of client IPs when external clients connect through the Ingress controller, which makes them preferred over Services in certain use cases.

#### **Using Other Add-ons**

You've seen how both the DNS server and the Ingress controller add-ons are similar to the controllers running in the Controller Manager, except that they also accept client connections instead of only observing and modifying resources through the API server.

Other add-ons are similar. They all need to observe the cluster state and perform the necessary actions when that changes. We'll introduce a few other add-ons in this and the remaining chapters.

### 11.1.10 Bringing it all together

You've now learned that the whole Kubernetes system is composed of relatively small, loosely coupled components with good separation of concerns. The API server, the Scheduler, the individual controllers running inside the Controller Manager, the Kubelet, and the kube-proxy all work together to keep the actual state of the system synchronized with what you specify as the desired state.

For example, submitting a pod manifest to the API server triggers a coordinated dance of various Kubernetes components, which eventually results in the pod's containers running. You'll learn how this dance unfolds in the next section.

## 11.2 How controllers cooperate

You now know about all the components that a Kubernetes cluster is comprised of. Now, to solidify your understanding of how Kubernetes works, let's go over what happens when a Pod resource is created. Because you normally don't create Pods directly, you're going to create a Deployment resource instead and see everything that must happen for the pod's containers to be started.

### 11.2.1 Understanding which components are involved

Even before you start the whole process, the controllers, the Scheduler, and the Kubelet are watching the API server for changes to their respective resource types. This is shown in figure 11.11. The components depicted in the figure will each play a part in the process you're about to trigger. The diagram doesn't include etcd, because it's hidden behind the API server, and you can think of the API server as the place where objects are stored.

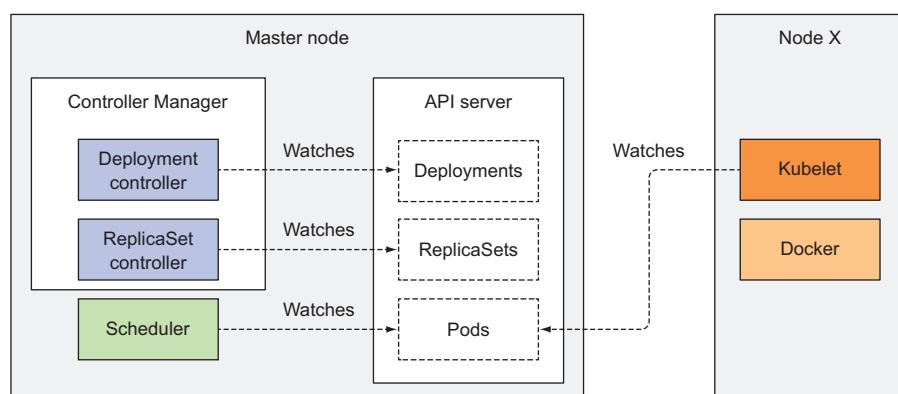


Figure 11.11 Kubernetes components watching API objects through the API server

### 11.2.2 The chain of events

Imagine you prepared the YAML file containing the Deployment manifest and you're about to submit it to Kubernetes through kubectl. kubectl sends the manifest to the Kubernetes API server in an HTTP POST request. The API server validates the Deployment specification, stores it in etcd, and returns a response to kubectl. Now a chain of events starts to unfold, as shown in figure 11.12.

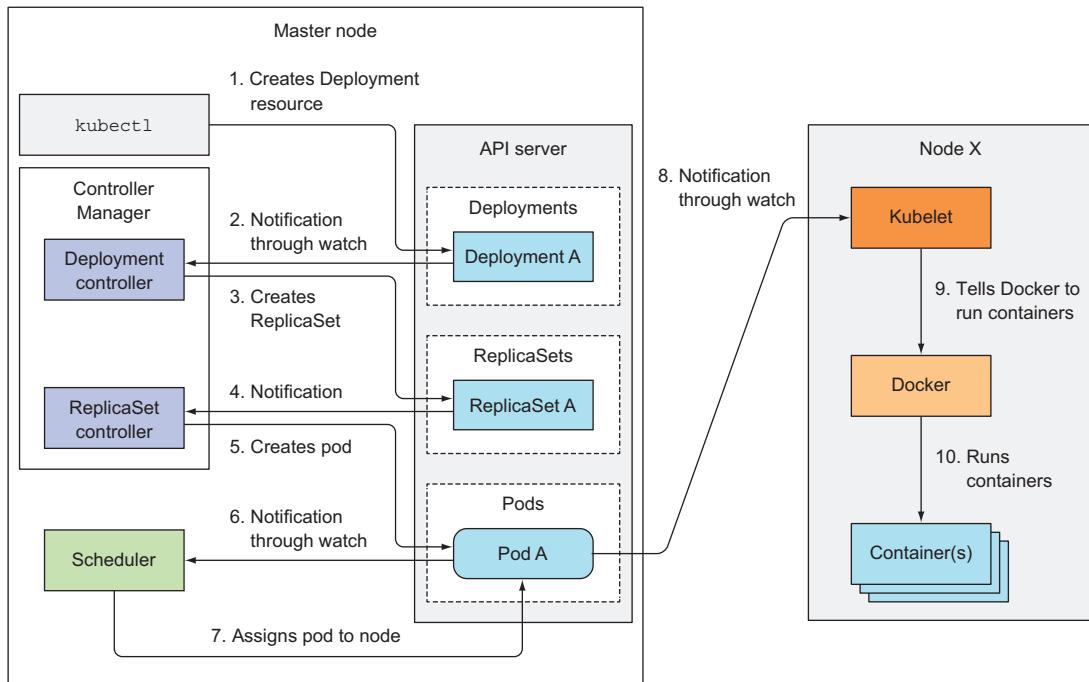


Figure 11.12 The chain of events that unfolds when a Deployment resource is posted to the API server

#### THE DEPLOYMENT CONTROLLER CREATES THE REPLICASET

All API server clients watching the list of Deployments through the API server's watch mechanism are notified of the newly created Deployment resource immediately after it's created. One of those clients is the Deployment controller, which, as we discussed earlier, is the active component responsible for handling Deployments.

As you may remember from chapter 9, a Deployment is backed by one or more ReplicaSets, which then create the actual pods. As a new Deployment object is detected by the Deployment controller, it creates a ReplicaSet for the current specification of the Deployment. This involves creating a new ReplicaSet resource through the Kubernetes API. The Deployment controller doesn't deal with individual pods at all.

### THE REPLICASET CONTROLLER CREATES THE POD RESOURCES

The newly created ReplicaSet is then picked up by the ReplicaSet controller, which watches for creations, modifications, and deletions of ReplicaSet resources in the API server. The controller takes into consideration the replica count and pod selector defined in the ReplicaSet and verifies whether enough existing Pods match the selector.

The controller then creates the Pod resources based on the pod template in the ReplicaSet (the pod template was copied over from the Deployment when the Deployment controller created the ReplicaSet).

### THE SCHEDULER ASSIGNS A NODE TO THE NEWLY CREATED PODS

These newly created Pods are now stored in etcd, but they each still lack one important thing—they don’t have an associated node yet. Their `nodeName` attribute isn’t set. The Scheduler watches for Pods like this, and when it encounters one, chooses the best node for the Pod and assigns the Pod to the node. The Pod’s definition now includes the name of the node it should be running on.

Everything so far has been happening in the Kubernetes Control Plane. None of the controllers that have taken part in this whole process have done anything tangible except update the resources through the API server.

### THE KUBELET RUNS THE POD’S CONTAINERS

The worker nodes haven’t done anything up to this point. The pod’s containers haven’t been started yet. The images for the pod’s containers haven’t even been downloaded yet.

But with the Pod now scheduled to a specific node, the Kubelet on that node can finally get to work. The Kubelet, watching for changes to Pods on the API server, sees a new Pod scheduled to its node, so it inspects the Pod definition and instructs Docker, or whatever container runtime it’s using, to start the pod’s containers. The container runtime then runs the containers.

#### 11.2.3 *Observing cluster events*

Both the Control Plane components and the Kubelet emit events to the API server as they perform these actions. They do this by creating Event resources, which are like any other Kubernetes resource. You’ve already seen events pertaining to specific resources every time you used `kubectl describe` to inspect those resources, but you can also retrieve events directly with `kubectl get events`.

Maybe it’s me, but using `kubectl get` to inspect events is painful, because they’re not shown in proper temporal order. Instead, if an event occurs multiple times, the event is displayed only once, showing when it was first seen, when it was last seen, and the number of times it occurred. Luckily, watching events with the `--watch` option is much easier on the eyes and useful for seeing what’s happening in the cluster.

The following listing shows the events emitted in the process described previously (some columns have been removed and the output is edited heavily to make it legible in the limited space on the page).

## **Listing 11.9** Watching events emitted by the controllers

```
$ kubectl get events --watch
```

| NAME                | KIND   | REASON                     | SOURCE                |
|---------------------|--|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| ... kubia           | Deployment                                       | ScalingReplicaSet          | deployment-controller |
|                     | ▶ Scaled up                                      | replica set kubia-193 to 3 |                       |
| ... kubia-193       | ReplicaSet                                       | SuccessfulCreate           | replicaset-controller |
|                     | ▶ Created pod: kubia-193-w7ll2                   |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193-tpg6j | Pod  | Scheduled                  | default-scheduler     |
|                     | ▶ Successfully assigned kubia-193-tpg6j to node1 |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193       | ReplicaSet                                       | SuccessfulCreate           | replicaset-controller |
|                     | ▶ Created pod: kubia-193-39590                   |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193       | ReplicaSet                                       | SuccessfulCreate           | replicaset-controller |
|                     | ▶ Created pod: kubia-193-tpg6j                   |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193-39590 | Pod  | Scheduled                  | default-scheduler     |
|                     | ▶ Successfully assigned kubia-193-39590 to node2 |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193-w7ll2 | Pod  | Scheduled                  | default-scheduler     |
|                     | ▶ Successfully assigned kubia-193-w7ll2 to node2 |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193-tpg6j | Pod  | Pulled                     | kubelet, node1        |
|                     | ▶ Container image already present on machine     |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193-tpg6j | Pod  | Created                    | kubelet, node1        |
|                     | ▶ Created container with id 13da752              |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193-39590 | Pod  | Pulled                     | kubelet, node2        |
|                     | ▶ Container image already present on machine     |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193-tpg6j | Pod  | Started                    | kubelet, node1        |
|                     | ▶ Started container with id 13da752              |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193-w7ll2 | Pod  | Pulled                     | kubelet, node2        |
|                     | ▶ Container image already present on machine     |                            |                       |
| ... kubia-193-39590 | Pod  | Created                    | kubelet, node2        |
|                     | ▶ Created container with id 8850184              |                            |                       |
| ...                 |  |                            |                       |

As you can see, the `SOURCE` column shows the controller performing the action, and the `NAME` and `KIND` columns show the resource the controller is acting on. The `REASON` column and the `MESSAGE` column (shown in every second line) give more details about what the controller has done.

### **11.3 Understanding what a running pod is**

With the pod now running, let's look more closely at what a running pod even is. If a pod contains a single container, do you think that the Kubelet just runs this single container, or is there more to it?

You've run several pods throughout this book. If you're the investigative type, you may have already snuck a peek at what exactly Docker ran when you created a pod. If not, let me explain what you'd see.

Imagine you run a single container pod. Let's say you create an Nginx pod:

```
$ kubectl run nginx --image=nginx  
deployment "nginx" created
```

You can now ssh into the worker node running the pod and inspect the list of running Docker containers. I'm using Minikube to test this out, so to ssh into the single

node, I use `minikube ssh`. If you’re using GKE, you can `ssh` into a node with `gcloud compute ssh <node name>`.

Once you’re inside the node, you can list all the running containers with `docker ps`, as shown in the following listing.

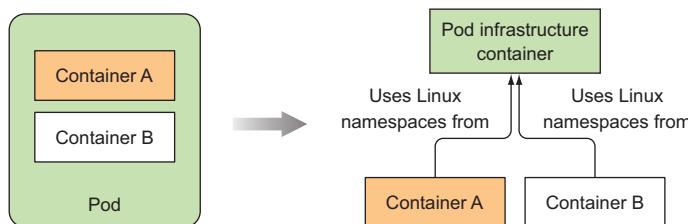
#### Listing 11.10 Listing running Docker containers

```
docker@minikubeVM:~$ docker ps
CONTAINER ID IMAGE COMMAND CREATED
c917a6f3c3f7 nginx "nginx -g 'daemon off'" 4 seconds ago
98b8bf797174 gcr.io/.../pause:3.0 "/pause" 7 seconds ago
...
```

**NOTE** I’ve removed irrelevant information from the previous listing—this includes both columns and rows. I’ve also removed all the other running containers. If you’re trying this out yourself, pay attention to the two containers that were created a few seconds ago.

As expected, you see the Nginx container, but also an additional container. Judging from the `COMMAND` column, this additional container isn’t doing anything (the container’s command is “`pause`”). If you look closely, you’ll see that this container was created a few seconds before the Nginx container. What’s its role?

This pause container is the container that holds all the containers of a pod together. Remember how all containers of a pod share the same network and other Linux namespaces? The pause container is an infrastructure container whose sole purpose is to hold all these namespaces. All other user-defined containers of the pod then use the namespaces of the pod infrastructure container (see figure 11.13).



**Figure 11.13** A two-container pod results in three running containers sharing the same Linux namespaces.

Actual application containers may die and get restarted. When such a container starts up again, it needs to become part of the same Linux namespaces as before. The infrastructure container makes this possible since its lifecycle is tied to that of the pod—the container runs from the time the pod is scheduled until the pod is deleted. If the infrastructure pod is killed in the meantime, the Kubelet recreates it and all the pod’s containers.

## 11.4 Inter-pod networking

By now, you know that each pod gets its own unique IP address and can communicate with all other pods through a flat, NAT-less network. How exactly does Kubernetes achieve this? In short, it doesn't. The network is set up by the system administrator or by a Container Network Interface (CNI) plugin, not by Kubernetes itself.

### 11.4.1 What the network must be like

Kubernetes doesn't require you to use a specific networking technology, but it does mandate that the pods (or to be more precise, their containers) can communicate with each other, regardless if they're running on the same worker node or not. The network the pods use to communicate must be such that the IP address a pod sees as its own is the exact same address that all other pods see as the IP address of the pod in question.

Look at figure 11.14. When pod A connects to (sends a network packet to) pod B, the source IP pod B sees must be the same IP that pod A sees as its own. There should be no network address translation (NAT) performed in between—the packet sent by pod A must reach pod B with both the source and destination address unchanged.

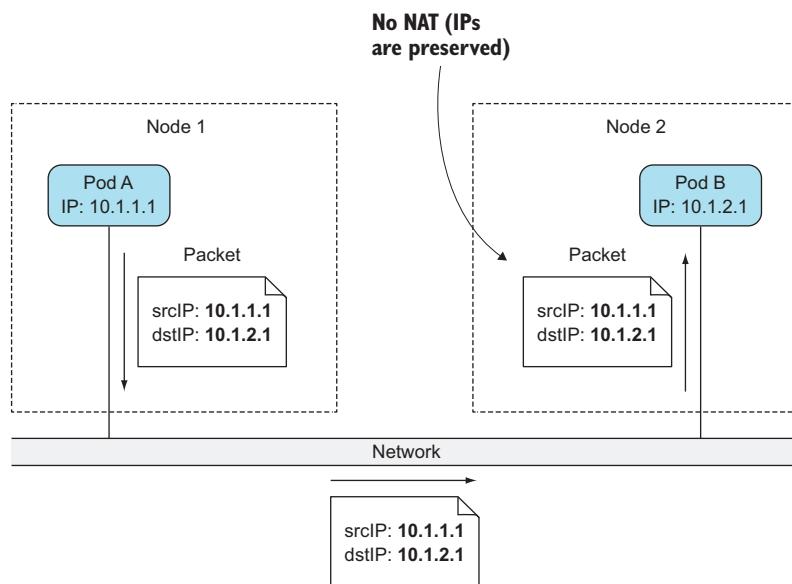


Figure 11.14 Kubernetes mandates pods are connected through a NAT-less network.

This is important, because it makes networking for applications running inside pods simple and exactly as if they were running on machines connected to the same network switch. The absence of NAT between pods enables applications running inside them to self-register in other pods.

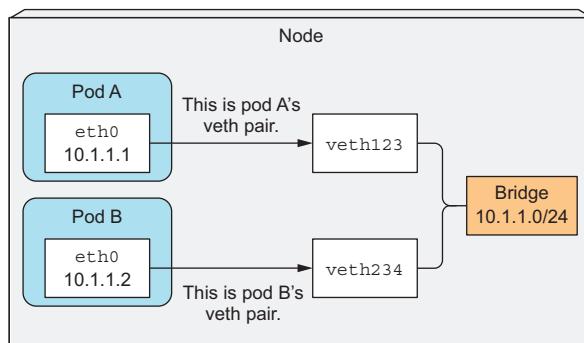
For example, say you have a client pod X and pod Y, which provides a kind of notification service to all pods that register with it. Pod X connects to pod Y and tells it, “Hey, I’m pod X, available at IP 1.2.3.4; please send updates to me at this IP address.” The pod providing the service can connect to the first pod by using the received IP address.

The requirement for NAT-less communication between pods also extends to pod-to-node and node-to-pod communication. But when a pod communicates with services out on the internet, the source IP of the packets the pod sends does need to be changed, because the pod’s IP is private. The source IP of outbound packets is changed to the host worker node’s IP address.

Building a proper Kubernetes cluster involves setting up the networking according to these requirements. There are various methods and technologies available to do this, each with its own benefits or drawbacks in a given scenario. Because of this, we’re not going to go into specific technologies. Instead, let’s explain how inter-pod networking works in general.

#### **11.4.2 Diving deeper into how networking works**

In section 11.3, we saw that a pod’s IP address and network namespace are set up and held by the infrastructure container (the pause container). The pod’s containers then use its network namespace. A pod’s network interface is thus whatever is set up in the infrastructure container. Let’s see how the interface is created and how it’s connected to the interfaces in all the other pods. Look at figure 11.15. We’ll discuss it next.



**Figure 11.15** Pods on a node are connected to the same bridge through virtual Ethernet interface pairs.

#### **ENABLING COMMUNICATION BETWEEN PODS ON THE SAME NODE**

Before the infrastructure container is started, a virtual Ethernet interface pair (a veth pair) is created for the container. One interface of the pair remains in the host’s namespace (you’ll see it listed as `vethXXX` when you run `ifconfig` on the node), whereas the other is moved into the container’s network namespace and renamed `eth0`. The two virtual interfaces are like two ends of a pipe (or like two network devices connected by an Ethernet cable)—what goes in on one side comes out on the other, and vice-versa.

The interface in the host's network namespace is attached to a network bridge that the container runtime is configured to use. The eth0 interface in the container is assigned an IP address from the bridge's address range. Anything that an application running inside the container sends to the eth0 network interface (the one in the container's namespace), comes out at the other veth interface in the host's namespace and is sent to the bridge. This means it can be received by any network interface that's connected to the bridge.

If pod A sends a network packet to pod B, the packet first goes through pod A's veth pair to the bridge and then through pod B's veth pair. All containers on a node are connected to the same bridge, which means they can all communicate with each other. But to enable communication between containers running on different nodes, the bridges on those nodes need to be connected somehow.

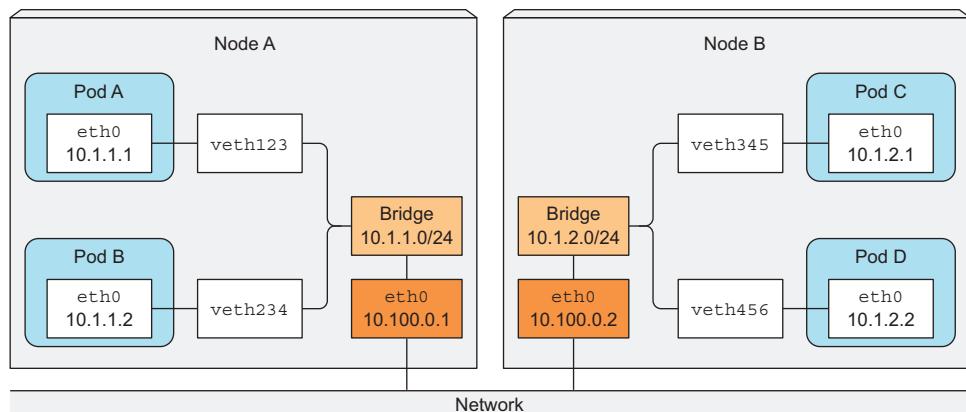
#### ENABLING COMMUNICATION BETWEEN PODS ON DIFFERENT NODES

You have many ways to connect bridges on different nodes. This can be done with overlay or underlay networks or by regular layer 3 routing, which we'll look at next.

You know pod IP addresses must be unique across the whole cluster, so the bridges across the nodes must use non-overlapping address ranges to prevent pods on different nodes from getting the same IP. In the example shown in figure 11.16, the bridge on node A is using the 10.1.1.0/24 IP range and the bridge on node B is using 10.1.2.0/24, which ensures no IP address conflicts exist.

Figure 11.16 shows that to enable communication between pods across two nodes with plain layer 3 networking, the node's physical network interface needs to be connected to the bridge as well. Routing tables on node A need to be configured so all packets destined for 10.1.2.0/24 are routed to node B, whereas node B's routing tables need to be configured so packets sent to 10.1.1.0/24 are routed to node A.

With this type of setup, when a packet is sent by a container on one of the nodes to a container on the other node, the packet first goes through the veth pair, then



**Figure 11.16** For pods on different nodes to communicate, the bridges need to be connected somehow.

through the bridge to the node’s physical adapter, then over the wire to the other node’s physical adapter, through the other node’s bridge, and finally through the veth pair of the destination container.

This works only when nodes are connected to the same network switch, without any routers in between; otherwise those routers would drop the packets because they refer to pod IPs, which are private. Sure, the routers in between could be configured to route packets between the nodes, but this becomes increasingly difficult and error-prone as the number of routers between the nodes increases. Because of this, it’s easier to use a Software Defined Network (SDN), which makes the nodes appear as though they’re connected to the same network switch, regardless of the actual underlying network topology, no matter how complex it is. Packets sent from the pod are encapsulated and sent over the network to the node running the other pod, where they are de-encapsulated and delivered to the pod in their original form.

#### **11.4.3 Introducing the Container Network Interface**

To make it easier to connect containers into a network, a project called Container Network Interface (CNI) was started. The CNI allows Kubernetes to be configured to use any CNI plugin that’s out there. These plugins include

- Calico
- Flannel
- Romana
- Weave Net
- And others

We’re not going to go into the details of these plugins; if you want to learn more about them, refer to <https://kubernetes.io/docs/concepts/cluster-administration/addons/>.

Installing a network plugin isn’t difficult. You only need to deploy a YAML containing a DaemonSet and a few other supporting resources. This YAML is provided on each plugin’s project page. As you can imagine, the DaemonSet is used to deploy a network agent on all cluster nodes. It then ties into the CNI interface on the node, but be aware that the Kubelet needs to be started with `--network-plugin=cni` to use CNI.

### **11.5 How services are implemented**

In chapter 5 you learned about Services, which allow exposing a set of pods at a long-lived, stable IP address and port. In order to focus on what Services are meant for and how they can be used, we intentionally didn’t go into how they work. But to truly understand Services and have a better feel for where to look when things don’t behave the way you expect, you need to understand how they are implemented.

### 11.5.1 Introducing the `kube-proxy`

Everything related to Services is handled by the `kube-proxy` process running on each node. Initially, the `kube-proxy` was an actual proxy waiting for connections and for each incoming connection, opening a new connection to one of the pods. This was called the userspace proxy mode. Later, a better-performing `iptables` proxy mode replaced it. This is now the default, but you can still configure Kubernetes to use the old mode if you want.

Before we continue, let's quickly review a few things about Services, which are relevant for understanding the next few paragraphs.

We've learned that each Service gets its own stable IP address and port. Clients (usually pods) use the service by connecting to this IP address and port. The IP address is virtual—it's not assigned to any network interfaces and is never listed as either the source or the destination IP address in a network packet when the packet leaves the node. A key detail of Services is that they consist of an IP and port pair (or multiple IP and port pairs in the case of multi-port Services), so the service IP by itself doesn't represent anything. That's why you can't ping them.

### 11.5.2 How `kube-proxy` uses `iptables`

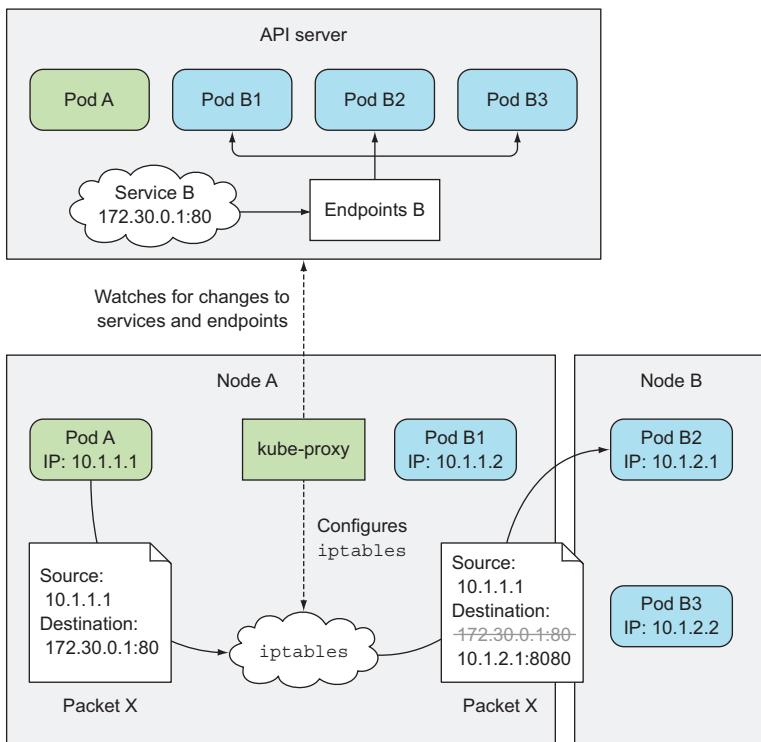
When a service is created in the API server, the virtual IP address is assigned to it immediately. Soon afterward, the API server notifies all `kube-proxy` agents running on the worker nodes that a new Service has been created. Then, each `kube-proxy` makes that service addressable on the node it's running on. It does this by setting up a few `iptables` rules, which make sure each packet destined for the service IP/port pair is intercepted and its destination address modified, so the packet is redirected to one of the pods backing the service.

Besides watching the API server for changes to Services, `kube-proxy` also watches for changes to `Endpoints` objects. We talked about them in chapter 5, but let me refresh your memory, as it's easy to forget they even exist, because you rarely create them manually. An `Endpoints` object holds the IP/port pairs of all the pods that back the service (an IP/port pair can also point to something other than a pod). That's why the `kube-proxy` must also watch all `Endpoints` objects. After all, an `Endpoints` object changes every time a new backing pod is created or deleted, and when the pod's readiness status changes or the pod's labels change and it falls in or out of scope of the service.

Now let's see how `kube-proxy` enables clients to connect to those pods through the Service. This is shown in figure 11.17.

The figure shows what the `kube-proxy` does and how a packet sent by a client pod reaches one of the pods backing the Service. Let's examine what happens to the packet when it's sent by the client pod (pod A in the figure).

The packet's destination is initially set to the IP and port of the Service (in the example, the Service is at 172.30.0.1:80). Before being sent to the network, the



**Figure 11.17** Network packets sent to a Service’s virtual IP/port pair are modified and redirected to a randomly selected backend pod.

packet is first handled by node A’s kernel according to the `iptables` rules set up on the node.

The kernel checks if the packet matches any of those `iptables` rules. One of them says that if any packet has the destination IP equal to 172.30.0.1 and destination port equal to 80, the packet’s destination IP and port should be replaced with the IP and port of a randomly selected pod.

The packet in the example matches that rule and so its destination IP/port is changed. In the example, pod B2 was randomly selected, so the packet’s destination IP is changed to 10.1.2.1 (pod B2’s IP) and the port to 8080 (the target port specified in the Service spec). From here on, it’s exactly as if the client pod had sent the packet to pod B directly instead of through the service.

It’s slightly more complicated than that, but that’s the most important part you need to understand.

## 11.6 Running highly available clusters

One of the reasons for running apps inside Kubernetes is to keep them running without interruption with no or limited manual intervention in case of infrastructure failures. For running services without interruption it's not only the apps that need to be up all the time, but also the Kubernetes Control Plane components. We'll look at what's involved in achieving high availability next.

### 11.6.1 Making your apps highly available

When running apps in Kubernetes, the various controllers make sure your app keeps running smoothly and at the specified scale even when nodes fail. To ensure your app is highly available, you only need to run them through a Deployment resource and configure an appropriate number of replicas; everything else is taken care of by Kubernetes.

#### RUNNING MULTIPLE INSTANCES TO REDUCE THE LIKELIHOOD OF DOWNTIME

This requires your apps to be horizontally scalable, but even if that's not the case in your app, you should still use a Deployment with its replica count set to one. If the replica becomes unavailable, it will be replaced with a new one quickly, although that doesn't happen instantaneously. It takes time for all the involved controllers to notice that a node has failed, create the new pod replica, and start the pod's containers. There will inevitably be a short period of downtime in between.

#### USING LEADER-ELECTION FOR NON-HORIZONTALLY SCALABLE APPS

To avoid the downtime, you need to run additional inactive replicas along with the active one and use a fast-acting lease or leader-election mechanism to make sure only one is active. In case you're unfamiliar with leader election, it's a way for multiple app instances running in a distributed environment to come to an agreement on which is the leader. That leader is either the only one performing tasks, while all others are waiting for the leader to fail and then becoming leaders themselves, or they can all be active, with the leader being the only instance performing writes, while all the others are providing read-only access to their data, for example. This ensures two instances are never doing the same job, if that would lead to unpredictable system behavior due to race conditions.

The mechanism doesn't need to be incorporated into the app itself. You can use a sidecar container that performs all the leader-election operations and signals the main container when it should become active. You'll find an example of leader election in Kubernetes at <https://github.com/kubernetes/contrib/tree/master/election>.

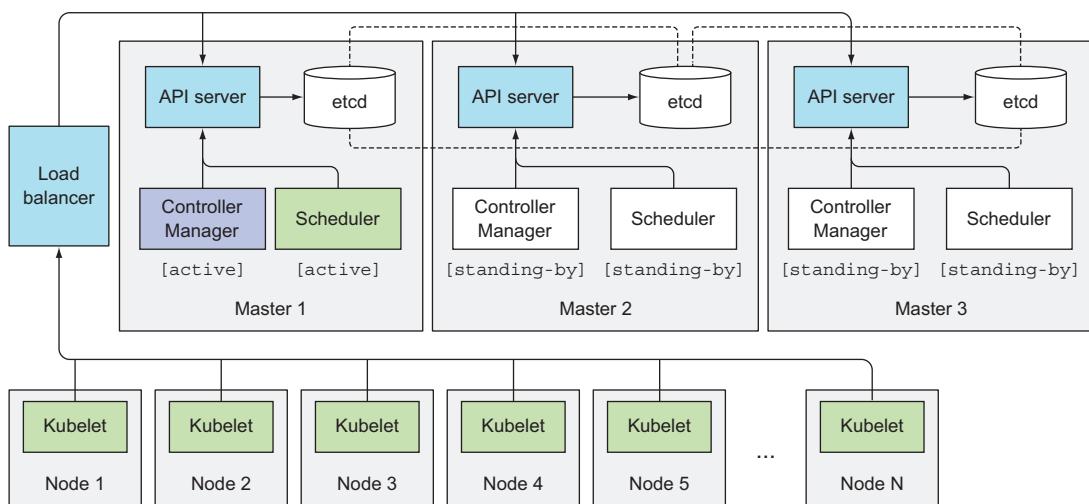
Ensuring your apps are highly available is relatively simple, because Kubernetes takes care of almost everything. But what if Kubernetes itself fails? What if the servers running the Kubernetes Control Plane components go down? How are those components made highly available?

### 11.6.2 Making Kubernetes Control Plane components highly available

In the beginning of this chapter, you learned about the few components that make up a Kubernetes Control Plane. To make Kubernetes highly available, you need to run multiple master nodes, which run multiple instances of the following components:

- etcd, which is the distributed data store where all the API objects are kept
- API server
- Controller Manager, which is the process in which all the controllers run
- Scheduler

Without going into the actual details of how to install and run these components, let's see what's involved in making each of these components highly available. Figure 11.18 shows an overview of a highly available cluster.



**Figure 11.18** A highly-available cluster with three master nodes

#### RUNNING AN ETCD CLUSTER

Because etcd was designed as a distributed system, one of its key features is the ability to run multiple etcd instances, so making it highly available is no big deal. All you need to do is run it on an appropriate number of machines (three, five, or seven, as explained earlier in the chapter) and make them aware of each other. You do this by including the list of all the other instances in every instance's configuration. For example, when starting an instance, you specify the IPs and ports where the other etcd instances can be reached.

etcd will replicate data across all its instances, so a failure of one of the nodes when running a three-machine cluster will still allow the cluster to accept both read and write operations. To increase the fault tolerance to more than a single node, you need to run five or seven etcd nodes, which would allow the cluster to handle two or three

node failures, respectively. Having more than seven etcd instances is almost never necessary and begins impacting performance.

### RUNNING MULTIPLE INSTANCES OF THE API SERVER

Making the API server highly available is even simpler. Because the API server is (almost completely) stateless (all the data is stored in etcd, but the API server does cache it), you can run as many API servers as you need, and they don't need to be aware of each other at all. Usually, one API server is collocated with every etcd instance. By doing this, the etcd instances don't need any kind of load balancer in front of them, because every API server instance only talks to the local etcd instance.

The API servers, on the other hand, do need to be fronted by a load balancer, so clients (kubectl, but also the Controller Manager, Scheduler, and all the Kubelets) always connect only to the healthy API server instances.

### ENSURING HIGH AVAILABILITY OF THE CONTROLLERS AND THE SCHEDULER

Compared to the API server, where multiple replicas can run simultaneously, running multiple instances of the Controller Manager or the Scheduler isn't as simple. Because controllers and the Scheduler all actively watch the cluster state and act when it changes, possibly modifying the cluster state further (for example, when the desired replica count on a ReplicaSet is increased by one, the ReplicaSet controller creates an additional pod), running multiple instances of each of those components would result in all of them performing the same action. They'd be racing each other, which could cause undesired effects (creating two new pods instead of one, as mentioned in the previous example).

For this reason, when running multiple instances of these components, only one instance may be active at any given time. Luckily, this is all taken care of by the components themselves (this is controlled with the `--leader-elect` option, which defaults to true). Each individual component will only be active when it's the elected leader. Only the leader performs actual work, whereas all other instances are standing by and waiting for the current leader to fail. When it does, the remaining instances elect a new leader, which then takes over the work. This mechanism ensures that two components are never operating at the same time and doing the same work (see figure 11.19).

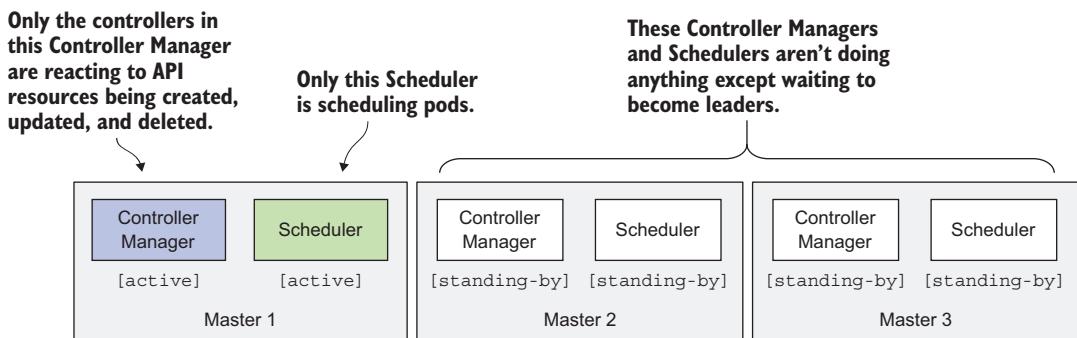


Figure 11.19 Only a single Controller Manager and a single Scheduler are active; others are standing by.

The Controller Manager and Scheduler can run collocated with the API server and etcd, or they can run on separate machines. When collocated, they can talk to the local API server directly; otherwise they connect to the API servers through the load balancer.

### UNDERSTANDING THE LEADER ELECTION MECHANISM USED IN CONTROL PLANE COMPONENTS

What I find most interesting here is that these components don't need to talk to each other directly to elect a leader. The leader election mechanism works purely by creating a resource in the API server. And it's not even a special kind of resource—the Endpoints resource is used to achieve this (abused is probably a more appropriate term).

There's nothing special about using an Endpoints object to do this. It's used because it has no side effects as long as no Service with the same name exists. Any other resource could be used (in fact, the leader election mechanism will soon use ConfigMaps instead of Endpoints).

I'm sure you're interested in how a resource can be used for this purpose. Let's take the Scheduler, for example. All instances of the Scheduler try to create (and later update) an Endpoints resource called `kube-scheduler`. You'll find it in the `kube-system` namespace, as the following listing shows.

#### **Listing 11.11 The `kube-scheduler` Endpoints resource used for leader-election**

```
$ kubectl get endpoints kube-scheduler -n kube-system -o yaml
apiVersion: v1
kind: Endpoints
metadata:
  annotations:
    control-plane.alpha.kubernetes.io/leader: '{"holderIdentity": "minikube", "leaseDurationSeconds": 15, "acquireTime": "2017-05-27T18:54:53Z", "renewTime": "2017-05-28T13:07:49Z", "leaderTransitions": 0}'
  creationTimestamp: 2017-05-27T18:54:53Z
  name: kube-scheduler
  namespace: kube-system
  resourceVersion: "654059"
  selfLink: /api/v1/namespaces/kube-system/endpoints/kube-scheduler
  uid: f847bd14-430d-11e7-9720-080027f8fa4e
subsets: []
```

The `control-plane.alpha.kubernetes.io/leader` annotation is the important part. As you can see, it contains a field called `holderIdentity`, which holds the name of the current leader. The first instance that succeeds in putting its name there becomes the leader. Instances race each other to do that, but there's always only one winner.

Remember the optimistic concurrency we explained earlier? That's what ensures that if multiple instances try to write their name into the resource only one of them succeeds. Based on whether the write succeeded or not, each instance knows whether it is or it isn't the leader.

Once becoming the leader, it must periodically update the resource (every two seconds by default), so all other instances know that it's still alive. When the leader fails,

other instances see that the resource hasn't been updated for a while, and try to become the leader by writing their own name to the resource. Simple, right?

## 11.7 **Summary**

Hopefully, this has been an interesting chapter that has improved your knowledge of the inner workings of Kubernetes. This chapter has shown you

- What components make up a Kubernetes cluster and what each component is responsible for
- How the API server, Scheduler, various controllers running in the Controller Manager, and the Kubelet work together to bring a pod to life
- How the infrastructure container binds together all the containers of a pod
- How pods communicate with other pods running on the same node through the network bridge, and how those bridges on different nodes are connected, so pods running on different nodes can talk to each other
- How the kube-proxy performs load balancing across pods in the same service by configuring iptables rules on the node
- How multiple instances of each component of the Control Plane can be run to make the cluster highly available

Next, we'll look at how to secure the API server and, by extension, the cluster as a whole.

# 12

## Securing the Kubernetes API server

### This chapter covers

- Understanding authentication
- What ServiceAccounts are and why they're used
- Understanding the role-based access control (RBAC) plugin
- Using Roles and RoleBindings
- Using ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings
- Understanding the default roles and bindings

In chapter 8 you learned how applications running in pods can talk to the API server to retrieve or change the state of resources deployed in the cluster. To authenticate with the API server, you used the ServiceAccount token mounted into the pod. In this chapter, you'll learn what ServiceAccounts are and how to configure their permissions, as well as permissions for other subjects using the cluster.

### 12.1 Understanding authentication

In the previous chapter, we said the API server can be configured with one or more authentication plugins (and the same is true for authorization plugins). When a request is received by the API server, it goes through the list of authentication

plugins, so they can each examine the request and try to determine who's sending the request. The first plugin that can extract that information from the request returns the username, user ID, and the groups the client belongs to back to the API server core. The API server stops invoking the remaining authentication plugins and continues onto the authorization phase.

Several authentication plugins are available. They obtain the identity of the client using the following methods:

- From the client certificate
- From an authentication token passed in an HTTP header
- Basic HTTP authentication
- Others

The authentication plugins are enabled through command-line options when starting the API server.

### 12.1.1 Users and groups

An authentication plugin returns the username and group(s) of the authenticated user. Kubernetes doesn't store that information anywhere; it uses it to verify whether the user is authorized to perform an action or not.

#### UNDERSTANDING USERS

Kubernetes distinguishes between two kinds of clients connecting to the API server:

- Actual humans (users)
- Pods (more specifically, applications running inside them)

Both these types of clients are authenticated using the aforementioned authentication plugins. Users are meant to be managed by an external system, such as a Single Sign On (SSO) system, but the pods use a mechanism called *service accounts*, which are created and stored in the cluster as ServiceAccount resources. In contrast, no resource represents user accounts, which means you can't create, update, or delete users through the API server.

We won't go into any details of how to manage users, but we will explore ServiceAccounts in detail, because they're essential for running pods. For more information on how to configure the cluster for authentication of human users, cluster administrators should refer to the Kubernetes Cluster Administrator guide at <http://kubernetes.io/docs/admin>.

#### UNDERSTANDING GROUPS

Both human users and ServiceAccounts can belong to one or more groups. We've said that the authentication plugin returns groups along with the username and user ID. Groups are used to grant permissions to several users at once, instead of having to grant them to individual users.

Groups returned by the plugin are nothing but strings, representing arbitrary group names, but built-in groups have special meaning:

- The `system:unauthenticated` group is used for requests where none of the authentication plugins could authenticate the client.
- The `system:authenticated` group is automatically assigned to a user who was authenticated successfully.
- The `system:serviceaccounts` group encompasses all ServiceAccounts in the system.
- The `system:serviceaccounts:<namespace>` includes all ServiceAccounts in a specific namespace.

### **12.1.2 Introducing ServiceAccounts**

Let's explore ServiceAccounts up close. You've already learned that the API server requires clients to authenticate themselves before they're allowed to perform operations on the server. And you've already seen how pods can authenticate by sending the contents of the file `/var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/token`, which is mounted into each container's filesystem through a secret volume.

But what exactly does that file represent? Every pod is associated with a ServiceAccount, which represents the identity of the app running in the pod. The token file holds the ServiceAccount's authentication token. When an app uses this token to connect to the API server, the authentication plugin authenticates the ServiceAccount and passes the ServiceAccount's username back to the API server core. ServiceAccount usernames are formatted like this:

```
system:serviceaccount:<namespace>:<service account name>
```

The API server passes this username to the configured authorization plugins, which determine whether the action the app is trying to perform is allowed to be performed by the ServiceAccount.

ServiceAccounts are nothing more than a way for an application running inside a pod to authenticate itself with the API server. As already mentioned, applications do that by passing the ServiceAccount's token in the request.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE SERVICEACCOUNT RESOURCE**

ServiceAccounts are resources just like Pods, Secrets, ConfigMaps, and so on, and are scoped to individual namespaces. A default ServiceAccount is automatically created for each namespace (that's the one your pods have used all along).

You can list ServiceAccounts like you do other resources:

```
$ kubectl get sa
NAME      SECRETS   AGE
default   1          1d
```

**NOTE** The shorthand for serviceaccount is `sa`.

As you can see, the current namespace only contains the default ServiceAccount. Additional ServiceAccounts can be added when required. Each pod is associated with exactly one ServiceAccount, but multiple pods can use the same ServiceAccount. As you can see in figure 12.1, a pod can only use a ServiceAccount from the same namespace.

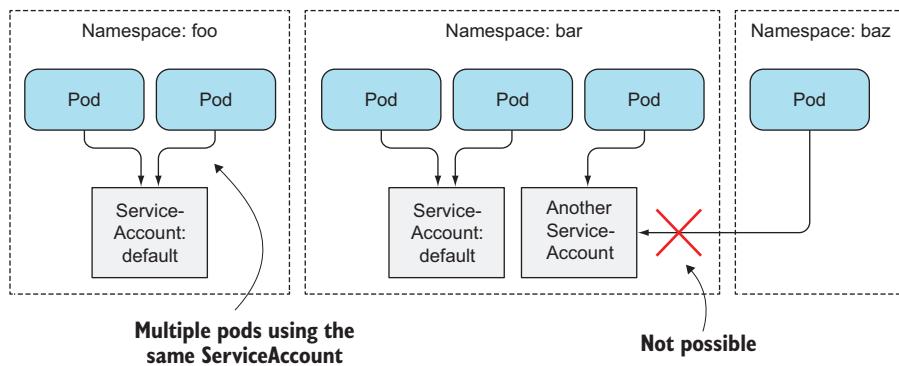


Figure 12.1 Each pod is associated with a single ServiceAccount in the pod's namespace.

#### **UNDERSTANDING HOW SERVICEACCOUNTS TIE INTO AUTHORIZATION**

You can assign a ServiceAccount to a pod by specifying the account's name in the pod manifest. If you don't assign it explicitly, the pod will use the default ServiceAccount in the namespace.

By assigning different ServiceAccounts to pods, you can control which resources each pod has access to. When a request bearing the authentication token is received by the API server, the server uses the token to authenticate the client sending the request and then determines whether or not the related ServiceAccount is allowed to perform the requested operation. The API server obtains this information from the system-wide authorization plugin configured by the cluster administrator. One of the available authorization plugins is the role-based access control (RBAC) plugin, which is discussed later in this chapter. From Kubernetes version 1.6 on, the RBAC plugin is the plugin most clusters should use.

#### **12.1.3 Creating ServiceAccounts**

We've said every namespace contains its own default ServiceAccount, but additional ones can be created if necessary. But why should you bother with creating ServiceAccounts instead of using the default one for all your pods?

The obvious reason is cluster security. Pods that don't need to read any cluster metadata should run under a constrained account that doesn't allow them to retrieve or modify any resources deployed in the cluster. Pods that need to retrieve resource metadata should run under a ServiceAccount that only allows reading those objects' metadata, whereas pods that need to modify those objects should run under their own ServiceAccount allowing modifications of API objects.

Let's see how you can create additional ServiceAccounts, how they relate to Secrets, and how you can assign them to your pods.

### CREATING A SERVICEACCOUNT

Creating a ServiceAccount is incredibly easy, thanks to the dedicated `kubectl create serviceaccount` command. Let's create a new ServiceAccount called `foo`:

```
$ kubectl create serviceaccount foo
serviceaccount "foo" created
```

Now, you can inspect the ServiceAccount with the `describe` command, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 12.1 Inspecting a ServiceAccount with `kubectl describe`

|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <code>\$ kubectl describe sa foo</code> |   |  |
| Name: foo                               |   | These will be added automatically to all pods using this ServiceAccount.                       |
| Namespace: default                      |   |  |
| Labels: <none>                          |   |  |
| Image pull secrets: <none>              | ← |  |
| Mountable secrets: foo-token-qzq7j      | ← | Pods using this ServiceAccount can only mount these Secrets if mountable Secrets are enforced. |
| Tokens: foo-token-qzq7j                 | ← | Authentication token(s). The first one is mounted inside the container.                        |

You can see that a custom token Secret has been created and associated with the ServiceAccount. If you look at the Secret's data with `kubectl describe secret foo-token-qzq7j`, you'll see it contains the same items (the CA certificate, namespace, and token) as the default ServiceAccount's token does (the token itself will obviously be different), as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 12.2 Inspecting the custom ServiceAccount's Secret

```
$ kubectl describe secret foo-token-qzq7j
...
ca.crt: 1066 bytes
namespace: 7 bytes
token: eyJhbGciOiJSUzI1NiIsvR5cCI6IkpxVCJ9...
```

**NOTE** You've probably heard of JSON Web Tokens (JWT). The authentication tokens used in ServiceAccounts are JWT tokens.

### UNDERSTANDING A SERVICEACCOUNT'S MOUNTABLE SECRETS

The token is shown in the Mountable secrets list when you inspect a ServiceAccount with `kubectl describe`. Let me explain what that list represents. In chapter 7 you learned how to create Secrets and mount them inside a pod. By default, a pod can mount any Secret it wants. But the pod's ServiceAccount can be configured to only

allow the pod to mount Secrets that are listed as mountable Secrets on the ServiceAccount. To enable this feature, the ServiceAccount must contain the following annotation: `kubernetes.io/enforce-mountable-secrets="true"`.

If the ServiceAccount is annotated with this annotation, any pods using it can mount only the ServiceAccount's mountable Secrets—they can't use any other Secret.

#### UNDERSTANDING A SERVICEACCOUNT'S IMAGE PULL SECRETS

A ServiceAccount can also contain a list of image pull Secrets, which we examined in chapter 7. In case you don't remember, they are Secrets that hold the credentials for pulling container images from a private image repository.

The following listing shows an example of a ServiceAccount definition, which includes the image pull Secret you created in chapter 7.

#### Listing 12.3 ServiceAccount with an image pull Secret: sa-image-pull-secrets.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ServiceAccount
metadata:
  name: my-service-account
imagePullSecrets:
- name: my-dockerhub-secret
```

A ServiceAccount's image pull Secrets behave slightly differently than its mountable Secrets. Unlike mountable Secrets, they don't determine which image pull Secrets a pod can use, but which ones are added automatically to all pods using the ServiceAccount. Adding image pull Secrets to a ServiceAccount saves you from having to add them to each pod individually.

#### 12.1.4 Assigning a ServiceAccount to a pod

After you create additional ServiceAccounts, you need to assign them to pods. This is done by setting the name of the ServiceAccount in the `spec.serviceAccountName` field in the pod definition.

**NOTE** A pod's ServiceAccount must be set when creating the pod. It can't be changed later.

#### CREATING A POD WHICH USES A CUSTOM SERVICEACCOUNT

In chapter 8 you deployed a pod that ran a container based on the `tutum/curl` image and an ambassador container alongside it. You used it to explore the API server's REST interface. The ambassador container ran the `kubectl proxy` process, which used the pod's ServiceAccount's token to authenticate with the API server.

You can now modify the pod so it uses the `foo` ServiceAccount you created minutes ago. The next listing shows the pod definition.

**Listing 12.4 Pod using a non-default ServiceAccount: curl-custom-sa.yaml**

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: curl-custom-sa
spec:
  serviceAccountName: foo
  containers:
    - name: main
      image: tutum/curl
      command: ["sleep", "9999999"]
    - name: ambassador
      image: luksa/kubectl-proxy:1.6.2

```



This pod uses the  
foo ServiceAccount  
instead of the default.

To confirm that the custom ServiceAccount's token is mounted into the two containers, you can print the contents of the token as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 12.5 Inspecting the token mounted into the pod's container(s)**

```
$ kubectl exec -it curl-custom-sa -c main
$ cat /var/run/secrets/kubernetes.io/serviceaccount/token
eyJhbGciOiJSUzI1NiIsInR5cCI6IkpXVCJ9...
```

You can see the token is the one from the foo ServiceAccount by comparing the token string in listing 12.5 with the one in listing 12.2.

**USING THE CUSTOM SERVICEACCOUNT'S TOKEN TO TALK TO THE API SERVER**

Let's see if you can talk to the API server using this token. As mentioned previously, the ambassador container uses the token when talking to the server, so you can test the token by going through the ambassador, which listens on localhost:8001, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 12.6 Talking to the API server with a custom ServiceAccount**

```
$ kubectl exec -it curl-custom-sa -c main curl localhost:8001/api/v1/pods
{
  "kind": "PodList",
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  "metadata": {
    "selfLink": "/api/v1/pods",
    "resourceVersion": "433895"
  },
  "items": [
    ...
  ]
}
```

Okay, you got back a proper response from the server, which means the custom ServiceAccount is allowed to list pods. This may be because your cluster doesn't use the RBAC authorization plugin, or you gave all ServiceAccounts full permissions, as instructed in chapter 8.

When your cluster isn't using proper authorization, creating and using additional ServiceAccounts doesn't make much sense, since even the default ServiceAccount is allowed to do anything. The only reason to use ServiceAccounts in that case is to enforce mountable Secrets or to provide image pull Secrets through the ServiceAccount, as explained earlier.

But creating additional ServiceAccounts is practically a must when you use the RBAC authorization plugin, which we'll explore next.

## 12.2 Securing the cluster with role-based access control

Starting with Kubernetes version 1.6.0, cluster security was ramped up considerably. In earlier versions, if you managed to acquire the authentication token from one of the pods, you could use it to do anything you want in the cluster. If you google around, you'll find demos showing how a *path traversal* (or *directory traversal*) attack (where clients can retrieve files located outside of the web server's web root directory) can be used to get the token and use it to run your malicious pods in an insecure Kubernetes cluster.

But in version 1.8.0, the RBAC authorization plugin graduated to GA (General Availability) and is now enabled by default on many clusters (for example, when deploying a cluster with kubadmv, as described in appendix B). RBAC prevents unauthorized users from viewing or modifying the cluster state. The default ServiceAccount isn't allowed to view cluster state, let alone modify it in any way, unless you grant it additional privileges. To write apps that communicate with the Kubernetes API server (as described in chapter 8), you need to understand how to manage authorization through RBAC-specific resources.

**NOTE** In addition to RBAC, Kubernetes also includes other authorization plugins, such as the Attribute-based access control (ABAC) plugin, a Web-Hook plugin and custom plugin implementations. RBAC is the standard, though.

### 12.2.1 Introducing the RBAC authorization plugin

The Kubernetes API server can be configured to use an authorization plugin to check whether an action is allowed to be performed by the user requesting the action. Because the API server exposes a REST interface, users perform actions by sending HTTP requests to the server. Users authenticate themselves by including credentials in the request (an authentication token, username and password, or a client certificate).

#### UNDERSTANDING ACTIONS

But what actions are there? As you know, REST clients send GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, and other types of HTTP requests to specific URL paths, which represent specific REST resources. In Kubernetes, those resources are Pods, Services, Secrets, and so on. Here are a few examples of actions in Kubernetes:

- Get Pods
- Create Services

- Update Secrets
- And so on

The verbs in those examples (get, create, update) map to HTTP methods (GET, POST, PUT) performed by the client (the complete mapping is shown in table 12.1). The nouns (Pods, Service, Secrets) obviously map to Kubernetes resources.

An authorization plugin such as RBAC, which runs inside the API server, determines whether a client is allowed to perform the requested verb on the requested resource or not.

**Table 12.1** Mapping HTTP methods to authorization verbs

| HTTP method | Verb for single resource     | Verb for collection |
|-------------|------------------------------|---------------------|
| GET, HEAD   | get (and watch for watching) | list (and watch)    |
| POST        | create                       | n/a                 |
| PUT         | update                       | n/a                 |
| PATCH       | patch                        | n/a                 |
| DELETE      | delete                       | deletecollection    |

**NOTE** The additional verb use is used for PodSecurityPolicy resources, which are explained in the next chapter.

Besides applying security permissions to whole resource types, RBAC rules can also apply to specific instances of a resource (for example, a Service called `myservice`). And later you'll see that permissions can also apply to non-resource URL paths, because not every path the API server exposes maps to a resource (such as the `/api` path itself or the server health information at `/healthz`).

#### UNDERSTANDING THE RBAC PLUGIN

The RBAC authorization plugin, as the name suggests, uses user roles as the key factor in determining whether the user may perform the action or not. A subject (which may be a human, a ServiceAccount, or a group of users or ServiceAccounts) is associated with one or more roles and each role is allowed to perform certain verbs on certain resources.

If a user has multiple roles, they may do anything that any of their roles allows them to do. If none of the user's roles contains a permission to, for example, update Secrets, the API server will prevent the user from performing PUT or PATCH requests on Secrets.

Managing authorization through the RBAC plugin is simple. It's all done by creating four RBAC-specific Kubernetes resources, which we'll look at next.

### 12.2.2 Introducing RBAC resources

The RBAC authorization rules are configured through four resources, which can be grouped into two groups:

- Roles and ClusterRoles, which specify which verbs can be performed on which resources.
- RoleBindings and ClusterRoleBindings, which bind the above roles to specific users, groups, or ServiceAccounts.

Roles define *what* can be done, while bindings define *who* can do it (this is shown in figure 12.2).

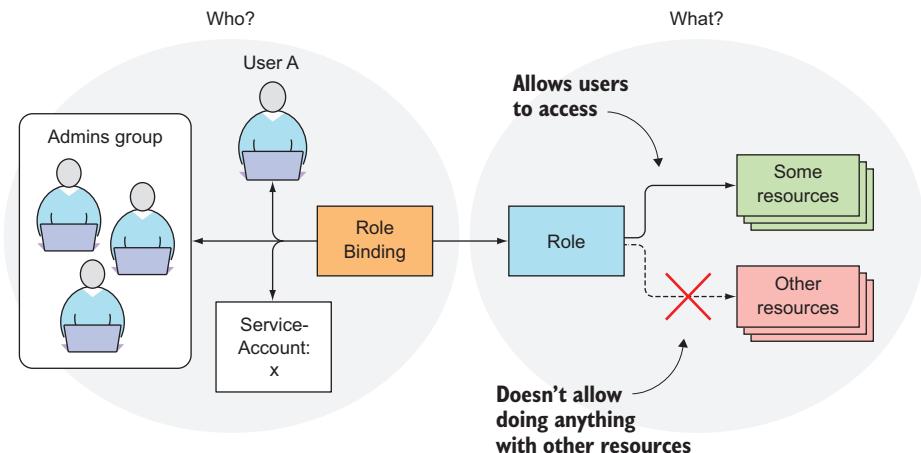
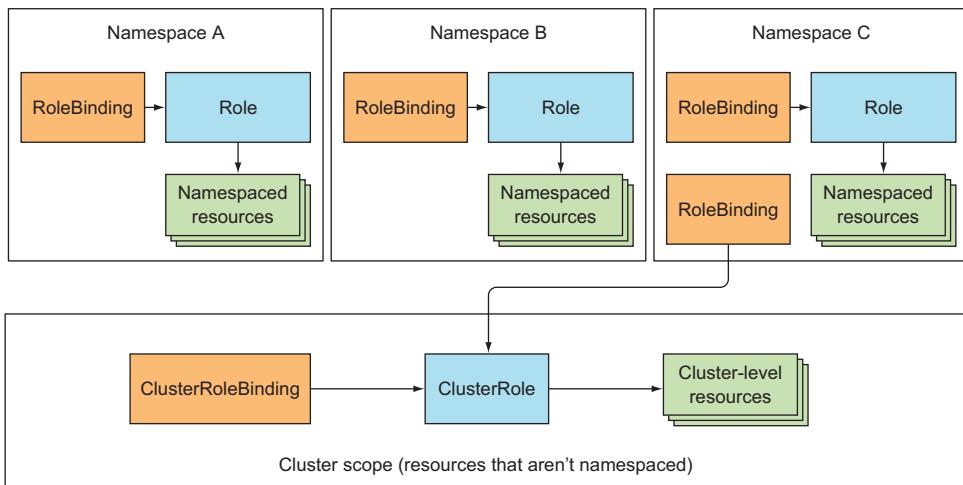


Figure 12.2 Roles grant permissions, whereas RoleBindings bind Roles to subjects.

The distinction between a Role and a ClusterRole, or between a RoleBinding and a ClusterRoleBinding, is that the Role and RoleBinding are namespaced resources, whereas the ClusterRole and ClusterRoleBinding are cluster-level resources (not namespaced). This is depicted in figure 12.3.

As you can see from the figure, multiple RoleBindings can exist in a single namespace (this is also true for Roles). Likewise, multiple ClusterRoleBindings and ClusterRoles can be created. Another thing shown in the figure is that although RoleBindings are namespaced, they can also reference ClusterRoles, which aren't.

The best way to learn about these four resources and what their effects are is by trying them out in a hands-on exercise. You'll do that now.



**Figure 12.3 Roles and RoleBindings are namespaced; ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings aren't.**

#### SETTING UP YOUR EXERCISE

Before you can explore how RBAC resources affect what you can do through the API server, you need to make sure RBAC is enabled in your cluster. First, ensure you're using at least version 1.6 of Kubernetes and that the RBAC plugin is the only configured authorization plugin. There can be multiple plugins enabled in parallel and if one of them allows an action to be performed, the action is allowed.

**NOTE** If you're using GKE 1.6 or 1.7, you need to explicitly disable legacy authorization by creating the cluster with the `--no-enable-legacy-authorization` option. If you're using Minikube, you also may need to enable RBAC by starting Minikube with `--extra-config=apiserver.Authorization.Mode=RBAC`.

If you followed the instructions on how to disable RBAC in chapter 8, now's the time to re-enable it by running the following command:

```
$ kubectl delete clusterrolebinding permissive-binding
```

To try out RBAC, you'll run a pod through which you'll try to talk to the API server, the way you did in chapter 8. But this time you'll run two pods in different namespaces to see how per-namespace security behaves.

In the examples in chapter 8, you ran two containers to demonstrate how an application in one container uses the other container to talk to the API server. This time, you'll run a single container (based on the `kubectl-proxy` image) and use `kubectl exec` to run `curl` inside that container directly. The proxy will take care of authentication and HTTPS, so you can focus on the authorization aspect of API server security.

### CREATING THE NAMESPACES AND RUNNING THE PODS

You're going to create one pod in namespace foo and the other one in namespace bar, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 12.7 Running test pods in different namespaces

```
$ kubectl create ns foo
namespace "foo" created
$ kubectl run test --image=luksa/kubectl-proxy -n foo
deployment "test" created
$ kubectl create ns bar
namespace "bar" created
$ kubectl run test --image=luksa/kubectl-proxy -n bar
deployment "test" created
```

Now open two terminals and use kubectl exec to run a shell inside each of the two pods (one in each terminal). For example, to run the shell in the pod in namespace foo, first get the name of the pod:

```
$ kubectl get po -n foo
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
test-145485760-ttq36   1/1     Running   0          1m
```

Then use the name in the kubectl exec command:

```
$ kubectl exec -it test-145485760-ttq36 -n foo sh
/ #
```

Do the same in the other terminal, but for the pod in the bar namespace.

### LISTING SERVICES FROM YOUR PODS

To verify that RBAC is enabled and preventing the pod from reading cluster state, use curl to list Services in the foo namespace:

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/foo/services
User "system:serviceaccount:foo:default" cannot list services in the
namespace "foo".
```

You're connecting to localhost:8001, which is where the kubectl proxy process is listening (as explained in chapter 8). The process received your request and sent it to the API server while authenticating as the default ServiceAccount in the foo namespace (as evident from the API server's response).

The API server responded that the ServiceAccount isn't allowed to list Services in the foo namespace, even though the pod is running in that same namespace. You're seeing RBAC in action. The default permissions for a ServiceAccount don't allow it to list or modify any resources. Now, let's learn how to allow the ServiceAccount to do that. First, you'll need to create a Role resource.

### 12.2.3 Using Roles and RoleBindings

A Role resource defines what actions can be taken on which resources (or, as explained earlier, which types of HTTP requests can be performed on which RESTful resources). The following listing defines a Role, which allows users to get and list Services in the foo namespace.

#### Listing 12.8 A definition of a Role: service-reader.yaml

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: Role
metadata:
  namespace: foo
  name: service-reader
rules:
- apiGroups: [""]
  verbs: ["get", "list"]
  resources: ["services"]
```

The code is annotated with the following text:

- Roles are namespaced (if namespace is omitted, the current namespace is used).**
- Services are resources in the core apiGroup, which has no name – hence the "".**
- Getting individual Services (by name) and listing all of them is allowed.**
- This rule pertains to services (plural name must be used!).**

**WARNING** The plural form must be used when specifying resources.

This Role resource will be created in the foo namespace. In chapter 8, you learned that each resource type belongs to an API group, which you specify in the apiVersion field (along with the version) in the resource's manifest. In a Role definition, you need to specify the apiGroup for the resources listed in each rule included in the definition. If you're allowing access to resources belonging to different API groups, you use multiple rules.

**NOTE** In the example, you're allowing access to all Service resources, but you could also limit access only to specific Service instances by specifying their names through an additional resourceName field.

Figure 12.4 shows the Role, its verbs and resources, and the namespace it will be created in.

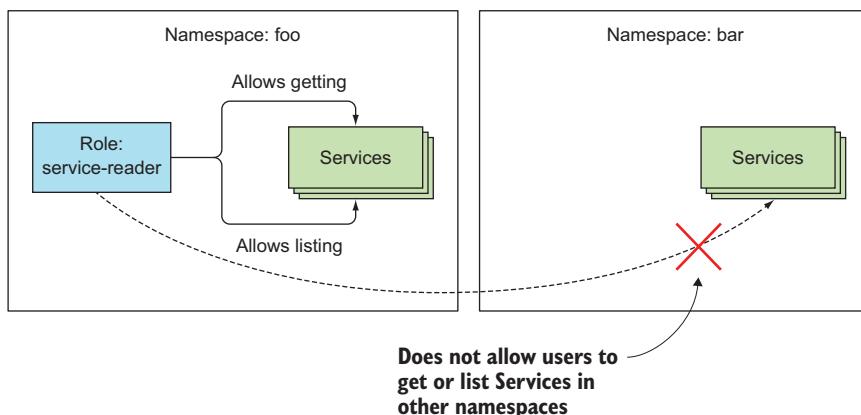


Figure 12.4 The service-reader Role allows getting and listing Services in the foo namespace.

## CREATING A ROLE

Create the previous Role in the foo namespace now:

```
$ kubectl create -f service-reader.yaml -n foo
role "service-reader" created
```

**NOTE** The `-n` option is shorthand for `--namespace`.

Note that if you’re using GKE, the previous command may fail because you don’t have cluster-admin rights. To grant the rights, run the following command:

```
$ kubectl create clusterrolebinding cluster-admin-binding
→ --clusterrole=cluster-admin --user=your.email@address.com
```

Instead of creating the `service-reader` Role from a YAML file, you could also create it with the special `kubectl create role` command. Let’s use this method to create the Role in the bar namespace:

```
$ kubectl create role service-reader --verb=get --verb=list
→ --resource=services -n bar
role "service-reader" created
```

These two Roles will allow you to list Services in the foo and bar namespaces from within your two pods (running in the foo and bar namespace, respectively). But creating the two Roles isn’t enough (you can check by executing the `curl` command again). You need to bind each of the Roles to the ServiceAccounts in their respective namespaces.

## BINDING A ROLE TO A SERVICEACCOUNT

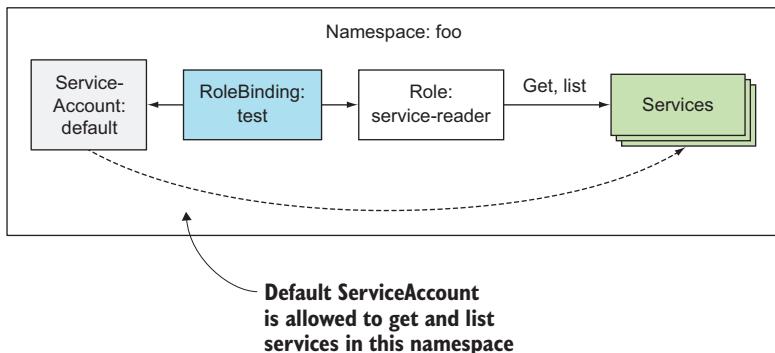
A Role defines what actions can be performed, but it doesn’t specify who can perform them. To do that, you must bind the Role to a subject, which can be a user, a ServiceAccount, or a group (of users or ServiceAccounts).

Binding Roles to subjects is achieved by creating a `RoleBinding` resource. To bind the Role to the default ServiceAccount, run the following command:

```
$ kubectl create rolebinding test --role=service-reader
→ --serviceaccount=foo:default -n foo
rolebinding "test" created
```

The command should be self-explanatory. You’re creating a `RoleBinding`, which binds the `service-reader` Role to the default ServiceAccount in namespace foo. You’re creating the `RoleBinding` in namespace foo. The `RoleBinding` and the referenced ServiceAccount and Role are shown in figure 12.5.

**NOTE** To bind a Role to a user instead of a ServiceAccount, use the `--user` argument to specify the username. To bind it to a group, use `--group`.



**Figure 12.5** The test RoleBinding binds the default ServiceAccount with the service-reader Role.

The following listing shows the YAML of the RoleBinding you created.

#### Listing 12.9 A RoleBinding referencing a Role

```
$ kubectl get rolebinding test -n foo -o yaml
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
metadata:
  name: test
  namespace: foo
  ...
roleRef:
  apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: Role
  name: service-reader
subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
  name: default
  namespace: foo
```

This RoleBinding references the service-reader Role.

And binds it to the default ServiceAccount in the foo namespace.

As you can see, a RoleBinding always references a single Role (as evident from the `roleRef` property), but can bind the Role to multiple subjects (for example, one or more ServiceAccounts and any number of users or groups). Because this RoleBinding binds the Role to the ServiceAccount the pod in namespace `foo` is running under, you can now list Services from within that pod.

#### Listing 12.10 Getting Services from the API server

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/foo/services
{
  "kind": "ServiceList",
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  "metadata": {
    "selfLink": "/api/v1/namespaces/foo/services",
```

```

    "resourceVersion": "24906"
},
"items": []
}

```

The list of items is empty,  
because no Services exist.

### INCLUDING SERVICEACCOUNTS FROM OTHER NAMESPACES IN A ROLEBINDING

The pod in namespace bar can't list the Services in its own namespace, and obviously also not those in the foo namespace. But you can edit your RoleBinding in the foo namespace and add the other pod's ServiceAccount, even though it's in a different namespace. Run the following command:

```
$ kubectl edit rolebinding test -n foo
```

Then add the following lines to the list of subjects, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 12.11 Referencing a ServiceAccount from another namespace

```

subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
  name: default
  namespace: bar

```

You're referencing the default  
ServiceAccount in the bar namespace.

Now you can also list Services in the foo namespace from inside the pod running in the bar namespace. Run the same command as in listing 12.10, but do it in the other terminal, where you're running the shell in the other pod.

Before moving on to ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings, let's summarize what RBAC resources you currently have. You have a RoleBinding in namespace foo, which references the service-reader Role (also in the foo namespace) and binds the default ServiceAccounts in both the foo and the bar namespaces, as depicted in figure 12.6.

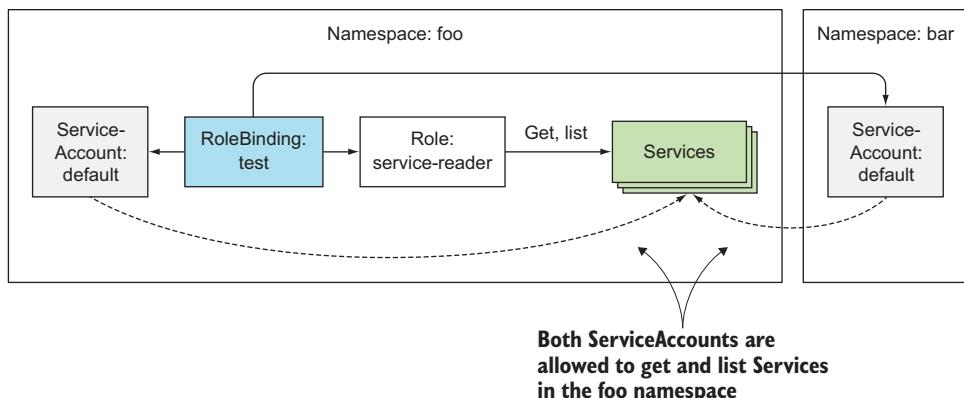


Figure 12.6 A RoleBinding binding ServiceAccounts from different namespaces to the same Role.

### 12.2.4 Using ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings

Roles and RoleBindings are namespaced resources, meaning they reside in and apply to resources in a single namespace, but, as we saw, RoleBindings can refer to ServiceAccounts from other namespaces, too.

In addition to these namespaced resources, two cluster-level RBAC resources also exist: ClusterRole and ClusterRoleBinding. They're not namespaced. Let's see why you need them.

A regular Role only allows access to resources in the same namespace the Role is in. If you want to allow someone access to resources across different namespaces, you have to create a Role and RoleBinding in every one of those namespaces. If you want to extend this to all namespaces (this is something a cluster administrator would probably need), you need to create the same Role and RoleBinding in each namespace. When creating an additional namespace, you have to remember to create the two resources there as well.

As you've learned throughout the book, certain resources aren't namespaced at all (this includes Nodes, PersistentVolumes, Namespaces, and so on). We've also mentioned the API server exposes some URL paths that don't represent resources (/healthz for example). Regular Roles can't grant access to those resources or non-resource URLs, but ClusterRoles can.

A ClusterRole is a cluster-level resource for allowing access to non-namespaced resources or non-resource URLs or used as a common role to be bound inside individual namespaces, saving you from having to redefine the same role in each of them.

#### ALLOWING ACCESS TO CLUSTER-LEVEL RESOURCES

As mentioned, a ClusterRole can be used to allow access to cluster-level resources. Let's look at how to allow your pod to list PersistentVolumes in your cluster. First, you'll create a ClusterRole called pv-reader:

```
$ kubectl create clusterrole pv-reader --verb=list
  --resource=persistentvolumes
clusterrole "pv-reader" created
```

The ClusterRole's YAML is shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 12.12 A ClusterRole definition

```
$ kubectl get clusterrole pv-reader -o yaml
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRole
metadata:
  name: pv-reader
  resourceVersion: "39932"
  selfLink: ...
uid: e9ac1099-30e2-11e7-955c-080027e6b159
```

**ClusterRoles aren't namespaced, hence no namespace field.**

```
rules:
- apiGroups:
  - ""
  resources:
  - persistentvolumes
  verbs:
  - get
  - list
```

In this case, the rules are exactly like those in a regular Role.

Before you bind this ClusterRole to your pod's ServiceAccount, verify whether the pod can list PersistentVolumes. Run the following command in the first terminal, where you're running the shell inside the pod in the foo namespace:

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/persistentvolumes
User "system:serviceaccount:foo:default" cannot list persistentvolumes at the
cluster scope.
```

**NOTE** The URL contains no namespace, because PersistentVolumes aren't namespaced.

As expected, the default ServiceAccount can't list PersistentVolumes. You need to bind the ClusterRole to your ServiceAccount to allow it to do that. ClusterRoles can be bound to subjects with regular RoleBindings, so you'll create a RoleBinding now:

```
$ kubectl create rolebinding pv-test --clusterrole=pv-reader
→ --serviceaccount=foo:default -n foo
rolebinding "pv-test" created
```

Can you list PersistentVolumes now?

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/persistentvolumes
User "system:serviceaccount:foo:default" cannot list persistentvolumes at the
cluster scope.
```

Hmm, that's strange. Let's examine the RoleBinding's YAML in the following listing. Can you tell what (if anything) is wrong with it?

#### Listing 12.13 A RoleBinding referencing a ClusterRole

```
$ kubectl get rolebindings pv-test -o yaml
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
metadata:
  name: pv-test
  namespace: foo
  ...
roleRef:
  apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: ClusterRole
  name: pv-reader
```

The binding references the pv-reader ClusterRole.

```
subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
  name: default
  namespace: foo
```

The bound subject is the default ServiceAccount in the foo namespace.

The YAML looks perfectly fine. You’re referencing the correct ClusterRole and the correct ServiceAccount, as shown in figure 12.7, so what’s wrong?

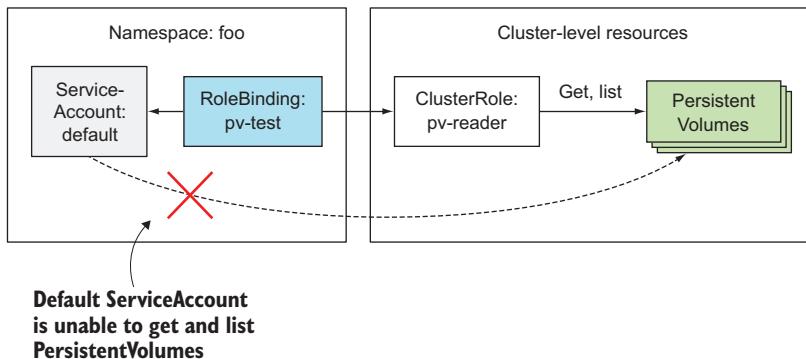


Figure 12.7 A RoleBinding referencing a ClusterRole doesn’t grant access to cluster-level resources.

Although you can create a RoleBinding and have it reference a ClusterRole when you want to enable access to namespaced resources, you can’t use the same approach for cluster-level (non-namespaced) resources. To grant access to cluster-level resources, you must always use a ClusterRoleBinding.

Luckily, creating a ClusterRoleBinding isn’t that different from creating a RoleBinding, but you’ll clean up and delete the RoleBinding first:

```
$ kubectl delete rolebinding pv-test
rolebinding "pv-test" deleted
```

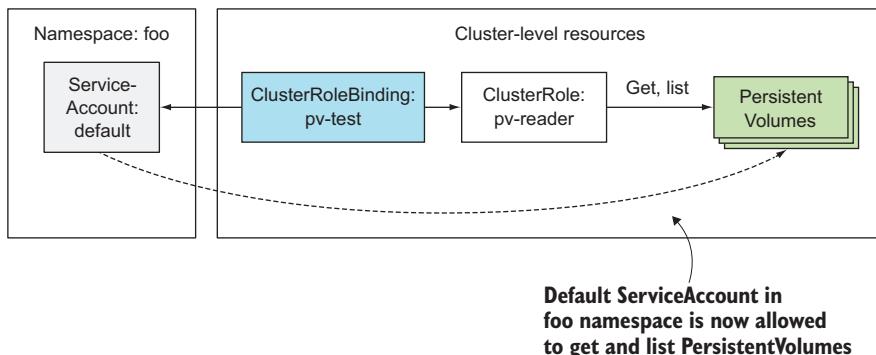
Now create the ClusterRoleBinding:

```
$ kubectl create clusterrolebinding pv-test --clusterrole=pv-reader
  --serviceaccount=foo:default
clusterrolebinding "pv-test" created
```

As you can see, you replaced rolebinding with clusterrolebinding in the command and didn’t (need to) specify the namespace. Figure 12.8 shows what you have now.

Let’s see if you can list PersistentVolumes now:

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/persistentvolumes
{
  "kind": "PersistentVolumeList",
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  ...
}
```



**Figure 12.8** A ClusterRoleBinding and ClusterRole must be used to grant access to cluster-level resources.

You can! It turns out you must use a ClusterRole and a ClusterRoleBinding when granting access to cluster-level resources.

**TIP** Remember that a RoleBinding can't grant access to cluster-level resources, even if it references a ClusterRoleBinding.

#### ALLOWING ACCESS TO NON-RESOURCE URLs

We've mentioned that the API server also exposes non-resource URLs. Access to these URLs must also be granted explicitly; otherwise the API server will reject the client's request. Usually, this is done for you automatically through the `system:discovery` ClusterRole and the identically named ClusterRoleBinding, which appear among other predefined ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings (we'll explore them in section 12.2.5).

Let's inspect the `system:discovery` ClusterRole shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 12.14 The default system:discovery ClusterRole

```
$ kubectl get clusterrole system:discovery -o yaml
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRole
metadata:
  name: system:discovery
  ...
rules:
- nonResourceURLs:
  - /api
  - /api/*
  - /apis
  - /apis/*
  - /healthz
  - /swaggerapi
  - /swaggerapi/*
  - /version
```

Instead of referring to resources, this rule refers to non-resource URLs.

```
verbs:
- get
```

**Only the HTTP GET method is allowed for these URLs.**

You can see this ClusterRole refers to URLs instead of resources (field nonResourceURLs is used instead of the resources field). The verbs field only allows the GET HTTP method to be used on these URLs.

**NOTE** For non-resource URLs, plain HTTP verbs such as post, put, and patch are used instead of create or update. The verbs need to be specified in lowercase.

As with cluster-level resources, ClusterRoles for non-resource URLs must be bound with a ClusterRoleBinding. Binding them with a RoleBinding won't have any effect. The system:discovery ClusterRole has a corresponding system:discovery ClusterRoleBinding, so let's see what's in it by examining the following listing.

#### Listing 12.15 The default system:discovery ClusterRoleBinding

```
$ kubectl get clusterrolebinding system:discovery -o yaml
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRoleBinding
metadata:
  name: system:discovery
...
roleRef:
  apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: ClusterRole
  name: system:discovery
subjects:
- apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: Group
  name: system:authenticated
- apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
  kind: Group
  name: system:unauthenticated
```

This ClusterRoleBinding references the system:discovery ClusterRole.

It binds the ClusterRole to all authenticated and unauthenticated users (that is, everyone).

The YAML shows the ClusterRoleBinding refers to the system:discovery ClusterRole, as expected. It's bound to two groups, system:authenticated and system:unauthenticated, which makes it bound to all users. This means absolutely everyone can access the URLs listed in the ClusterRole.

**NOTE** Groups are in the domain of the authentication plugin. When a request is received by the API server, it calls the authentication plugin to obtain the list of groups the user belongs to. This information is then used in authorization.

You can confirm this by accessing the /api URL path from inside the pod (through the kubectl proxy, which means you'll be authenticated as the pod's ServiceAccount)

and from your local machine, without specifying any authentication tokens (making you an unauthenticated user):

```
$ curl https://$(minikube ip):8443/api -k
{
    "kind": "APIVersions",
    "versions": [
        ...
    ]
}
```

You've now used ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings to grant access to cluster-level resources and non-resource URLs. Now let's look at how ClusterRoles can be used with namespaced RoleBindings to grant access to namespaced resources in the RoleBinding's namespace.

## USING CLUSTER ROLES TO GRANT ACCESS TO RESOURCES IN SPECIFIC NAMESPACES

ClusterRoles don't always need to be bound with cluster-level ClusterRoleBindings. They can also be bound with regular, namespaced RoleBindings. You've already started looking at predefined ClusterRoles, so let's look at another one called `view`, which is shown in the following listing.

### **Listing 12.16 The default view ClusterRole**

```
$ kubectl get clusterrole view -o yaml
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRole
metadata:
  name: view
  ...
rules:
- apiGroups:
  - ""
    resources:
    - configmaps
    - endpoints
    - persistentvolumeclaims
    - pods
    - replicationcontrollers
    - replicationcontrollers/scale
    - serviceaccounts
    - services
  verbs:
    - get
    - list
    - watch
```

**As the ClusterRole's suggests, it only allows reading, not writing resources listed.**

**This rule applies to these resources (note: they're all namespaced resources).**

As the ClusterRole's name suggests, it only allows reading, not writing the resources listed

This ClusterRole has many rules. Only the first one is shown in the listing. The rule allows getting, listing, and watching resources like ConfigMaps, Endpoints, PersistentVolumeClaims, and so on. These are namespaced resources, even though you're looking at a ClusterRole (not a regular, namespaced Role). What exactly does this ClusterRole do?

It depends whether it's bound with a ClusterRoleBinding or a RoleBinding (it can be bound with either). If you create a ClusterRoleBinding and reference the ClusterRole in it, the subjects listed in the binding can view the specified resources across all namespaces. If, on the other hand, you create a RoleBinding, the subjects listed in the binding can only view resources in the namespace of the RoleBinding. You'll try both options now.

You'll see how the two options affect your test pod's ability to list pods. First, let's see what happens before any bindings are in place:

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/pods
User "system:serviceaccount:foo:default" cannot list pods at the cluster
    scope./ #
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/foo/pods
User "system:serviceaccount:foo:default" cannot list pods in the namespace
    "foo".
```

With the first command, you're trying to list pods across all namespaces. With the second, you're trying to list pods in the foo namespace. The server doesn't allow you to do either.

Now, let's see what happens when you create a ClusterRoleBinding and bind it to the pod's ServiceAccount:

```
$ kubectl create clusterrolebinding view-test --clusterrole=view
  --serviceaccount=foo:default
clusterrolebinding "view-test" created
```

Can the pod now list pods in the foo namespace?

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/foo/pods
{
  "kind": "PodList",
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  ...
```

It can! Because you created a ClusterRoleBinding, it applies across all namespaces. The pod in namespace foo can list pods in the bar namespace as well:

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/bar/pods
{
  "kind": "PodList",
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  ...
```

Okay, the pod is allowed to list pods in a different namespace. It can also retrieve pods across all namespaces by hitting the /api/v1/pods URL path:

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/pods
{
  "kind": "PodList",
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  ...
```

As expected, the pod can get a list of all the pods in the cluster. To summarize, combining a ClusterRoleBinding with a ClusterRole referring to namespaced resources allows the pod to access namespaced resources in any namespace, as shown in figure 12.9.

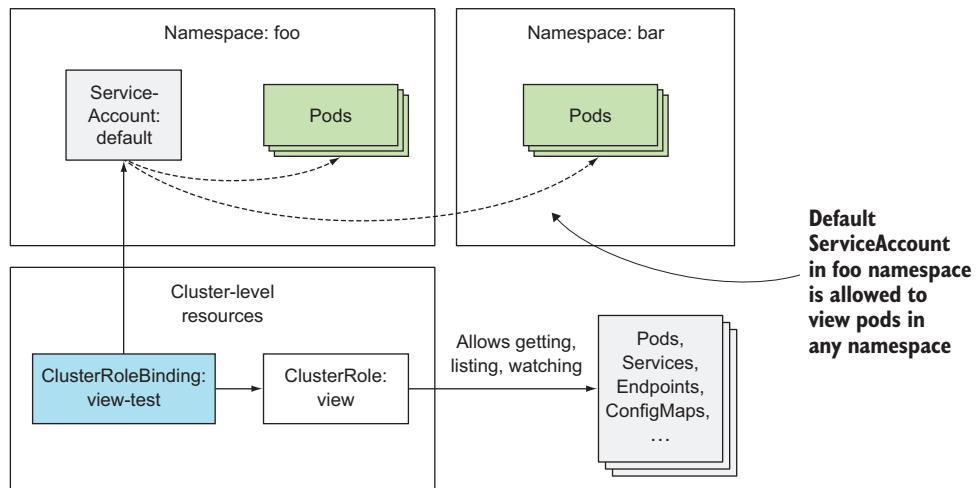


Figure 12.9 A ClusterRoleBinding and ClusterRole grants permission to resources across all namespaces.

Now, let's see what happens if you replace the ClusterRoleBinding with a RoleBinding. First, delete the ClusterRoleBinding:

```
$ kubectl delete clusterrolebinding view-test
clusterrolebinding "view-test" deleted
```

Next create a RoleBinding instead. Because a RoleBinding is namespaced, you need to specify the namespace you want to create it in. Create it in the `foo` namespace:

```
$ kubectl create rolebinding view-test --clusterrole=view
  --serviceaccount=foo:default -n foo
rolebinding "view-test" created
```

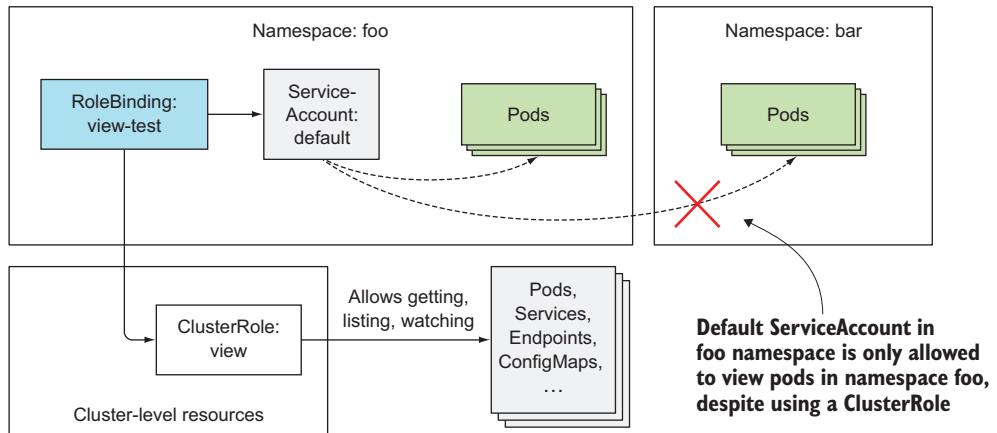
You now have a RoleBinding in the `foo` namespace, binding the `default` ServiceAccount in that same namespace with the `view` ClusterRole. What can your pod access now?

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/foo/pods
{
  "kind": "PodList",
  "apiVersion": "v1",
  ...
}
```

```
/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/namespaces/bar/pods
User "system:serviceaccount:foo:default" cannot list pods in the namespace
"bar".

/ # curl localhost:8001/api/v1/pods
User "system:serviceaccount:foo:default" cannot list pods at the cluster
scope.
```

As you can see, your pod can list pods in the foo namespace, but not in any other specific namespace or across all namespaces. This is visualized in figure 12.10.



**Figure 12.10** A RoleBinding referring to a ClusterRole only grants access to resources inside the RoleBinding's namespace.

### SUMMARIZING ROLE, CLUSTERROLE, ROLEBINDING, AND CLUSTERROLEBINDING COMBINATIONS

We've covered many different combinations and it may be hard for you to remember when to use each one. Let's see if we can make sense of all these combinations by categorizing them per specific use case. Refer to table 12.2.

**Table 12.2** When to use specific combinations of role and binding types

| For accessing  | Role type to use | Binding type to use |
|--|------------------|---------------------|
| Cluster-level resources (Nodes, PersistentVolumes, ...)  | ClusterRole      | ClusterRoleBinding  |
| Non-resource URLs (/api, /healthz, ...)  | ClusterRole      | ClusterRoleBinding  |
| Namespaced resources in any namespace (and across all namespaces)                                  | ClusterRole      | ClusterRoleBinding  |
| Namespaced resources in a specific namespace (reusing the same ClusterRole in multiple namespaces) | ClusterRole      | RoleBinding         |
| Namespaced resources in a specific namespace (Role must be defined in each namespace)              | Role             | RoleBinding         |

Hopefully, the relationships between the four RBAC resources are much clearer now. Don't worry if you still feel like you don't yet grasp everything. Things may clear up as we explore the pre-configured ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings in the next section.

### 12.2.5 Understanding default ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings

Kubernetes comes with a default set of ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings, which are updated every time the API server starts. This ensures all the default roles and bindings are recreated if you mistakenly delete them or if a newer version of Kubernetes uses a different configuration of cluster roles and bindings.

You can see the default cluster roles and bindings in the following listing.

#### Listing 12.17 Listing all ClusterRoleBindings and ClusterRoles

```
$ kubectl get clusterrolebindings
NAME                                AGE
cluster-admin                         1d
system:basic-user                      1d
system:controller:attachdetach-controller 1d
...
system:controller:ttl-controller        1d
system:discovery                        1d
system:kube-controller-manager          1d
system:kube-dns                          1d
system:kube-scheduler                   1d
system:node                            1d
system:node-proxier                     1d

$ kubectl get clusterroles
NAME                                AGE
admin                               1d
cluster-admin                       1d
edit                                1d
system:auth-delegator                1d
system:basic-user                    1d
system:controller:attachdetach-controller 1d
...
system:controller:ttl-controller      1d
system:discovery                      1d
system:heapster                        1d
system:kube-aggregator                1d
system:kube-controller-manager        1d
system:kube-dns                        1d
system:kube-scheduler                 1d
system:node                           1d
system:node-bootstrapper              1d
system:node-problem-detector          1d
system:node-proxier                   1d
system:persistent-volume-provisioner 1d
view                                1d
```

The most important roles are the `view`, `edit`, `admin`, and `cluster-admin` ClusterRoles. They’re meant to be bound to ServiceAccounts used by user-defined pods.

#### **ALLOWING READ-ONLY ACCESS TO RESOURCES WITH THE VIEW CLUSTERROLE**

You already used the default `view` ClusterRole in the previous example. It allows reading most resources in a namespace, except for Roles, RoleBindings, and Secrets. You’re probably wondering, why not Secrets? Because one of those Secrets might include an authentication token with greater privileges than those defined in the `view` ClusterRole and could allow the user to masquerade as a different user to gain additional privileges (privilege escalation).

#### **ALLOWING MODIFYING RESOURCES WITH THE EDIT CLUSTERROLE**

Next is the `edit` ClusterRole, which allows you to modify resources in a namespace, but also allows both reading and modifying Secrets. It doesn’t, however, allow viewing or modifying Roles or RoleBindings—again, this is to prevent privilege escalation.

#### **GRANTING FULL CONTROL OF A NAMESPACE WITH THE ADMIN CLUSTERROLE**

Complete control of the resources in a namespace is granted in the `admin` ClusterRole. Subjects with this ClusterRole can read and modify any resource in the namespace, except ResourceQuotas (we’ll learn what those are in chapter 14) and the Namespace resource itself. The main difference between the `edit` and the `admin` ClusterRoles is in the ability to view and modify Roles and RoleBindings in the namespace.

**NOTE** To prevent privilege escalation, the API server only allows users to create and update Roles if they already have all the permissions listed in that Role (and for the same scope).

#### **ALLOWING COMPLETE CONTROL WITH THE CLUSTER-ADMIN CLUSTERROLE**

Complete control of the Kubernetes cluster can be given by assigning the `cluster-admin` ClusterRole to a subject. As you’ve seen before, the `admin` ClusterRole doesn’t allow users to modify the namespace’s ResourceQuota objects or the Namespace resource itself. If you want to allow a user to do that, you need to create a RoleBinding that references the `cluster-admin` ClusterRole. This gives the user included in the RoleBinding complete control over all aspects of the namespace in which the RoleBinding is created.

If you’ve paid attention, you probably already know how to give users complete control of all the namespaces in the cluster. Yes, by referencing the `cluster-admin` ClusterRole in a ClusterRoleBinding instead of a RoleBinding.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE OTHER DEFAULT CLUSTERROLES**

The list of default ClusterRoles includes a large number of other ClusterRoles, which start with the `system:` prefix. These are meant to be used by the various Kubernetes components. Among them, you’ll find roles such as `system:kube-scheduler`, which is obviously used by the Scheduler, `system:node`, which is used by the Kubelets, and so on.

Although the Controller Manager runs as a single pod, each controller running inside it can use a separate ClusterRole and ClusterRoleBinding (they’re prefixed with `system: controller:.`).

Each of these system ClusterRoles has a matching ClusterRoleBinding, which binds it to the user the system component authenticates as. The `system:kube-scheduler` ClusterRoleBinding, for example, assigns the identically named ClusterRole to the `system:kube-scheduler` user, which is the username the scheduler Authenticates as.

### 12.2.6 **Granting authorization permissions wisely**

By default, the default ServiceAccount in a namespace has no permissions other than those of an unauthenticated user (as you may remember from one of the previous examples, the `system:discovery` ClusterRole and associated binding allow anyone to make GET requests on a few non-resource URLs). Therefore, pods, by default, can’t even view cluster state. It’s up to you to grant them appropriate permissions to do that.

Obviously, giving all your ServiceAccounts the `cluster-admin` ClusterRole is a bad idea. As is always the case with security, it’s best to give everyone only the permissions they need to do their job and not a single permission more (*principle of least privilege*).

#### **CREATING SPECIFIC SERVICEACCOUNTS FOR EACH POD**

It’s a good idea to create a specific ServiceAccount for each pod (or a set of pod replicas) and then associate it with a tailor-made Role (or a ClusterRole) through a RoleBinding (not a ClusterRoleBinding, because that would give the pod access to resources in other namespaces, which is probably not what you want).

If one of your pods (the application running within it) only needs to read pods, while the other also needs to modify them, then create two different ServiceAccounts and make those pods use them by specifying the `serviceAccountName` property in the pod spec, as you learned in the first part of this chapter. Don’t add all the necessary permissions required by both pods to the default ServiceAccount in the namespace.

#### **EXPECTING YOUR APPS TO BE COMPROMISED**

Your aim is to reduce the possibility of an intruder getting hold of your cluster. Today’s complex apps contain many vulnerabilities. You should expect unwanted persons to eventually get their hands on the ServiceAccount’s authentication token, so you should always constrain the ServiceAccount to prevent them from doing any real damage.

## 12.3 **Summary**

This chapter has given you a foundation on how to secure the Kubernetes API server. You learned the following:

- Clients of the API server include both human users and applications running in pods.
- Applications in pods are associated with a ServiceAccount.
- Both users and ServiceAccounts are associated with groups.

- By default, pods run under the default ServiceAccount, which is created for each namespace automatically.
- Additional ServiceAccounts can be created manually and associated with a pod.
- ServiceAccounts can be configured to allow mounting only a constrained list of Secrets in a given pod.
- A ServiceAccount can also be used to attach image pull Secrets to pods, so you don't need to specify the Secrets in every pod.
- Roles and ClusterRoles define what actions can be performed on which resources.
- RoleBindings and ClusterRoleBindings bind Roles and ClusterRoles to users, groups, and ServiceAccounts.
- Each cluster comes with default ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings.

In the next chapter, you'll learn how to protect the cluster nodes from pods and how to isolate pods from each other by securing the network.

# *Securing cluster nodes and the network*

## **This chapter covers**

- Using the node’s default Linux namespaces in pods
- Running containers as different users
- Running privileged containers
- Adding or dropping a container’s kernel capabilities
- Defining security policies to limit what pods can do
- Securing the pod network

In the previous chapter, we talked about securing the API server. If an attacker gets access to the API server, they can run whatever they like by packaging their code into a container image and running it in a pod. But can they do any real damage? Aren’t containers isolated from other containers and from the node they’re running on?

Not necessarily. In this chapter, you’ll learn how to allow pods to access the resources of the node they’re running on. You’ll also learn how to configure the cluster so users aren’t able to do whatever they want with their pods. Then, in

the last part of the chapter, you'll also learn how to secure the network the pods use to communicate.

## 13.1 Using the host node's namespaces in a pod

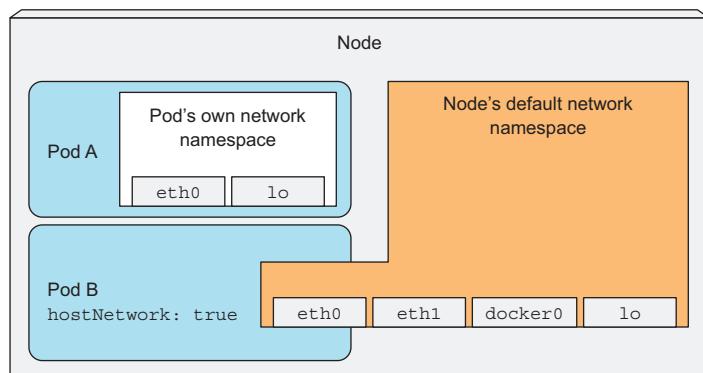
Containers in a pod usually run under separate Linux namespaces, which isolate their processes from processes running in other containers or in the node's default namespaces.

For example, we learned that each pod gets its own IP and port space, because it uses its own network namespace. Likewise, each pod has its own process tree, because it has its own PID namespace, and it also uses its own IPC namespace, allowing only processes in the same pod to communicate with each other through the Inter-Process Communication mechanism (IPC).

### 13.1.1 Using the node's network namespace in a pod

Certain pods (usually system pods) need to operate in the host's default namespaces, allowing them to see and manipulate node-level resources and devices. For example, a pod may need to use the node's network adapters instead of its own virtual network adapters. This can be achieved by setting the `hostNetwork` property in the pod spec to `true`.

In that case, the pod gets to use the node's network interfaces instead of having its own set, as shown in figure 13.1. This means the pod doesn't get its own IP address and if it runs a process that binds to a port, the process will be bound to the node's port.



**Figure 13.1** A pod with `hostNetwork: true` uses the node's network interfaces instead of its own.

You can try running such a pod. The next listing shows an example pod manifest.

#### Listing 13.1 A pod using the node's network namespace: `pod-with-host-network.yaml`

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-with-host-network
```

```
spec:
  hostNetwork: true
  containers:
  - name: main
    image: alpine
    command: ["/bin/sleep", "999999"]
```



**Using the host node's network namespace**

After you run the pod, you can use the following command to see that it's indeed using the host's network namespace (it sees all the host's network adapters, for example).

#### Listing 13.2 Network interfaces in a pod using the host's network namespace

```
$ kubectl exec pod-with-host-network ifconfig
docker0   Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 02:42:14:08:23:47
           inet addr:172.17.0.1  Bcast:0.0.0.0  Mask:255.255.0.0
             ...
           ...
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 08:00:27:F8:FA:4E
           inet addr:10.0.2.15  Bcast:10.0.2.255  Mask:255.255.255.0
             ...
           ...
lo        Link encap:Local Loopback
           inet addr:127.0.0.1  Mask:255.0.0.0
             ...
           ...
veth1178d4f  Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr 1E:03:8D:D6:E1:2C
            inet6 addr: fe80::1c03:8dff:fed6:e12c/64 Scope:Link
              UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
            ...
           ...
```

When the Kubernetes Control Plane components are deployed as pods (such as when you deploy your cluster with `kubeadm`, as explained in appendix B), you'll find that those pods use the `hostNetwork` option, effectively making them behave as if they weren't running inside a pod.

### 13.1.2 Binding to a host port without using the host's network namespace

A related feature allows pods to bind to a port in the node's default namespace, but still have their own network namespace. This is done by using the `hostPort` property in one of the container's ports defined in the `spec.containers.ports` field.

Don't confuse pods using `hostPort` with pods exposed through a `NodePort` service. They're two different things, as explained in figure 13.2.

The first thing you'll notice in the figure is that when a pod is using a `hostPort`, a connection to the node's port is forwarded directly to the pod running on that node, whereas with a `NodePort` service, a connection to the node's port is forwarded to a randomly selected pod (possibly on another node). The other difference is that with pods using a `hostPort`, the node's port is only bound on nodes that run such pods, whereas `NodePort` services bind the port on all nodes, even on those that don't run such a pod (as on node 3 in the figure).

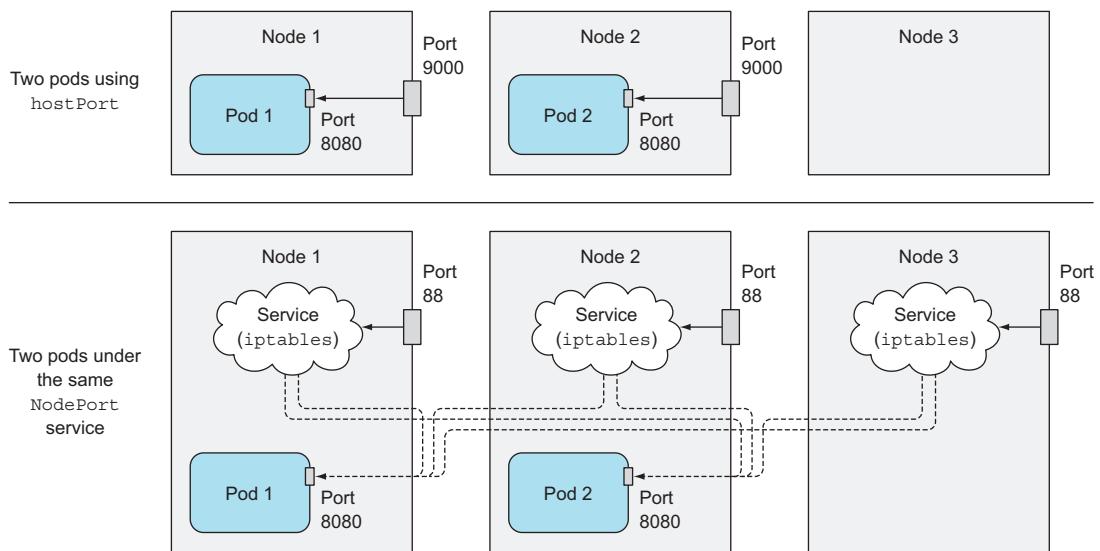


Figure 13.2 Difference between pods using a `hostPort` and pods behind a `NodePort` service.

It's important to understand that if a pod is using a specific host port, only one instance of the pod can be scheduled to each node, because two processes can't bind to the same host port. The Scheduler takes this into account when scheduling pods, so it doesn't schedule multiple pods to the same node, as shown in figure 13.3. If you have three nodes and want to deploy four pod replicas, only three will be scheduled (one pod will remain Pending).

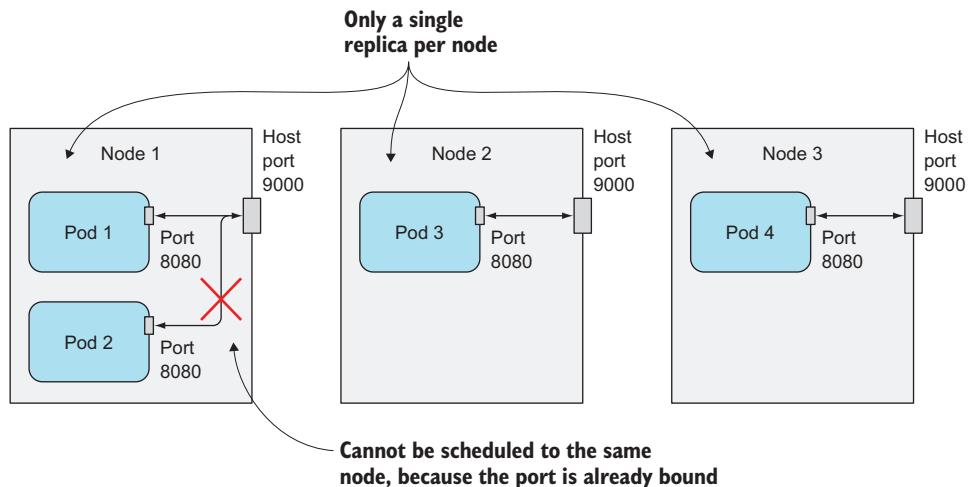


Figure 13.3 If a host port is used, only a single pod instance can be scheduled to a node.

Let's see how to define the hostPort in a pod's YAML definition. The following listing shows the YAML to run your kubia pod and bind it to the node's port 9000.

#### Listing 13.3 Binding a pod to a port in the node's port space: kubia-hostport.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: kubia-hostport
spec:
  containers:
  - image: luksa/kubia
    name: kubia
    ports:
    - containerPort: 8080
      hostPort: 9000
      protocol: TCP
```

The annotations explain the configuration:

- The container can be reached on port 8080 of the pod's IP.**
- It can also be reached on port 9000 of the node it's deployed on.**

After you create this pod, you can access it through port 9000 of the node it's scheduled to. If you have multiple nodes, you'll see you can't access the pod through that port on the other nodes.

**NOTE** If you're trying this on GKE, you need to configure the firewall properly using `gcloud compute firewall-rules`, the way you did in chapter 5.

The hostPort feature is primarily used for exposing system services, which are deployed to every node using DaemonSets. Initially, people also used it to ensure two replicas of the same pod were never scheduled to the same node, but now you have a better way of achieving this—it's explained in chapter 16.

#### 13.1.3 Using the node's PID and IPC namespaces

Similar to the hostNetwork option are the hostPID and hostIPC pod spec properties. When you set them to true, the pod's containers will use the node's PID and IPC namespaces, allowing processes running in the containers to see all the other processes on the node or communicate with them through IPC, respectively. See the following listing for an example.

#### Listing 13.4 Using the host's PID and IPC namespaces: pod-with-host-pid-and-ipc.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-with-host-pid-and-ipc
spec:
  hostPID: true
  hostIPC: true
  containers:
  - name: main
    image: alpine
    command: ["/bin/sleep", "999999"]
```

The annotations explain the configuration:

- You want the pod to use the host's PID namespace.**
- You also want the pod to use the host's IPC namespace.**

You'll remember that pods usually see only their own processes, but if you run this pod and then list the processes from within its container, you'll see all the processes running on the host node, not only the ones running in the container, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 13.5 Processes visible in a pod with hostPID: true**

```
$ kubectl exec pod-with-host-pid-and-ipc ps aux
PID   USER      TIME      COMMAND
 1  root      0:01 /usr/lib/systemd/systemd --switched-root --system ...
 2  root      0:00 [kthreadd]
 3  root      0:00 [ksoftirqd/0]
 5  root      0:00 [kworker/0:0H]
 6  root      0:00 [kworker/u2:0]
 7  root      0:00 [migration/0]
 8  root      0:00 [rcu_bh]
 9  root      0:00 [rcu_sched]
10  root      0:00 [watchdog/0]
...

```

By setting the `hostIPC` property to `true`, processes in the pod's containers can also communicate with all the other processes running on the node, through Inter-Process Communication.

## 13.2 Configuring the container's security context

Besides allowing the pod to use the host's Linux namespaces, other security-related features can also be configured on the pod and its container through the `securityContext` properties, which can be specified under the pod spec directly and inside the spec of individual containers.

### UNDERSTANDING WHAT'S CONFIGURABLE IN THE SECURITY CONTEXT

Configuring the security context allows you to do various things:

- Specify the user (the user's ID) under which the process in the container will run.
- Prevent the container from running as root (the default user a container runs as is usually defined in the container image itself, so you may want to prevent containers from running as root).
- Run the container in privileged mode, giving it full access to the node's kernel.
- Configure fine-grained privileges, by adding or dropping capabilities—in contrast to giving the container all possible permissions by running it in privileged mode.
- Set SELinux (Security Enhanced Linux) options to strongly lock down a container.
- Prevent the process from writing to the container's filesystem.

We'll explore these options next.

## RUNNING A POD WITHOUT SPECIFYING A SECURITY CONTEXT

First, run a pod with the default security context options (by not specifying them at all), so you can see how it behaves compared to pods with a custom security context:

```
$ kubectl run pod-with-defaults --image alpine --restart Never
→   -- /bin/sleep 999999
pod "pod-with-defaults" created
```

Let's see what user and group ID the container is running as, and which groups it belongs to. You can see this by running the `id` command inside the container:

```
$ kubectl exec pod-with-defaults id
uid=0(root) gid=0(root) groups=0(root), 1(bin), 2(daemon), 3(sys), 4(adm),
6(disk), 10(wheel), 11(floppy), 20(dialout), 26(tape), 27(video)
```

The container is running as user ID (uid) 0, which is `root`, and group ID (gid) 0 (also `root`). It's also a member of multiple other groups.

**NOTE** What user the container runs as is specified in the container image. In a Dockerfile, this is done using the `USER` directive. If omitted, the container runs as `root`.

Now, you'll run a pod where the container runs as a different user.

### 13.2.1 Running a container as a specific user

To run a pod under a different user ID than the one that's baked into the container image, you'll need to set the pod's `securityContext.runAsUser` property. You'll make the container run as user guest, whose user ID in the alpine container image is 405, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 13.6** Running containers as a specific user: `pod-as-user-guest.yaml`

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-as-user-guest
spec:
  containers:
    - name: main
      image: alpine
      command: ["/bin/sleep", "999999"]
      securityContext:
        runAsUser: 405
```

You need to specify a user ID, not a username (id 405 corresponds to the guest user).

Now, to see the effect of the `runAsUser` property, run the `id` command in this new pod, the way you did before:

```
$ kubectl exec pod-as-user-guest id
uid=405(guest) gid=100(users)
```

As requested, the container is running as the guest user.

### 13.2.2 Preventing a container from running as root

What if you don't care what user the container runs as, but you still want to prevent it from running as root?

Imagine having a pod deployed with a container image that was built with a `USER` daemon directive in the Dockerfile, which makes the container run under the daemon user. What if an attacker gets access to your image registry and pushes a different image under the same tag? The attacker's image is configured to run as the root user. When Kubernetes schedules a new instance of your pod, the Kubelet will download the attacker's image and run whatever code they put into it.

Although containers are mostly isolated from the host system, running their processes as root is still considered a bad practice. For example, when a host directory is mounted into the container, if the process running in the container is running as root, it has full access to the mounted directory, whereas if it's running as non-root, it won't.

To prevent the attack scenario described previously, you can specify that the pod's container needs to run as a non-root user, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 13.7 Preventing containers from running as root: pod-run-as-non-root.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-run-as-non-root
spec:
  containers:
  - name: main
    image: alpine
    command: ["/bin/sleep", "999999"]
    securityContext:
      runAsNonRoot: true
```



This container will only  
be allowed to run as a  
non-root user.

If you deploy this pod, it gets scheduled, but is not allowed to run:

```
$ kubectl get po pod-run-as-non-root
NAME           READY   STATUS
pod-run-as-non-root  0/1     container has runAsNonRoot and image will run
                           ↗ as root
```

Now, if anyone tampers with your container images, they won't get far.

### 13.2.3 Running pods in privileged mode

Sometimes pods need to do everything that the node they're running on can do, such as use protected system devices or other kernel features, which aren't accessible to regular containers.

An example of such a pod is the kube-proxy pod, which needs to modify the node's iptables rules to make services work, as was explained in chapter 11. If you follow the instructions in appendix B and deploy a cluster with `kubeadm`, you'll see every cluster node runs a kube-proxy pod and you can examine its YAML specification to see all the special features it's using.

To get full access to the node's kernel, the pod's container runs in privileged mode. This is achieved by setting the `privileged` property in the container's `securityContext` property to `true`. You'll create a privileged pod from the YAML in the following listing.

#### **Listing 13.8 A pod with a privileged container: pod-privileged.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-privileged
spec:
  containers:
    - name: main
      image: alpine
      command: ["/bin/sleep", "999999"]
      securityContext:
        privileged: true
```



This container will run in privileged mode

Go ahead and deploy this pod, so you can compare it with the non-privileged pod you ran earlier.

If you're familiar with Linux, you may know it has a special file directory called `/dev`, which contains device files for all the devices on the system. These aren't regular files on disk, but are special files used to communicate with devices. Let's see what devices are visible in the non-privileged container you deployed earlier (the `pod-with-defaults` pod), by listing files in its `/dev` directory, as shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing 13.9 List of available devices in a non-privileged pod**

```
$ kubectl exec -it pod-with-defaults ls /dev
core          null            stderr          urandom
fd            ptmx           stdin           zero
full          pts             stdout
fuse          random          termination-log
mqueue        shm             tty
```

The listing shows all the devices. The list is fairly short. Now, compare this with the following listing, which shows the device files your privileged pod can see.

#### **Listing 13.10 List of available devices in a privileged pod**

```
$ kubectl exec -it pod-privileged ls /dev
autofs        snd             tty46
bsg          sr0             tty47
```

```

btrfs-control    stderr        tty48
core             stdin         tty49
cpu              stdout        tty5
cpu_dma_latency termination-log  tty50
fd               tty          tty51
full             tty0         tty52
fuse             tty1         tty53
hpet             tty10        tty54
hwrng            tty11        tty55
...
...

```

I haven't included the whole list, because it's too long for the book, but it's evident that the device list is much longer than before. In fact, the privileged container sees all the host node's devices. This means it can use any device freely.

For example, I had to use privileged mode like this when I wanted a pod running on a Raspberry Pi to control LEDs connected it.

#### 13.2.4 Adding individual kernel capabilities to a container

In the previous section, you saw one way of giving a container unlimited power. In the old days, traditional UNIX implementations only distinguished between privileged and unprivileged processes, but for many years, Linux has supported a much more fine-grained permission system through kernel *capabilities*.

Instead of making a container privileged and giving it unlimited permissions, a much safer method (from a security perspective) is to give it access only to the kernel features it really requires. Kubernetes allows you to add capabilities to each container or drop part of them, which allows you to fine-tune the container's permissions and limit the impact of a potential intrusion by an attacker.

For example, a container usually isn't allowed to change the system time (the hardware clock's time). You can confirm this by trying to set the time in your `pod-with-defaults` pod:

```
$ kubectl exec -it pod-with-defaults -- date +%T -s "12:00:00"
date: can't set date: Operation not permitted
```

If you want to allow the container to change the system time, you can add a capability called `CAP_SYS_TIME` to the container's capabilities list, as shown in the following listing.

##### **Listing 13.11 Adding the CAP\_SYS\_TIME capability: pod-add-settime-capability.yaml**

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-add-settime-capability
spec:
  containers:
  - name: main
    image: alpine

```

```
command: ["/bin/sleep", "999999"]
securityContext:
  capabilities:
    add:
      - SYS_TIME
```

**Capabilities are added or dropped under the securityContext property.**

**NOTE** Linux kernel capabilities are usually prefixed with `CAP_`. But when specifying them in a pod spec, you must leave out the prefix.

If you run the same command in this new pod's container, the system time is changed successfully:

```
$ kubectl exec -it pod-add-settime-capability -- date +%T -s "12:00:00"
12:00:00

$ kubectl exec -it pod-add-settime-capability -- date
Sun May 7 12:00:03 UTC 2017
```

**WARNING** If you try this yourself, be aware that it may cause your worker node to become unusable. In Minikube, although the system time was automatically reset back by the Network Time Protocol (NTP) daemon, I had to reboot the VM to schedule new pods.

You can confirm the node's time has been changed by checking the time on the node running the pod. In my case, I'm using Minikube, so I have only one node and I can get its time like this:

```
$ minikube ssh date
Sun May 7 12:00:07 UTC 2017
```

Adding capabilities like this is a much better way than giving a container full privileges with `privileged: true`. Admittedly, it does require you to know and understand what each capability does.

**TIP** You'll find the list of Linux kernel capabilities in the Linux man pages.

### 13.2.5 Dropping capabilities from a container

You've seen how to add capabilities, but you can also drop capabilities that may otherwise be available to the container. For example, the default capabilities given to a container include the `CAP_CHOWN` capability, which allows processes to change the ownership of files in the filesystem.

You can see that's the case by changing the ownership of the `/tmp` directory in your `pod-with-defaults` pod to the `guest` user, for example:

```
$ kubectl exec pod-with-defaults chown guest /tmp
$ kubectl exec pod-with-defaults -- ls -la / | grep tmp
drwxrwxrwt    2 guest     root            6 May 25 15:18 tmp
```

To prevent the container from doing that, you need to drop the capability by listing it under the container’s `securityContext.capabilities.drop` property, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 13.12 Dropping a capability from a container: `pod-drop-chown-capability.yaml`

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-drop-chown-capability
spec:
  containers:
    - name: main
      image: alpine
      command: ["/bin/sleep", "999999"]
      securityContext:
        capabilities:
          drop:
            - CHOWN
```

You're not allowing this container to change file ownership.

By dropping the `CHOWN` capability, you’re not allowed to change the owner of the `/tmp` directory in this pod:

```
$ kubectl exec pod-drop-chown-capability chown guest /tmp
chown: /tmp: Operation not permitted
```

You’re almost done exploring the container’s security context options. Let’s look at one more.

#### 13.2.6 Preventing processes from writing to the container’s filesystem

You may want to prevent the processes running in the container from writing to the container’s filesystem, and only allow them to write to mounted volumes. You’d want to do that mostly for security reasons.

Let’s imagine you’re running a PHP application with a hidden vulnerability, allowing an attacker to write to the filesystem. The PHP files are added to the container image at build time and are served from the container’s filesystem. Because of the vulnerability, the attacker can modify those files and inject them with malicious code.

These types of attacks can be thwarted by preventing the container from writing to its filesystem, where the app’s executable code is normally stored. This is done by setting the container’s `securityContext.readOnlyRootFilesystem` property to `true`, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 13.13 A container with a read-only filesystem: `pod-with_READONLY-filesystem.yaml`

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-with_READONLY-filesystem
```

```

spec:
  containers:
    - name: main
      image: alpine
      command: ["/bin/sleep", "999999"]
      securityContext:
        readOnlyRootFilesystem: true
      volumeMounts:
        - name: my-volume
          mountPath: /volume
          readOnly: false
    volumes:
      - name: my-volume
        emptyDir:

```

**This container's filesystem  
can't be written to...**

**...but writing to /volume is  
allowed, because a volume  
is mounted there.**

When you deploy this pod, the container is running as root, which has write permissions to the / directory, but trying to write a file there fails:

```
$ kubectl exec -it pod-with_READONLY-filesystem touch /new-file
touch: /new-file: Read-only file system
```

On the other hand, writing to the mounted volume is allowed:

```
$ kubectl exec -it pod-with_READONLY-filesystem touch /volume/newfile
$ kubectl exec -it pod-with_READONLY-filesystem -- ls -la /volume/newfile
-rw-r--r-- 1 root      root      0 May  7 19:11 /mountedVolume/newfile
```

As shown in the example, when you make the container's filesystem read-only, you'll probably want to mount a volume in every directory the application writes to (for example, logs, on-disk caches, and so on).

**TIP** To increase security, when running pods in production, set their container's `readOnlyRootFilesystem` property to `true`.

#### SETTING SECURITY CONTEXT OPTIONS AT THE POD LEVEL

In all these examples, you've set the security context of an individual container. Several of these options can also be set at the pod level (through the `pod.spec.securityContext` property). They serve as a default for all the pod's containers but can be overridden at the container level. The pod-level security context also allows you to set additional properties, which we'll explain next.

### 13.2.7 Sharing volumes when containers run as different users

In chapter 6, we explained how volumes are used to share data between the pod's containers. You had no trouble writing files in one container and reading them in the other.

But this was only because both containers were running as root, giving them full access to all the files in the volume. Now imagine using the `runAsUser` option we explained earlier. You may need to run the two containers as two different users (perhaps you're using two third-party container images, where each one runs its process

under its own specific user). If those two containers use a volume to share files, they may not necessarily be able to read or write files of one another.

That's why Kubernetes allows you to specify supplemental groups for all the pods running in the container, allowing them to share files, regardless of the user IDs they're running as. This is done using the following two properties:

- `fsGroup`
- `supplementalGroups`

What they do is best explained in an example, so let's see how to use them in a pod and then see what their effect is. The next listing describes a pod with two containers sharing the same volume.

**Listing 13.14 `fsGroup & supplementalGroups: pod-with-shared-volume-fsgroup.yaml`**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-with-shared-volume-fsgroup
spec:
  securityContext:
    fsGroup: 555
    supplementalGroups: [666, 777]
  containers:
    - name: first
      image: alpine
      command: ["/bin/sleep", "999999"]
      securityContext:
        runAsUser: 1111
      volumeMounts:
        - name: shared-volume
          mountPath: /volume
          readOnly: false
    - name: second
      image: alpine
      command: ["/bin/sleep", "999999"]
      securityContext:
        runAsUser: 2222
      volumeMounts:
        - name: shared-volume
          mountPath: /volume
          readOnly: false
  volumes:
    - name: shared-volume
      emptyDir:
```

The diagram illustrates the structure of the pod defined in the YAML. It shows two containers, 'first' and 'second', both sharing a single 'shared-volume'. Annotations provide details about the security context settings:

- The `fsGroup` and `supplementalGroups` are defined in the security context at the pod level.** This annotation points to the `fsGroup: 555` and `supplementalGroups: [666, 777]` entries under the `securityContext` of the pod spec.
- The first container runs as user ID 1111.** This annotation points to the `runAsUser: 1111` entry under the `securityContext` of the first container.
- Both containers use the same volume** (with a double-headed arrow between the two containers).
- The second container runs as user ID 2222.** This annotation points to the `runAsUser: 2222` entry under the `securityContext` of the second container.

After you create this pod, run a shell in its first container and see what user and group IDs the container is running as:

```
$ kubectl exec -it pod-with-shared-volume-fsgroup -c first sh
/ $ id
uid=1111 gid=0(root) groups=555,666,777
```

The `id` command shows the container is running with user ID 1111, as specified in the pod definition. The effective group ID is 0 (`root`), but group IDs 555, 666, and 777 are also associated with the user.

In the pod definition, you set `fsGroup` to 555. Because of this, the mounted volume will be owned by group ID 555, as shown here:

```
/ $ ls -l / | grep volume
drwxrwsrwx    2 root      555                         6 May 29 12:23 volume
```

If you create a file in the mounted volume's directory, the file is owned by user ID 1111 (that's the user ID the container is running as) and by group ID 555:

```
/ $ echo foo > /volume/foo
/ $ ls -l /volume
total 4
-rw-r--r--    1 1111      555                         4 May 29 12:25 foo
```

This is different from how ownership is otherwise set up for newly created files. Usually, the user's effective group ID, which is 0 in your case, is used when a user creates files. You can see this by creating a file in the container's filesystem instead of in the volume:

```
/ $ echo foo > /tmp/foo
/ $ ls -l /tmp
total 4
-rw-r--r--    1 1111      root                         4 May 29 12:41 foo
```

As you can see, the `fsGroup` security context property is used when the process creates files in a volume (but this depends on the volume plugin used), whereas the `supplementalGroups` property defines a list of additional group IDs the user is associated with.

This concludes this section about the configuration of the container's security context. Next, we'll see how a cluster administrator can restrict users from doing so.

## 13.3 **Restricting the use of security-related features in pods**

The examples in the previous sections have shown how a person deploying pods can do whatever they want on any cluster node, by deploying a privileged pod to the node, for example. Obviously, a mechanism must prevent users from doing part or all of what's been explained. The cluster admin can restrict the use of the previously described security-related features by creating one or more `PodSecurityPolicy` resources.

### 13.3.1 **Introducing the `PodSecurityPolicy` resource**

`PodSecurityPolicy` is a cluster-level (non-namespaced) resource, which defines what security-related features users can or can't use in their pods. The job of upholding the policies configured in `PodSecurityPolicy` resources is performed by the

PodSecurityPolicy admission control plugin running in the API server (we explained admission control plugins in chapter 11).

**NOTE** The PodSecurityPolicy admission control plugin may not be enabled in your cluster. Before running the following examples, ensure it's enabled. If you're using Minikube, refer to the next sidebar.

When someone posts a pod resource to the API server, the PodSecurityPolicy admission control plugin validates the pod definition against the configured PodSecurityPolicies. If the pod conforms to the cluster's policies, it's accepted and stored into etcd; otherwise it's rejected immediately. The plugin may also modify the pod resource according to defaults configured in the policy.

### Enabling RBAC and PodSecurityPolicy admission control in Minikube

I'm using Minikube version v0.19.0 to run these examples. That version doesn't enable either the PodSecurityPolicy admission control plugin or RBAC authorization, which is required in part of the exercises. One exercise also requires authenticating as a different user, so you'll also need to enable the basic authentication plugin where users are defined in a file.

To run Minikube with all these plugins enabled, you may need to use this (or a similar) command, depending on the version you're using:

```
$ minikube start --extra-config apiserver.Authentication.PasswordFile.  
  ↪ BasicAuthFile=/etc/kubernetes/passwd --extra-config=apiserver.  
  ↪ Authorization.Mode=RBAC --extra-config=apiserver.GenericServerRun  
  ↪ Options.AdmissionControl=NamespaceLifecycle,LimitRanger,Service  
  ↪ Account,PersistentVolumeLabel,DefaultStorageClass,ResourceQuota,  
  ↪ DefaultTolerationSeconds,PodSecurityPolicy
```

The API server won't start up until you create the password file you specified in the command line options. This is how to create the file:

```
$ cat <<EOF | minikube ssh sudo tee /etc/kubernetes/passwd  
password,alice,1000,basic-user  
password,bob,2000,privileged-user  
EOF
```

You'll find a shell script that runs both commands in the book's code archive in Chapter13/minikube-with-rbac-and-psp-enabled.sh.

### UNDERSTANDING WHAT A PODSECURITYPOLICY CAN DO

A PodSecurityPolicy resource defines things like the following:

- Whether a pod can use the host's IPC, PID, or Network namespaces
- Which host ports a pod can bind to
- What user IDs a container can run as
- Whether a pod with privileged containers can be created

- Which kernel capabilities are allowed, which are added by default and which are always dropped
- What SELinux labels a container can use
- Whether a container can use a writable root filesystem or not
- Which filesystem groups the container can run as
- Which volume types a pod can use

If you've read this chapter up to this point, everything but the last item in the previous list should be familiar. The last item should also be fairly clear.

### EXAMINING A SAMPLE PodSECURITYPOLICY

The following listing shows a sample PodSecurityPolicy, which prevents pods from using the host's IPC, PID, and Network namespaces, and prevents running privileged containers and the use of most host ports (except ports from 10000-11000 and 13000-14000). The policy doesn't set any constraints on what users, groups, or SELinux groups the container can run as.

#### Listing 13.15 An example PodSecurityPolicy: pod-security-policy.yaml

```
apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: PodSecurityPolicy
metadata:
  name: default
spec:
  hostIPC: false
  hostPID: false
  hostNetwork: false
  hostPorts:
    - min: 10000
      max: 11000
    - min: 13000
      max: 14000
  privileged: false
  readOnlyRootFilesystem: true
  runAsUser:
    rule: RunAsAny
  fsGroup:
    rule: RunAsAny
  supplementalGroups:
    rule: RunAsAny
  seLinux:
    rule: RunAsAny
  volumes:
    - '*' → Containers are forced to run with a read-only root filesystem.
```

Containers aren't allowed to use the host's IPC, PID, or network namespace.

They can only bind to host ports 10000 to 11000 (inclusive) or host ports 13000 to 14000.

← Containers cannot run in privileged mode.

Containers can run as any user and any group.

They can also use any SELinux groups they want.

→ All volume types can be used in pods.

Most of the options specified in the example should be self-explanatory, especially if you've read the previous sections. After this PodSecurityPolicy resource is posted to

the cluster, the API server will no longer allow you to deploy the privileged pod used earlier. For example

```
$ kubectl create -f pod-privileged.yaml
Error from server (Forbidden): error when creating "pod-privileged.yaml":
pods "pod-privileged" is forbidden: unable to validate against any pod
security policy: [spec.containers[0].securityContext.privileged: Invalid
value: true: Privileged containers are not allowed]
```

Likewise, you can no longer deploy pods that want to use the host’s PID, IPC, or Network namespace. Also, because you set `readOnlyRootFilesystem` to `true` in the policy, the container filesystems in all pods will be read-only (containers can only write to volumes).

### 13.3.2 Understanding `runAsUser`, `fsGroup`, and `supplementalGroups` policies

The policy in the previous example doesn’t impose any limits on which users and groups containers can run as, because you’ve used the `RunAsAny` rule for the `runAsUser`, `fsGroup`, and `supplementalGroups` fields. If you want to constrain the list of allowed user or group IDs, you change the rule to `MustRunAs` and specify the range of allowed IDs.

#### USING THE `MUSTRUNAS` RULE

Let’s look at an example. To only allow containers to run as user ID 2 and constrain the default filesystem group and supplemental group IDs to be anything from 2–10 or 20–30 (all inclusive), you’d include the following snippet in the `PodSecurityPolicy` resource.

#### Listing 13.16 Specifying IDs containers must run as: `psp-must-run-as.yaml`

```
runAsUser:
  rule: MustRunAs
  ranges:
    - min: 2
      max: 2
fsGroup:
  rule: MustRunAs
  ranges:
    - min: 2
      max: 10
    - min: 20
      max: 30
supplementalGroups:
  rule: MustRunAs
  ranges:
    - min: 2
      max: 10
    - min: 20
      max: 30
```

Add a single range with `min` equal to `max` to set one specific ID.

Multiple ranges are supported—here, group IDs can be 2–10 or 20–30 (inclusive).

If the pod spec tries to set either of those fields to a value outside of these ranges, the pod will not be accepted by the API server. To try this, delete the previous PodSecurityPolicy and create the new one from the psp-must-run-as.yaml file.

**NOTE** Changing the policy has no effect on existing pods, because PodSecurityPolicies are enforced only when creating or updating pods.

#### DEPLOYING A POD WITH RUNASUSER OUTSIDE OF THE POLICY'S RANGE

If you try deploying the pod-as-user-guest.yaml file from earlier, which says the container should run as user ID 405, the API server rejects the pod:

```
$ kubectl create -f pod-as-user-guest.yaml
Error from server (Forbidden): error when creating "pod-as-user-guest.yaml"
: pods "pod-as-user-guest" is forbidden: unable to validate against any pod
security policy: [securityContext.runAsUser: Invalid value: 405: UID on
container main does not match required range. Found 405, allowed: [{2 2}]]
```

Okay, that was obvious. But what happens if you deploy a pod without setting the runAsUser property, but the user ID is baked into the container image (using the USER directive in the Dockerfile)?

#### DEPLOYING A POD WITH A CONTAINER IMAGE WITH AN OUT-OF-RANGE USER ID

I've created an alternative image for the Node.js app you've used throughout the book. The image is configured so that the container will run as user ID 5. The Dockerfile for the image is shown in the following listing.

**Listing 13.17 Dockerfile with a USER directive: kubia-run-as-user-5/Dockerfile**

```
FROM node:7
ADD app.js /app.js
USER 5
ENTRYPOINT ["node", "app.js"]
```

Containers run from  
this image will run  
as user ID 5.

I pushed the image to Docker Hub as luksa/kubia-run-as-user-5. If I deploy a pod with that image, the API server doesn't reject it:

```
$ kubectl run run-as-5 --image luksa/kubia-run-as-user-5 --restart Never
pod "run-as-5" created
```

Unlike before, the API server accepted the pod and the Kubelet has run its container. Let's see what user ID the container is running as:

```
$ kubectl exec run-as-5 -- id
uid=2(bin) gid=2(bin) groups=2(bin)
```

As you can see, the container is running as user ID 2, which is the ID you specified in the PodSecurityPolicy. The PodSecurityPolicy can be used to override the user ID hardcoded into a container image.

### USING THE MUSTRUNASNONROOT RULE IN THE RUNASUSER FIELD

For the `runAsUser` field an additional rule can be used: `MustRunAsNonRoot`. As the name suggests, it prevents users from deploying containers that run as root. Either the container spec must specify a `runAsUser` field, which can't be zero (zero is the root user's ID), or the container image itself must run as a non-zero user ID. We explained why this is a good thing earlier.

#### 13.3.3 Configuring allowed, default, and disallowed capabilities

As you learned, containers can run in privileged mode or not, and you can define a more fine-grained permission configuration by adding or dropping Linux kernel capabilities in each container. Three fields influence which capabilities containers can or cannot use:

- `allowedCapabilities`
- `defaultAddCapabilities`
- `requiredDropCapabilities`

We'll look at an example first, and then discuss what each of the three fields does. The following listing shows a snippet of a `PodSecurityPolicy` resource defining three fields related to capabilities.

**Listing 13.18 Specifying capabilities in a PodSecurityPolicy: psp-capabilities.yaml**

```
apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: PodSecurityPolicy
spec:
  allowedCapabilities:
    - SYS_TIME
  defaultAddCapabilities:
    - CHOWN
  requiredDropCapabilities:
    - SYS_ADMIN
    - SYS_MODULE
  ...
```

Allow containers to add the `SYS_TIME` capability.

Automatically add the `CHOWN` capability to every container.

Require containers to drop the `SYS_ADMIN` and `SYS_MODULE` capabilities.

**NOTE** The `SYS_ADMIN` capability allows a range of administrative operations, and the `SYS_MODULE` capability allows loading and unloading of Linux kernel modules.

#### SPECIFYING WHICH CAPABILITIES CAN BE ADDED TO A CONTAINER

The `allowedCapabilities` field is used to specify which capabilities pod authors can add in the `securityContext.capabilities` field in the container spec. In one of the previous examples, you added the `SYS_TIME` capability to your container. If the `PodSecurityPolicy` admission control plugin had been enabled, you wouldn't have been able to add that capability, unless it was specified in the `PodSecurityPolicy` as shown in listing 13.18.

### ADDING CAPABILITIES TO ALL CONTAINERS

All capabilities listed under the `defaultAddCapabilities` field will be added to every deployed pod's containers. If a user doesn't want certain containers to have those capabilities, they need to explicitly drop them in the specs of those containers.

The example in listing 13.18 enables the automatic addition of the `CAP_CHOWN` capability to every container, thus allowing processes running in the container to change the ownership of files in the container (with the `chown` command, for example).

### DROPPING CAPABILITIES FROM A CONTAINER

The final field in this example is `requiredDropCapabilities`. I must admit, this was a somewhat strange name for me at first, but it's not that complicated. The capabilities listed in this field are dropped automatically from every container (the PodSecurityPolicy Admission Control plugin will add them to every container's `securityContext.capabilities.drop` field).

If a user tries to create a pod where they explicitly add one of the capabilities listed in the policy's `requiredDropCapabilities` field, the pod is rejected:

```
$ kubectl create -f pod-add-sysadmin-capability.yaml
Error from server (Forbidden): error when creating "pod-add-sysadmin-capability.yaml": pods "pod-add-sysadmin-capability" is forbidden: unable to validate against any pod security policy: [capabilities.add: Invalid value: "SYS_ADMIN": capability may not be added]
```

#### 13.3.4 Constraining the types of volumes pods can use

The last thing a PodSecurityPolicy resource can do is define which volume types users can add to their pods. At the minimum, a PodSecurityPolicy should allow using at least the `emptyDir`, `configMap`, `secret`, `downwardAPI`, and the `persistentVolumeClaim` volumes. The pertinent part of such a PodSecurityPolicy resource is shown in the following listing.

##### Listing 13.19 A PSP snippet allowing the use of only certain volume types: psp-volumes.yaml

```
kind: PodSecurityPolicy
spec:
  volumes:
    - emptyDir
    - configMap
    - secret
    - downwardAPI
    - persistentVolumeClaim
```

If multiple PodSecurityPolicy resources are in place, pods can use any volume type defined in any of the policies (the union of all volumes lists is used).

### 13.3.5 Assigning different PodSecurityPolicies to different users and groups

We mentioned that a PodSecurityPolicy is a cluster-level resource, which means it can't be stored in and applied to a specific namespace. Does that mean it always applies across all namespaces? No, because that would make them relatively unusable. After all, system pods must often be allowed to do things that regular pods shouldn't.

Assigning different policies to different users is done through the RBAC mechanism described in the previous chapter. The idea is to create as many policies as you need and make them available to individual users or groups by creating ClusterRole resources and pointing them to the individual policies by name. By binding those ClusterRoles to specific users or groups with ClusterRoleBindings, when the PodSecurityPolicy Admission Control plugin needs to decide whether to admit a pod definition or not, it will only consider the policies accessible to the user creating the pod.

You'll see how to do this in the next exercise. You'll start by creating an additional PodSecurityPolicy.

#### CREATING A PODSECURITYPOLICY ALLOWING PRIVILEGED CONTAINERS TO BE DEPLOYED

You'll create a special PodSecurityPolicy that will allow privileged users to create pods with privileged containers. The following listing shows the policy's definition.

**Listing 13.20 A PodSecurityPolicy for privileged users: psp-privileged.yaml**

```
apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: PodSecurityPolicy
metadata:
  name: privileged
spec:
  privileged: true
  runAsUser:
    rule: RunAsAny
  fsGroup:
    rule: RunAsAny
  supplementalGroups:
    rule: RunAsAny
  selinux:
    rule: RunAsAny
  volumes:
  - '*'
```

The name of this policy is "privileged."

It allows running privileged containers.

After you post this policy to the API server, you have two policies in the cluster:

```
$ kubectl get psp
NAME      PRIV   CAPS  SELINUX  RUNASUSER  FSGROUP     ...
default   false   []    RunAsAny  RunAsAny   RunAsAny   ...
privileged true    []    RunAsAny  RunAsAny   RunAsAny   ...
```

**NOTE** The shorthand for PodSecurityPolicy is psp.

As you can see in the PRIV column, the default policy doesn't allow running privileged containers, whereas the privileged policy does. Because you're currently logged in as a cluster-admin, you can see all the policies. When creating pods, if any policy allows you to deploy a pod with certain features, the API server will accept your pod.

Now imagine two additional users are using your cluster: Alice and Bob. You want Alice to only deploy restricted (non-privileged) pods, but you want to allow Bob to also deploy privileged pods. You do this by making sure Alice can only use the default PodSecurityPolicy, while allowing Bob to use both.

### USING RBAC TO ASSIGN DIFFERENT PODSECURITYPOLICIES TO DIFFERENT USERS

In the previous chapter, you used RBAC to grant users access to only certain resource types, but I mentioned that access can be granted to specific resource instances by referencing them by name. That's what you'll use to make users use different PodSecurityPolicy resources.

First, you'll create two ClusterRoles, each allowing the use of one of the policies. You'll call the first one psp-default and in it allow the use of the default PodSecurityPolicy resource. You can use kubectl create clusterrole to do that:

```
$ kubectl create clusterrole psp-default --verb=use
→ --resource=podsecuritypolicies --resource-name=default
clusterrole "psp-default" created
```

**NOTE** You're using the special verb use instead of get, list, watch, or similar.

As you can see, you're referring to a specific instance of a PodSecurityPolicy resource by using the --resource-name option. Now, create another ClusterRole called psp-privileged, pointing to the privileged policy:

```
$ kubectl create clusterrole psp-privileged --verb=use
→ --resource=podsecuritypolicies --resource-name=privileged
clusterrole "psp-privileged" created
```

Now, you need to bind these two policies to users. As you may remember from the previous chapter, if you're binding a ClusterRole that grants access to cluster-level resources (which is what PodSecurityPolicy resources are), you need to use a ClusterRoleBinding instead of a (namespaced) RoleBinding.

You're going to bind the psp-default ClusterRole to all authenticated users, not only to Alice. This is necessary because otherwise no one could create any pods, because the Admission Control plugin would complain that no policy is in place. Authenticated users all belong to the system:authenticated group, so you'll bind the ClusterRole to the group:

```
$ kubectl create clusterrolebinding psp-all-users
→ --clusterrole=psp-default --group=system:authenticated
clusterrolebinding "psp-all-users" created
```

You'll bind the psp-privileged ClusterRole only to Bob:

```
$ kubectl create clusterrolebinding psp-bob
  --clusterrole=psp-privileged --user=bob
clusterrolebinding "psp-bob" created
```

As an authenticated user, Alice should now have access to the default PodSecurityPolicy, whereas Bob should have access to both the default and the privileged PodSecurityPolicies. Alice shouldn't be able to create privileged pods, whereas Bob should. Let's see if that's true.

#### **CREATING ADDITIONAL USERS FOR KUBECTL**

But how do you authenticate as Alice or Bob instead of whatever you're authenticated as currently? The book's appendix A explains how `kubectl` can be used with multiple clusters, but also with multiple contexts. A context includes the user credentials used for talking to a cluster. Turn to appendix A to find out more. Here we'll show the bare commands enabling you to use `kubectl` as Alice or Bob.

First, you'll create two new users in `kubectl`'s config with the following two commands:

```
$ kubectl config set-credentials alice --username=alice --password=password
User "alice" set.
$ kubectl config set-credentials bob --username=bob --password=password
User "bob" set.
```

It should be obvious what the commands do. Because you're setting username and password credentials, `kubectl` will use basic HTTP authentication for these two users (other authentication methods include tokens, client certificates, and so on).

#### **CREATING PODS AS A DIFFERENT USER**

You can now try creating a privileged pod while authenticating as Alice. You can tell `kubectl` which user credentials to use by using the `--user` option:

```
$ kubectl --user alice create -f pod-privileged.yaml
Error from server (Forbidden): error when creating "pod-privileged.yaml":
  pods "pod-privileged" is forbidden: unable to validate against any pod
  security policy: [spec.containers[0].securityContext.privileged: Invalid
  value: true: Privileged containers are not allowed]
```

As expected, the API server doesn't allow Alice to create privileged pods. Now, let's see if it allows Bob to do that:

```
$ kubectl --user bob create -f pod-privileged.yaml
pod "pod-privileged" created
```

And there you go. You've successfully used RBAC to make the Admission Control plugin use different PodSecurityPolicy resources for different users.

## 13.4 Isolating the pod network

Up to now in this chapter, we've explored many security-related configuration options that apply to individual pods and their containers. In the remainder of this chapter, we'll look at how the network between pods can be secured by limiting which pods can talk to which pods.

Whether this is configurable or not depends on which container networking plugin is used in the cluster. If the networking plugin supports it, you can configure network isolation by creating NetworkPolicy resources.

A NetworkPolicy applies to pods that match its label selector and specifies either which sources can access the matched pods or which destinations can be accessed from the matched pods. This is configured through ingress and egress rules, respectively. Both types of rules can match only the pods that match a pod selector, all pods in a namespace whose labels match a namespace selector, or a network IP block specified using Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) notation (for example, 192.168.1.0/24).

We'll look at both ingress and egress rules and all three matching options.

**NOTE** Ingress rules in a NetworkPolicy have nothing to do with the Ingress resource discussed in chapter 5.

### 13.4.1 Enabling network isolation in a namespace

By default, pods in a given namespace can be accessed by anyone. First, you'll need to change that. You'll create a default-deny NetworkPolicy, which will prevent all clients from connecting to any pod in your namespace. The NetworkPolicy definition is shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 13.21 A default-deny NetworkPolicy: network-policy-default-deny.yaml

```
apiVersion: networking.k8s.io/v1
kind: NetworkPolicy
metadata:
  name: default-deny
spec:
  podSelector: <-->| Empty pod selector
                | matches all pods in the
                | same namespace
```

When you create this NetworkPolicy in a certain namespace, no one can connect to any pod in that namespace.

**NOTE** The CNI plugin or other type of networking solution used in the cluster must support NetworkPolicy, or else there will be no effect on inter-pod connectivity.

### 13.4.2 Allowing only some pods in the namespace to connect to a server pod

To let clients connect to the pods in the namespace, you must now explicitly say who can connect to the pods. By who I mean which pods. Let's explore how to do this through an example.

Imagine having a PostgreSQL database pod running in namespace foo and a web-server pod that uses the database. Other pods are also in the namespace, and you don't want to allow them to connect to the database. To secure the network, you need to create the NetworkPolicy resource shown in the following listing in the same namespace as the database pod.

#### Listing 13.22 A NetworkPolicy for the Postgres pod: network-policy-postgres.yaml

```
apiVersion: networking.k8s.io/v1
kind: NetworkPolicy
metadata:
  name: postgres-netpolicy
spec:
  podSelector:
    matchLabels:
      app: database
  ingress:
    - from:
        - podSelector:
            matchLabels:
              app: webserver
  ports:
    - port: 5432
```

This policy secures access to pods with `app=database` label.

It allows incoming connections only from pods with the `app=webserver` label.

Connections to this port are allowed.

The example NetworkPolicy allows pods with the `app=webserver` label to connect to pods with the `app=database` label, and only on port 5432. Other pods can't connect to the database pods, and no one (not even the webserver pods) can connect to anything other than port 5432 of the database pods. This is shown in figure 13.4.

Client pods usually connect to server pods through a Service instead of directly to the pod, but that doesn't change anything. The NetworkPolicy is enforced when connecting through a Service, as well.

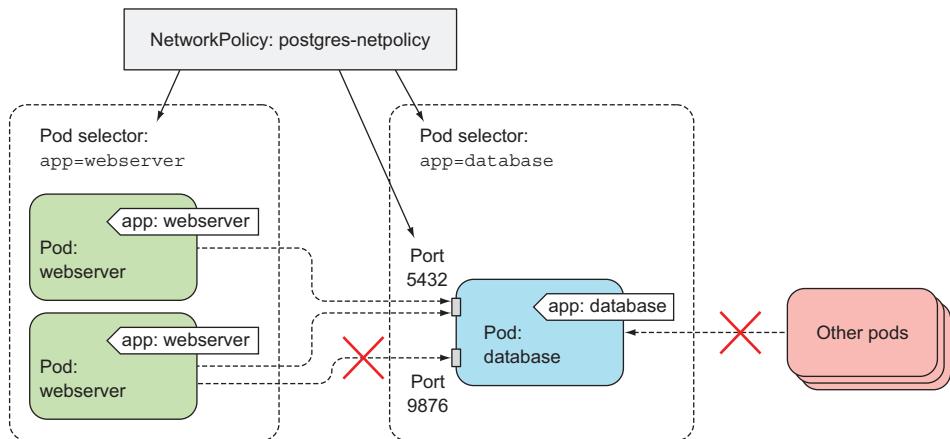


Figure 13.4 A NetworkPolicy allowing only some pods to access other pods and only on a specific port

### 13.4.3 Isolating the network between Kubernetes namespaces

Now let's look at another example, where multiple tenants are using the same Kubernetes cluster. Each tenant can use multiple namespaces, and each namespace has a label specifying the tenant it belongs to. For example, one of those tenants is Manning. All their namespaces have been labeled with `tenant: manning`. In one of their namespaces, they run a Shopping Cart microservice that needs to be available to all pods running in any of their namespaces. Obviously, they don't want any other tenants to access their microservice.

To secure their microservice, they create the NetworkPolicy resource shown in the following listing.

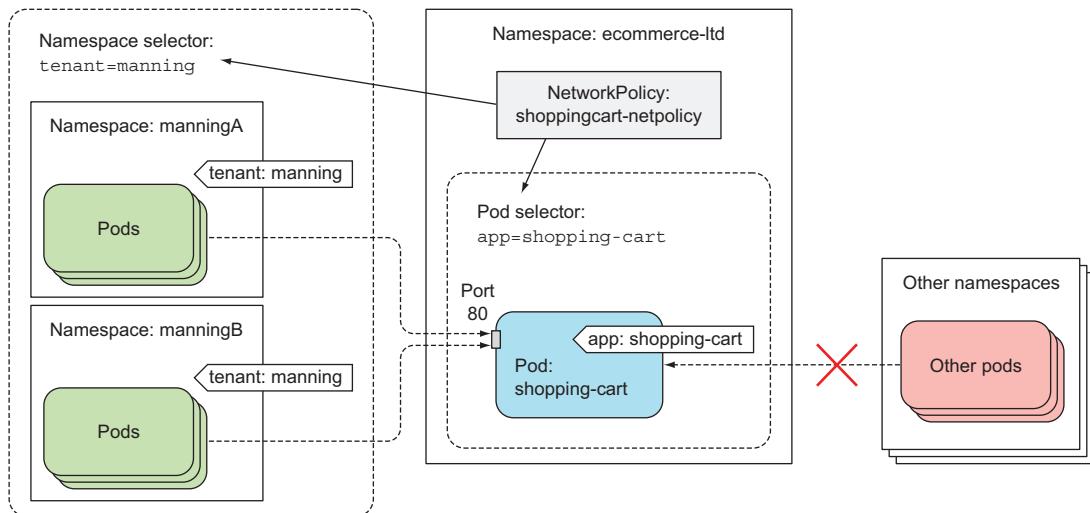
#### Listing 13.23 NetworkPolicy for the shopping cart pod(s): network-policy-cart.yaml

```
apiVersion: networking.k8s.io/v1
kind: NetworkPolicy
metadata:
  name: shoppingcart-netpolicy
spec:
  podSelector:
    matchLabels:
      app: shopping-cart
  ingress:
  - from:
    - namespaceSelector:
        matchLabels:
          tenant: manning
  ports:
  - port: 80
```

This policy applies to pods labeled as `microservice=shopping-cart`.

Only pods running in namespaces labeled as `tenant=manning` are allowed to access the microservice.

This NetworkPolicy ensures only pods running in namespaces labeled as `tenant=manning` can access their Shopping Cart microservice, as shown in figure 13.5.



**Figure 13.5** A NetworkPolicy only allowing pods in namespaces matching a `namespaceSelector` to access a specific pod.

If the shopping cart provider also wants to give access to other tenants (perhaps to one of their partner companies), they can either create an additional NetworkPolicy resource or add an additional ingress rule to their existing NetworkPolicy.

**NOTE** In a multi-tenant Kubernetes cluster, tenants usually can't add labels (or annotations) to their namespaces themselves. If they could, they'd be able to circumvent the `namespaceSelector`-based ingress rules.

#### 13.4.4 Isolating using CIDR notation

Instead of specifying a pod- or namespace selector to define who can access the pods targeted in the NetworkPolicy, you can also specify an IP block in CIDR notation. For example, to allow the shopping-cart pods from the previous section to only be accessible from IPs in the 192.168.1.1 to .255 range, you'd specify the ingress rule in the next listing.

##### **Listing 13.24 Specifying an IP block in an ingress rule: `network-policy-cidr.yaml`**

```
ingress:
- from:
  - ipBlock:
    cidr: 192.168.1.0/24
```

This ingress rule only allows traffic from clients in the 192.168.1.0/24 IP block.

### 13.4.5 Limiting the outbound traffic of a set of pods

In all previous examples, you've been limiting the inbound traffic to the pods that match the NetworkPolicy's pod selector using ingress rules, but you can also limit their outbound traffic through egress rules. An example is shown in the next listing.

**Listing 13.25 Using egress rules in a NetworkPolicy: network-policy-egress.yaml**

```
spec:  
  podSelector:  
    matchLabels:  
      app: webserver  
  egress:  
    - to:  
        - podSelector:  
            matchLabels:  
              app: database
```

**It limits the pods' outbound traffic.**

This policy applies to pods with the `app=webserver` label.

Webserver pods may only connect to pods with the `app=database` label.

The NetworkPolicy in the previous listing allows pods that have the `app=webserver` label to only access pods that have the `app=database` label and nothing else (neither other pods, nor any other IP, regardless of whether it's internal or external to the cluster).

## 13.5 Summary

In this chapter, you learned about securing cluster nodes from pods and pods from other pods. You learned that

- Pods can use the node's Linux namespaces instead of using their own.
- Containers can be configured to run as a different user and/or group than the one defined in the container image.
- Containers can also run in privileged mode, allowing them to access the node's devices that are otherwise not exposed to pods.
- Containers can be run as read-only, preventing processes from writing to the container's filesystem (and only allowing them to write to mounted volumes).
- Cluster-level PodSecurityPolicy resources can be created to prevent users from creating pods that could compromise a node.
- PodSecurityPolicy resources can be associated with specific users using RBAC's ClusterRoles and ClusterRoleBindings.
- NetworkPolicy resources are used to limit a pod's inbound and/or outbound traffic.

In the next chapter, you'll learn how computational resources available to pods can be constrained and how a pod's quality of service is configured.

# *Managing pods’ computational resources*

## **This chapter covers**

- Requesting CPU, memory, and other computational resources for containers
- Setting a hard limit for CPU and memory
- Understanding Quality of Service guarantees for pods
- Setting default, min, and max resources for pods in a namespace
- Limiting the total amount of resources available in a namespace

Up to now you’ve created pods without caring about how much CPU and memory they’re allowed to consume. But as you’ll see in this chapter, setting both how much a pod is expected to consume and the maximum amount it’s allowed to consume is a vital part of any pod definition. Setting these two sets of parameters makes sure that a pod takes only its fair share of the resources provided by the Kubernetes cluster and also affects how pods are scheduled across the cluster.

## 14.1 Requesting resources for a pod's containers

When creating a pod, you can specify the amount of CPU and memory that a container needs (these are called *requests*) and a hard limit on what it may consume (known as *limits*). They're specified for each container individually, not for the pod as a whole. The pod's resource requests and limits are the sum of the requests and limits of all its containers.

### 14.1.1 Creating pods with resource requests

Let's look at an example pod manifest, which has the CPU and memory requests specified for its single container, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 14.1 A pod with resource requests: requests-pod.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: requests-pod
spec:
  containers:
    - image: busybox
      command: ["dd", "if=/dev/zero", "of=/dev/null"]
      name: main
      resources:
        requests:
          cpu: 200m
          memory: 10Mi
          You're specifying resource
          requests for the main container.
          ←
          The container requests 200
          millicores (that is, 1/5 of a
          single CPU core's time).
          ←
          The container also
          requests 10 mebibytes
          of memory.
```

In the pod manifest, your single container requires one-fifth of a CPU core (200 millicores) to run properly. Five such pods/containers can run sufficiently fast on a single CPU core.

When you don't specify a request for CPU, you're saying you don't care how much CPU time the process running in your container is allotted. In the worst case, it may not get any CPU time at all (this happens when a heavy demand by other processes exists on the CPU). Although this may be fine for low-priority batch jobs, which aren't time-critical, it obviously isn't appropriate for containers handling user requests.

In the pod spec, you're also requesting 10 mebibytes of memory for the container. By doing that, you're saying that you expect the processes running inside the container to use at most 10 mebibytes of RAM. They might use less, but you're not expecting them to use more than that in normal circumstances. Later in this chapter you'll see what happens if they do.

Now you'll run the pod. When the pod starts, you can take a quick look at the process' CPU consumption by running the `top` command inside the container, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 14.2 Examining CPU and memory usage from within a container**

```
$ kubectl exec -it requests-pod top
Mem: 1288116K used, 760368K free, 9196K shrd, 25748K buff, 814840K cached
CPU: 9.1% usr 42.1% sys 0.0% nic 48.4% idle 0.0% io 0.0% irq 0.2% sirq
Load average: 0.79 0.52 0.29 2/481 10
  PID  PPID USER      STAT   VSZ %VSZ CPU %CPU COMMAND
    1      0 root      R     1192  0.0   1 50.2 dd if /dev/zero of /dev/null
    7      0 root      R     1200  0.0   0  0.0 top
```

The dd command you're running in the container consumes as much CPU as it can, but it only runs a single thread so it can only use a single core. The Minikube VM, which is where this example is running, has two CPU cores allotted to it. That's why the process is shown consuming 50% of the whole CPU.

Fifty percent of two cores is obviously one whole core, which means the container is using more than the 200 millicores you requested in the pod specification. This is expected, because requests don't limit the amount of CPU a container can use. You'd need to specify a CPU limit to do that. You'll try that later, but first, let's see how specifying resource requests in a pod affects the scheduling of the pod.

### **14.1.2 Understanding how resource requests affect scheduling**

By specifying resource requests, you're specifying the minimum amount of resources your pod needs. This information is what the Scheduler uses when scheduling the pod to a node. Each node has a certain amount of CPU and memory it can allocate to pods. When scheduling a pod, the Scheduler will only consider nodes with enough unallocated resources to meet the pod's resource requirements. If the amount of unallocated CPU or memory is less than what the pod requests, Kubernetes will not schedule the pod to that node, because the node can't provide the minimum amount required by the pod.

#### **UNDERSTANDING HOW THE SCHEDULER DETERMINES IF A POD CAN FIT ON A NODE**

What's important and somewhat surprising here is that the Scheduler doesn't look at how much of each individual resource is being used at the exact time of scheduling but at the sum of resources requested by the existing pods deployed on the node. Even though existing pods may be using less than what they've requested, scheduling another pod based on actual resource consumption would break the guarantee given to the already deployed pods.

This is visualized in figure 14.1. Three pods are deployed on the node. Together, they've requested 80% of the node's CPU and 60% of the node's memory. Pod D, shown at the bottom right of the figure, cannot be scheduled onto the node because it requests 25% of the CPU, which is more than the 20% of unallocated CPU. The fact that the three pods are currently using only 70% of the CPU makes no difference.

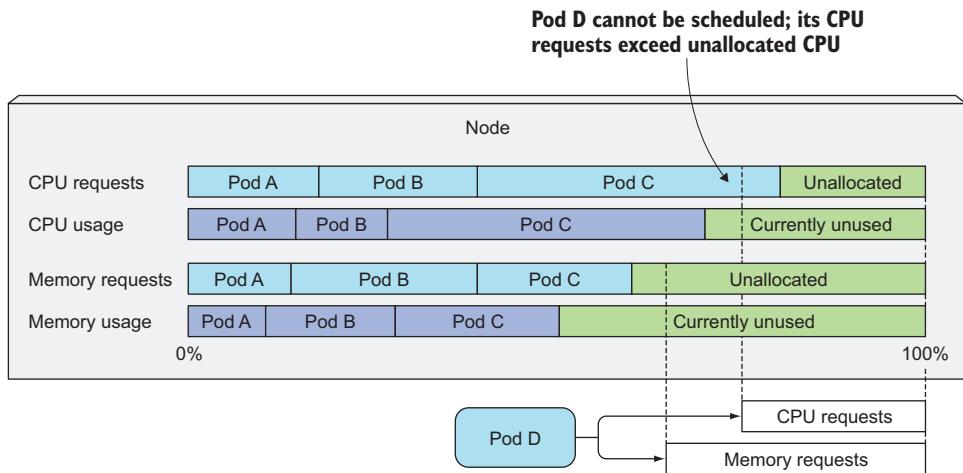


Figure 14.1 The Scheduler only cares about requests, not actual usage.

#### UNDERSTANDING HOW THE SCHEDULER USES PODS' REQUESTS WHEN SELECTING THE BEST NODE FOR A POD

You may remember from chapter 11 that the Scheduler first filters the list of nodes to exclude those that the pod can't fit on and then prioritizes the remaining nodes per the configured prioritization functions. Among others, two prioritization functions rank nodes based on the amount of resources requested: `LeastRequestedPriority` and `MostRequestedPriority`. The first one prefers nodes with fewer requested resources (with a greater amount of unallocated resources), whereas the second one is the exact opposite—it prefers nodes that have the most requested resources (a smaller amount of unallocated CPU and memory). But, as we've discussed, they both consider the amount of requested resources, not the amount of resources actually consumed.

The Scheduler is configured to use only one of those functions. You may wonder why anyone would want to use the `MostRequestedPriority` function. After all, if you have a set of nodes, you usually want to spread CPU load evenly across them. However, that's not the case when running on cloud infrastructure, where you can add and remove nodes whenever necessary. By configuring the Scheduler to use the `MostRequestedPriority` function, you guarantee that Kubernetes will use the smallest possible number of nodes while still providing each pod with the amount of CPU/memory it requests. By keeping pods tightly packed, certain nodes are left vacant and can be removed. Because you're paying for individual nodes, this saves you money.

#### INSPECTING A NODE'S CAPACITY

Let's see the Scheduler in action. You'll deploy another pod with four times the amount of requested resources as before. But before you do that, let's see your node's capacity. Because the Scheduler needs to know how much CPU and memory each node has, the Kubelet reports this data to the API server, making it available through

the Node resource. You can see it by using the `kubectl describe` command as in the following listing.

### Listing 14.3 A node's capacity and allocatable resources

```
$ kubectl describe nodes
Name:           minikube
...
Capacity:
  cpu:          2
  memory:       2048484Ki
  pods:         110
Allocatable:
  cpu:          2
  memory:       1946084Ki
  pods:         110
...
```

The overall capacity of the node

The resources allocatable to pods

The output shows two sets of amounts related to the available resources on the node: the node's *capacity* and *allocatable* resources. The capacity represents the total resources of a node, which may not all be available to pods. Certain resources may be reserved for Kubernetes and/or system components. The Scheduler bases its decisions only on the allocatable resource amounts.

In the previous example, the node called `minikube` runs in a VM with two cores and has no CPU reserved, making the whole CPU allocatable to pods. Therefore, the Scheduler should have no problem scheduling another pod requesting 800 millicores.

Run the pod now. You can use the YAML file in the code archive, or run the pod with the `kubectl run` command like this:

```
$ kubectl run requests-pod-2 --image=busybox --restart Never
→ --requests='cpu=800m,memory=20Mi' -- dd if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null
pod "requests-pod-2" created
```

Let's see if it was scheduled:

```
$ kubectl get po requests-pod-2
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
requests-pod-2  1/1     Running   0          3m
```

Okay, the pod has been scheduled and is running.

#### CREATING A POD THAT DOESN'T FIT ON ANY NODE

You now have two pods deployed, which together have requested a total of 1,000 millicores or exactly 1 core. You should therefore have another 1,000 millicores available for additional pods, right? You can deploy another pod with a resource request of 1,000 millicores. Use a similar command as before:

```
$ kubectl run requests-pod-3 --image=busybox --restart Never
→ --requests='cpu=1,memory=20Mi' -- dd if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null
pod "requests-pod-3" created
```

**NOTE** This time you're specifying the CPU request in whole cores (`cpu=1`) instead of millicores (`cpu=1000m`).

So far, so good. The pod has been accepted by the API server (you'll remember from the previous chapter that the API server can reject pods if they're invalid in any way). Now, check if the pod is running:

```
$ kubectl get po requests-pod-3
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
requests-pod-3  0/1     Pending   0          4m
```

Even if you wait a while, the pod is still stuck at Pending. You can see more information on why that's the case by using the `kubectl describe` command, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 14.4 Examining why a pod is stuck at Pending with `kubectl describe pod`

```
$ kubectl describe po requests-pod-3
Name:           requests-pod-3
Namespace:      default
Node:          /                                     ↪ No node is
Conditions:    Type      Status                ↪ The pod hasn't
               PodScheduled  False                been scheduled.
Events:        ... Warning FailedScheduling      ↪ Scheduling has
               No nodes are available
               that match all of the
               following predicates:::
               Insufficient cpu (1).
```

The output shows that the pod hasn't been scheduled because it can't fit on any node due to insufficient CPU on your single node. But why is that? The sum of the CPU requests of all three pods equals 2,000 millicores or exactly two cores, which is exactly what your node can provide. What's wrong?

#### DETERMINING WHY A POD ISN'T BEING SCHEDULED

You can figure out why the pod isn't being scheduled by inspecting the node resource. Use the `kubectl describe node` command again and examine the output more closely in the following listing.

#### Listing 14.5 Inspecting allocated resources on a node with `kubectl describe node`

```
$ kubectl describe node
Name:           minikube
...
Non-terminated Pods:   (7 in total)
  Namespace  Name        CPU Requ.   CPU Lim.   Mem Req.   Mem Lim.
  default    requests-pod  200m (10%)  0 (0%)   10Mi (0%)  0 (0%)
```

```

default      requests-pod-2   800m (40%)  0 (0%)    20Mi (1%)  0 (0%)
kube-system  dflt-http-b...  10m (0%)   10m (0%)  20Mi (1%)  20Mi (1%)
kube-system  kube-addon-...  5m (0%)   0 (0%)    50Mi (2%)  0 (0%)
kube-system  kube-dns-26...  260m (13%) 0 (0%)   110Mi (5%) 170Mi (8%)
kube-system  kubernetes-...  0 (0%)   0 (0%)    0 (0%)   0 (0%)
kube-system  nginx-ingre...  0 (0%)   0 (0%)    0 (0%)   0 (0%)
Allocated resources:
(Total limits may be over 100 percent, i.e., overcommitted.)
CPU Requests CPU Limits      Memory Requests Memory Limits
----- ----- ----- -----
1275m (63%) 10m (0%)     210Mi (11%) 190Mi (9%)

```

If you look at the bottom left of the listing, you'll see a total of 1,275 millicores have been requested by the running pods, which is 275 millicores more than what you requested for the first two pods you deployed. Something is eating up additional CPU resources.

You can find the culprit in the list of pods in the previous listing. Three pods in the `kube-system` namespace have explicitly requested CPU resources. Those pods plus your two pods leave only 725 millicores available for additional pods. Because your third pod requested 1,000 millicores, the Scheduler won't schedule it to this node, as that would make the node overcommitted.

#### FREEING RESOURCES TO GET THE POD SCHEDULED

The pod will only be scheduled when an adequate amount of CPU is freed (when one of the first two pods is deleted, for example). If you delete your second pod, the Scheduler will be notified of the deletion (through the watch mechanism described in chapter 11) and will schedule your third pod as soon as the second pod terminates. This is shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 14.6 Pod is scheduled after deleting another pod

```

$ kubectl delete po requests-pod-2
pod "requests-pod-2" deleted

$ kubectl get po
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
requests-pod 1/1    Running   0          2h
requests-pod-2 1/1   Terminating 0          1h
requests-pod-3 0/1    Pending   0          1h

$ kubectl get po
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
requests-pod 1/1    Running   0          2h
requests-pod-3 1/1   Running   0          1h

```

In all these examples, you've specified a request for memory, but it hasn't played any role in the scheduling because your node has more than enough allocatable memory to accommodate all your pods' requests. Both CPU and memory requests are treated the same way by the Scheduler, but in contrast to memory requests, a pod's CPU requests also play a role elsewhere—while the pod is running. You'll learn about this next.

### 14.1.3 Understanding how CPU requests affect CPU time sharing

You now have two pods running in your cluster (you can disregard the system pods right now, because they're mostly idle). One has requested 200 millicores and the other one five times as much. At the beginning of the chapter, we said Kubernetes distinguishes between resource requests and limits. You haven't defined any limits yet, so the two pods are in no way limited when it comes to how much CPU they can each consume. If the process inside each pod consumes as much CPU time as it can, how much CPU time does each pod get?

The CPU requests don't only affect scheduling—they also determine how the remaining (unused) CPU time is distributed between pods. Because your first pod requested 200 millicores of CPU and the other one 1,000 millicores, any unused CPU will be split among the two pods in a 1 to 5 ratio, as shown in figure 14.2. If both pods consume as much CPU as they can, the first pod will get one sixth or 16.7% of the CPU time and the other one the remaining five sixths or 83.3%.

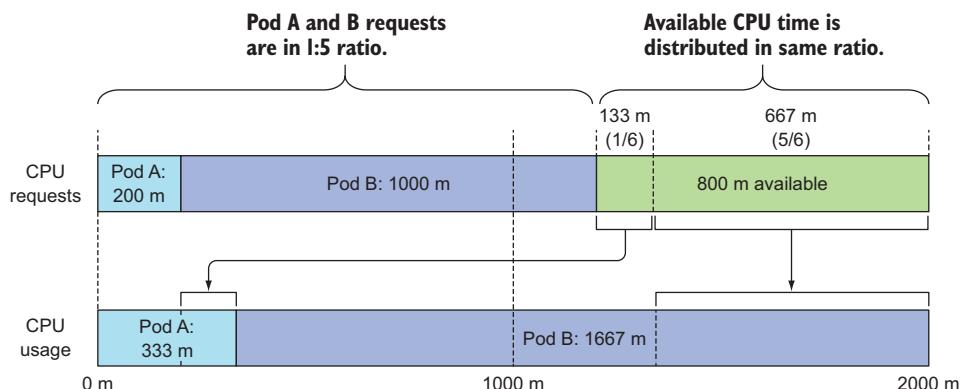


Figure 14.2 Unused CPU time is distributed to containers based on their CPU requests.

But if one container wants to use up as much CPU as it can, while the other one is sitting idle at a given moment, the first container will be allowed to use the whole CPU time (minus the small amount of time used by the second container, if any). After all, it makes sense to use all the available CPU if no one else is using it, right? As soon as the second container needs CPU time, it will get it and the first container will be throttled back.

### 14.1.4 Defining and requesting custom resources

Kubernetes also allows you to add your own custom resources to a node and request them in the pod's resource requests. Initially these were known as Opaque Integer Resources, but were replaced with Extended Resources in Kubernetes version 1.8.

First, you obviously need to make Kubernetes aware of your custom resource by adding it to the Node object's capacity field. This can be done by performing a PATCH HTTP request. The resource name can be anything, such as `example.org/my-resource`, as long as it doesn't start with the `kubernetes.io` domain. The quantity must be an integer (for example, you can't set it to 100 millis, because 0.1 isn't an integer; but you can set it to 1000m or 2000m or, simply, 1 or 2). The value will be copied from the `capacity` to the `allocatable` field automatically.

Then, when creating pods, you specify the same resource name and the requested quantity under the `resources.requests` field in the container spec or with `--requests` when using `kubectl run` like you did in previous examples. The Scheduler will make sure the pod is only deployed to a node that has the requested amount of the custom resource available. Every deployed pod obviously reduces the number of allocatable units of the resource.

An example of a custom resource could be the number of GPU units available on the node. Pods requiring the use of a GPU specify that in their requests. The Scheduler then makes sure the pod is only scheduled to nodes with at least one GPU still unallocated.

## 14.2 Limiting resources available to a container

Setting resource requests for containers in a pod ensures each container gets the minimum amount of resources it needs. Now let's see the other side of the coin—the maximum amount the container will be allowed to consume.

### 14.2.1 Setting a hard limit for the amount of resources a container can use

We've seen how containers are allowed to use up all the CPU if all the other processes are sitting idle. But you may want to prevent certain containers from using up more than a specific amount of CPU. And you'll always want to limit the amount of memory a container can consume.

CPU is a compressible resource, which means the amount used by a container can be throttled without affecting the process running in the container in an adverse way. Memory is obviously different—it's incompressible. Once a process is given a chunk of memory, that memory can't be taken away from it until it's released by the process itself. That's why you need to limit the maximum amount of memory a container can be given.

Without limiting memory, a container (or a pod) running on a worker node may eat up all the available memory and affect all other pods on the node and any new pods scheduled to the node (remember that new pods are scheduled to the node based on the memory requests and not actual memory usage). A single malfunctioning or malicious pod can practically make the whole node unusable.

#### CREATING A POD WITH RESOURCE LIMITS

To prevent this from happening, Kubernetes allows you to specify resource limits for every container (along with, and virtually in the same way as, resource requests). The following listing shows an example pod manifest with resource limits.

**Listing 14.7 A pod with a hard limit on CPU and memory: limited-pod.yaml**

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: limited-pod
spec:
  containers:
    - image: busybox
      command: ["dd", "if=/dev/zero", "of=/dev/null"]
      name: main
      resources:
        limits:
          cpu: 1
          memory: 20Mi
    
```

Specify resource limits for the container

The container will be allowed to use up to 20 mebibytes of memory.

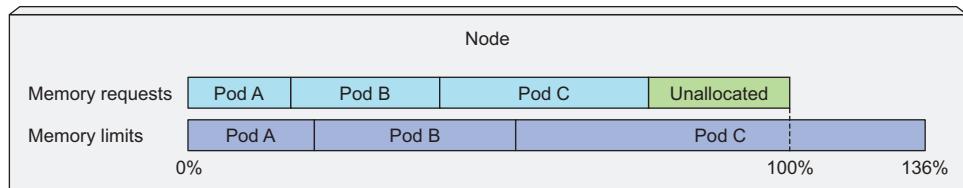
This container will be allowed to use at most 1 CPU core.

This pod’s container has resource limits configured for both CPU and memory. The process or processes running inside the container will not be allowed to consume more than 1 CPU core and 20 mebibytes of memory.

**NOTE** Because you haven’t specified any resource requests, they’ll be set to the same values as the resource limits.

### OVERCOMMITTING LIMITS

Unlike resource requests, resource limits aren’t constrained by the node’s allocatable resource amounts. The sum of all limits of all the pods on a node is allowed to exceed 100% of the node’s capacity (figure 14.3). Restated, resource limits can be overcommitted. This has an important consequence—when 100% of the node’s resources are used up, certain containers will need to be killed.



**Figure 14.3** The sum of resource limits of all pods on a node can exceed 100% of the node’s capacity.

You’ll see how Kubernetes decides which containers to kill in section 14.3, but individual containers can be killed even if they try to use more than their resource limits specify. You’ll learn more about this next.

### 14.2.2 Exceeding the limits

What happens when a process running in a container tries to use a greater amount of resources than it's allowed to?

You've already learned that CPU is a compressible resource, and it's only natural for a process to want to consume all of the CPU time when not waiting for an I/O operation. As you've learned, a process' CPU usage is throttled, so when a CPU limit is set for a container, the process isn't given more CPU time than the configured limit.

With memory, it's different. When a process tries to allocate memory over its limit, the process is killed (it's said the container is `OOMKilled`, where OOM stands for Out Of Memory). If the pod's restart policy is set to `Always` or `OnFailure`, the process is restarted immediately, so you may not even notice it getting killed. But if it keeps going over the memory limit and getting killed, Kubernetes will begin restarting it with increasing delays between restarts. You'll see a `CrashLoopBackOff` status in that case:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME      READY     STATUS           RESTARTS   AGE
memoryhog  0/1      CrashLoopBackOff  3          1m
```

The `CrashLoopBackOff` status doesn't mean the Kubelet has given up. It means that after each crash, the Kubelet is increasing the time period before restarting the container. After the first crash, it restarts the container immediately and then, if it crashes again, waits for 10 seconds before restarting it again. On subsequent crashes, this delay is then increased exponentially to 20, 40, 80, and 160 seconds, and finally limited to 300 seconds. Once the interval hits the 300-second limit, the Kubelet keeps restarting the container indefinitely every five minutes until the pod either stops crashing or is deleted.

To examine why the container crashed, you can check the pod's log and/or use the `kubectl describe pod` command, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 14.8 Inspecting why a container terminated with `kubectl describe pod`

```
$ kubectl describe pod
Name:           memoryhog
...
Containers:
  main:
    ...
    State:        Terminated
    Reason:      OOMKilled
    Exit Code:   137
    Started:     Tue, 27 Dec 2016 14:55:53 +0100
    Finished:    Tue, 27 Dec 2016 14:55:58 +0100
    Last State:  Terminated
    Reason:      OOMKilled
    Exit Code:   137
```

The current container was killed because it was out of memory (OOM).

The previous container was also killed because it was OOM

```

Started:      Tue, 27 Dec 2016 14:55:37 +0100
Finished:    Tue, 27 Dec 2016 14:55:50 +0100
Ready:        False
...

```

The OOMKilled status tells you that the container was killed because it was out of memory. In the previous listing, the container went over its memory limit and was killed immediately.

It's important not to set memory limits too low if you don't want your container to be killed. But containers can get OOMKilled even if they aren't over their limit. You'll see why in section 14.3.2, but first, let's discuss something that catches most users off-guard the first time they start specifying limits for their containers.

### 14.2.3 Understanding how apps in containers see limits

If you haven't deployed the pod from listing 14.7, deploy it now:

```
$ kubectl create -f limited-pod.yaml
pod "limited-pod" created
```

Now, run the top command in the container, the way you did at the beginning of the chapter. The command's output is shown in the following listing.

**Listing 14.9 Running the top command in a CPU- and memory-limited container**

```
$ kubectl exec -it limited-pod top
Mem: 1450980K used, 597504K free, 22012K shrd, 65876K buff, 857552K cached
CPU: 10.0% usr 40.0% sys 0.0% nic 50.0% idle 0.0% io 0.0% irq 0.0% sirq
Load average: 0.17 1.19 2.47 4/503 10
  PID  PPID USER      STAT  VSZ %VSZ CPU %CPU COMMAND
    1      0 root      R     1192  0.0    1 49.9 dd if /dev/zero of /dev/null
    5      0 root      R     1196  0.0    0  0.0 top
```

First, let me remind you that the pod's CPU limit is set to 1 core and its memory limit is set to 20 MiB. Now, examine the output of the top command closely. Is there anything that strikes you as odd?

Look at the amount of used and free memory. Those numbers are nowhere near the 20 MiB you set as the limit for the container. Similarly, you set the CPU limit to one core and it seems like the main process is using only 50% of the available CPU time, even though the dd command, when used like you're using it, usually uses all the CPU it has available. What's going on?

#### UNDERSTANDING THAT CONTAINERS ALWAYS SEE THE NODE'S MEMORY, NOT THE CONTAINER'S

The top command shows the memory amounts of the whole node the container is running on. Even though you set a limit on how much memory is available to a container, the container will not be aware of this limit.

This has an unfortunate effect on any application that looks up the amount of memory available on the system and uses that information to decide how much memory it wants to reserve.

The problem is visible when running Java apps, especially if you don't specify the maximum heap size for the Java Virtual Machine with the `-Xmx` option. In that case, the JVM will set the maximum heap size based on the host's total memory instead of the memory available to the container. When you run your containerized Java apps in a Kubernetes cluster on your laptop, the problem doesn't manifest itself, because the difference between the memory limits you set for the pod and the total memory available on your laptop is not that great.

But when you deploy your pod onto a production system, where nodes have much more physical memory, the JVM may go over the container's memory limit you configured and will be OOMKilled.

And if you think setting the `-Xmx` option properly solves the issue, you're wrong, unfortunately. The `-Xmx` option only constrains the heap size, but does nothing about the JVM's off-heap memory. Luckily, new versions of Java alleviate that problem by taking the configured container limits into account.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THAT CONTAINERS ALSO SEE ALL THE NODE'S CPU CORES**

Exactly like with memory, containers will also see all the node's CPUs, regardless of the CPU limits configured for the container. Setting a CPU limit to one core doesn't magically only expose only one CPU core to the container. All the CPU limit does is constrain the amount of CPU time the container can use.

A container with a one-core CPU limit running on a 64-core CPU will get 1/64th of the overall CPU time. And even though its limit is set to one core, the container's processes will not run on only one core. At different points in time, its code may be executed on different cores.

Nothing is wrong with this, right? While that's generally the case, at least one scenario exists where this situation is catastrophic.

Certain applications look up the number of CPUs on the system to decide how many worker threads they should run. Again, such an app will run fine on a development laptop, but when deployed on a node with a much bigger number of cores, it's going to spin up too many threads, all competing for the (possibly) limited CPU time. Also, each thread requires additional memory, causing the app's memory usage to skyrocket.

You may want to use the Downward API to pass the CPU limit to the container and use it instead of relying on the number of CPUs your app can see on the system. You can also tap into the cgroups system directly to get the configured CPU limit by reading the following files:

- `/sys/fs/cgroup/cpu/cpu.cfs_quota_us`
- `/sys/fs/cgroup/cpu/cpu.cfs_period_us`

## 14.3 Understanding pod QoS classes

We've already mentioned that resource limits can be overcommitted and that a node can't necessarily provide all its pods the amount of resources specified in their resource limits.

Imagine having two pods, where pod A is using, let's say, 90% of the node's memory and then pod B suddenly requires more memory than what it had been using up to that point and the node can't provide the required amount of memory. Which container should be killed? Should it be pod B, because its request for memory can't be satisfied, or should pod A be killed to free up memory, so it can be provided to pod B?

Obviously, it depends. Kubernetes can't make a proper decision on its own. You need a way to specify which pods have priority in such cases. Kubernetes does this by categorizing pods into three Quality of Service (QoS) classes:

- BestEffort (the lowest priority)
- Burstable
- Guaranteed (the highest)

### 14.3.1 Defining the QoS class for a pod

You might expect these classes to be assignable to pods through a separate field in the manifest, but they aren't. The QoS class is derived from the combination of resource requests and limits for the pod's containers. Here's how.

#### ASSIGNING A POD TO THE BESTEFFORT CLASS

The lowest priority QoS class is the BestEffort class. It's assigned to pods that don't have any requests or limits set at all (in any of their containers). This is the QoS class that has been assigned to all the pods you created in previous chapters. Containers running in these pods have had no resource guarantees whatsoever. In the worst case, they may get almost no CPU time at all and will be the first ones killed when memory needs to be freed for other pods. But because a BestEffort pod has no memory limits set, its containers may use as much memory as they want, if enough memory is available.

#### ASSIGNING A POD TO THE GUARANTEED CLASS

On the other end of the spectrum is the Guaranteed QoS class. This class is given to pods whose containers' requests are equal to the limits for all resources. For a pod's class to be Guaranteed, three things need to be true:

- Requests and limits need to be set for both CPU and memory.
- They need to be set for each container.
- They need to be equal (the limit needs to match the request for each resource in each container).

Because a container's resource requests, if not set explicitly, default to the limits, specifying the limits for all resources (for each container in the pod) is enough for

the pod to be Guaranteed. Containers in those pods get the requested amount of resources, but cannot consume additional ones (because their limits are no higher than their requests).

### ASSIGNING THE BURSTABLE QoS CLASS TO A POD

In between BestEffort and Guaranteed is the Burstable QoS class. All other pods fall into this class. This includes single-container pods where the container's limits don't match its requests and all pods where at least one container has a resource request specified, but not the limit. It also includes pods where one container's requests match their limits, but another container has no requests or limits specified. Burstable pods get the amount of resources they request, but are allowed to use additional resources (up to the limit) if needed.

### UNDERSTANDING HOW THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN REQUESTS AND LIMITS DEFINES THE QoS CLASS

All three QoS classes and their relationships with requests and limits are shown in figure 14.4.

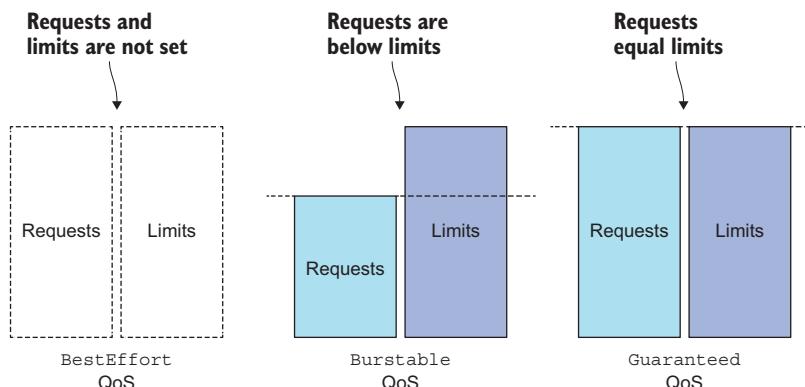


Figure 14.4 Resource requests, limits and QoS classes

Thinking about what QoS class a pod has can make your head spin, because it involves multiple containers, multiple resources, and all the possible relationships between requests and limits. It's easier if you start by thinking about QoS at the container level (although QoS classes are a property of pods, not containers) and then derive the pod's QoS class from the QoS classes of containers.

### FIGURING OUT A CONTAINER'S QoS CLASS

Table 14.1 shows the QoS class based on how resource requests and limits are defined on a single container. For single-container pods, the QoS class applies to the pod as well.

**Table 14.1** The QoS class of a single-container pod based on resource requests and limits

| CPU requests vs. limits | Memory requests vs. limits | Container QoS class |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| None set                | None set                   | BestEffort          |
| None set                | Requests < Limits          | Burstable           |
| None set                | Requests = Limits          | Burstable           |
| Requests < Limits       | None set                   | Burstable           |
| Requests < Limits       | Requests < Limits          | Burstable           |
| Requests < Limits       | Requests = Limits          | Burstable           |
| Requests = Limits       | Requests = Limits          | Guaranteed          |

**NOTE** If only requests are set, but not limits, refer to the table rows where requests are less than the limits. If only limits are set, requests default to the limits, so refer to the rows where requests equal limits.

#### FIGURING OUT THE QoS CLASS OF A POD WITH MULTIPLE CONTAINERS

For multi-container pods, if all the containers have the same QoS class, that's also the pod's QoS class. If at least one container has a different class, the pod's QoS class is `Burstable`, regardless of what the container classes are. Table 14.2 shows how a two-container pod's QoS class relates to the classes of its two containers. You can easily extend this to pods with more than two containers.

**Table 14.2** A Pod's QoS class derived from the classes of its containers

| Container 1 QoS class | Container 2 QoS class | Pod's QoS class |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| BestEffort            | BestEffort            | BestEffort      |
| BestEffort            | Burstable             | Burstable       |
| BestEffort            | Guaranteed            | Burstable       |
| Burstable             | Burstable             | Burstable       |
| Burstable             | Guaranteed            | Burstable       |
| Guaranteed            | Guaranteed            | Guaranteed      |

**NOTE** A pod's QoS class is shown when running `kubectl describe pod` and in the pod's YAML/JSON manifest in the `status.qosClass` field.

We've explained how QoS classes are determined, but we still need to look at how they determine which container gets killed in an overcommitted system.

### 14.3.2 Understanding which process gets killed when memory is low

When the system is overcommitted, the QoS classes determine which container gets killed first so the freed resources can be given to higher priority pods. First in line to get killed are pods in the BestEffort class, followed by Burstable pods, and finally Guaranteed pods, which only get killed if system processes need memory.

#### UNDERSTANDING HOW QoS CLASSES LINE UP

Let's look at the example shown in figure 14.5. Imagine having two single-container pods, where the first one has the BestEffort QoS class, and the second one's is Burstable. When the node's whole memory is already maxed out and one of the processes on the node tries to allocate more memory, the system will need to kill one of the processes (perhaps even the process trying to allocate additional memory) to honor the allocation request. In this case, the process running in the BestEffort pod will always be killed before the one in the Burstable pod.

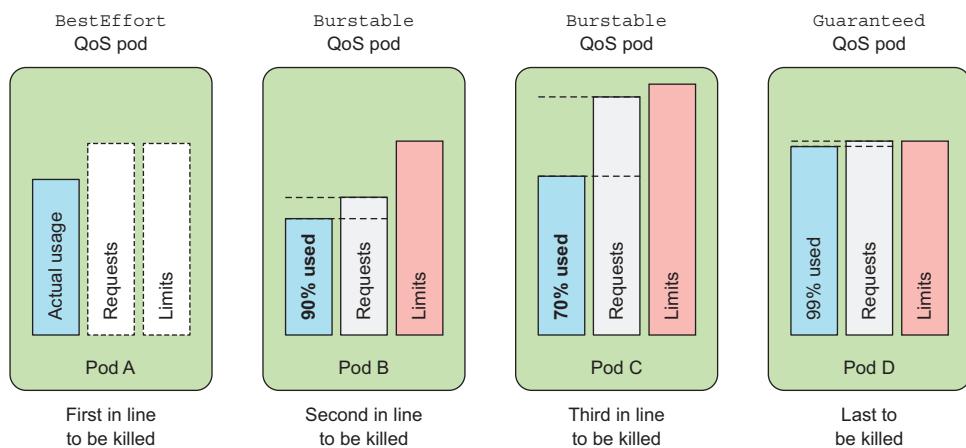


Figure 14.5 Which pods get killed first

Obviously, a BestEffort pod's process will also be killed before any Guaranteed pods' processes are killed. Likewise, a Burstable pod's process will also be killed before that of a Guaranteed pod. But what happens if there are only two Burstable pods? Clearly, the selection process needs to prefer one over the other.

#### UNDERSTANDING HOW CONTAINERS WITH THE SAME QoS CLASS ARE HANDLED

Each running process has an OutOfMemory (OOM) score. The system selects the process to kill by comparing OOM scores of all the running processes. When memory needs to be freed, the process with the highest score gets killed.

OOM scores are calculated from two things: the percentage of the available memory the process is consuming and a fixed OOM score adjustment, which is based on the pod's QoS class and the container's requested memory. When two single-container pods exist, both in the Burstable class, the system will kill the one using more of its requested

memory than the other, percentage-wise. That's why in figure 14.5, pod B, using 90% of its requested memory, gets killed before pod C, which is only using 70%, even though it's using more megabytes of memory than pod B.

This shows you need to be mindful of not only the relationship between requests and limits, but also of requests and the expected actual memory consumption.

## 14.4 Setting default requests and limits for pods per namespace

We've looked at how resource requests and limits can be set for each individual container. If you don't set them, the container is at the mercy of all other containers that do specify resource requests and limits. It's a good idea to set requests and limits on every container.

### 14.4.1 Introducing the LimitRange resource

Instead of having to do this for every container, you can also do it by creating a LimitRange resource. It allows you to specify (for each namespace) not only the minimum and maximum limit you can set on a container for each resource, but also the default resource requests for containers that don't specify requests explicitly, as depicted in figure 14.6.

**Rejected because  
requests and limits are  
outside min/max values**

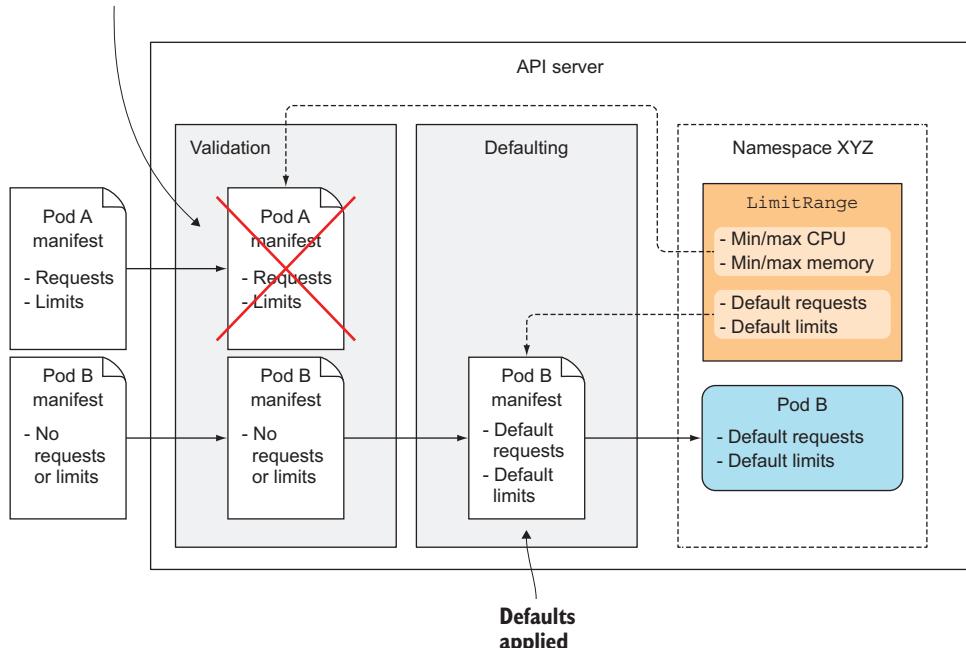


Figure 14.6 A LimitRange is used for validation and defaulting pods.

LimitRange resources are used by the LimitRanger Admission Control plugin (we explained what those plugins are in chapter 11). When a pod manifest is posted to the API server, the LimitRanger plugin validates the pod spec. If validation fails, the manifest is rejected immediately. Because of this, a great use-case for LimitRange objects is to prevent users from creating pods that are bigger than any node in the cluster. Without such a LimitRange, the API server will gladly accept the pod, but then never schedule it.

The limits specified in a LimitRange resource apply to each individual pod/container or other kind of object created in the same namespace as the LimitRange object. They don't limit the total amount of resources available across all the pods in the namespace. This is specified through ResourceQuota objects, which are explained in section 14.5.

#### 14.4.2 Creating a LimitRange object

Let's look at a full example of a LimitRange and see what the individual properties do. The following listing shows the full definition of a LimitRange resource.

**Listing 14.10 A LimitRange resource: limits.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: LimitRange
metadata:
  name: example
spec:
  limits:
    - type: Pod
      min:
        cpu: 50m
        memory: 5Mi
      max:
        cpu: 1
        memory: 1Gi
    - type: Container
      defaultRequest:
        cpu: 100m
        memory: 10Mi
      default:
        cpu: 200m
        memory: 100Mi
      min:
        cpu: 50m
        memory: 5Mi
      max:
        cpu: 1
        memory: 1Gi
      maxLimitRequestRatio:
        cpu: 4
        memory: 10
```

The container limits are specified below this line.

Specifies the limits for a pod as a whole

Minimum CPU and memory all the pod's containers can request in total

Maximum CPU and memory all the pod's containers can request (and limit)

Default requests for CPU and memory that will be applied to containers that don't specify them explicitly

Default limits for containers that don't specify them

Minimum and maximum requests/limits that a container can have

Maximum ratio between the limit and request for each resource

```
- type: PersistentVolumeClaim
  min:
    storage: 1Gi
  max:
    storage: 10Gi
```

A LimitRange can also set the minimum and maximum amount of storage a PVC can request.

As you can see from the previous example, the minimum and maximum limits for a whole pod can be configured. They apply to the sum of all the pod's containers' requests and limits.

Lower down, at the container level, you can set not only the minimum and maximum, but also default resource requests (`defaultRequest`) and default limits (`default`) that will be applied to each container that doesn't specify them explicitly.

Beside the `min`, `max`, and `default` values, you can even set the maximum ratio of limits vs. requests. The previous listing sets the CPU `maxLimitRequestRatio` to 4, which means a container's CPU limits will not be allowed to be more than four times greater than its CPU requests. A container requesting 200 millicores will not be accepted if its CPU limit is set to 801 millicores or higher. For memory, the maximum ratio is set to 10.

In chapter 6 we looked at PersistentVolumeClaims (PVC), which allow you to claim a certain amount of persistent storage similarly to how a pod's containers claim CPU and memory. In the same way you're limiting the minimum and maximum amount of CPU a container can request, you should also limit the amount of storage a single PVC can request. A LimitRange object allows you to do that as well, as you can see at the bottom of the example.

The example shows a single LimitRange object containing limits for everything, but you could also split them into multiple objects if you prefer to have them organized per type (one for pod limits, another for container limits, and yet another for PVCs, for example). Limits from multiple LimitRange objects are all consolidated when validating a pod or PVC.

Because the validation (and defaults) configured in a LimitRange object is performed by the API server when it receives a new pod or PVC manifest, if you modify the limits afterwards, existing pods and PVCs will not be revalidated—the new limits will only apply to pods and PVCs created afterward.

#### 14.4.3 Enforcing the limits

With your limits in place, you can now try creating a pod that requests more CPU than allowed by the LimitRange. You'll find the YAML for the pod in the code archive. The next listing only shows the part relevant to the discussion.

**Listing 14.11 A pod with CPU requests greater than the limit: limits-pod-too-big.yaml**

```
resources:
  requests:
    cpu: 2
```

The pod's single container is requesting two CPUs, which is more than the maximum you set in the LimitRange earlier. Creating the pod yields the following result:

```
$ kubectl create -f limits-pod-too-big.yaml
Error from server (Forbidden): error when creating "limits-pod-too-big.yaml":
pods "too-big" is forbidden: [
    maximum cpu usage per Pod is 1, but request is 2.,
    maximum cpu usage per Container is 1, but request is 2.]
```

I've modified the output slightly to make it more legible. The nice thing about the error message from the server is that it lists all the reasons why the pod was rejected, not only the first one it encountered. As you can see, the pod was rejected for two reasons: you requested two CPUs for the container, but the maximum CPU limit for a container is one. Likewise, the pod as a whole requested two CPUs, but the maximum is one CPU (if this was a multi-container pod, even if each individual container requested less than the maximum amount of CPU, together they'd still need to request less than two CPUs to pass the maximum CPU for pods).

#### 14.4.4 Applying default resource requests and limits

Now let's also see how default resource requests and limits are set on containers that don't specify them. Deploy the `kubia-manual` pod from chapter 3 again:

```
$ kubectl create -f ./Chapter03/kubia-manual.yaml
pod "kubia-manual" created
```

Before you set up your LimitRange object, all your pods were created without any resource requests or limits, but now the defaults are applied automatically when creating the pod. You can confirm this by describing the `kubia-manual` pod, as shown in the following listing.

##### Listing 14.12 Inspecting limits that were applied to a pod automatically

```
$ kubectl describe po kubia-manual
Name:           kubia-manual
...
Containers:
  kubia:
    Limits:
      cpu:        200m
      memory:     100Mi
    Requests:
      cpu:        100m
      memory:     10Mi
```

The container's requests and limits match the ones you specified in the LimitRange object. If you used a different LimitRange specification in another namespace, pods created in that namespace would obviously have different requests and limits. This allows admins to configure default, min, and max resources for pods per namespace.

If namespaces are used to separate different teams or to separate development, QA, staging, and production pods running in the same Kubernetes cluster, using a different LimitRange in each namespace ensures large pods can only be created in certain namespaces, whereas others are constrained to smaller pods.

But remember, the limits configured in a LimitRange only apply to each individual pod/container. It's still possible to create many pods and eat up all the resources available in the cluster. LimitRanges don't provide any protection from that. A ResourceQuota object, on the other hand, does. You'll learn about them next.

## 14.5 Limiting the total resources available in a namespace

As you've seen, LimitRanges only apply to individual pods, but cluster admins also need a way to limit the total amount of resources available in a namespace. This is achieved by creating a ResourceQuota object.

### 14.5.1 Introducing the ResourceQuota object

In chapter 10 we said that several Admission Control plugins running inside the API server verify whether the pod may be created or not. In the previous section, I said that the LimitRanger plugin enforces the policies configured in LimitRange resources. Similarly, the ResourceQuota Admission Control plugin checks whether the pod being created would cause the configured ResourceQuota to be exceeded. If that's the case, the pod's creation is rejected. Because resource quotas are enforced at pod creation time, a ResourceQuota object only affects pods created after the ResourceQuota object is created—creating it has no effect on existing pods.

A ResourceQuota limits the amount of computational resources the pods and the amount of storage PersistentVolumeClaims in a namespace can consume. It can also limit the number of pods, claims, and other API objects users are allowed to create inside the namespace. Because you've mostly dealt with CPU and memory so far, let's start by looking at how to specify quotas for them.

#### CREATING A RESOURCEQUOTA FOR CPU AND MEMORY

The overall CPU and memory all the pods in a namespace are allowed to consume is defined by creating a ResourceQuota object as shown in the following listing.

##### Listing 14.13 A ResourceQuota resource for CPU and memory: quota-cpu-memory.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ResourceQuota
metadata:
  name: cpu-and-mem
spec:
  hard:
    requests.cpu: 400m
    requests.memory: 200Mi
    limits.cpu: 600m
    limits.memory: 500Mi
```

Instead of defining a single total for each resource, you define separate totals for requests and limits for both CPU and memory. You'll notice the structure is a bit different, compared to that of a LimitRange. Here, both the requests and the limits for all resources are defined in a single place.

This ResourceQuota sets the maximum amount of CPU pods in the namespace can request to 400 millicores. The maximum total CPU limits in the namespace are set to 600 millicores. For memory, the maximum total requests are set to 200 MiB, whereas the limits are set to 500 MiB.

A ResourceQuota object applies to the namespace it's created in, like a LimitRange, but it applies to all the pods' resource requests and limits in total and not to each individual pod or container separately, as shown in figure 14.7.

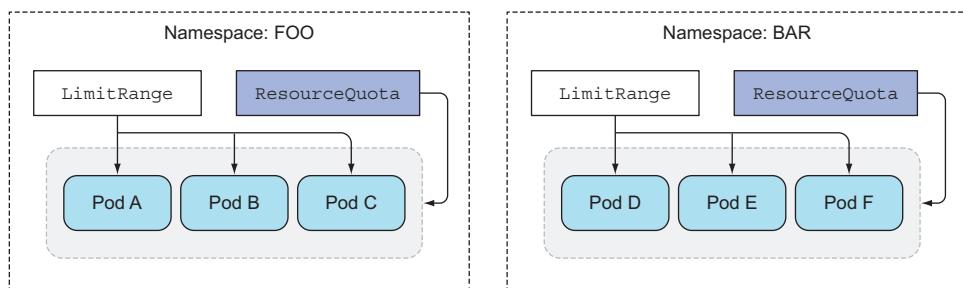


Figure 14.7 LimitRanges apply to individual pods; ResourceQuotas apply to all pods in the namespace.

### INSPECTING THE QUOTA AND QUOTA USAGE

After you post the ResourceQuota object to the API server, you can use the `kubectl describe` command to see how much of the quota is already used up, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 14.14 Inspecting the ResourceQuota with `kubectl describe quota`

```
$ kubectl describe quota
Name:          cpu-and-mem
Namespace:     default
Resource       Used   Hard
-----
limits.cpu    200m   600m
limits.memory 100Mi  500Mi
requests.cpu  100m   400m
requests.memory 10Mi  200Mi
```

I only have the `kubia-manual` pod running, so the `Used` column matches its resource requests and limits. When I run additional pods, their requests and limits are added to the used amounts.

### CREATING A LIMITRANGE ALONG WITH A RESOURCEQUOTA

One caveat when creating a ResourceQuota is that you will also want to create a LimitRange object alongside it. In your case, you have a LimitRange configured from the previous section, but if you didn't have one, you couldn't run the `kubia-manual` pod, because it doesn't specify any resource requests or limits. Here's what would happen in that case:

```
$ kubectl create -f ./Chapter03/kubia-manual.yaml
Error from server (Forbidden): error when creating ".../Chapter03/kubia-
manual.yaml": pods "kubia-manual" is forbidden: failed quota: cpu-and-
mem: must specify limits.cpu,limits.memory,requests.cpu,requests.memory
```

When a quota for a specific resource (CPU or memory) is configured (request or limit), pods need to have the request or limit (respectively) set for that same resource; otherwise the API server will not accept the pod. That's why having a LimitRange with defaults for those resources can make life a bit easier for people creating pods.

#### 14.5.2 Specifying a quota for persistent storage

A ResourceQuota object can also limit the amount of persistent storage that can be claimed in the namespace, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 14.15 A ResourceQuota for storage: quota-storage.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ResourceQuota
metadata:
  name: storage
spec:
  hard:
    requests.storage: 500Gi
    ssd.storageclass.storage.k8s.io/requests.storage: 300Gi
    standard.storageclass.storage.k8s.io/requests.storage: 1Ti
```

The amount of storage claimable overall

The amount of claimable storage in StorageClass ssd

In this example, the amount of storage all PersistentVolumeClaims in a namespace can request is limited to 500 GiB (by the `requests.storage` entry in the ResourceQuota object). But as you'll remember from chapter 6, PersistentVolumeClaims can request a dynamically provisioned PersistentVolume of a specific StorageClass. That's why Kubernetes also makes it possible to define storage quotas for each StorageClass individually. The previous example limits the total amount of claimable SSD storage (designated by the `ssd` StorageClass) to 300 GiB. The less-performant HDD storage (`StorageClass standard`) is limited to 1 TiB.

#### 14.5.3 Limiting the number of objects that can be created

A ResourceQuota can also be configured to limit the number of Pods, ReplicationControllers, Services, and other objects inside a single namespace. This allows the cluster admin to limit the number of objects users can create based on their payment

plan, for example, and can also limit the number of public IPs or node ports Services can use.

The following listing shows what a ResourceQuota object that limits the number of objects may look like.

**Listing 14.16 A ResourceQuota for max number of resources: quota-object-count.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ResourceQuota
metadata:
  name: objects
spec:
  hard:
    pods: 10
    replicationcontrollers: 5
    secrets: 10
    configmaps: 10
    persistentvolumeclaims: 4
    services: 5
    services.loadbalancers: 1
    services.nodeports: 2
    ssd.storageclass.storage.k8s.io/persistentvolumeclaims: 2
```

Annotations for Listing 14.16:

- Only 10 Pods, 5 ReplicationControllers, 10 Secrets, 10 ConfigMaps, and 4 PersistentVolumeClaims can be created in the namespace.**
- Five Services overall can be created, of which at most one can be a LoadBalancer Service and at most two can be NodePort Services.**
- Only two PVCs can claim storage with the ssd StorageClass.**

The ResourceQuota in this listing allows users to create at most 10 Pods in the namespace, regardless if they're created manually or by a ReplicationController, ReplicaSet, DaemonSet, Job, and so on. It also limits the number of ReplicationControllers to five. A maximum of five Services can be created, of which only one can be a LoadBalancer-type Service, and only two can be NodePort Services. Similar to how the maximum amount of requested storage can be specified per StorageClass, the number of PersistentVolumeClaims can also be limited per StorageClass.

Object count quotas can currently be set for the following objects:

- Pods
- ReplicationControllers
- Secrets
- ConfigMaps
- PersistentVolumeClaims
- Services (in general), and for two specific types of Services, such as LoadBalancer Services (`services.loadbalancers`) and NodePort Services (`services.nodeports`)

Finally, you can even set an object count quota for ResourceQuota objects themselves. The number of other objects, such as ReplicaSets, Jobs, Deployments, Ingresses, and so on, cannot be limited yet (but this may have changed since the book was published, so please check the documentation for up-to-date information).

#### 14.5.4 Specifying quotas for specific pod states and/or QoS classes

The quotas you've created so far have applied to all pods, regardless of their current state and QoS class. But quotas can also be limited to a set of *quota scopes*. Four scopes are currently available: BestEffort, NotBestEffort, Terminating, and NotTerminating.

The BestEffort and NotBestEffort scopes determine whether the quota applies to pods with the BestEffort QoS class or with one of the other two classes (that is, Burstable and Guaranteed).

The other two scopes (Terminating and NotTerminating) don't apply to pods that are (or aren't) in the process of shutting down, as the name might lead you to believe. We haven't talked about this, but you can specify how long each pod is allowed to run before it's terminated and marked as Failed. This is done by setting the activeDeadlineSeconds field in the pod spec. This property defines the number of seconds a pod is allowed to be active on the node relative to its start time before it's marked as Failed and then terminated. The Terminating quota scope applies to pods that have the activeDeadlineSeconds set, whereas the NotTerminating applies to those that don't.

When creating a ResourceQuota, you can specify the scopes that it applies to. A pod must match all the specified scopes for the quota to apply to it. Additionally, what a quota can limit depends on the quota's scope. BestEffort scope can only limit the number of pods, whereas the other three scopes can limit the number of pods, CPU/memory requests, and CPU/memory limits.

If, for example, you want the quota to apply only to BestEffort, NotTerminating pods, you can create the ResourceQuota object shown in the following listing.

**Listing 14.17 ResourceQuota for BestEffort/NotTerminating pods:  
quota-scoped.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: ResourceQuota
metadata:
  name: besteffort-notterminating-pods
spec:
  scopes:
    - BestEffort
    - NotTerminating
  hard:
    pods: 4
```

This quota only applies to pods  
that have the BestEffort QoS and  
don't have an active deadline set.

Only four such  
pods can exist.

This quota ensures that at most four pods exist with the BestEffort QoS class, which don't have an active deadline. If the quota was targeting NotBestEffort pods instead, you could also specify requests.cpu, requests.memory, limits.cpu, and limits.memory.

**NOTE** Before you move on to the next section of this chapter, please delete all the ResourceQuota and LimitRange resources you created. You won't

need them anymore and they may interfere with examples in the following chapters.

## 14.6 Monitoring pod resource usage

Properly setting resource requests and limits is crucial for getting the most out of your Kubernetes cluster. If requests are set too high, your cluster nodes will be underutilized and you'll be throwing money away. If you set them too low, your apps will be CPU-starved or even killed by the OOM Killer. How do you find the sweet spot for requests and limits?

You find it by monitoring the actual resource usage of your containers under the expected load levels. Once the application is exposed to the public, you should keep monitoring it and adjust the resource requests and limits if required.

### 14.6.1 Collecting and retrieving actual resource usages

How does one monitor apps running in Kubernetes? Luckily, the Kubelet itself already contains an agent called cAdvisor, which performs the basic collection of resource consumption data for both individual containers running on the node and the node as a whole. Gathering those statistics centrally for the whole cluster requires you to run an additional component called Heapster.

Heapster runs as a pod on one of the nodes and is exposed through a regular Kubernetes Service, making it accessible at a stable IP address. It collects the data from all cAdvisors in the cluster and exposes it in a single location. Figure 14.8 shows the flow of the metrics data from the pods, through cAdvisor and finally into Heapster.

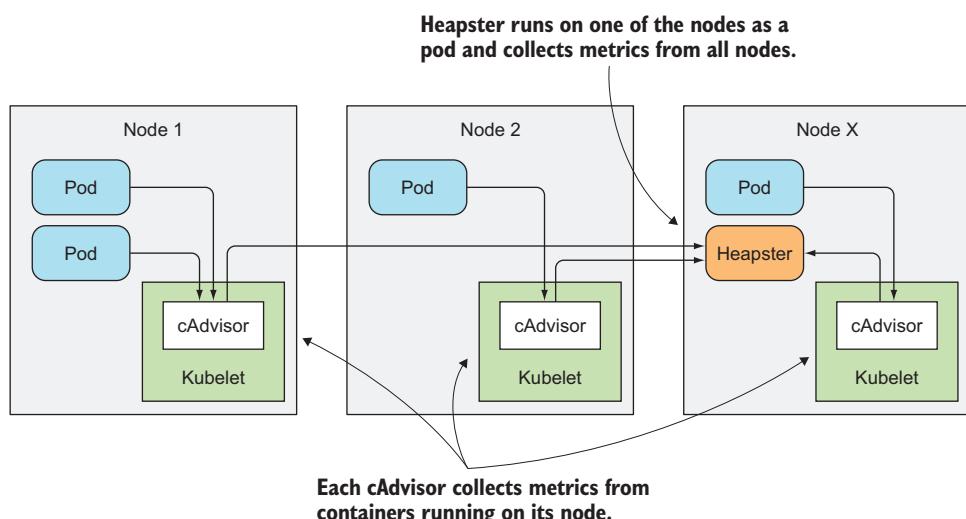


Figure 14.8 The flow of metrics data into Heapster

The arrows in the figure show how the metrics data flows. They don't show which component connects to which to get the data. The pods (or the containers running therein) don't know anything about cAdvisor, and cAdvisor doesn't know anything about Heapster. It's Heapster that connects to all the cAdvisors, and it's the cAdvisors that collect the container and node usage data without having to talk to the processes running inside the pods' containers.

### ENABLING HEAPSTER

If you're running a cluster in Google Kubernetes Engine, Heapster is enabled by default. If you're using Minikube, it's available as an add-on and can be enabled with the following command:

```
$ minikube addons enable heapster  
heapster was successfully enabled
```

To run Heapster manually in other types of Kubernetes clusters, you can refer to instructions located at <https://github.com/kubernetes/heapster>.

After enabling Heapster, you'll need to wait a few minutes for it to collect metrics before you can see resource usage statistics for your cluster, so be patient.

### DISPLAYING CPU AND MEMORY USAGE FOR CLUSTER NODES

Running Heapster in your cluster makes it possible to obtain resource usages for nodes and individual pods through the `kubectl top` command. To see how much CPU and memory is being used on your nodes, you can run the command shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 14.18 Actual CPU and memory usage of nodes

```
$ kubectl top node  
NAME      CPU(cores)   CPU%      MEMORY(bytes)   MEMORY%  
minikube  170m        8%        556Mi          27%
```

This shows the actual, current CPU and memory usage of all the pods running on the node, unlike the `kubectl describe node` command, which shows the amount of CPU and memory requests and limits instead of actual runtime usage data.

### DISPLAYING CPU AND MEMORY USAGE FOR INDIVIDUAL PODS

To see how much each individual pod is using, you can use the `kubectl top pod` command, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 14.19 Actual CPU and memory usages of pods

```
$ kubectl top pod --all-namespaces  
NAMESPACE      NAME            CPU(cores)   MEMORY(bytes)  
kube-system    influxdb-grafana-2r2w9  1m          32Mi  
kube-system    heapster-40j6d       0m          18Mi
```

|             |                             |    |      |
|-------------|-----------------------------|----|------|
| default     | kubia-3773182134-63bmb      | 0m | 9Mi  |
| kube-system | kube-dns-v20-z0hq6          | 1m | 11Mi |
| kube-system | kubernetes-dashboard-r53mc  | 0m | 14Mi |
| kube-system | kube-addon-manager-minikube | 7m | 33Mi |

The outputs of both these commands are fairly simple, so you probably don't need me to explain them, but I do need to warn you about one thing. Sometimes the `top` pod command will refuse to show any metrics and instead print out an error like this:

```
$ kubectl top pod
W0312 22:12:58.021885 15126 top_pod.go:186] Metrics not available for pod
    default/kubia-3773182134-63bmb, age: 1h24m19.021873823s
error: Metrics not available for pod default/kubia-3773182134-63bmb, age:
    1h24m19.021873823s
```

If this happens, don't start looking for the cause of the error yet. Relax, wait a while, and rerun the command—it may take a few minutes, but the metrics should appear eventually. The `kubectl top` command gets the metrics from Heapster, which aggregates the data over a few minutes and doesn't expose it immediately.

**TIP** To see resource usages across individual containers instead of pods, you can use the `--containers` option.

### 14.6.2 Storing and analyzing historical resource consumption statistics

The `top` command only shows current resource usages—it doesn't show you how much CPU or memory your pods consumed throughout the last hour, yesterday, or a week ago, for example. In fact, both cAdvisor and Heapster only hold resource usage data for a short window of time. If you want to analyze your pods' resource consumption over longer time periods, you'll need to run additional tools.

When using Google Kubernetes Engine, you can monitor your cluster with Google Cloud Monitoring, but when you're running your own local Kubernetes cluster (either through Minikube or other means), people usually use InfluxDB for storing statistics data and Grafana for visualizing and analyzing them.

#### INTRODUCING INFLUXDB AND GRAFANA

InfluxDB is an open source time-series database ideal for storing application metrics and other monitoring data. Grafana, also open source, is an analytics and visualization suite with a nice-looking web console that allows you to visualize the data stored in InfluxDB and discover how your application's resource usage behaves over time (an example showing three Grafana charts is shown in figure 14.9).

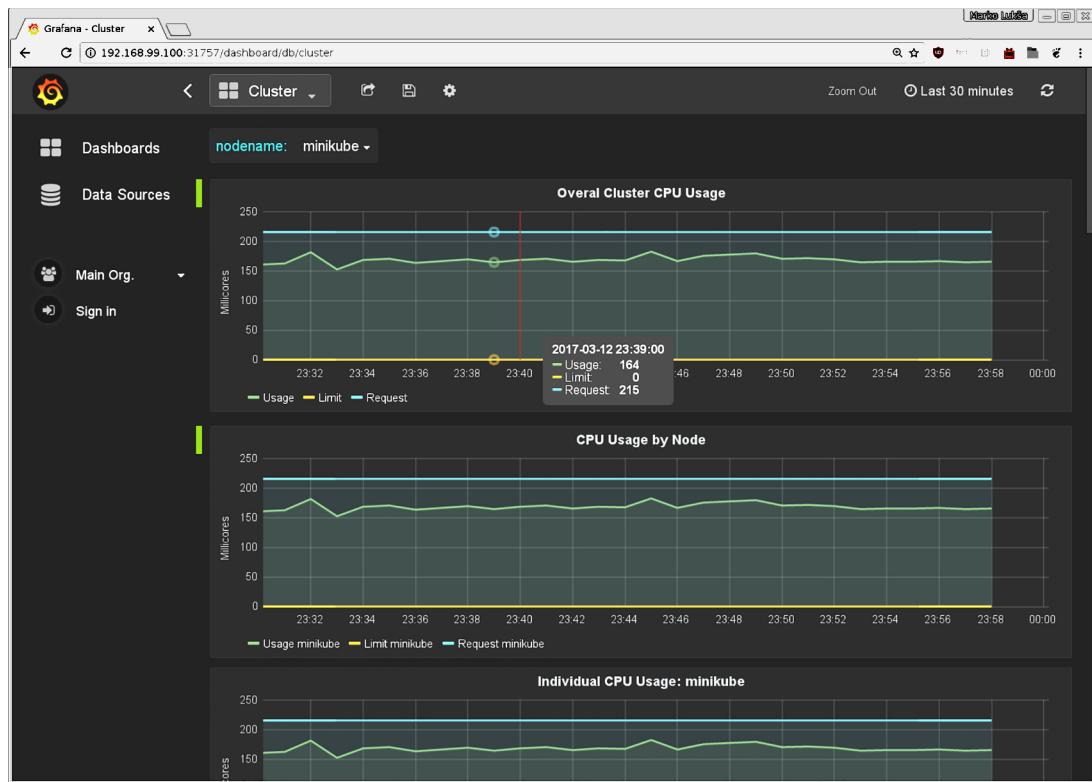


Figure 14.9 Grafana dashboard showing CPU usage across the cluster

### RUNNING INFLUXDB AND GRAFANA IN YOUR CLUSTER

Both InfluxDB and Grafana can run as pods. Deploying them is straightforward. All the necessary manifests are available in the Heapster Git repository at <http://github.com/kubernetes/heapster/tree/master/deploy/kube-config/influxdb>.

When using Minikube, you don't even need to deploy them manually, because they're deployed along with Heapster when you enable the Heapster add-on.

### ANALYZING RESOURCE USAGE WITH GRAFANA

To discover how much of each resource your pod requires over time, open the Grafana web console and explore the predefined dashboards. Generally, you can find out the URL of Grafana's web console with `kubectl cluster-info`:

```
$ kubectl cluster-info
...
monitoring-grafana is running at
https://192.168.99.100:8443/api/v1/proxy/namespaces/kube-
system/services/monitoring-grafana
```

When using Minikube, Grafana's web console is exposed through a NodePort Service, so you can open it in your browser with the following command:

```
$ minikube service monitoring-grafana -n kube-system
Opening kubernetes service kube-system/monitoring-grafana in default
browser...
```

A new browser window or tab will open and show the Grafana Home screen. On the right-hand side, you'll see a list of dashboards containing two entries:

- Cluster
- Pods

To see the resource usage statistics of the nodes, open the Cluster dashboard. There you'll see several charts showing the overall cluster usage, usage by node, and the individual usage for CPU, memory, network, and filesystem. The charts will not only show the actual usage, but also the requests and limits for those resources (where they apply).

If you then switch over to the Pods dashboard, you can examine the resource usages for each individual pod, again with both requests and limits shown alongside the actual usage.

Initially, the charts show the statistics for the last 30 minutes, but you can zoom out and see the data for much longer time periods: days, months, or even years.

#### **USING THE INFORMATION SHOWN IN THE CHARTS**

By looking at the charts, you can quickly see if the resource requests or limits you've set for your pods need to be raised or whether they can be lowered to allow more pods to fit on your nodes. Let's look at an example. Figure 14.10 shows the CPU and memory charts for a pod.

At the far right of the top chart, you can see the pod is using more CPU than was requested in the pod's manifest. Although this isn't problematic when this is the only pod running on the node, you should keep in mind that a pod is only guaranteed as much of a resource as it requests through resource requests. Your pod may be running fine now, but when other pods are deployed to the same node and start using the CPU, your pod's CPU time may be throttled. Because of this, to ensure the pod can use as much CPU as it needs to at any time, you should raise the CPU resource request for the pod's container.

The bottom chart shows the pod's memory usage and request. Here the situation is the exact opposite. The amount of memory the pod is using is well below what was requested in the pod's spec. The requested memory is reserved for the pod and won't be available to other pods. The unused memory is therefore wasted. You should decrease the pod's memory request to make the memory available to other pods running on the node.

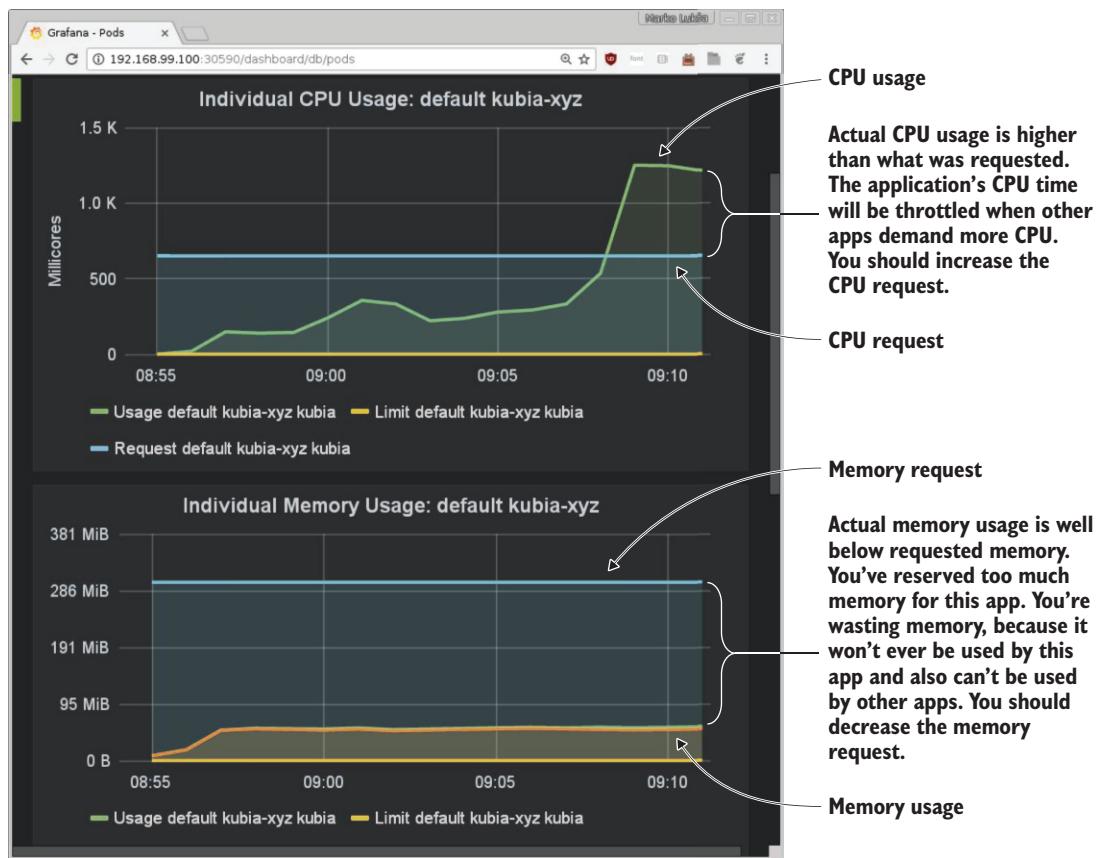


Figure 14.10 CPU and memory usage chart for a pod

## 14.7 Summary

This chapter has shown you that you need to consider your pod’s resource usage and configure both the resource requests and the limits for your pod to keep everything running smoothly. The key takeaways from this chapter are

- Specifying resource requests helps Kubernetes schedule pods across the cluster.
- Specifying resource limits keeps pods from starving other pods of resources.
- Unused CPU time is allocated based on containers’ CPU requests.
- Containers never get killed if they try to use too much CPU, but they are killed if they try to use too much memory.
- In an overcommitted system, containers also get killed to free memory for more important pods, based on the pods’ QoS classes and actual memory usage.

- You can use LimitRange objects to define the minimum, maximum, and default resource requests and limits for individual pods.
- You can use ResourceQuota objects to limit the amount of resources available to all the pods in a namespace.
- To know how high to set a pod's resource requests and limits, you need to monitor how the pod uses resources over a long-enough time period.

In the next chapter, you'll see how these metrics can be used by Kubernetes to automatically scale your pods.

# 15

## *Automatic scaling of pods and cluster nodes*

### This chapter covers

- Configuring automatic horizontal scaling of pods based on CPU utilization
- Configuring automatic horizontal scaling of pods based on custom metrics
- Understanding why vertical scaling of pods isn't possible yet
- Understanding automatic horizontal scaling of cluster nodes

Applications running in pods can be scaled out manually by increasing the `replicas` field in the `ReplicationController`, `ReplicaSet`, `Deployment`, or other scalable resource. Pods can also be scaled vertically by increasing their container's resource requests and limits (though this can currently only be done at pod creation time, not while the pod is running). Although manual scaling is okay for times when you can anticipate load spikes in advance or when the load changes gradually over longer periods of time, requiring manual intervention to handle sudden, unpredictable traffic increases isn't ideal.

Luckily, Kubernetes can monitor your pods and scale them up automatically as soon as it detects an increase in the CPU usage or some other metric. If running on a cloud infrastructure, it can even spin up additional nodes if the existing ones can't accept any more pods. This chapter will explain how to get Kubernetes to do both pod and node autoscaling.

The autoscaling feature in Kubernetes was completely rewritten between the 1.6 and the 1.7 version, so be aware you may find outdated information on this subject online.

## 15.1 Horizontal pod autoscaling

Horizontal pod autoscaling is the automatic scaling of the number of pod replicas managed by a controller. It's performed by the Horizontal controller, which is enabled and configured by creating a `HorizontalPodAutoscaler` (HPA) resource. The controller periodically checks pod metrics, calculates the number of replicas required to meet the target metric value configured in the `HorizontalPodAutoscaler` resource, and adjusts the `replicas` field on the target resource (`Deployment`, `ReplicaSet`, `ReplicationController`, or `StatefulSet`).

### 15.1.1 Understanding the autoscaling process

The autoscaling process can be split into three steps:

- Obtain metrics of all the pods managed by the scaled resource object.
- Calculate the number of pods required to bring the metrics to (or close to) the specified target value.
- Update the `replicas` field of the scaled resource.

Let's examine all three steps next.

#### Obtaining pod metrics

The Autoscaler doesn't perform the gathering of the pod metrics itself. It gets the metrics from a different source. As we saw in the previous chapter, pod and node metrics are collected by an agent called `cAdvisor`, which runs in the Kubelet on each node, and then aggregated by the cluster-wide component called Heapster. The horizontal pod autoscaler controller gets the metrics of all the pods by querying Heapster through REST calls. The flow of metrics data is shown in figure 15.1 (although all the connections are initiated in the opposite direction).



**Figure 15.1 Flow of metrics from the pod(s) to the `HorizontalPodAutoscaler(s)`**

This implies that Heapster must be running in the cluster for autoscaling to work. If you're using Minikube and were following along in the previous chapter, Heapster

should already be enabled in your cluster. If not, make sure to enable the Heapster add-on before trying out any autoscaling examples.

Although you don't need to query Heapster directly, if you're interested in doing so, you'll find both the Heapster Pod and the Service it's exposed through in the `kube-system` namespace.

### A look at changes related to how the Autoscaler obtains metrics

Prior to Kubernetes version 1.6, the `HorizontalPodAutoscaler` obtained the metrics from Heapster directly. In version 1.8, the Autoscaler can get the metrics through an aggregated version of the resource metrics API by starting the Controller Manager with the `--horizontal-pod-autoscaler-use-rest-clients=true` flag. From version 1.9, this behavior will be enabled by default.

The core API server will not expose the metrics itself. From version 1.7, Kubernetes allows registering multiple API servers and making them appear as a single API server. This allows it to expose metrics through one of those underlying API servers. We'll explain API server aggregation in the last chapter.

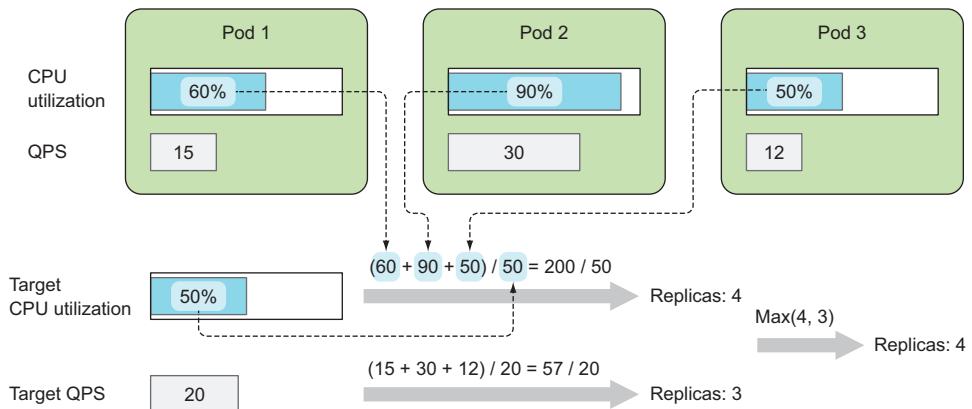
Selecting what metrics collector to use in their clusters will be up to cluster administrators. A simple translation layer is usually required to expose the metrics in the appropriate API paths and in the appropriate format.

### CALCULATING THE REQUIRED NUMBER OF PODS

Once the Autoscaler has metrics for all the pods belonging to the resource the Autoscaler is scaling (the Deployment, ReplicaSet, ReplicationController, or StatefulSet resource), it can use those metrics to figure out the required number of replicas. It needs to find the number that will bring the average value of the metric across all those replicas as close to the configured target value as possible. The input to this calculation is a set of pod metrics (possibly multiple metrics per pod) and the output is a single integer (the number of pod replicas).

When the Autoscaler is configured to consider only a single metric, calculating the required replica count is simple. All it takes is summing up the metrics values of all the pods, dividing that by the target value set on the `HorizontalPodAutoscaler` resource, and then rounding it up to the next-larger integer. The actual calculation is a bit more involved than this, because it also makes sure the Autoscaler doesn't thrash around when the metric value is unstable and changes rapidly.

When autoscaling is based on multiple pod metrics (for example, both CPU usage and Queries-Per-Second [QPS]), the calculation isn't that much more complicated. The Autoscaler calculates the replica count for each metric individually and then takes the highest value (for example, if four pods are required to achieve the target CPU usage, and three pods are required to achieve the target QPS, the Autoscaler will scale to four pods). Figure 15.2 shows this example.



**Figure 15.2** Calculating the number of replicas from two metrics

### UPDATING THE DESIRED REPLICAS COUNT ON THE SCALED RESOURCE

The final step of an autoscaling operation is updating the desired replica count field on the scaled resource object (a ReplicaSet, for example) and then letting the ReplicaSet controller take care of spinning up additional pods or deleting excess ones.

The Autoscaler controller modifies the `replicas` field of the scaled resource through the `Scale` sub-resource. It enables the Autoscaler to do its work without knowing any details of the resource it's scaling, except for what's exposed through the `Scale` sub-resource (see figure 15.3).



**Figure 15.3** The Horizontal Pod Autoscaler modifies only on the Scale sub-resource.

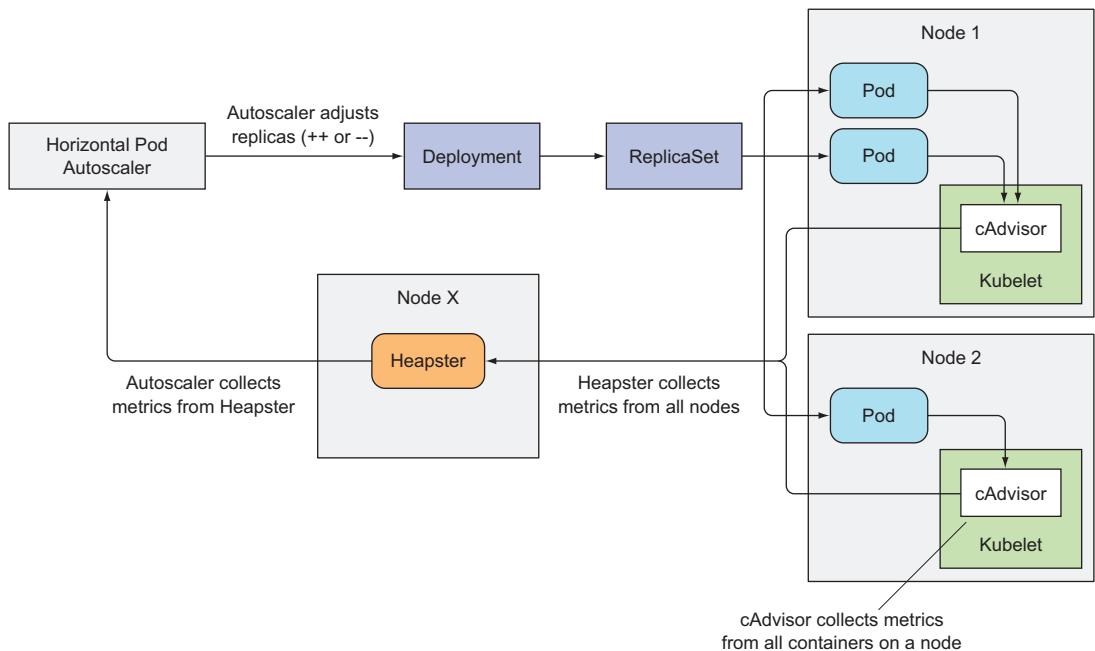
This allows the Autoscaler to operate on any scalable resource, as long as the API server exposes the `Scale` sub-resource for it. Currently, it's exposed for

- Deployments
- ReplicaSets
- ReplicationControllers
- StatefulSets

These are currently the only objects you can attach an Autoscaler to.

### UNDERSTANDING THE WHOLE AUTOSCALING PROCESS

You now understand the three steps involved in autoscaling, so let's visualize all the components involved in the autoscaling process. They're shown in figure 15.4.



**Figure 15.4** How the autoscaler obtains metrics and rescales the target deployment

The arrows leading from the pods to the cAdvisors, which continue on to Heapster and finally to the Horizontal Pod Autoscaler, indicate the direction of the flow of metrics data. It's important to be aware that each component gets the metrics from the other components periodically (that is, cAdvisor gets the metrics from the pods in a continuous loop; the same is also true for Heapster and for the HPA controller). The end effect is that it takes quite a while for the metrics data to be propagated and a rescaling action to be performed. It isn't immediate. Keep this in mind when you observe the Autoscaler in action next.

#### 15.1.2 Scaling based on CPU utilization

Perhaps the most important metric you'll want to base autoscaling on is the amount of CPU consumed by the processes running inside your pods. Imagine having a few pods providing a service. When their CPU usage reaches 100% it's obvious they can't cope with the demand anymore and need to be scaled either up (vertical scaling—increasing the amount of CPU the pods can use) or out (horizontal scaling—increasing the number of pods). Because we're talking about the horizontal pod autoscaler here,

we're only focusing on scaling out (increasing the number of pods). By doing that, the average CPU usage should come down.

Because CPU usage is usually unstable, it makes sense to scale out even before the CPU is completely swamped—perhaps when the average CPU load across the pods reaches or exceeds 80%. But 80% of *what*, exactly?

**TIP** Always set the target CPU usage well below 100% (and definitely never above 90%) to leave enough room for handling sudden load spikes.

As you may remember from the previous chapter, the process running inside a container is guaranteed the amount of CPU requested through the resource requests specified for the container. But at times when no other processes need CPU, the process may use all the available CPU on the node. When someone says a pod is consuming 80% of the CPU, it's not clear if they mean 80% of the node's CPU, 80% of the pod's guaranteed CPU (the resource request), or 80% of the hard limit configured for the pod through resource limits.

As far as the Autoscaler is concerned, only the pod's guaranteed CPU amount (the CPU requests) is important when determining the CPU utilization of a pod. The Autoscaler compares the pod's actual CPU consumption and its CPU requests, which means the pods you're autoscaling need to have CPU requests set (either directly or indirectly through a LimitRange object) for the Autoscaler to determine the CPU utilization percentage.

#### CREATING A HORIZONTALPODAUTOSCALER BASED ON CPU USAGE

Let's see how to create a HorizontalPodAutoscaler now and configure it to scale pods based on their CPU utilization. You'll create a Deployment similar to the one in chapter 9, but as we've discussed, you'll need to make sure the pods created by the Deployment all have the CPU resource requests specified in order to make autoscaling possible. You'll have to add a CPU resource request to the Deployment's pod template, as shown in the following listing.

##### Listing 15.1 Deployment with CPU requests set: deployment.yaml

```
apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  replicas: 3
  template:
    metadata:
      name: kubia
      labels:
        app: kubia
    spec:
      containers:
        - image: luksa/kubia:v1
          name: nodejs
```

The code listing shows annotations with curly braces and arrows pointing to specific parts of the YAML file:

- A brace on the right side of the first two lines of the spec block is annotated with "Manually setting the (initial) desired number of replicas to three".
- A brace on the right side of the image and name fields under the containers section is annotated with "Running the kubia:v1 image".

```
resources:
  requests:
    cpu: 100m
```

Requesting 100 millicores  
of CPU per pod

This is a regular Deployment object—it doesn’t use autoscaling yet. It will run three instances of the kubia NodeJS app, with each instance requesting 100 millicores of CPU.

After creating the Deployment, to enable horizontal autoscaling of its pods, you need to create a HorizontalPodAutoscaler (HPA) object and point it to the Deployment. You could prepare and post the YAML manifest for the HPA, but an easier way exists—using the `kubectl autoscale` command:

```
$ kubectl autoscale deployment kubia --cpu-percent=30 --min=1 --max=5
deployment "kubia" autoscaled
```

This creates the HPA object for you and sets the Deployment called `kubia` as the scaling target. You’re setting the target CPU utilization of the pods to 30% and specifying the minimum and maximum number of replicas. The Autoscaler will constantly keep adjusting the number of replicas to keep their CPU utilization around 30%, but it will never scale down to less than one or scale up to more than five replicas.

**TIP** Always make sure to autoscale Deployments instead of the underlying ReplicaSets. This way, you ensure the desired replica count is preserved across application updates (remember that a Deployment creates a new ReplicaSet for each version). The same rule applies to manual scaling, as well.

Let’s look at the definition of the `HorizontalPodAutoscaler` resource to gain a better understanding of it. It’s shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 15.2 A `HorizontalPodAutoscaler` YAML definition

```
$ kubectl get hpa.v2beta1.autoscaling kubia -o yaml
```

```
apiVersion: autoscaling/v2beta1
kind: HorizontalPodAutoscaler
metadata:
  name: kubia
  ...
spec:
  maxReplicas: 5
  metrics:
    - resource:
        name: cpu
        targetAverageUtilization: 30
        type: Resource
  minReplicas: 1
  scaleTargetRef:
    apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
    kind: Deployment
    name: kubia
```

HPA resources are in the  
autoscaling API group.

Each HPA has a name (it doesn’t  
need to match the name of the  
Deployment as in this case).

You’d like the Autoscaler to  
adjust the number of pods  
so they each utilize 30% of  
requested CPU.

The  
minimum  
and  
maximum  
number of  
replicas  
you  
specified

The target resource  
which this Autoscaler  
will act upon

```
status:
  currentMetrics: []
  currentReplicas: 3
  desiredReplicas: 0
```

The current status  
of the Autoscaler

**NOTE** Multiple versions of HPA resources exist: the new autoscaling/v2beta1 and the old autoscaling/v1. You’re requesting the new version here.

### SEEING THE FIRST AUTOMATIC RESCALE EVENT

It takes a while for cAdvisor to get the CPU metrics and for Heapster to collect them before the Autoscaler can take action. During that time, if you display the HPA resource with `kubectl get`, the TARGETS column will show `<unknown>`:

```
$ kubectl get hpa
NAME      REFERENCE          TARGETS      MINPODS   MAXPODS   REPLICAS
kubia    Deployment/kubia  <unknown> / 30%     1         5           0
```

Because you’re running three pods that are currently receiving no requests, which means their CPU usage should be close to zero, you should expect the Autoscaler to scale them down to a single pod, because even with a single pod, the CPU utilization will still be below the 30% target.

And sure enough, the autoscaler does exactly that. It soon scales the Deployment down to a single replica:

```
$ kubectl get deployment
NAME      DESIRED   CURRENT   UP-TO-DATE   AVAILABLE   AGE
kubia     1          1          1           1          23m
```

Remember, the autoscaler only adjusts the desired replica count on the Deployment. The Deployment controller then takes care of updating the desired replica count on the ReplicaSet object, which then causes the ReplicaSet controller to delete two excess pods, leaving one pod running.

You can use `kubectl describe` to see more information on the HorizontalPodAutoscaler and the operation of the underlying controller, as the following listing shows.

#### Listing 15.3 Inspecting a HorizontalPodAutoscaler with `kubectl describe`

```
$ kubectl describe hpa
Name:                  kubia
Namespace:             default
Labels:                <none>
Annotations:           <none>
CreationTimestamp:    Sat, 03 Jun 2017 12:59:57 +0200
Reference:             Deployment/kubia
Metrics:
  resource cpu on pods
    (as a percentage of request):  0% (0) / 30%
Min replicas:          1
Max replicas:          5
```

```
Events:
From                    Reason          Message
----                    -----          ---
horizontal-pod-autoscaler  SuccessfulRescale  New size: 1; reason: All
                           metrics below target
```

**NOTE** The output has been modified to make it more readable.

Turn your focus to the table of events at the bottom of the listing. You see the horizontal pod autoscaler has successfully rescaled to one replica, because all metrics were below target.

#### TRIGGERING A SCALE-UP

You've already witnessed your first automatic rescale event (a scale-down). Now, you'll start sending requests to your pod, thereby increasing its CPU usage, and you should see the autoscaler detect this and start up additional pods.

You'll need to expose the pods through a Service, so you can hit all of them through a single URL. You may remember that the easiest way to do that is with `kubectl expose`:

```
$ kubectl expose deployment kubia --port=80 --target-port=8080
service "kubia" exposed
```

Before you start hitting your pod(s) with requests, you may want to run the following command in a separate terminal to keep an eye on what's happening with the HorizontalPodAutoscaler and the Deployment, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 15.4 Watching multiple resources in parallel

```
$ watch -n 1 kubectl get hpa,deployment
Every 1.0s: kubectl get hpa,deployment

NAME      REFERENCE          TARGETS      MINPODS      MAXPODS      REPLICAS     AGE
hpa/kubia  Deployment/kubia  0% / 30%    1           5           1           45m

NAME      DESIRED      CURRENT      UP-TO-DATE      AVAILABLE      AGE
deploy/kubia  1           1           1           1           56m
```

**TIP** List multiple resource types with `kubectl get` by delimiting them with a comma.

If you're using OSX, you'll have to replace the `watch` command with a loop, manually run `kubectl get` periodically, or use `kubectl`'s `--watch` option. But although a plain `kubectl get` can show multiple types of resources at once, that's not the case when using the aforementioned `--watch` option, so you'll need to use two terminals if you want to watch both the HPA and the Deployment objects.

Keep an eye on the state of those two objects while you run a load-generating pod. You'll run the following command in another terminal:

```
$ kubectl run -it --rm --restart=Never loadgenerator --image=busybox
→ -- sh -c "while true; do wget -O - -q http://kubia.default; done"
```

This will run a pod which repeatedly hits the `kubia` Service. You've seen the `-it` option a few times when running the `kubectl exec` command. As you can see, it can also be used with `kubectl run`. It allows you to attach the console to the process, which will not only show you the process' output directly, but will also terminate the process as soon as you press `CTRL+C`. The `--rm` option causes the pod to be deleted afterward, and the `--restart=Never` option causes `kubectl run` to create an unmanaged pod directly instead of through a Deployment object, which you don't need. This combination of options is useful for running commands inside the cluster without having to piggyback on an existing pod. It not only behaves the same as if you were running the command locally, it even cleans up everything when the command terminates.

#### **SEEING THE AUTOSCALER SCALE UP THE DEPLOYMENT**

As the load-generator pod runs, you'll see it initially hitting the single pod. As before, it takes time for the metrics to be updated, but when they are, you'll see the autoscaler increase the number of replicas. In my case, the pod's CPU utilization initially jumped to 108%, which caused the autoscaler to increase the number of pods to four. The utilization on the individual pods then decreased to 74% and then stabilized at around 26%.

**NOTE** If the CPU load in your case doesn't exceed 30%, try running additional load-generators.

Again, you can inspect autoscaler events with `kubectl describe` to see what the autoscaler has done (only the most important information is shown in the following listing).

#### **Listing 15.5 Events of a HorizontalPodAutoscaler**

| From  | Reason            | Message   |
|-------|-------------------|---|
| ---   | ---               | ---   |
| h-p-a | SuccessfulRescale | New size: 1; reason: All metrics below target   |
| h-p-a | SuccessfulRescale | New size: 4; reason: cpu resource utilization<br>(percentage of request) above target |

Does it strike you as odd that the initial average CPU utilization in my case, when I only had one pod, was 108%, which is more than 100%? Remember, a container's CPU utilization is the container's actual CPU usage divided by its requested CPU. The requested CPU defines the minimum, not maximum amount of CPU available to the container, so a container may consume more than the requested CPU, bringing the percentage over 100.

Before we go on, let's do a little math and see how the autoscaler concluded that four replicas are needed. Initially, there was one replica handling requests and its CPU usage spiked to 108%. Dividing 108 by 30 (the target CPU utilization percentage) gives 3.6, which the autoscaler then rounded up to 4. If you divide 108 by 4, you

get 27%. If the autoscaler scales up to four pods, their average CPU utilization is expected to be somewhere in the neighborhood of 27%, which is close to the target value of 30% and almost exactly what the observed CPU utilization was.

## UNDERSTANDING THE MAXIMUM RATE OF SCALING

In my case, the CPU usage shot up to 108%, but in general, the initial CPU usage could spike even higher. Even if the initial average CPU utilization was higher (say 150%), requiring five replicas to achieve the 30% target, the autoscaler would still only scale up to four pods in the first step, because it has a limit on how many replicas can be added in a single scale-up operation. The autoscaler will at most double the number of replicas in a single operation, if more than two current replicas exist. If only one or two exist, it will scale up to a maximum of four replicas in a single step.

Additionally, it has a limit on how soon a subsequent autoscale operation can occur after the previous one. Currently, a scale-up will occur only if no rescaling event occurred in the last three minutes. A scale-down event is performed even less frequently—every five minutes. Keep this in mind so you don't wonder why the autoscaler refuses to perform a rescale operation even if the metrics clearly show that it should.

## MODIFYING THE TARGET METRIC VALUE ON AN EXISTING HPA OBJECT

To wrap up this section, let's do one last exercise. Maybe your initial CPU utilization target of 30% was a bit too low, so increase it to 60%. You do this by editing the HPA resource with the `kubectl edit` command. When the text editor opens, change the `targetAverageUtilization` field to 60, as shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing 15.6 Increasing the target CPU utilization by editing the HPA resource**

```
...  
spec:  
  maxReplicas: 5  
  metrics:  
    - resource:  
        name: cpu  
        targetAverageUtilization: 60  
    type: Resource  
...  


Change this from 30 to 60.


```

As with most other resources, after you modify the resource, your changes will be detected by the autoscaler controller and acted upon. You could also delete the resource and recreate it with different target values, because by deleting the HPA resource, you only disable autoscaling of the target resource (a Deployment in this case) and leave it at the scale it is at that time. The automatic scaling will resume after you create a new HPA resource for the Deployment.

### 15.1.3 Scaling based on memory consumption

You've seen how easily the horizontal Autoscaler can be configured to keep CPU utilization at the target level. But what about autoscaling based on the pods' memory usage?

Memory-based autoscaling is much more problematic than CPU-based autoscaling. The main reason is because after scaling up, the old pods would somehow need to be forced to release memory. This needs to be done by the app itself—it can't be done by the system. All the system could do is kill and restart the app, hoping it would use less memory than before. But if the app then uses the same amount as before, the Autoscaler would scale it up again. And again, and again, until it reaches the maximum number of pods configured on the HPA resource. Obviously, this isn't what anyone wants. Memory-based autoscaling was introduced in Kubernetes version 1.8, and is configured exactly like CPU-based autoscaling. Exploring it is left up to the reader.

### 15.1.4 Scaling based on other and custom metrics

You've seen how easy it is to scale pods based on their CPU usage. Initially, this was the only autoscaling option that was usable in practice. To have the autoscaler use custom, app-defined metrics to drive its autoscaling decisions was fairly complicated. The initial design of the autoscaler didn't make it easy to move beyond simple CPU-based scaling. This prompted the Kubernetes Autoscaling Special Interest Group (SIG) to redesign the autoscaler completely.

If you're interested in learning how complicated it was to use the initial autoscaler with custom metrics, I invite you to read my blog post entitled "Kubernetes autoscaling based on custom metrics without using a host port," which you'll find online at <http://medium.com/@marko.luksa>. You'll learn about all the other problems I encountered when trying to set up autoscaling based on custom metrics. Luckily, newer versions of Kubernetes don't have those problems. I'll cover the subject in a new blog post.

Instead of going through a complete example here, let's quickly go over how to configure the autoscaler to use different metrics sources. We'll start by examining how we defined what metric to use in our previous example. The following listing shows how your previous HPA object was configured to use the CPU usage metric.

#### **Listing 15.7 HorizontalPodAutoscaler definition for CPU-based autoscaling**

```
...
spec:
  maxReplicas: 5
  metrics:
    - type: Resource
      resource:
        name: cpu
      targetAverageUtilization: 30
...

```

The diagram illustrates the configuration of a HorizontalPodAutoscaler (HPA) for CPU-based autoscaling. It highlights three key parameters with annotations:

- Defines the type of metric**: Points to the `type: Resource` entry, indicating the metric type used for scaling.
- The resource, whose utilization will be monitored**: Points to the `resource:` section, identifying the specific resource (CPU) whose utilization is being tracked.
- The target utilization of this resource**: Points to the `targetAverageUtilization: 30` value, defining the target utilization level at which the pods will be scaled up or down.

As you can see, the `metrics` field allows you to define more than one metric to use. In the listing, you’re using a single metric. Each entry defines the type of metric—in this case, a Resource metric. You have three types of metrics you can use in an HPA object:

- Resource
- Pods
- Object

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE RESOURCE METRIC TYPE**

The Resource type makes the autoscaler base its autoscaling decisions on a resource metric, like the ones specified in a container’s resource requests. We’ve already seen how to do that, so let’s focus on the other two types.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE PODS METRIC TYPE**

The Pods type is used to refer to any other (including custom) metric related to the pod directly. An example of such a metric could be the already mentioned Queries-Per-Second (QPS) or the number of messages in a message broker’s queue (when the message broker is running as a pod). To configure the autoscaler to use the pod’s QPS metric, the HPA object would need to include the entry shown in the following listing under its `metrics` field.

#### **Listing 15.8 Referring to a custom pod metric in the HPA**

```
...
spec:
  metrics:
    - type: Pods
      resource:
        metricName: qps
        targetAverageValue: 100
...

```

The example in the listing configures the autoscaler to keep the average QPS of all the pods managed by the ReplicaSet (or other) controller targeted by this HPA resource at 100.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THE OBJECT METRIC TYPE**

The Object metric type is used when you want to make the autoscaler scale pods based on a metric that doesn’t pertain directly to those pods. For example, you may want to scale pods according to a metric of another cluster object, such as an Ingress object. The metric could be QPS as in listing 15.8, the average request latency, or something else completely.

Unlike in the previous case, where the autoscaler needed to obtain the metric for all targeted pods and then use the average of those values, when you use an Object metric type, the autoscaler obtains a single metric from the single object. In the HPA

definition, you need to specify the target object and the target value. The following listing shows an example.

#### Listing 15.9 Referring to a metric of a different object in the HPA

```

...
spec:
  metrics:
    - type: Object
      resource:
        metricName: latencyMillis
        target:
          apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
          kind: Ingress
          name: frontend
          targetValue: 20
      scaleTargetRef:
        apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
        kind: Deployment
        name: kubia
...

```

In this example, the HPA is configured to use the `latencyMillis` metric of the `frontend` Ingress object. The target value for the metric is 20. The horizontal pod autoscaler will monitor the Ingress' metric and if it rises too far above the target value, the autoscaler will scale the `kubia` Deployment resource.

### 15.1.5 Determining which metrics are appropriate for autoscaling

You need to understand that not all metrics are appropriate for use as the basis of autoscaling. As mentioned previously, the pods' containers' memory consumption isn't a good metric for autoscaling. The autoscaler won't function properly if increasing the number of replicas doesn't result in a linear decrease of the average value of the observed metric (or at least close to linear).

For example, if you have only a single pod instance and the value of the metric is X and the autoscaler scales up to two replicas, the metric needs to fall to somewhere close to  $X/2$ . An example of such a custom metric is Queries per Second (QPS), which in the case of web applications reports the number of requests the application is receiving per second. Increasing the number of replicas will always result in a proportionate decrease of QPS, because a greater number of pods will be handling the same total number of requests.

Before you decide to base the autoscaler on your app's own custom metric, be sure to think about how its value will behave when the number of pods increases or decreases.

### 15.1.6 Scaling down to zero replicas

The horizontal pod autoscaler currently doesn't allow setting the `minReplicas` field to 0, so the autoscaler will never scale down to zero, even if the pods aren't doing

anything. Allowing the number of pods to be scaled down to zero can dramatically increase the utilization of your hardware. When you run services that get requests only once every few hours or even days, it doesn't make sense to have them running all the time, eating up resources that could be used by other pods. But you still want to have those services available immediately when a client request comes in.

This is known as idling and un-idling. It allows pods that provide a certain service to be scaled down to zero. When a new request comes in, the request is blocked until the pod is brought up and then the request is finally forwarded to the pod.

Kubernetes currently doesn't provide this feature yet, but it will eventually. Check the documentation to see if idling has been implemented yet.

## 15.2 Vertical pod autoscaling

Horizontal scaling is great, but not every application can be scaled horizontally. For such applications, the only option is to scale them vertically—give them more CPU and/or memory. Because a node usually has more resources than a single pod requests, it should almost always be possible to scale a pod vertically, right?

Because a pod's resource requests are configured through fields in the pod manifest, vertically scaling a pod would be performed by changing those fields. I say "would" because it's currently not possible to change either resource requests or limits of existing pods. Before I started writing the book (well over a year ago), I was sure that by the time I wrote this chapter, Kubernetes would already support proper vertical pod autoscaling, so I included it in my proposal for the table of contents. Sadly, what seems like a lifetime later, vertical pod autoscaling is still not available yet.

### 15.2.1 Automatically configuring resource requests

An experimental feature sets the CPU and memory requests on newly created pods, if their containers don't have them set explicitly. The feature is provided by an Admission Control plugin called InitialResources. When a new pod without resource requests is created, the plugin looks at historical resource usage data of the pod's containers (per the underlying container image and tag) and sets the requests accordingly.

You can deploy pods without specifying resource requests and rely on Kubernetes to eventually figure out what each container's resource needs are. Effectively, Kubernetes is vertically scaling the pod. For example, if a container keeps running out of memory, the next time a pod with that container image is created, its resource request for memory will be set higher automatically.

### 15.2.2 Modifying resource requests while a pod is running

Eventually, the same mechanism will be used to modify an existing pod's resource requests, which means it will vertically scale the pod while it's running. As I'm writing this, a new vertical pod autoscaling proposal is being finalized. Please refer to the

Kubernetes documentation to find out whether vertical pod autoscaling is already implemented or not.

## 15.3 Horizontal scaling of cluster nodes

The Horizontal Pod Autoscaler creates additional pod instances when the need for them arises. But what about when all your nodes are at capacity and can't run any more pods? Obviously, this problem isn't limited only to when new pod instances are created by the Autoscaler. Even when creating pods manually, you may encounter the problem where none of the nodes can accept the new pods, because the node's resources are used up by existing pods.

In that case, you'd need to delete several of those existing pods, scale them down vertically, or add additional nodes to your cluster. If your Kubernetes cluster is running on premises, you'd need to physically add a new machine and make it part of the Kubernetes cluster. But if your cluster is running on a cloud infrastructure, adding additional nodes is usually a matter of a few clicks or an API call to the cloud infrastructure. This can be done automatically, right?

Kubernetes includes the feature to automatically request additional nodes from the cloud provider as soon as it detects additional nodes are needed. This is performed by the Cluster Autoscaler.

### 15.3.1 Introducing the Cluster Autoscaler

The Cluster Autoscaler takes care of automatically provisioning additional nodes when it notices a pod that can't be scheduled to existing nodes because of a lack of resources on those nodes. It also de-provisions nodes when they're underutilized for longer periods of time.

#### REQUESTING ADDITIONAL NODES FROM THE CLOUD INFRASTRUCTURE

A new node will be provisioned if, after a new pod is created, the Scheduler can't schedule it to any of the existing nodes. The Cluster Autoscaler looks out for such pods and asks the cloud provider to start up an additional node. But before doing that, it checks whether the new node can even accommodate the pod. After all, if that's not the case, it makes no sense to start up such a node.

Cloud providers usually group nodes into groups (or pools) of same-sized nodes (or nodes having the same features). The Cluster Autoscaler thus can't simply say "Give me an additional node." It needs to also specify the node type.

The Cluster Autoscaler does this by examining the available node groups to see if at least one node type would be able to fit the unscheduled pod. If exactly one such node group exists, the Autoscaler can increase the size of the node group to have the cloud provider add another node to the group. If more than one option is available, the Autoscaler must pick the best one. The exact meaning of "best" will obviously need to be configurable. In the worst case, it selects a random one. A simple overview of how the cluster Autoscaler reacts to an unschedulable pod is shown in figure 15.5.

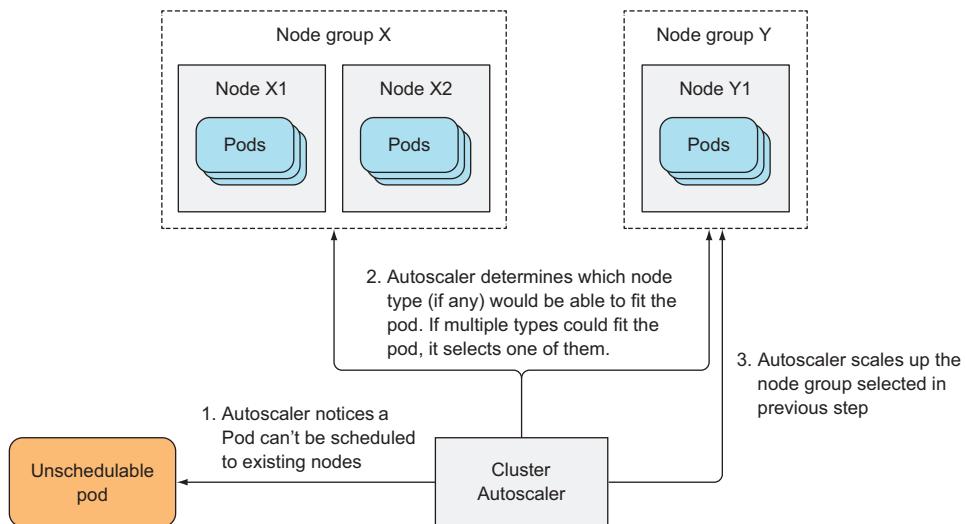


Figure 15.5 The Cluster Autoscaler scales up when it finds a pod that can't be scheduled to existing nodes.

When the new node starts up, the Kubelet on that node contacts the API server and registers the node by creating a Node resource. From then on, the node is part of the Kubernetes cluster and pods can be scheduled to it.

Simple, right? What about scaling down?

#### RELINQUISHING NODES

The Cluster Autoscaler also needs to scale down the number of nodes when they aren't being utilized enough. The Autoscaler does this by monitoring the requested CPU and memory on all the nodes. If the CPU and memory requests of all the pods running on a given node are below 50%, the node is considered unnecessary.

That's not the only determining factor in deciding whether to bring a node down. The Autoscaler also checks to see if any system pods are running (only) on that node (apart from those that are run on every node, because they're deployed by a DaemonSet, for example). If a system pod is running on a node, the node won't be relinquished. The same is also true if an unmanaged pod or a pod with local storage is running on the node, because that would cause disruption to the service the pod is providing. In other words, a node will only be returned to the cloud provider if the Cluster Autoscaler knows the pods running on the node will be rescheduled to other nodes.

When a node is selected to be shut down, the node is first marked as unschedulable and then all the pods running on the node are evicted. Because all those pods belong to ReplicaSets or other controllers, their replacements are created and scheduled to the remaining nodes (that's why the node that's being shut down is first marked as unschedulable).

### Manually cordoning and draining nodes

A node can also be marked as unschedulable and drained manually. Without going into specifics, this is done with the following kubectl commands:

- `kubectl cordon <node>` marks the node as unschedulable (but doesn't do anything with pods running on that node).
- `kubectl drain <node>` marks the node as unschedulable and then evicts all the pods from the node.

In both cases, no new pods are scheduled to the node until you uncordon it again with `kubectl uncordon <node>`.

#### 15.3.2 Enabling the Cluster Autoscaler

Cluster autoscaling is currently available on

- Google Kubernetes Engine (GKE)
- Google Compute Engine (GCE)
- Amazon Web Services (AWS)
- Microsoft Azure

How you start the Autoscaler depends on where your Kubernetes cluster is running. For your kubia cluster running on GKE, you can enable the Cluster Autoscaler like this:

```
$ gcloud container clusters update kubia --enable-autoscaling \
--min-nodes=3 --max-nodes=5
```

If your cluster is running on GCE, you need to set three environment variables before running `kube-up.sh`:

- `KUBE_ENABLE_CLUSTER_AUTOSCALER=true`
- `KUBE_AUTOSCALER_MIN_NODES=3`
- `KUBE_AUTOSCALER_MAX_NODES=5`

Refer to the Cluster Autoscaler GitHub repo at <https://github.com/kubernetes/autoscaler/tree/master/cluster-autoscaler> for information on how to enable it on other platforms.

**NOTE** The Cluster Autoscaler publishes its status to the `cluster-autoscaler-status` ConfigMap in the `kube-system` namespace.

#### 15.3.3 Limiting service disruption during cluster scale-down

When a node fails unexpectedly, nothing you can do will prevent its pods from becoming unavailable. But when a node is shut down voluntarily, either by the Cluster Autoscaler or by a human operator, you can make sure the operation doesn't disrupt the service provided by the pods running on that node through an additional feature.

Certain services require that a minimum number of pods always keeps running; this is especially true for quorum-based clustered applications. For this reason, Kubernetes provides a way of specifying the minimum number of pods that need to keep running while performing these types of operations. This is done by creating a PodDisruptionBudget resource.

Even though the name of the resource sounds complex, it's one of the simplest Kubernetes resources available. It contains only a pod label selector and a number specifying the minimum number of pods that must always be available or, starting from Kubernetes version 1.7, the maximum number of pods that can be unavailable. We'll look at what a PodDisruptionBudget (PDB) resource manifest looks like, but instead of creating it from a YAML file, you'll create it with `kubectl create pod-disruptionbudget` and then obtain and examine the YAML later.

If you want to ensure three instances of your `kubia` pod are always running (they have the label `app=kubia`), create the PodDisruptionBudget resource like this:

```
$ kubectl create pdb kubia-pdb --selector=app=kubia --min-available=3
poddisruptionbudget "kubia-pdb" created
```

Simple, right? Now, retrieve the PDB's YAML. It's shown in the next listing.

#### Listing 15.10 A PodDisruptionBudget definition

```
$ kubectl get pdb kubia-pdb -o yaml
apiVersion: policy/v1beta1
kind: PodDisruptionBudget
metadata:
  name: kubia-pdb
spec:                                     ←
  minAvailable: 3                         | How many pods should
  selector:                                | always be available
    matchLabels:
      app: kubia                           |
                                             | The label selector that
                                             | determines which pods
                                             | this budget applies to
status:
  ...

```

You can also use a percentage instead of an absolute number in the `minAvailable` field. For example, you could state that 60% of all pods with the `app=kubia` label need to be running at all times.

**NOTE** Starting with Kubernetes 1.7, the PodDisruptionBudget resource also supports the `maxUnavailable` field, which you can use instead of `minAvailable` if you want to block evictions when more than that many pods are unavailable.

We don't have much more to say about this resource. As long as it exists, both the Cluster Autoscaler and the `kubectl drain` command will adhere to it and will never evict a pod with the `app=kubia` label if that would bring the number of such pods below three.

For example, if there were four pods altogether and `minAvailable` was set to three as in the example, the pod eviction process would evict pods one by one, waiting for the evicted pod to be replaced with a new one by the ReplicaSet controller, before evicting another pod.

## 15.4 Summary

This chapter has shown you how Kubernetes can scale not only your pods, but also your nodes. You've learned that

- Configuring the automatic horizontal scaling of pods is as easy as creating a `HorizontalPodAutoscaler` object and pointing it to a `Deployment`, `ReplicaSet`, or `ReplicationController` and specifying the target CPU utilization for the pods.
- Besides having the Horizontal Pod Autoscaler perform scaling operations based on the pods' CPU utilization, you can also configure it to scale based on your own application-provided custom metrics or metrics related to other objects deployed in the cluster.
- Vertical pod autoscaling isn't possible yet.
- Even cluster nodes can be scaled automatically if your Kubernetes cluster runs on a supported cloud provider.
- You can run one-off processes in a pod and have the pod stopped and deleted automatically as soon as you press `CTRL+C` by using `kubectl run` with the `-it` and `--rm` options.

In the next chapter, you'll explore advanced scheduling features, such as how to keep certain pods away from certain nodes and how to schedule pods either close together or apart.

# *Advanced scheduling*



## This chapter covers

- Using node taints and pod tolerations to keep pods away from certain nodes
- Defining node affinity rules as an alternative to node selectors
- Co-locating pods using pod affinity
- Keeping pods away from each other using pod anti-affinity

Kubernetes allows you to affect where pods are scheduled. Initially, this was only done by specifying a node selector in the pod specification, but additional mechanisms were later added that expanded this functionality. They're covered in this chapter.

### **16.1 *Using taints and tolerations to repel pods from certain nodes***

The first two features related to advanced scheduling that we'll explore here are the node taints and pods' tolerations of those taints. They're used for restricting

which pods can use a certain node. A pod can only be scheduled to a node if it tolerates the node's taints.

This is somewhat different from using node selectors and node affinity, which you'll learn about later in this chapter. Node selectors and node affinity rules make it possible to select which nodes a pod can or can't be scheduled to by specifically adding that information to the pod, whereas taints allow rejecting deployment of pods to certain nodes by only adding taints to the node without having to modify existing pods. Pods that you want deployed on a tainted node need to opt in to use the node, whereas with node selectors, pods explicitly specify which node(s) they want to be deployed to.

### 16.1.1 Introducing taints and tolerations

The best path to learn about node taints is to see an existing taint. Appendix B shows how to set up a multi-node cluster with the `kubeadm` tool. By default, the master node in such a cluster is tainted, so only Control Plane pods can be deployed on it.

#### DISPLAYING A NODE'S TAINTS

You can see the node's taints using `kubectl describe node`, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 16.1 Describing the master node in a cluster created with `kubeadm`

```
$ kubectl describe node master.k8s
Name:           master.k8s
Role:           <none>
Labels:          beta.kubernetes.io/arch=amd64
                  beta.kubernetes.io/os=linux
                  kubernetes.io/hostname=master.k8s
                  node-role.kubernetes.io/master=
Annotations:    node.alpha.kubernetes.io/ttl=0
                  volumes.kubernetes.io/controller-managed-attach-detach=true
Taints:          node-role.kubernetes.io/master:NoSchedule   ←
...              ...                                         | The master node
                                                               has one taint.
```

The master node has a single taint. Taints have a *key*, *value*, and an *effect*, and are represented as `<key>=<value>:<effect>`. The master node's taint shown in the previous listing has the key `node-role.kubernetes.io/master`, a null value (not shown in the taint), and the effect of `NoSchedule`.

This taint prevents pods from being scheduled to the master node, unless those pods tolerate this taint. The pods that tolerate it are usually system pods (see figure 16.1).

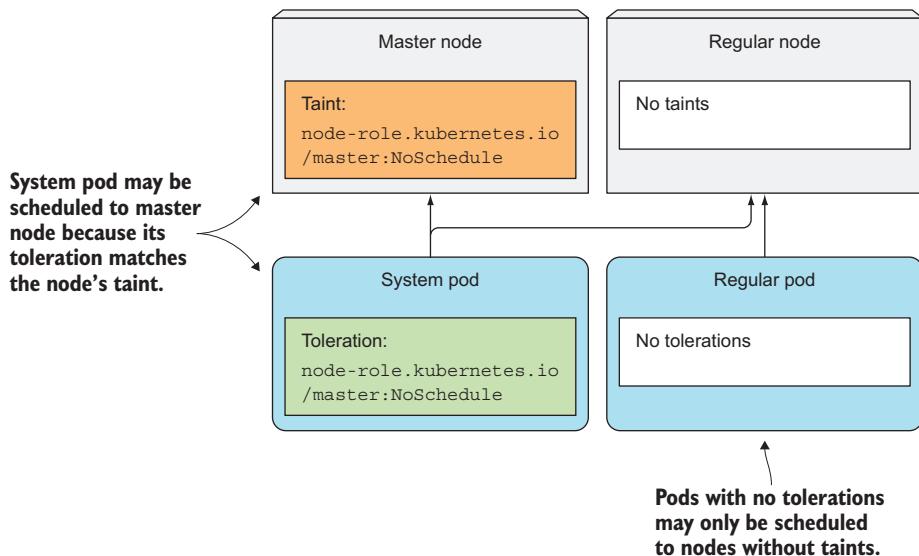


Figure 16.1 A pod is only scheduled to a node if it tolerates the node’s taints.

### DISPLAYING A POD’S TOLERATIONS

In a cluster installed with `kubeadm`, the `kube-proxy` cluster component runs as a pod on every node, including the master node, because master components that run as pods may also need to access Kubernetes Services. To make sure the `kube-proxy` pod also runs on the master node, it includes the appropriate toleration. In total, the pod has three tolerations, which are shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 16.2 A pod’s tolerations

```
$ kubectl describe po kube-proxy-80wqm -n kube-system
...
Tolerations:    node-role.kubernetes.io/master=:NoSchedule
                  node.alpha.kubernetes.io/notReady=:Exists:NoExecute
                  node.alpha.kubernetes.io/unreachable=:Exists:NoExecute
...
```

As you can see, the first toleration matches the master node’s taint, allowing this `kube-proxy` pod to be scheduled to the master node.

**NOTE** Disregard the equal sign, which is shown in the pod’s tolerations, but not in the node’s taints. `Kubectl` apparently displays taints and tolerations differently when the taint’s/tolerance’s value is null.

### UNDERSTANDING TAINT EFFECTS

The two other tolerations on the `kube-proxy` pod define how long the pod is allowed to run on nodes that aren’t ready or are unreachable (the time in seconds isn’t shown,

but can be seen in the pod’s YAML). Those two tolerations refer to the `NoExecute` instead of the `NoSchedule` effect.

Each taint has an effect associated with it. Three possible effects exist:

- `NoSchedule`, which means pods won’t be scheduled to the node if they don’t tolerate the taint.
- `PreferNoSchedule` is a soft version of `NoSchedule`, meaning the scheduler will try to avoid scheduling the pod to the node, but will schedule it to the node if it can’t schedule it somewhere else.
- `NoExecute`, unlike `NoSchedule` and `PreferNoSchedule` that only affect scheduling, also affects pods already running on the node. If you add a `NoExecute` taint to a node, pods that are already running on that node and don’t tolerate the `NoExecute` taint will be evicted from the node.

### 16.1.2 Adding custom taints to a node

Imagine having a single Kubernetes cluster where you run both production and non-production workloads. It’s of the utmost importance that non-production pods never run on the production nodes. This can be achieved by adding a taint to your production nodes. To add a taint, you use the `kubectl taint` command:

```
$ kubectl taint node node1.k8s node-type=production:NoSchedule
node "node1.k8s" tainted
```

This adds a taint with key `node-type`, value `production` and the `NoSchedule` effect. If you now deploy multiple replicas of a regular pod, you’ll see none of them are scheduled to the node you tainted, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 16.3 Deploying pods without a toleration

```
$ kubectl run test --image busybox --replicas 5 -- sleep 99999
deployment "test" created

$ kubectl get po -o wide
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE      IP          NODE
test-196686-46ngl  1/1     Running   0          12s     10.47.0.1  node2.k8s
test-196686-73p89  1/1     Running   0          12s     10.47.0.7  node2.k8s
test-196686-77280  1/1     Running   0          12s     10.47.0.6  node2.k8s
test-196686-h9m8f  1/1     Running   0          12s     10.47.0.5  node2.k8s
test-196686-p8511  1/1     Running   0          12s     10.47.0.4  node2.k8s
```

Now, no one can inadvertently deploy pods onto the production nodes.

### 16.1.3 Adding tolerations to pods

To deploy production pods to the production nodes, they need to tolerate the taint you added to the nodes. The manifests of your production pods need to include the YAML snippet shown in the following listing.

**Listing 16.4 A production Deployment with a toleration: production-deployment.yaml**

```

apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: prod
spec:
  replicas: 5
  template:
    spec:
      ...
      tolerations:
        - key: node-type
          operator: Equal
          value: production
          effect: NoSchedule

```

This toleration allows the pod to be scheduled to production nodes.

If you deploy this Deployment, you'll see its pods get deployed to the production node, as shown in the next listing.

**Listing 16.5 Pods with the toleration are deployed on production node1**

| NAME              | READY | STATUS  | RESTARTS | AGE | IP        | NODE             |
|-------------------|-------|---------|----------|-----|-----------|------------------|
| prod-350605-1ph5h | 0/1   | Running | 0        | 16s | 10.44.0.3 | <b>node1.k8s</b> |
| prod-350605-ctqcr | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 16s | 10.47.0.4 | node2.k8s        |
| prod-350605-f7pcc | 0/1   | Running | 0        | 17s | 10.44.0.6 | <b>node1.k8s</b> |
| prod-350605-k7c8g | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 17s | 10.47.0.9 | node2.k8s        |
| prod-350605-rp1nv | 0/1   | Running | 0        | 17s | 10.44.0.4 | <b>node1.k8s</b> |

As you can see in the listing, production pods were also deployed to node2, which isn't a production node. To prevent that from happening, you'd also need to taint the non-production nodes with a taint such as `node-type=non-production:NoSchedule`. Then you'd also need to add the matching toleration to all your non-production pods.

#### 16.1.4 Understanding what taints and tolerations can be used for

Nodes can have more than one taint and pods can have more than one toleration. As you've seen, taints can only have a key and an effect and don't require a value. Tolerations can tolerate a specific value by specifying the `Equal` operator (that's also the default operator if you don't specify one), or they can tolerate any value for a specific taint key if you use the `Exists` operator.

##### USING TAINTS AND TOLERATIONS DURING SCHEDULING

Taints can be used to prevent scheduling of new pods (`NoSchedule` effect) and to define unpreferred nodes (`PreferNoSchedule` effect) and even evict existing pods from a node (`NoExecute`).

You can set up taints and tolerations any way you see fit. For example, you could partition your cluster into multiple partitions, allowing your development teams to schedule pods only to their respective nodes. You can also use taints and tolerations

when several of your nodes provide special hardware and only part of your pods need to use it.

#### CONFIGURING HOW LONG AFTER A NODE FAILURE A POD IS RESCHEDULED

You can also use a toleration to specify how long Kubernetes should wait before rescheduling a pod to another node if the node the pod is running on becomes unready or unreachable. If you look at the tolerations of one of your pods, you'll see two tolerations, which are shown in the following listing.

##### **Listing 16.6 Pod with default tolerations**

```
$ kubectl get po prod-350605-1ph5h -o yaml
...
tolerations:
- effect: NoExecute
  key: node.alpha.kubernetes.io/notReady
  operator: Exists
  tolerationSeconds: 300
- effect: NoExecute
  key: node.alpha.kubernetes.io/unreachable
  operator: Exists
  tolerationSeconds: 300
```

The pod tolerates the node being notReady for 300 seconds, before it needs to be rescheduled.

The same applies to the node being unreachable.

These two tolerations say that this pod tolerates a node being notReady or unreachable for 300 seconds. The Kubernetes Control Plane, when it detects that a node is no longer ready or no longer reachable, will wait for 300 seconds before it deletes the pod and reschedules it to another node.

These two tolerations are automatically added to pods that don't define them. If that five-minute delay is too long for your pods, you can make the delay shorter by adding those two tolerations to the pod's spec.

**NOTE** This is currently an alpha feature, so it may change in future versions of Kubernetes. Taint-based evictions also aren't enabled by default. You enable them by running the Controller Manager with the `--feature-gates=Taint-BasedEvictions=true` option.

## 16.2 Using node affinity to attract pods to certain nodes

As you've learned, taints are used to keep pods away from certain nodes. Now you'll learn about a newer mechanism called *node affinity*, which allows you to tell Kubernetes to schedule pods only to specific subsets of nodes.

#### COMPARING NODE AFFINITY TO NODE SELECTORS

The initial node affinity mechanism in early versions of Kubernetes was the `nodeSelector` field in the pod specification. The node had to include all the labels specified in that field to be eligible to become the target for the pod.

Node selectors get the job done and are simple, but they don't offer everything that you may need. Because of that, a more powerful mechanism was introduced.

Node selectors will eventually be deprecated, so it's important you understand the new node affinity rules.

Similar to node selectors, each pod can define its own node affinity rules. These allow you to specify either hard requirements or preferences. By specifying a preference, you tell Kubernetes which nodes you prefer for a specific pod, and Kubernetes will try to schedule the pod to one of those nodes. If that's not possible, it will choose one of the other nodes.

### EXAMINING THE DEFAULT NODE LABELS

Node affinity selects nodes based on their labels, the same way node selectors do. Before you see how to use node affinity, let's examine the labels of one of the nodes in a Google Kubernetes Engine cluster (GKE) to see what the default node labels are. They're shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 16.7 Default labels of a node in GKE

```
$ kubectl describe node gke-kubia-default-pool-db274c5a-mjnf
Name:           gke-kubia-default-pool-db274c5a-mjnf
Role:
Labels:        beta.kubernetes.io/arch=amd64
               beta.kubernetes.io/fluentd-ds-ready=true
               beta.kubernetes.io/instance-type=f1-micro
               beta.kubernetes.io/os=linux
               cloud.google.com/gke-nodepool=default-pool
               failure-domain.beta.kubernetes.io/region=europe-west1
               failure-domain.beta.kubernetes.io/zone=europe-west1-d
               kubernetes.io/hostname=gke-kubia-default-pool-db274c5a-mjnf
```

These three  
labels are the  
most important  
ones related to  
node affinity.

The node has many labels, but the last three are the most important when it comes to node affinity and pod affinity, which you'll learn about later. The meaning of those three labels is as follows:

- `failure-domain.beta.kubernetes.io/region` specifies the geographical region the node is located in.
- `failure-domain.beta.kubernetes.io/zone` specifies the availability zone the node is in.
- `kubernetes.io/hostname` is obviously the node's hostname.

These and other labels can be used in pod affinity rules. In chapter 3, you already learned how you can add a custom label to nodes and use it in a pod's node selector. You used the custom label to deploy pods only to nodes with that label by adding a node selector to the pods. Now, you'll see how to do the same using node affinity rules.

#### 16.2.1 Specifying hard node affinity rules

In the example in chapter 3, you used the node selector to deploy a pod that requires a GPU only to nodes that have a GPU. The pod spec included the `nodeSelector` field shown in the following listing.

**Listing 16.8 A pod using a node selector: kubia-gpu-nodeselector.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: kubia-gpu
spec:
  nodeSelector:
    gpu: "true"
...

```

 This pod is only scheduled to nodes that have the gpu=true label.

The nodeSelector field specifies that the pod should only be deployed on nodes that include the gpu=true label. If you replace the node selector with a node affinity rule, the pod definition will look like the following listing.

**Listing 16.9 A pod using a nodeAffinity rule: kubia-gpu-nodeaffinity.yaml**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: kubia-gpu
spec:
  affinity:
    nodeAffinity:
      requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
        nodeSelectorTerms:
        - matchExpressions:
          - key: gpu
            operator: In
            values:
            - "true"
```

The first thing you'll notice is that this is much more complicated than a simple node selector. But that's because it's much more expressive. Let's examine the rule in detail.

**MAKING SENSE OF THE LONG NODEAFFINITY ATTRIBUTE NAME**

As you can see, the pod's spec section contains an affinity field that contains a nodeAffinity field, which contains a field with an extremely long name, so let's focus on that first.

Let's break it down into two parts and examine what they mean:

- requiredDuringScheduling... means the rules defined under this field specify the labels the node must have for the pod to be scheduled to the node.
- ...IgnoredDuringExecution means the rules defined under the field don't affect pods already executing on the node.

At this point, let me make things easier for you by letting you know that affinity currently only affects pod scheduling and never causes a pod to be evicted from a node. That's why all the rules right now always end with IgnoredDuringExecution. Eventually, Kubernetes will also support RequiredDuringExecution, which means that if you

remove a label from a node, pods that require the node to have that label will be evicted from such a node. As I've said, that's not yet supported in Kubernetes, so let's not concern ourselves with the second part of that long field any longer.

### UNDERSTANDING NODESELECTORTERMS

By keeping what was explained in the previous section in mind, it's easy to understand that the `nodeSelectorTerms` field and the `matchExpressions` field define which expressions the node's labels must match for the pod to be scheduled to the node. The single expression in the example is simple to understand. The node must have a `gpu` label whose value is set to `true`.

This pod will therefore only be scheduled to nodes that have the `gpu=true` label, as shown in figure 16.2.

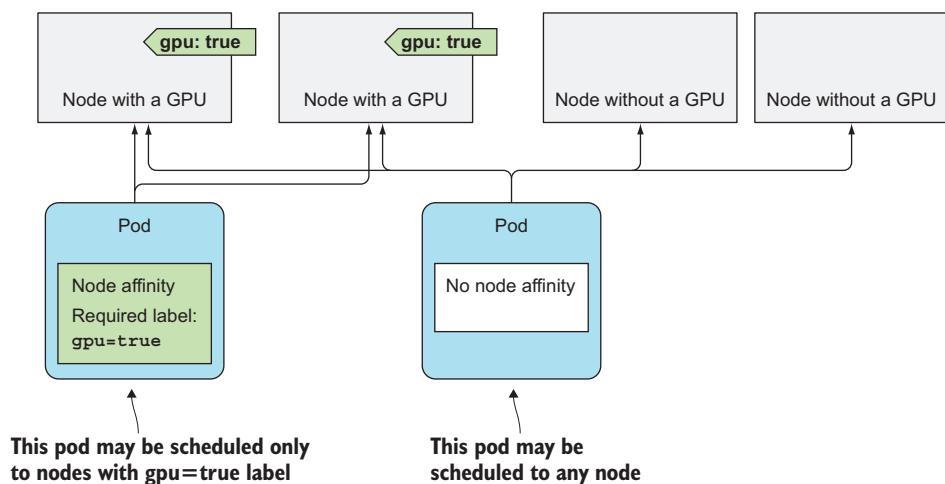


Figure 16.2 A pod's node affinity specifies which labels a node must have for the pod to be scheduled to it.

Now comes the more interesting part. Node also affinity allows you to prioritize nodes during scheduling. We'll look at that next.

#### 16.2.2 Prioritizing nodes when scheduling a pod

The biggest benefit of the newly introduced node affinity feature is the ability to specify which nodes the Scheduler should prefer when scheduling a specific pod. This is done through the `preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution` field.

Imagine having multiple datacenters across different countries. Each datacenter represents a separate availability zone. In each zone, you have certain machines meant only for your own use and others that your partner companies can use. You now want to deploy a few pods and you'd prefer them to be scheduled to `zone1` and to the

machines reserved for your company’s deployments. If those machines don’t have enough room for the pods or if other important reasons exist that prevent them from being scheduled there, you’re okay with them being scheduled to the machines your partners use and to the other zones. Node affinity allows you to do that.

### LABELING NODES

First, the nodes need to be labeled appropriately. Each node needs to have a label that designates the availability zone the node belongs to and a label marking it as either a dedicated or a shared node.

Appendix B explains how to set up a three-node cluster (one master and two worker nodes) in VMs running locally. In the following examples, I’ll use the two worker nodes in that cluster, but you can also use Google Kubernetes Engine or any other multi-node cluster.

**NOTE** Minikube isn’t the best choice for running these examples, because it runs only one node.

First, label the nodes, as shown in the next listing.

#### Listing 16.10 Labeling nodes

```
$ kubectl label node node1.k8s availability-zone=zone1
node "node1.k8s" labeled
$ kubectl label node node1.k8s share-type=dedicated
node "node1.k8s" labeled
$ kubectl label node node2.k8s availability-zone=zone2
node "node2.k8s" labeled
$ kubectl label node node2.k8s share-type=shared
node "node2.k8s" labeled
$ kubectl get node -L availability-zone -L share-type
NAME      STATUS     AGE        VERSION   AVAILABILITY-ZONE   SHARE-TYPE
master.k8s  Ready     4d        v1.6.4    <none>           <none>
node1.k8s   Ready     4d        v1.6.4    zone1            dedicated
node2.k8s   Ready     4d        v1.6.4    zone2            shared
```

### SPECIFYING PREFERENTIAL NODE AFFINITY RULES

With the node labels set up, you can now create a Deployment that prefers dedicated nodes in zone1. The following listing shows the Deployment manifest.

#### Listing 16.11 Deployment with preferred node affinity: preferred-deployment.yaml

```
apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: pref
spec:
  template:
    ...
  spec:
    affinity:
      nodeAffinity:
```

You're specifying preferences, not hard requirements.

```

    ➔ preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
      - weight: 80
        preference:
          matchExpressions:
            - key: availability-zone
              operator: In
              values:
                - zone1
      - weight: 20
        preference:
          matchExpressions:
            - key: share-type
              operator: In
              values:
                - dedicated
    ...
  
```

You prefer the pod to be scheduled to zone1. This is your most important preference.

You also prefer that your pods be scheduled to dedicated nodes, but this is four times less important than your zone preference.

Let's examine the listing closely. You're defining a node affinity preference, instead of a hard requirement. You want the pods scheduled to nodes that include the labels `availability-zone=zone1` and `share-type=dedicated`. You're saying that the first preference rule is important by setting its weight to 80, whereas the second one is much less important (weight is set to 20).

### UNDERSTANDING HOW NODE PREFERENCES WORK

If your cluster had many nodes, when scheduling the pods of the Deployment in the previous listing, the nodes would be split into four groups, as shown in figure 16.3. Nodes whose `availability-zone` and `share-type` labels match the pod's node affinity are ranked the highest. Then, because of how the weights in the pod's node affinity rules are configured, next come the shared nodes in zone1, then come the dedicated nodes in the other zones, and at the lowest priority are all the other nodes.

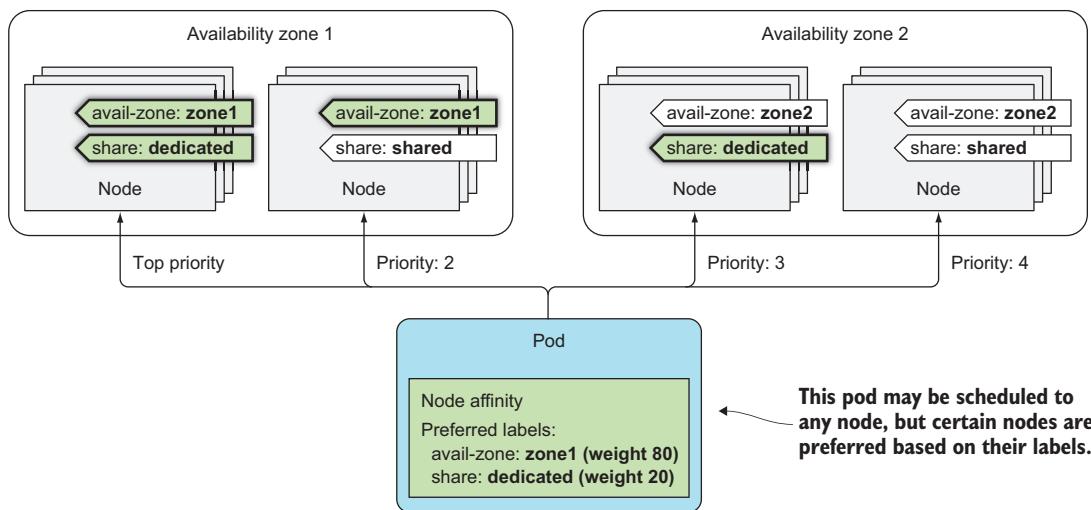


Figure 16.3 Prioritizing nodes based on a pod's node affinity preferences

### DEPLOYING THE PODS IN THE TWO-NODE CLUSTER

If you create this Deployment in your two-node cluster, you should see most (if not all) of your pods deployed to node1. Examine the following listing to see if that's true.

#### Listing 16.12 Seeing where pods were scheduled

```
$ kubectl get po -o wide
NAME        READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE     IP          NODE
pref-607515-1rnwv  1/1    Running   0          4m     10.47.0.1  node2.k8s
pref-607515-27wp0  1/1    Running   0          4m     10.44.0.8  node1.k8s
pref-607515-5xd0z  1/1    Running   0          4m     10.44.0.5  node1.k8s
pref-607515-jx9wt  1/1    Running   0          4m     10.44.0.4  node1.k8s
pref-607515-mlgqm  1/1    Running   0          4m     10.44.0.6  node1.k8s
```

Out of the five pods that were created, four of them landed on node1 and only one landed on node2. Why did one of them land on node2 instead of node1? The reason is that besides the node affinity prioritization function, the Scheduler also uses other prioritization functions to decide where to schedule a pod. One of those is the Selector-SpreadPriority function, which makes sure pods belonging to the same ReplicaSet or Service are spread around different nodes so a node failure won't bring the whole service down. That's most likely what caused one of the pods to be scheduled to node2.

You can try scaling the Deployment up to 20 or more and you'll see the majority of pods will be scheduled to node1. In my test, only two out of the 20 were scheduled to node2. If you hadn't defined any node affinity preferences, the pods would have been spread around the two nodes evenly.

## 16.3 Co-locating pods with pod affinity and anti-affinity

You've seen how node affinity rules are used to influence which node a pod is scheduled to. But these rules only affect the affinity between a pod and a node, whereas sometimes you'd like to have the ability to specify the affinity between pods themselves.

For example, imagine having a frontend and a backend pod. Having those pods deployed near to each other reduces latency and improves the performance of the app. You could use node affinity rules to ensure both are deployed to the same node, rack, or datacenter, but then you'd have to specify exactly which node, rack, or datacenter to schedule them to, which is not the best solution. It's better to let Kubernetes deploy your pods anywhere it sees fit, while keeping the frontend and backend pods close together. This can be achieved using *pod affinity*. Let's learn more about it with an example.

### 16.3.1 Using inter-pod affinity to deploy pods on the same node

You'll deploy a backend pod and five frontend pod replicas with pod affinity configured so that they're all deployed on the same node as the backend pod.

First, deploy the backend pod:

```
$ kubectl run backend -l app=backend --image busybox -- sleep 999999
deployment "backend" created
```

This Deployment is not special in any way. The only thing you need to note is the app=backend label you added to the pod using the -l option. This label is what you'll use in the frontend pod's podAffinity configuration.

#### SPECIFYING POD AFFINITY IN A POD DEFINITION

The frontend pod's definition is shown in the following listing.

##### Listing 16.13 Pod using podAffinity: frontend-podaffinity-host.yaml

```
apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: frontend
spec:
  replicas: 5
  template:
    ...
    spec:
      affinity:
        podAffinity:
          requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
            - topologyKey: kubernetes.io/hostname
              labelSelector:
                matchLabels:
                  app: backend
...
...

```

Annotations for Listing 16.13:

- Defining podAffinity rules**: Points to the podAffinity section.
- Defining a hard requirement, not a preference**: Points to the requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution section.
- The pods of this Deployment must be deployed on the same node as the pods that match the selector.**: Points to the topologyKey and labelSelector sections.

The listing shows that this Deployment will create pods that have a hard requirement to be deployed on the same node (specified by the topologyKey field) as pods that have the app=backend label (see figure 16.4).

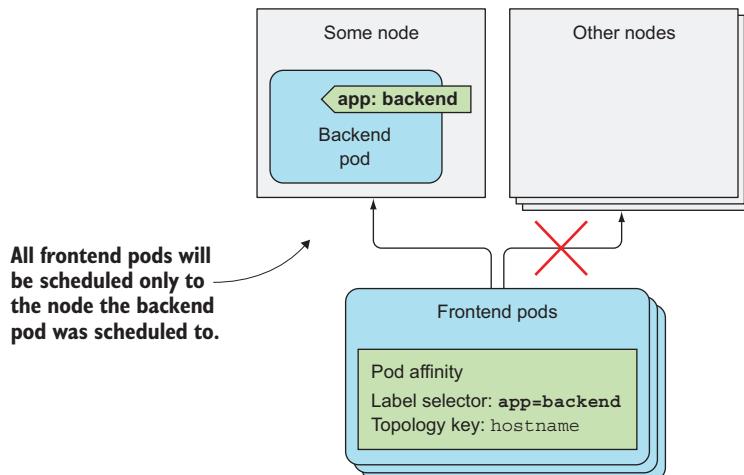


Figure 16.4 Pod affinity allows scheduling pods to the node where other pods with a specific label are.

**NOTE** Instead of the simpler `matchLabels` field, you could also use the more expressive `matchExpressions` field.

### DEPLOYING A POD WITH POD AFFINITY

Before you create this Deployment, let's see which node the backend pod was scheduled to earlier:

```
$ kubectl get po -o wide
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   IP          NODE
backend-257820-qhqj6   1/1     Running   0          8m   10.47.0.1   node2.k8s
```

When you create the frontend pods, they should be deployed to `node2` as well. You're going to create the Deployment and see where the pods are deployed. This is shown in the next listing.

#### Listing 16.14 Deploying frontend pods and seeing which node they're scheduled to

```
$ kubectl create -f frontend-podaffinity-host.yaml
deployment "frontend" created

$ kubectl get po -o wide
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE   IP          NODE
backend-257820-qhqj6   1/1     Running   0          8m   10.47.0.1   node2.k8s
frontend-121895-2c1ts   1/1     Running   0          13s  10.47.0.6   node2.k8s
frontend-121895-776m7   1/1     Running   0          13s  10.47.0.4   node2.k8s
frontend-121895-7ffsm   1/1     Running   0          13s  10.47.0.8   node2.k8s
frontend-121895-fpgm6   1/1     Running   0          13s  10.47.0.7   node2.k8s
frontend-121895-vb9ll   1/1     Running   0          13s  10.47.0.5   node2.k8s
```

All the frontend pods were indeed scheduled to the same node as the backend pod. When scheduling the frontend pod, the Scheduler first found all the pods that match the `labelSelector` defined in the frontend pod's `podAffinity` configuration and then scheduled the frontend pod to the same node.

### UNDERSTANDING HOW THE SCHEDULER USES POD AFFINITY RULES

What's interesting is that if you now delete the backend pod, the Scheduler will schedule the pod to `node2` even though it doesn't define any pod affinity rules itself (the rules are only on the frontend pods). This makes sense, because otherwise if the backend pod were to be deleted by accident and rescheduled to a different node, the frontend pods' affinity rules would be broken.

You can confirm the Scheduler takes other pods' pod affinity rules into account, if you increase the Scheduler's logging level and then check its log. The following listing shows the relevant log lines.

#### Listing 16.15 Scheduler log showing why the backend pod is scheduled to node2

```
... Attempting to schedule pod: default/backend-257820-qhqj6
...
... backend-qhqj6 -> node2.k8s: Taint Toleration Priority, Score: (10)
```

```

...
... backend-qhj6 -> node1.k8s: Taint Toleration Priority, Score: (10)
... backend-qhj6 -> node2.k8s: InterPodAffinityPriority, Score: (10)
... backend-qhj6 -> node1.k8s: InterPodAffinityPriority, Score: (0)
...
... backend-qhj6 -> node2.k8s: SelectorSpreadPriority, Score: (10)
... backend-qhj6 -> node1.k8s: SelectorSpreadPriority, Score: (10)
... backend-qhj6 -> node2.k8s: NodeAffinityPriority, Score: (0)
... backend-qhj6 -> node1.k8s: NodeAffinityPriority, Score: (0)
...
... Host node2.k8s => Score 100030
... Host node1.k8s => Score 100022
...
Attempting to bind backend-257820-qhj6 to node2.k8s

```

If you focus on the two lines in bold, you'll see that during the scheduling of the backend pod, node2 received a higher score than node1 because of inter-pod affinity.

### 16.3.2 Deploying pods in the same rack, availability zone, or geographic region

In the previous example, you used `podAffinity` to deploy frontend pods onto the same node as the backend pods. You probably don't want all your frontend pods to run on the same machine, but you'd still like to keep them close to the backend pod—for example, run them in the same availability zone.

#### CO-LOCATING PODS IN THE SAME AVAILABILITY ZONE

The cluster I'm using runs in three VMs on my local machine, so all the nodes are in the same availability zone, so to speak. But if the nodes were in different zones, all I'd need to do to run the frontend pods in the same zone as the backend pod would be to change the `topologyKey` property to `failure-domain.beta.kubernetes.io/zone`.

#### CO-LOCATING PODS IN THE SAME GEOGRAPHICAL REGION

To allow the pods to be deployed in the same region instead of the same zone (cloud providers usually have datacenters located in different geographical regions and split into multiple availability zones in each region), the `topologyKey` would be set to `failure-domain.beta.kubernetes.io/region`.

#### UNDERSTANDING HOW TOPOLOGYKEY WORKS

The way `topologyKey` works is simple. The three keys we've mentioned so far aren't special. If you want, you can easily use your own `topologyKey`, such as `rack`, to have the pods scheduled to the same server rack. The only prerequisite is to add a `rack` label to your nodes. This scenario is shown in figure 16.5.

For example, if you had 20 nodes, with 10 in each rack, you'd label the first ten as `rack=rack1` and the others as `rack=rack2`. Then, when defining a pod's `podAffinity`, you'd set the `topologyKey` to `rack`.

When the Scheduler is deciding where to deploy a pod, it checks the pod's `podAffinity` config, finds the pods that match the label selector, and looks up the nodes they're running on. Specifically, it looks up the nodes' label whose key matches the `topologyKey` field specified in `podAffinity`. Then it selects all the nodes whose label

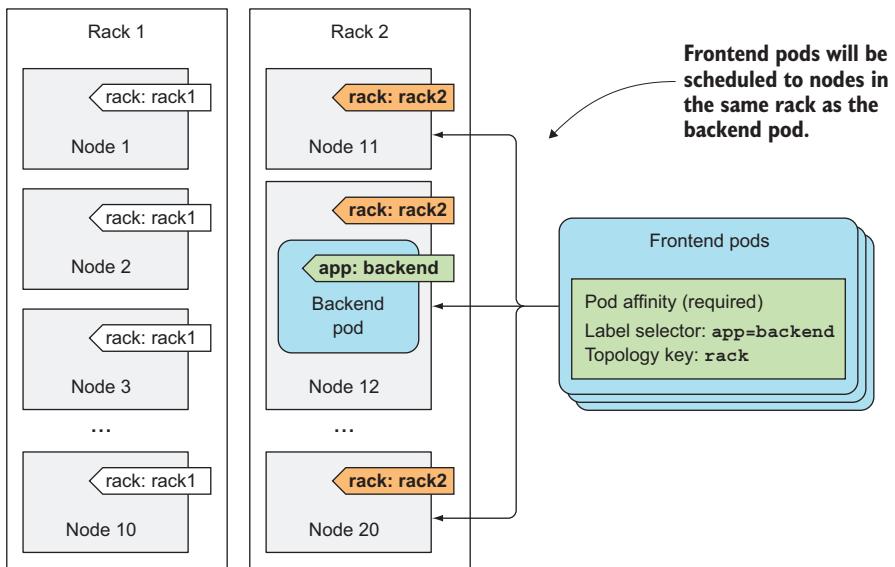


Figure 16.5 The `topologyKey` in `podAffinity` determines the scope of where the pod should be scheduled to.

matches the values of the pods it found earlier. In figure 16.5, the label selector matched the backend pod, which runs on Node 12. The value of the `rack` label on that node equals `rack2`, so when scheduling a frontend pod, the Scheduler will only select among the nodes that have the `rack=rack2` label.

**NOTE** By default, the label selector only matches pods in the same namespace as the pod that's being scheduled. But you can also select pods from other namespaces by adding a `namespaces` field at the same level as `labelSelector`.

### 16.3.3 Expressing pod affinity preferences instead of hard requirements

Earlier, when we talked about node affinity, you saw that `nodeAffinity` can be used to express a hard requirement, which means a pod is only scheduled to nodes that match the node affinity rules. It can also be used to specify node preferences, to instruct the Scheduler to schedule the pod to certain nodes, while allowing it to schedule it anywhere else if those nodes can't fit the pod for any reason.

The same also applies to `podAffinity`. You can tell the Scheduler you'd prefer to have your frontend pods scheduled onto the same node as your backend pod, but if that's not possible, you're okay with them being scheduled elsewhere. An example of a Deployment using the `preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution` pod affinity rule is shown in the next listing.

**Listing 16.16 Pod affinity preference**

```

apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: frontend
spec:
  replicas: 5
  template:
    ...
    spec:
      affinity:
        podAffinity:
          preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
            - weight: 80
              podAffinityTerm:
                topologyKey: kubernetes.io/hostname
                labelSelector:
                  matchLabels:
                    app: backend
  containers: ...

```

**Preferred instead of Required**  
**A weight and a podAffinity term is specified as in the previous example**

As in nodeAffinity preference rules, you need to define a weight for each rule. You also need to specify the topologyKey and labelSelector, as in the hard-requirement podAffinity rules. Figure 16.6 shows this scenario.

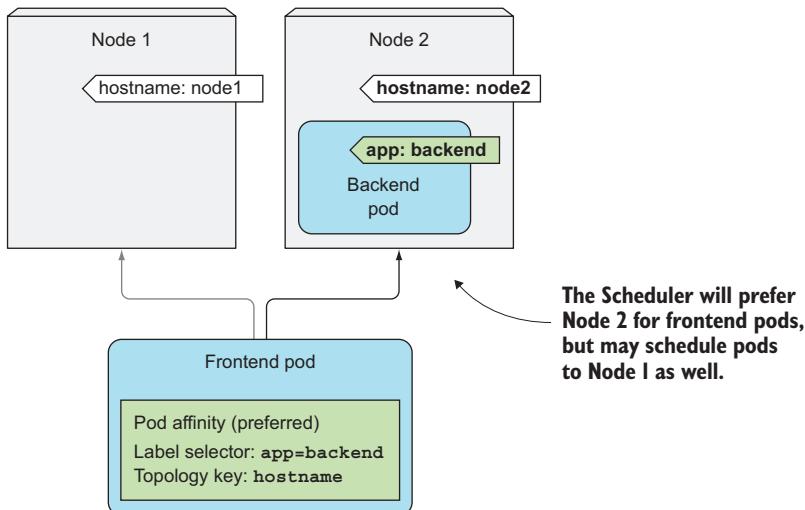


Figure 16.6 Pod affinity can be used to make the Scheduler prefer nodes where pods with a certain label are running.

Deploying this pod, as with your nodeAffinity example, deploys four pods on the same node as the backend pod, and one pod on the other node (see the following listing).

**Listing 16.17 Pods deployed with podAffinity preferences**

```
$ kubectl get po -o wide
NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE     IP           NODE
backend-257820-ssrgj  1/1    Running   0          1h     10.47.0.9  node2.k8s
frontend-941083-3mfff9 1/1    Running   0          8m     10.44.0.4  node1.k8s
frontend-941083-7fp7d  1/1    Running   0          8m     10.47.0.6  node2.k8s
frontend-941083-cq23b  1/1    Running   0          8m     10.47.0.1  node2.k8s
frontend-941083-m70sw  1/1    Running   0          8m     10.47.0.5  node2.k8s
frontend-941083-wsjv8  1/1    Running   0          8m     10.47.0.4  node2.k8s
```

### 16.3.4 Scheduling pods away from each other with pod anti-affinity

You've seen how to tell the Scheduler to co-locate pods, but sometimes you may want the exact opposite. You may want to keep pods away from each other. This is called pod anti-affinity. It's specified the same way as pod affinity, except that you use the `podAntiAffinity` property instead of `podAffinity`, which results in the Scheduler never choosing nodes where pods matching the `podAntiAffinity`'s label selector are running, as shown in figure 16.7.

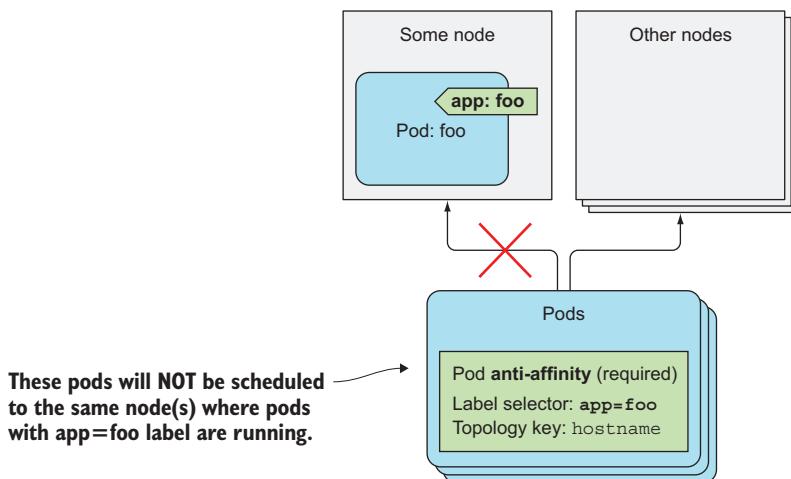


Figure 16.7 Using pod anti-affinity to keep pods away from nodes that run pods with a certain label.

An example of why you'd want to use pod anti-affinity is when two sets of pods interfere with each other's performance if they run on the same node. In that case, you want to tell the Scheduler to never schedule those pods on the same node. Another example would be to force the Scheduler to spread pods of the same group across different availability zones or regions, so that a failure of a whole zone (or region) never brings the service down completely.

### USING ANTI-AFFINITY TO SPREAD APART PODS OF THE SAME DEPLOYMENT

Let's see how to force your frontend pods to be scheduled to different nodes. The following listing shows how the pods' anti-affinity is configured.

**Listing 16.18** Pods with anti-affinity: `frontend-podantiaffinity-host.yaml`

```
apiVersion: extensions/v1beta1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: frontend
spec:
  replicas: 5
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        app: frontend
    spec:
      affinity:
        podAntiAffinity:
          requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
            - topologyKey: kubernetes.io/hostname
              labelSelector:
                matchLabels:
                  app: frontend
  containers: ...
```

This time, you're defining `podAntiAffinity` instead of `podAffinity`, and you're making the `labelSelector` match the same pods that the Deployment creates. Let's see what happens when you create this Deployment. The pods created by it are shown in the following listing.

**Listing 16.19** Pods created by the Deployment

```
$ kubectl get po -l app=frontend -o wide
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE     IP          NODE
frontend-286632-0lffz  0/1    Pending   0          1m    <none>
frontend-286632-2rkcz  1/1    Running   0          1m    10.47.0.1  node2.k8s
frontend-286632-4nwhp  0/1    Pending   0          1m    <none>
frontend-286632-h4686  0/1    Pending   0          1m    <none>
frontend-286632-st222  1/1    Running   0          1m    10.44.0.4  node1.k8s
```

As you can see, only two pods were scheduled—one to `node1`, the other to `node2`. The three remaining pods are all `Pending`, because the Scheduler isn't allowed to schedule them to the same nodes.

### USING PREFERENTIAL POD ANTI-AFFINITY

In this case, you probably should have specified a soft requirement instead (using the `preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution` property). After all, it's not such a big problem if two frontend pods run on the same node. But in scenarios where that's a problem, using `requiredDuringScheduling` is appropriate.

As with pod affinity, the `topologyKey` property determines the scope of where the pod shouldn't be deployed to. You can use it to ensure pods aren't deployed to the same rack, availability zone, region, or any custom scope you create using custom node labels.

## 16.4 Summary

In this chapter, we looked at how to ensure pods aren't scheduled to certain nodes or are only scheduled to specific nodes, either because of the node's labels or because of the pods running on them.

You learned that

- If you add a taint to a node, pods won't be scheduled to that node unless they tolerate that taint.
- Three types of taints exist: `NoSchedule` completely prevents scheduling, `PreferNoSchedule` isn't as strict, and `NoExecute` even evicts existing pods from a node.
- The `NoExecute` taint is also used to specify how long the Control Plane should wait before rescheduling the pod when the node it runs on becomes unreachable or unready.
- Node affinity allows you to specify which nodes a pod should be scheduled to. It can be used to specify a hard requirement or to only express a node preference.
- Pod affinity is used to make the Scheduler deploy pods to the same node where another pod is running (based on the pod's labels).
- Pod affinity's `topologyKey` specifies how close the pod should be deployed to the other pod (onto the same node or onto a node in the same rack, availability zone, or availability region).
- Pod anti-affinity can be used to keep certain pods away from each other.
- Both pod affinity and anti-affinity, like node affinity, can either specify hard requirements or preferences.

In the next chapter, you'll learn about best practices for developing apps and how to make them run smoothly in a Kubernetes environment.

# *Best practices for developing apps*

## **This chapter covers**

- Understanding which Kubernetes resources appear in a typical application
- Adding post-start and pre-stop pod lifecycle hooks
- Properly terminating an app without breaking client requests
- Making apps easy to manage in Kubernetes
- Using init containers in a pod
- Developing locally with Minikube

We've now covered most of what you need to know to run your apps in Kubernetes. We've explored what each individual resource does and how it's used. Now we'll see how to combine them in a typical application running on Kubernetes. We'll also look at how to make an application run smoothly. After all, that's the whole point of using Kubernetes, isn't it?

Hopefully, this chapter will help to clear up any misunderstandings and explain things that weren't explained clearly yet. Along the way, we'll also introduce a few additional concepts that haven't been mentioned up to this point.

## 17.1 Bringing everything together

Let's start by looking at what an actual application consists of. This will also give you a chance to see if you remember everything you've learned so far and look at the big picture. Figure 17.1 shows the Kubernetes components used in a typical application.

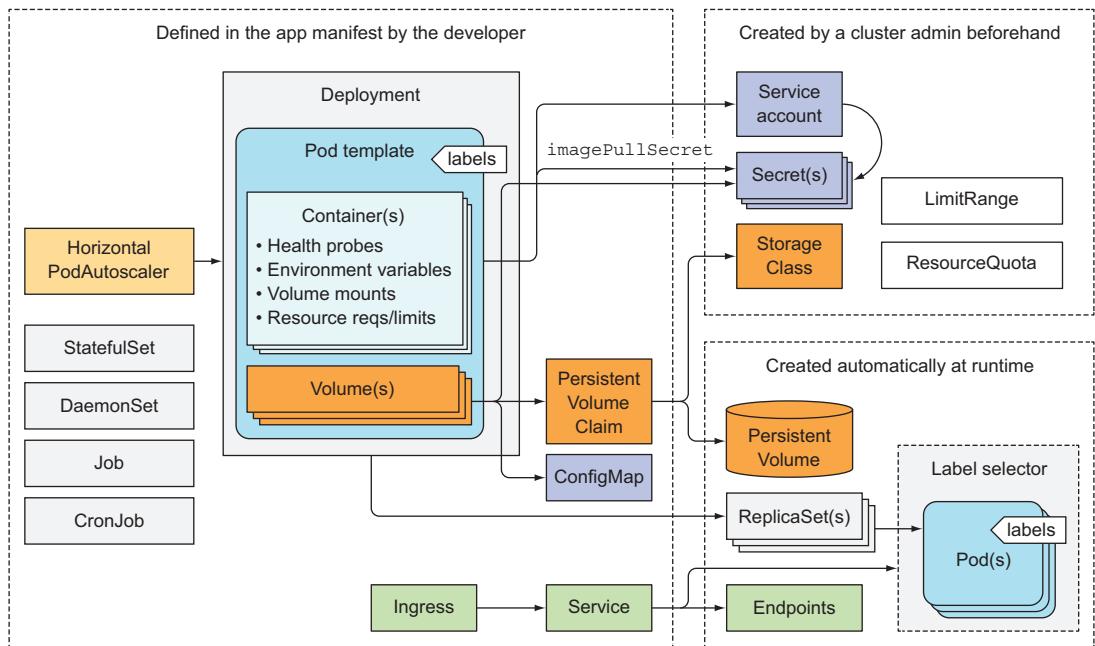


Figure 17.1 Resources in a typical application

A typical application manifest contains one or more Deployment and/or StatefulSet objects. Those include a pod template containing one or more containers, with a liveness probe for each of them and a readiness probe for the service(s) the container provides (if any). Pods that provide services to others are exposed through one or more Services. When they need to be reachable from outside the cluster, the Services are either configured to be LoadBalancer or NodePort-type Services, or exposed through an Ingress resource.

The pod templates (and the pods created from them) usually reference two types of Secrets—those for pulling container images from private image registries and those used directly by the process running inside the pods. The Secrets themselves are usually not part of the application manifest, because they aren't configured by the application developers but by the operations team. Secrets are usually assigned to ServiceAccounts, which are assigned to individual pods.

The application also contains one or more ConfigMaps, which are either used to initialize environment variables or mounted as a configMap volume in the pod. Certain pods use additional volumes, such as an emptyDir or a gitRepo volume, whereas pods requiring persistent storage use persistentVolumeClaim volumes. The PersistentVolumeClaims are also part of the application manifest, whereas StorageClasses referenced by them are created by system administrators upfront.

In certain cases, an application also requires the use of Jobs or CronJobs. DaemonSets aren't normally part of application deployments, but are usually created by sysadmins to run system services on all or a subset of nodes. HorizontalPodAutoscalers are either included in the manifest by the developers or added to the system later by the ops team. The cluster administrator also creates LimitRange and ResourceQuota objects to keep compute resource usage of individual pods and all the pods (as a whole) under control.

After the application is deployed, additional objects are created automatically by the various Kubernetes controllers. These include service Endpoints objects created by the Endpoints controller, ReplicaSets created by the Deployment controller, and the actual pods created by the ReplicaSet (or Job, CronJob, StatefulSet, or DaemonSet) controllers.

Resources are often labeled with one or more labels to keep them organized. This doesn't apply only to pods but to all other resources as well. In addition to labels, most resources also contain annotations that describe each resource, list the contact information of the person or team responsible for it, or provide additional metadata for management and other tools.

At the center of all this is the Pod, which arguably is the most important Kubernetes resource. After all, each of your applications runs inside it. To make sure you know how to develop apps that make the most out of their environment, let's take one last close look at pods—this time from the application's perspective.

## 17.2 ***Understanding the pod's lifecycle***

We've said that pods can be compared to VMs dedicated to running only a single application. Although an application running inside a pod is not unlike an application running in a VM, significant differences do exist. One example is that apps running in a pod can be killed any time, because Kubernetes needs to relocate the pod to another node for a reason or because of a scale-down request. We'll explore this aspect next.

### 17.2.1 ***Applications must expect to be killed and relocated***

Outside Kubernetes, apps running in VMs are seldom moved from one machine to another. When an operator moves the app, they can also reconfigure the app and manually check that the app is running fine in the new location. With Kubernetes, apps are relocated much more frequently and automatically—no human operator

reconfigures them and makes sure they still run properly after the move. This means application developers need to make sure their apps allow being moved relatively often.

#### **EXPECTING THE LOCAL IP AND HOSTNAME TO CHANGE**

When a pod is killed and run elsewhere (technically, it's a new pod instance replacing the old one; the pod isn't relocated), it not only has a new IP address but also a new name and hostname. Most stateless apps can usually handle this without any adverse effects, but stateful apps usually can't. We've learned that stateful apps can be run through a StatefulSet, which ensures that when the app starts up on a new node after being rescheduled, it will still see the same host name and persistent state as before. The pod's IP will change nevertheless. Apps need to be prepared for that to happen. The application developer therefore should never base membership in a clustered app on the member's IP address, and if basing it on the hostname, should always use a StatefulSet.

#### **EXPECTING THE DATA WRITTEN TO DISK TO DISAPPEAR**

Another thing to keep in mind is that if the app writes data to disk, that data may not be available after the app is started inside a new pod, unless you mount persistent storage at the location the app is writing to. It should be clear this happens when the pod is rescheduled, but files written to disk will disappear even in scenarios that don't involve any rescheduling. Even during the lifetime of a single pod, the files written to disk by the app running in the pod may disappear. Let me explain this with an example.

Imagine an app that has a long and computationally intensive initial startup procedure. To help the app come up faster on subsequent startups, the developers make the app cache the results of the initial startup on disk (an example of this would be the scanning of all Java classes for annotations at startup and then writing the results to an index file). Because apps in Kubernetes run in containers by default, these files are written to the container's filesystem. If the container is then restarted, they're all lost, because the new container starts off with a completely new writable layer (see figure 17.2).

Don't forget that individual containers may be restarted for several reasons, such as because the process crashes, because the liveness probe returned a failure, or because the node started running out of memory and the process was killed by the OOMKiller. When this happens, the pod is still the same, but the container itself is completely new. The Kubelet doesn't run the same container again; it always creates a new container.

#### **USING VOLUMES TO PRESERVE DATA ACROSS CONTAINER RESTARTS**

When its container is restarted, the app in the example will need to perform the intensive startup procedure again. This may or may not be desired. To make sure data like this isn't lost, you need to use at least a pod-scoped volume. Because volumes live and die together with the pod, the new container will be able to reuse the data written to the volume by the previous container (figure 17.3).

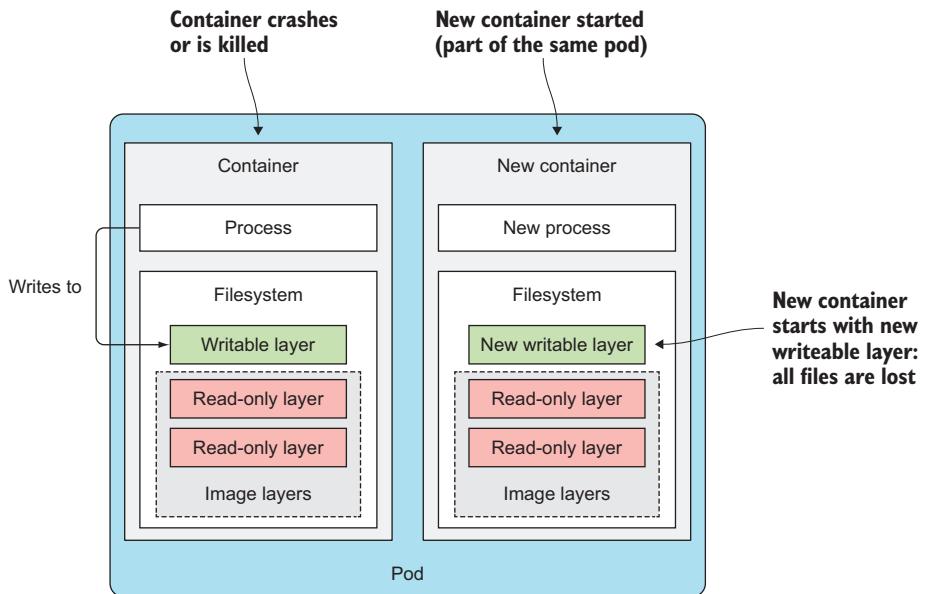


Figure 17.2 Files written to the container's filesystem are lost when the container is restarted.

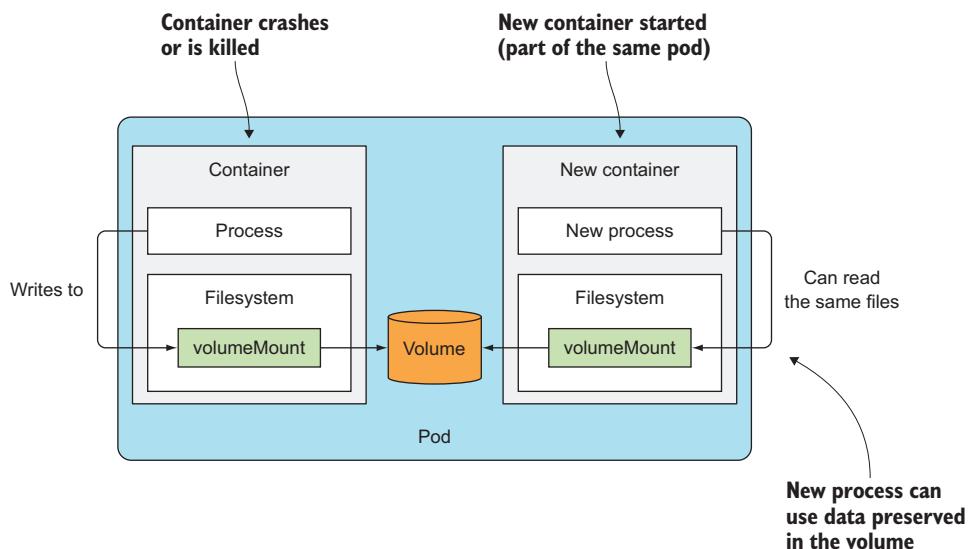


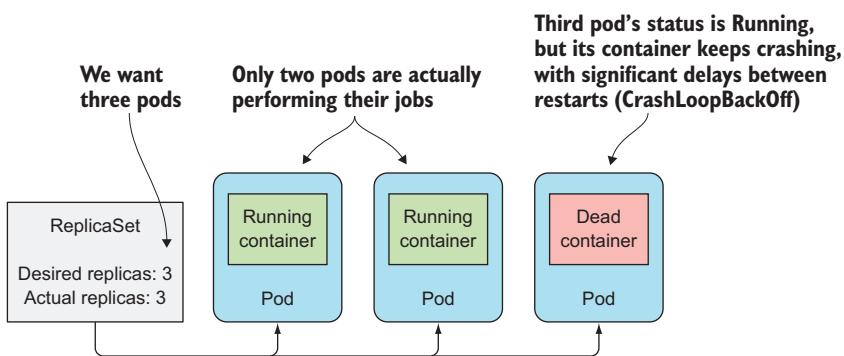
Figure 17.3 Using a volume to persist data across container restarts

Using a volume to preserve files across container restarts is a great idea sometimes, but not always. What if the data gets corrupted and causes the newly created process to crash again? This will result in a continuous crash loop (the pod will show the `CrashLoopBackOff` status). If you hadn't used a volume, the new container would start from scratch and most likely not crash. Using volumes to preserve files across container restarts like this is a double-edged sword. You need to think carefully about whether to use them or not.

### 17.2.2 Rescheduling of dead or partially dead pods

If a pod's container keeps crashing, the Kubelet will keep restarting it indefinitely. The time between restarts will be increased exponentially until it reaches five minutes. During those five minute intervals, the pod is essentially dead, because its container's process isn't running. To be fair, if it's a multi-container pod, certain containers may be running normally, so the pod is only partially dead. But if a pod contains only a single container, the pod is effectively dead and completely useless, because no process is running in it anymore.

You may find it surprising to learn that such pods aren't automatically removed and rescheduled, even if they're part of a ReplicaSet or similar controller. If you create a ReplicaSet with a desired replica count of three, and then one of the containers in one of those pods starts crashing, Kubernetes will not delete and replace the pod. The end result is a ReplicaSet with only two properly running replicas instead of the desired three (figure 17.4).



**Figure 17.4** A ReplicaSet controller doesn't reschedule dead pods.

You'd probably expect the pod to be deleted and replaced with another pod instance that might run successfully on another node. After all, the container may be crashing because of a node-related problem that doesn't manifest itself on other nodes. Sadly, that isn't the case. The ReplicaSet controller doesn't care if the pods are dead—all it

cares about is that the number of pods matches the desired replica count, which in this case, it does.

If you'd like to see for yourself, I've included a YAML manifest for a ReplicaSet whose pods will keep crashing (see file replicaset-crashingpods.yaml in the code archive). If you create the ReplicaSet and inspect the pods that are created, the following listing is what you'll see.

### Listing 17.1 ReplicaSet and pods that keep crashing

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME           READY   STATUS      RESTARTS   AGE
crashing-pods-f1tcd  0/1    CrashLoopBackOff  5          6m
crashing-pods-k7l6k  0/1    CrashLoopBackOff  5          6m
crashing-pods-z7l3v  0/1    CrashLoopBackOff  5          6m

$ kubectl describe rs crashing-pods
Name:           crashing-pods
Replicas:       3 current / 3 desired
Pods Status:   3 Running / 0 Waiting / 0 Succeeded / 0 Failed

$ kubectl describe po crashing-pods-f1tcd
Name:           crashing-pods-f1tcd
Namespace:     default
Node:          minikube/192.168.99.102
Start Time:   Thu, 02 Mar 2017 14:02:23 +0100
Labels:        app=crashing-pods
Status:        Running
```

The pod's status shows the Kubelet is delaying the restart because the container keeps crashing.

No action taken by the controller, because current replicas match desired replicas

Three replicas are shown as running.

**kubectl describe** also shows pod's status as running

In a way, it's understandable that Kubernetes behaves this way. The container will be restarted every five minutes in the hope that the underlying cause of the crash will be resolved. The rationale is that rescheduling the pod to another node most likely wouldn't fix the problem anyway, because the app is running inside a container and all the nodes should be mostly equivalent. That's not always the case, but it is most of the time.

### 17.2.3 Starting pods in a specific order

One other difference between apps running in pods and those managed manually is that the ops person deploying those apps knows about the dependencies between them. This allows them to start the apps in order.

#### UNDERSTANDING HOW PODS ARE STARTED

When you use Kubernetes to run your multi-pod applications, you don't have a built-in way to tell Kubernetes to run certain pods first and the rest only when the first pods are already up and ready to serve. Sure, you could post the manifest for the first app and then wait for the pod(s) to be ready before you post the second manifest, but your

whole system is usually defined in a single YAML or JSON containing multiple Pods, Services, and other objects.

The Kubernetes API server does process the objects in the YAML/JSON in the order they're listed, but this only means they're written to etcd in that order. You have no guarantee that pods will also be started in that order.

But you *can* prevent a pod's main container from starting until a precondition is met. This is done by including an init containers in the pod.

### INTRODUCING INIT CONTAINERS

In addition to regular containers, pods can also include init containers. As the name suggests, they can be used to initialize the pod—this often means writing data to the pod's volumes, which are then mounted into the pod's main container(s).

A pod may have any number of init containers. They're executed sequentially and only after the last one completes are the pod's main containers started. This means init containers can also be used to delay the start of the pod's main container(s)—for example, until a certain precondition is met. An init container could wait for a service required by the pod's main container to be up and ready. When it is, the init container terminates and allows the main container(s) to be started. This way, the main container wouldn't use the service before it's ready.

Let's look at an example of a pod using an init container to delay the start of the main container. Remember the `fortune` pod you created in chapter 7? It's a web server that returns a fortune quote as a response to client requests. Now, let's imagine you have a `fortune-client` pod that requires the `fortune` Service to be up and running before its main container starts. You can add an init container, which checks whether the Service is responding to requests. Until that's the case, the init container keeps retrying. Once it gets a response, the init container terminates and lets the main container start.

### ADDING AN INIT CONTAINER TO A POD

Init containers can be defined in the pod spec like main containers but through the `spec.initContainers` field. You'll find the complete YAML for the `fortune-client` pod in the book's code archive. The following listing shows the part where the init container is defined.

#### **Listing 17.2 An init container defined in a pod: `fortune-client.yaml`**

```
spec:
  initContainers:
    - name: init
      image: busybox
      command:
        - sh
        - -c
        - 'while true; do echo "Waiting for fortune service to come up...";'
          ➔ wget http://fortune -q -T 1 -O /dev/null >/dev/null 2>/dev/null
          ➔ && break; sleep 1; done; echo "Service is up! Starting main
          ➔ container."'
```

You're defining an init container, not a regular container.

The init container runs a loop that runs until the fortune Service is up.

When you deploy this pod, only its init container is started. This is shown in the pod's status when you list pods with `kubectl get`:

```
$ kubectl get po
NAME           READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
fortune-client  0/1     Init:0/1  0          1m
```

The STATUS column shows that zero of one init containers have finished. You can see the log of the init container with `kubectl logs`:

```
$ kubectl logs fortune-client -c init
Waiting for fortune service to come up...
```

When running the `kubectl logs` command, you need to specify the name of the init container with the `-c` switch (in the example, the name of the pod's init container is `init`, as you can see in listing 17.2).

The main container won't run until you deploy the `fortune` Service and the `fortune-server` pod. You'll find them in the `fortune-server.yaml` file.

#### BEST PRACTICES FOR HANDLING INTER-POD DEPENDENCIES

You've seen how an init container can be used to delay starting the pod's main container(s) until a precondition is met (making sure the Service the pod depends on is ready, for example), but it's much better to write apps that don't require every service they rely on to be ready before the app starts up. After all, the service may also go offline later, while the app is already running.

The application needs to handle internally the possibility that its dependencies aren't ready. And don't forget readiness probes. If an app can't do its job because one of its dependencies is missing, it should signal that through its readiness probe, so Kubernetes knows it, too, isn't ready. You'll want to do this not only because it prevents the app from being added as a service endpoint, but also because the app's readiness is also used by the Deployment controller when performing a rolling update, thereby preventing a rollout of a bad version.

#### 17.2.4 Adding lifecycle hooks

We've talked about how init containers can be used to hook into the startup of the pod, but pods also allow you to define two lifecycle hooks:

- *Post-start* hooks
- *Pre-stop* hooks

These lifecycle hooks are specified per container, unlike init containers, which apply to the whole pod. As their names suggest, they're executed when the container starts and before it stops.

Lifecycle hooks are similar to liveness and readiness probes in that they can either

- Execute a command inside the container
- Perform an HTTP GET request against a URL

Let's look at the two hooks individually to see what effect they have on the container lifecycle.

### USING A POST-START CONTAINER LIFECYCLE HOOK

A post-start hook is executed immediately after the container's main process is started. You use it to perform additional operations when the application starts. Sure, if you're the author of the application running in the container, you can always perform those operations inside the application code itself. But when you're running an application developed by someone else, you mostly don't want to (or can't) modify its source code. Post-start hooks allow you to run additional commands without having to touch the app. These may signal to an external listener that the app is starting, or they may initialize the application so it can start doing its job.

The hook is run in parallel with the main process. The name might be somewhat misleading, because it doesn't wait for the main process to start up fully (if the process has an initialization procedure, the Kubelet obviously can't wait for the procedure to complete, because it has no way of knowing when that is).

But even though the hook runs asynchronously, it does affect the container in two ways. Until the hook completes, the container will stay in the `Waiting` state with the reason `ContainerCreating`. Because of this, the pod's status will be `Pending` instead of `Running`. If the hook fails to run or returns a non-zero exit code, the main container will be killed.

A pod manifest containing a post-start hook looks like the following listing.

#### Listing 17.3 A pod with a post-start lifecycle hook: post-start-hook.yaml

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-with-poststart-hook
spec:
  containers:
    - image: luksa/kubia
      name: kubia
      lifecycle:
        postStart:
          exec:
            command:
              - sh
              - -c
              - "echo 'hook will fail with exit code 15'; sleep 5; exit 15"

```

**It executes the `postStart.sh` script in the `/bin` directory inside the container.**

**The hook is executed as the container starts.**

In the example, the `echo`, `sleep`, and `exit` commands are executed along with the container's main process as soon as the container is created. Rather than run a command like this, you'd typically run a shell script or a binary executable file stored in the container image.

Sadly, if the process started by the hook logs to the standard output, you can't see the output anywhere. This makes debugging lifecycle hooks painful. If the hook fails,

you'll only see a FailedPostStartHook warning among the pod's events (you can see them using `kubectl describe pod`). A while later, you'll see more information on why the hook failed, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 17.4 Pod's events showing the exit code of the failed command-based hook**

```
FailedSync  Error syncing pod, skipping: failed to "StartContainer" for
           "kubia" with PostStart handler: command 'sh -c echo 'hook
           will fail with exit code 15'; sleep 5 ; exit 15' exited
           with 15: : "PostStart Hook Failed"
```

The number 15 in the last line is the exit code of the command. When using an HTTP GET hook handler, the reason may look like the following listing (you can try this by deploying the `post-start-hook-httpget.yaml` file from the book's code archive).

**Listing 17.5 Pod's events showing the reason why an HTTP GET hook failed**

```
FailedSync  Error syncing pod, skipping: failed to "StartContainer" for
           "kubia" with PostStart handler: Get
           http://10.32.0.2:9090/postStart: dial tcp 10.32.0.2:9090:
           getsockopt: connection refused: "PostStart Hook Failed"
```

**NOTE** The post-start hook is intentionally misconfigured to use port 9090 instead of the correct port 8080, to show what happens when the hook fails.

The standard and error outputs of command-based post-start hooks aren't logged anywhere, so you may want to have the process the hook invokes log to a file in the container's filesystem, which will allow you to examine the contents of the file with something like this:

```
$ kubectl exec my-pod cat logfile.txt
```

If the container gets restarted for whatever reason (including because the hook failed), the file may be gone before you can examine it. You can work around that by mounting an `emptyDir` volume into the container and having the hook write to it.

**USING A PRE-STOP CONTAINER LIFECYCLE HOOK**

A pre-stop hook is executed immediately before a container is terminated. When a container needs to be terminated, the Kubelet will run the pre-stop hook, if configured, and only then send a `SIGTERM` to the process (and later kill the process if it doesn't terminate gracefully).

A pre-stop hook can be used to initiate a graceful shutdown of the container, if it doesn't shut down gracefully upon receipt of a `SIGTERM` signal. They can also be used to perform arbitrary operations before shutdown without having to implement those operations in the application itself (this is useful when you're running a third-party app, whose source code you don't have access to and/or can't modify).

Configuring a pre-stop hook in a pod manifest isn't very different from adding a post-start hook. The previous example showed a post-start hook that executes a com-

mand, so we'll look at a pre-stop hook that performs an HTTP GET request now. The following listing shows how to define a pre-stop HTTP GET hook in a pod.

#### Listing 17.6 A pre-stop hook YAML snippet: pre-stop-hook-httplib.yaml

```
lifecycle:
  preStop:
    httpGet:
      port: 8080
      path: shutdown
```

This is a pre-stop hook that performs an HTTP GET request.

The request is sent to [http://POD\\_IP:8080/shutdown](http://POD_IP:8080/shutdown).

The pre-stop hook defined in this listing performs an HTTP GET request to [http://POD\\_IP:8080/shutdown](http://POD_IP:8080/shutdown) as soon as the Kubelet starts terminating the container. Apart from the port and path shown in the listing, you can also set the fields scheme (HTTP or HTTPS) and host, as well as httpHeaders that should be sent in the request. The host field defaults to the pod IP. Be sure not to set it to localhost, because localhost would refer to the node, not the pod.

In contrast to the post-start hook, the container will be terminated regardless of the result of the hook—an error HTTP response code or a non-zero exit code when using a command-based hook will not prevent the container from being terminated. If the pre-stop hook fails, you'll see a `FailedPreStopHook` warning event among the pod's events, but because the pod is deleted soon afterward (after all, the pod's deletion is what triggered the pre-stop hook in the first place), you may not even notice that the pre-stop hook failed to run properly.

**TIP** If the successful completion of the pre-stop hook is critical to the proper operation of your system, verify whether it's being executed at all. I've witnessed situations where the pre-stop hook didn't run and the developer wasn't even aware of that.

#### USING A PRE-STOP HOOK BECAUSE YOUR APP DOESN'T RECEIVE THE SIGTERM SIGNAL

Many developers make the mistake of defining a pre-stop hook solely to send a SIGTERM signal to their apps in the pre-stop hook. They do this because they don't see their application receive the SIGTERM signal sent by the Kubelet. The reason why the signal isn't received by the application isn't because Kubernetes isn't sending it, but because the signal isn't being passed to the app process inside the container itself. If your container image is configured to run a shell, which in turn runs the app process, the signal may be eaten up by the shell itself, instead of being passed down to the child process.

In such cases, instead of adding a pre-stop hook to send the signal directly to your app, the proper fix is to make sure the shell passes the signal to the app. This can be achieved by handling the signal in the shell script running as the main container process and then passing it on to the app. Or you could not configure the container image to run a shell at all and instead run the application binary directly. You do this by using the exec form of ENTRYPPOINT or CMD in the Dockerfile: `ENTRYPOINT ["/mybinary"]` instead of `ENTRYPOINT /mybinary`.

A container using the first form runs the `mybinary` executable as its main process, whereas the second form runs a shell as the main process with the `mybinary` process executed as a child of the shell process.

#### **UNDERSTANDING THAT LIFECYCLE HOOKS TARGET CONTAINERS, NOT PODS**

As a final thought on post-start and pre-stop hooks, let me emphasize that these lifecycle hooks relate to containers, not pods. You shouldn't use a pre-stop hook for running actions that need to be performed when the pod is terminating. The reason is that the pre-stop hook gets called when the container is being terminated (most likely because of a failed liveness probe). This may happen multiple times in the pod's lifetime, not only when the pod is in the process of being shut down.

#### **17.2.5 Understanding pod shutdown**

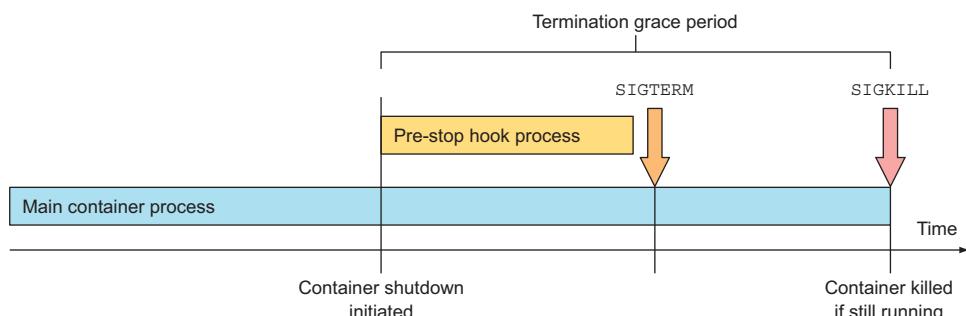
We've touched on the subject of pod termination, so let's explore this subject in more detail and go over exactly what happens during pod shutdown. This is important for understanding how to cleanly shut down an application running in a pod.

Let's start at the beginning. A pod's shut-down is triggered by the deletion of the Pod object through the API server. Upon receiving an HTTP DELETE request, the API server doesn't delete the object yet, but only sets a `deletionTimestamp` field in it. Pods that have the `deletionTimestamp` field set are terminating.

Once the Kubelet notices the pod needs to be terminated, it starts terminating each of the pod's containers. It gives each container time to shut down gracefully, but the time is limited. That time is called the termination grace period and is configurable per pod. The timer starts as soon as the termination process starts. Then the following sequence of events is performed:

- 1 Run the pre-stop hook, if one is configured, and wait for it to finish.
- 2 Send the SIGTERM signal to the main process of the container.
- 3 Wait until the container shuts down cleanly or until the termination grace period runs out.
- 4 Forcibly kill the process with SIGKILL, if it hasn't terminated gracefully yet.

The sequence of events is illustrated in figure 17.5.



**Figure 17.5 The container termination sequence**

### SPECIFYING THE TERMINATION GRACE PERIOD

The termination grace period can be configured in the pod spec by setting the `spec.terminationGracePeriodSeconds` field. It defaults to 30, which means the pod's containers will be given 30 seconds to terminate gracefully before they're killed forcibly.

**TIP** You should set the grace period to long enough so your process can finish cleaning up in that time.

The grace period specified in the pod spec can also be overridden when deleting the pod like this:

```
$ kubectl delete po mypod --grace-period=5
```

This will make the Kubelet wait five seconds for the pod to shut down cleanly. When all the pod's containers stop, the Kubelet notifies the API server and the Pod resource is finally deleted. You can force the API server to delete the resource immediately, without waiting for confirmation, by setting the grace period to zero and adding the `--force` option like this:

```
$ kubectl delete po mypod --grace-period=0 --force
```

Be careful when using this option, especially with pods of a StatefulSet. The StatefulSet controller takes great care to never run two instances of the same pod at the same time (two pods with the same ordinal index and name and attached to the same PersistentVolume). By force-deleting a pod, you'll cause the controller to create a replacement pod without waiting for the containers of the deleted pod to shut down. In other words, two instances of the same pod might be running at the same time, which may cause your stateful cluster to malfunction. Only delete stateful pods forcibly when you're absolutely sure the pod isn't running anymore or can't talk to the other members of the cluster (you can be sure of this when you confirm that the node that hosted the pod has failed or has been disconnected from the network and can't reconnect).

Now that you understand how containers are shut down, let's look at it from the application's perspective and go over how applications should handle the shutdown procedure.

### IMPLEMENTING THE PROPER SHUTDOWN HANDLER IN YOUR APPLICATION

Applications should react to a `SIGTERM` signal by starting their shut-down procedure and terminating when it finishes. Instead of handling the `SIGTERM` signal, the application can be notified to shut down through a pre-stop hook. In both cases, the app then only has a fixed amount of time to terminate cleanly.

But what if you can't predict how long the app will take to shut down cleanly? For example, imagine your app is a distributed data store. On scale-down, one of the pod instances will be deleted and therefore shut down. In the shut-down procedure, the

pod needs to migrate all its data to the remaining pods to make sure it's not lost. Should the pod start migrating the data upon receiving a termination signal (through either the SIGTERM signal or through a pre-stop hook)?

Absolutely not! This is not recommended for at least the following two reasons:

- A container terminating doesn't necessarily mean the whole pod is being terminated.
- You have no guarantee the shut-down procedure will finish before the process is killed.

This second scenario doesn't happen only when the grace period runs out before the application has finished shutting down gracefully, but also when the node running the pod fails in the middle of the container shut-down sequence. Even if the node then starts up again, the Kubelet will not restart the shut-down procedure (it won't even start up the container again). There are absolutely no guarantees that the pod will be allowed to complete its whole shut-down procedure.

#### REPLACING CRITICAL SHUT-DOWN PROCEDURES WITH DEDICATED SHUT-DOWN PROCEDURE PODS

How do you ensure that a critical shut-down procedure that absolutely must run to completion does run to completion (for example, to ensure that a pod's data is migrated to other pods)?

One solution is for the app (upon receipt of a termination signal) to create a new Job resource that would run a new pod, whose sole job is to migrate the deleted pod's data to the remaining pods. But if you've been paying attention, you'll know that you have no guarantee the app will indeed manage to create the Job object every single time. What if the node fails exactly when the app tries to do that?

The proper way to handle this problem is by having a dedicated, constantly running pod that keeps checking for the existence of orphaned data. When this pod finds the orphaned data, it can migrate it to the remaining pods. Rather than a constantly running pod, you can also use a CronJob resource and run the pod periodically.

You may think StatefulSets could help here, but they don't. As you'll remember, scaling down a StatefulSet leaves PersistentVolumeClaims orphaned, leaving the data stored on the PersistentVolume stranded. Yes, upon a subsequent scale-up, the PersistentVolume will be reattached to the new pod instance, but what if that scale-up never happens (or happens after a long time)? For this reason, you may want to run a data-migrating pod also when using StatefulSets (this scenario is shown in figure 17.6). To prevent the migration from occurring during an application upgrade, the data-migrating pod could be configured to wait a while to give the stateful pod time to come up again before performing the migration.

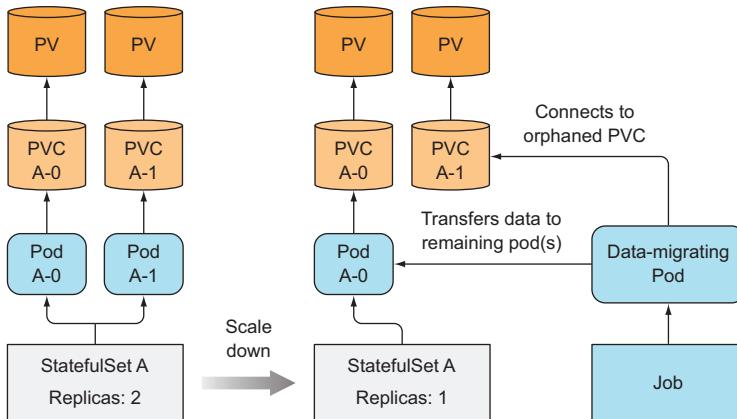


Figure 17.6 Using a dedicated pod to migrate data

## 17.3 Ensuring all client requests are handled properly

You now have a good sense of how to make pods shut down cleanly. Now, we'll look at the pod's lifecycle from the perspective of the pod's clients (clients consuming the service the pod is providing). This is important to understand if you don't want clients to run into problems when you scale pods up or down.

It goes without saying that you want all client requests to be handled properly. You obviously don't want to see broken connections when pods are starting up or shutting down. By itself, Kubernetes doesn't prevent this from happening. Your app needs to follow a few rules to prevent broken connections. First, let's focus on making sure all connections are handled properly when the pod starts up.

### 17.3.1 Preventing broken client connections when a pod is starting up

Ensuring each connection is handled properly at pod startup is simple if you understand how Services and service Endpoints work. When a pod is started, it's added as an endpoint to all the Services, whose label selector matches the pod's labels. As you may remember from chapter 5, the pod also needs to signal to Kubernetes that it's ready. Until it is, it won't become a service endpoint and therefore won't receive any requests from clients.

If you don't specify a readiness probe in your pod spec, the pod is always considered ready. It will start receiving requests almost immediately—as soon as the first kube-proxy updates the iptables rules on its node and the first client pod tries to connect to the service. If your app isn't ready to accept connections by then, clients will see “connection refused” types of errors.

All you need to do is make sure that your readiness probe returns success only when your app is ready to properly handle incoming requests. A good first step is to add an HTTP GET readiness probe and point it to the base URL of your app. In many

cases that gets you far enough and saves you from having to implement a special readiness endpoint in your app.

### 17.3.2 Preventing broken connections during pod shut-down

Now let's see what happens at the other end of a pod's life—when the pod is deleted and its containers are terminated. We've already talked about how the pod's containers should start shutting down cleanly as soon they receive the SIGTERM signal (or when its pre-stop hook is executed). But does that ensure all client requests are handled properly?

How should the app behave when it receives a termination signal? Should it continue to accept requests? What about requests that have already been received but haven't completed yet? What about persistent HTTP connections, which may be in between requests, but are open (when no active request exists on the connection)? Before we can answer those questions, we need to take a detailed look at the chain of events that unfolds across the cluster when a Pod is deleted.

#### UNDERSTANDING THE SEQUENCE OF EVENTS OCCURRING AT POD DELETION

In chapter 11 we took an in-depth look at what components make up a Kubernetes cluster. You need to always keep in mind that those components run as separate processes on multiple machines. They aren't all part of a single big monolithic process. It takes time for all the components to be on the same page regarding the state of the cluster. Let's explore this fact by looking at what happens across the cluster when a Pod is deleted.

When a request for a pod deletion is received by the API server, it first modifies the state in etcd and then notifies its watchers of the deletion. Among those watchers are the Kubelet and the Endpoints controller. The two sequences of events, which happen in parallel (marked with either A or B), are shown in figure 17.7.

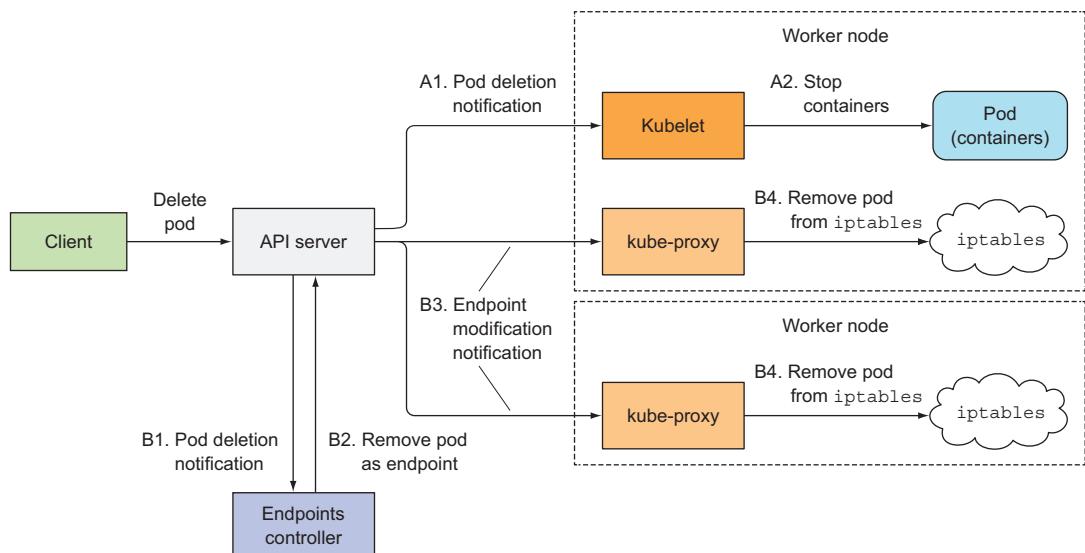


Figure 17.7 Sequence of events that occurs when a Pod is deleted

In the A sequence of events, you'll see that as soon as the Kubelet receives the notification that the pod should be terminated, it initiates the shutdown sequence as explained in section 17.2.5 (run the pre-stop hook, send SIGTERM, wait for a period of time, and then forcibly kill the container if it hasn't yet terminated on its own). If the app responds to the SIGTERM by immediately ceasing to receive client requests, any client trying to connect to it will receive a Connection Refused error. The time it takes for this to happen from the time the pod is deleted is relatively short because of the direct path from the API server to the Kubelet.

Now, let's look at what happens in the other sequence of events—the one leading up to the pod being removed from the iptables rules (sequence B in the figure). When the Endpoints controller (which runs in the Controller Manager in the Kubernetes Control Plane) receives the notification of the Pod being deleted, it removes the pod as an endpoint in all services that the pod is a part of. It does this by modifying the Endpoints API object by sending a REST request to the API server. The API server then notifies all clients watching the Endpoints object. Among those watchers are all the kube-proxies running on the worker nodes. Each of these proxies then updates the iptables rules on its node, which is what prevents new connections from being forwarded to the terminating pod. An important detail here is that removing the iptables rules has no effect on existing connections—clients who are already connected to the pod will still send additional requests to the pod through those existing connections.

Both of these sequences of events happen in parallel. Most likely, the time it takes to shut down the app's process in the pod is slightly shorter than the time required for the iptables rules to be updated. The chain of events that leads to iptables rules being updated is considerably longer (see figure 17.8), because the event must first reach the Endpoints controller, which then sends a new request to the API server, and

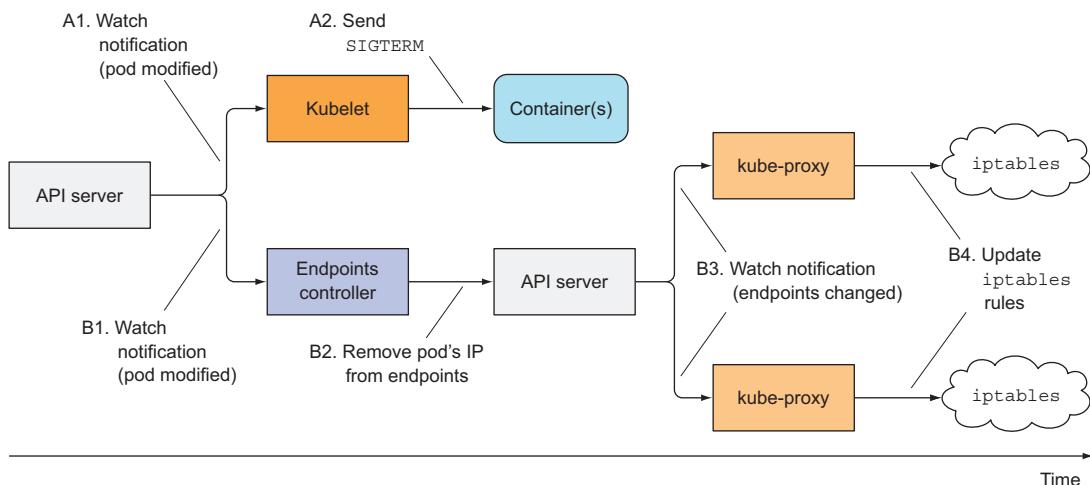


Figure 17.8 Timeline of events when pod is deleted

then the API server must notify the kube-proxy before the proxy finally modifies the iptables rules. A high probability exists that the SIGTERM signal will be sent well before the iptables rules are updated on all nodes.

The end result is that the pod may still receive client requests after it was sent the termination signal. If the app closes the server socket and stops accepting connections immediately, this will cause clients to receive “Connection Refused” types of errors (similar to what happens at pod startup if your app isn’t capable of accepting connections immediately and you don’t define a readiness probe for it).

### SOLVING THE PROBLEM

Googling solutions to this problem makes it seem as though adding a readiness probe to your pod will solve the problem. Supposedly, all you need to do is make the readiness probe start failing as soon as the pod receives the SIGTERM. This is supposed to cause the pod to be removed as the endpoint of the service. But the removal would happen only after the readiness probe fails for a few consecutive times (this is configurable in the readiness probe spec). And, obviously, the removal then still needs to reach the kube-proxy before the pod is removed from iptables rules.

In reality, the readiness probe has absolutely no bearing on the whole process at all. The Endpoints controller removes the pod from the service Endpoints as soon as it receives notice of the pod being deleted (when the deletionTimestamp field in the pod’s spec is no longer null). From that point on, the result of the readiness probe is irrelevant.

What’s the proper solution to the problem? How can you make sure all requests are handled fully?

It’s clear the pod needs to keep accepting connections even after it receives the termination signal up until all the kube-proxies have finished updating the iptables rules. Well, it’s not only the kube-proxies. There may also be Ingress controllers or load balancers forwarding connections to the pod directly, without going through the Service (iptables). This also includes clients using client-side load-balancing. To ensure none of the clients experience broken connections, you’d have to wait until all of them somehow notify you they’ll no longer forward connections to the pod.

That’s impossible, because all those components are distributed across many different computers. Even if you knew the location of every one of them and could wait until all of them say it’s okay to shut down the pod, what do you do if one of them doesn’t respond? How long do you wait for the response? Remember, during that time, you’re holding up the shut-down process.

The only reasonable thing you can do is wait for a long-enough time to ensure all the proxies have done their job. But how long is long enough? A few seconds should be enough in most situations, but there’s no guarantee it will suffice every time. When the API server or the Endpoints controller is overloaded, it may take longer for the notification to reach the kube-proxy. It’s important to understand that you can’t solve the problem perfectly, but even adding a 5- or 10-second delay should improve the user experience considerably. You can use a longer delay, but don’t go overboard,

because the delay will prevent the container from shutting down promptly and will cause the pod to be shown in lists long after it has been deleted, which is always frustrating to the user deleting the pod.

### WRAPPING UP THIS SECTION

To recap—properly shutting down an application includes these steps:

- Wait for a few seconds, then stop accepting new connections.
- Close all keep-alive connections not in the middle of a request.
- Wait for all active requests to finish.
- Then shut down completely.

To understand what's happening with the connections and requests during this process, examine figure 17.9 carefully.

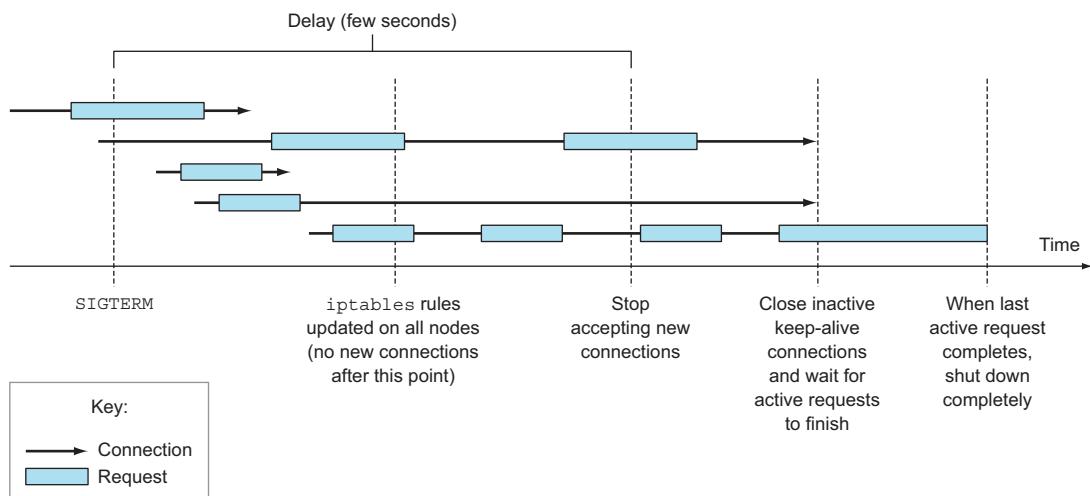


Figure 17.9 Properly handling existing and new connections after receiving a termination signal

Not as simple as exiting the process immediately upon receiving the termination signal, right? Is it worth going through all this? That's for you to decide. But the least you can do is add a pre-stop hook that waits a few seconds, like the one in the following listing, perhaps.

#### Listing 17.7 A pre-stop hook for preventing broken connections

```
lifecycle:
  preStop:
    exec:
      command:
        - sh
        - -c
        - "sleep 5"
```

This way, you don't need to modify the code of your app at all. If your app already ensures all in-flight requests are processed completely, this pre-stop delay may be all you need.

## 17.4 Making your apps easy to run and manage in Kubernetes

I hope you now have a better sense of how to make your apps handle clients nicely. Now we'll look at other aspects of how an app should be built to make it easier to manage in Kubernetes.

### 17.4.1 Making manageable container images

When you package your app into an image, you can choose to include the app's binary executable and any additional libraries it needs, or you can package up a whole OS filesystem along with the app. Way too many people do this, even though it's usually unnecessary.

Do you need every single file from an OS distribution in your image? Probably not. Most of the files will never be used and will make your image larger than it needs to be. Sure, the layering of images makes sure each individual layer is downloaded only once, but even having to wait longer than necessary the first time a pod is scheduled to a node is undesirable.

Deploying new pods and scaling them should be fast. This demands having small images without unnecessary cruft. If you're building apps using the Go language, your images don't need to include anything else apart from the app's single binary executable file. This makes Go-based container images extremely small and perfect for Kubernetes.

**TIP** Use the `FROM scratch` directive in the Dockerfile for these images.

But in practice, you'll soon see these minimal images are extremely difficult to debug. The first time you need to run a tool such as `ping`, `dig`, `curl`, or something similar inside the container, you'll realize how important it is for container images to also include at least a limited set of these tools. I can't tell you what to include and what not to include in your images, because it depends on how you do things, so you'll need to find the sweet spot yourself.

### 17.4.2 Properly tagging your images and using `imagePullPolicy` wisely

You'll also soon learn that referring to the `latest` image tag in your pod manifests will cause problems, because you can't tell which version of the image each individual pod replica is running. Even if initially all your pod replicas run the same image version, if you push a new version of the image under the `latest` tag, and then pods are rescheduled (or you scale up your Deployment), the new pods will run the new version, whereas the old ones will still be running the old one. Also, using the `latest` tag makes it impossible to roll back to a previous version (unless you push the old version of the image again).

It's almost mandatory to use tags containing a proper version designator instead of latest, except maybe in development. Keep in mind that if you use mutable tags (you push changes to the same tag), you'll need to set the `imagePullPolicy` field in the pod spec to `Always`. But if you use that in production pods, be aware of the big caveat associated with it. If the image pull policy is set to `Always`, the container runtime will contact the image registry every time a new pod is deployed. This slows down pod startup a bit, because the node needs to check if the image has been modified. Worse yet, this policy prevents the pod from starting up when the registry cannot be contacted.

#### 17.4.3 Using multi-dimensional instead of single-dimensional labels

Don't forget to label all your resources, not only Pods. Make sure you add multiple labels to each resource, so they can be selected across each individual dimension. You (or the ops team) will be grateful you did it when the number of resources increases.

Labels may include things like

- The name of the application (or perhaps microservice) the resource belongs to
- Application tier (front-end, back-end, and so on)
- Environment (development, QA, staging, production, and so on)
- Version
- Type of release (stable, canary, green or blue for green/blue deployments, and so on)
- Tenant (if you're running separate pods for each tenant instead of using namespaces)
- Shard for sharded systems

This will allow you to manage resources in groups instead of individually and make it easy to see where each resource belongs.

#### 17.4.4 Describing each resource through annotations

To add additional information to your resources use annotations. At the least, resources should contain an annotation describing the resource and an annotation with contact information of the person responsible for it.

In a microservices architecture, pods could contain an annotation that lists the names of the other services the pod is using. This makes it possible to show dependencies between pods. Other annotations could include build and version information and metadata used by tooling or graphical user interfaces (icon names, and so on).

Both labels and annotations make managing running applications much easier, but nothing is worse than when an application starts crashing and you don't know why.

#### 17.4.5 Providing information on why the process terminated

Nothing is more frustrating than having to figure out why a container terminated (or is even terminating continuously), especially if it happens at the worst possible

moment. Be nice to the ops people and make their lives easier by including all the necessary debug information in your log files.

But to make triage even easier, you can use one other Kubernetes feature that makes it possible to show the reason why a container terminated in the pod's status. You do this by having the process write a termination message to a specific file in the container's filesystem. The contents of this file are read by the Kubelet when the container terminates and are shown in the output of `kubectl describe pod`. If an application uses this mechanism, an operator can quickly see why the app terminated without even having to look at the container logs.

The default file the process needs to write the message to is `/dev/termination-log`, but it can be changed by setting the `terminationMessagePath` field in the container definition in the pod spec.

You can see this in action by running a pod whose container dies immediately, as shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing 17.8 Pod writing a termination message: `termination-message.yaml`**

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Pod
metadata:
  name: pod-with-termination-message
spec:
  containers:
    - image: busybox
      name: main
      terminationMessagePath: /var/termination-reason
      command:
        - sh
        - -c
        - 'echo "I've had enough" > /var/termination-reason ; exit 1'
```

You're overriding the default path of the termination message file.

The container will write the message to the file just before exiting.

When running this pod, you'll soon see the pod's status shown as `CrashLoopBackOff`. If you then use `kubectl describe`, you can see why the container died, without having to dig down into its logs, as shown in the following listing.

#### **Listing 17.9 Seeing the container's termination message with `kubectl describe`**

```
$ kubectl describe po
Name:           pod-with-termination-message
...
Containers:
...
  State:      Waiting
  Reason:     CrashLoopBackOff
  Last State: Terminated
  Reason:     Error
  Message:    I've had enough
  Exit Code:   1
  Started:    Tue, 21 Feb 2017 21:38:31 +0100
  Finished:   Tue, 21 Feb 2017 21:38:31 +0100
```

You can see the reason why the container died without having to inspect its logs.

```
Ready:           False
Restart Count:  6
```

As you can see, the “I’ve had enough” message the process wrote to the file /var/termination-reason is shown in the container’s Last State section. Note that this mechanism isn’t limited only to containers that crash. It can also be used in pods that run a completable task and terminate successfully (you’ll find an example in the file termination-message-success.yaml).

This mechanism is great for terminated containers, but you’ll probably agree that a similar mechanism would also be useful for showing app-specific status messages of running, not only terminated, containers. Kubernetes currently doesn’t provide any such functionality and I’m not aware of any plans to introduce it.

**NOTE** If the container doesn’t write the message to any file, you can set the terminationMessagePolicy field to FallbackToLogsOnError. In that case, the last few lines of the container’s log are used as its termination message (but only when the container terminates unsuccessfully).

#### 17.4.6 Handling application logs

While we’re on the subject of application logging, let’s reiterate that apps should write to the standard output instead of files. This makes it easy to view logs with the kubectl logs command.

**TIP** If a container crashes and is replaced with a new one, you’ll see the new container’s log. To see the previous container’s logs, use the --previous option with kubectl logs.

If the application logs to a file instead of the standard output, you can display the log file using an alternative approach:

```
$ kubectl exec <pod> cat <logfile>
```

This executes the cat command inside the container and streams the logs back to kubectl, which prints them out in your terminal.

##### COPYING LOG AND OTHER FILES TO AND FROM A CONTAINER

You can also copy the log file to your local machine using the kubectl cp command, which we haven’t looked at yet. It allows you to copy files from and into a container. For example, if a pod called foo-pod and its single container contains a file at /var/log/foo.log, you can transfer it to your local machine with the following command:

```
$ kubectl cp foo-pod:/var/log/foo.log foo.log
```

To copy a file from your local machine into the pod, specify the pod’s name in the second argument:

```
$ kubectl cp localfile foo-pod:/etc/remotefile
```

This copies the file localfile to /etc/remotefile inside the pod’s container. If the pod has more than one container, you specify the container using the `-c containerName` option.

### USING CENTRALIZED LOGGING

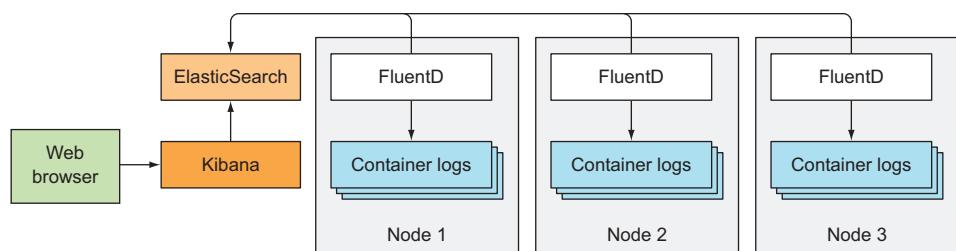
In a production system, you’ll want to use a centralized, cluster-wide logging solution, so all your logs are collected and (permanently) stored in a central location. This allows you to examine historical logs and analyze trends. Without such a system, a pod’s logs are only available while the pod exists. As soon as it’s deleted, its logs are deleted also.

Kubernetes by itself doesn’t provide any kind of centralized logging. The components necessary for providing a centralized storage and analysis of all the container logs must be provided by additional components, which usually run as regular pods in the cluster.

Deploying centralized logging solutions is easy. All you need to do is deploy a few YAML/JSON manifests and you’re good to go. On Google Kubernetes Engine, it’s even easier. Check the Enable Stackdriver Logging checkbox when setting up the cluster. Setting up centralized logging on an on-premises Kubernetes cluster is beyond the scope of this book, but I’ll give you a quick overview of how it’s usually done.

You may have already heard of the ELK stack composed of ElasticSearch, Logstash, and Kibana. A slightly modified variation is the EFK stack, where Logstash is replaced with FluentD.

When using the EFK stack for centralized logging, each Kubernetes cluster node runs a FluentD agent (usually as a pod deployed through a DaemonSet), which is responsible for gathering the logs from the containers, tagging them with pod-specific information, and delivering them to ElasticSearch, which stores them persistently. ElasticSearch is also deployed as a pod somewhere in the cluster. The logs can then be viewed and analyzed in a web browser through Kibana, which is a web tool for visualizing ElasticSearch data. It also usually runs as a pod and is exposed through a Service. The three components of the EFK stack are shown in the following figure.



**Figure 17.10** Centralized logging with FluentD, ElasticSearch, and Kibana

**NOTE** In the next chapter, you’ll learn about Helm charts. You can use charts created by the Kubernetes community to deploy the EFK stack instead of creating your own YAML manifests.

## HANDLING MULTI-LINE LOG STATEMENTS

The FluentD agent stores each line of the log file as an entry in the ElasticSearch data store. There's one problem with that. Log statements spanning multiple lines, such as exception stack traces in Java, appear as separate entries in the centralized logging system.

To solve this problem, you can have the apps output JSON instead of plain text. This way, a multiline log statement can be stored and shown in Kibana as a single entry. But that makes viewing logs with `kubectl logs` much less human-friendly.

The solution may be to keep outputting human-readable logs to standard output, while writing JSON logs to a file and having them processed by FluentD. This requires configuring the node-level FluentD agent appropriately or adding a logging sidecar container to every pod.

## 17.5 Best practices for development and testing

We've talked about what to be mindful of when developing apps, but we haven't talked about the development and testing workflows that will help you streamline those processes. I don't want to go into too much detail here, because everyone needs to find what works best for them, but here are a few starting points.

### 17.5.1 Running apps outside of Kubernetes during development

When you're developing an app that will run in a production Kubernetes cluster, does that mean you also need to run it in Kubernetes during development? Not really. Having to build the app after each minor change, then build the container image, push it to a registry, and then re-deploy the pods would make development slow and painful. Luckily, you don't need to go through all that trouble.

You can always develop and run apps on your local machine, the way you're used to. After all, an app running in Kubernetes is a regular (although isolated) process running on one of the cluster nodes. If the app depends on certain features the Kubernetes environment provides, you can easily replicate that environment on your development machine.

I'm not even talking about running the app in a container. Most of the time, you don't need that—you can usually run the app directly from your IDE.

## CONNECTING TO BACKEND SERVICES

In production, if the app connects to a backend Service and uses the `BACKEND_SERVICE_HOST` and `BACKEND_SERVICE_PORT` environment variables to find the Service's coordinates, you can obviously set those environment variables on your local machine manually and point them to the backend Service, regardless of if it's running outside or inside a Kubernetes cluster. If it's running inside Kubernetes, you can always (at least temporarily) make the Service accessible externally by changing it to a `NodePort` or a `LoadBalancer`-type Service.

## CONNECTING TO THE API SERVER

Similarly, if your app requires access to the Kubernetes API server when running inside a Kubernetes cluster, it can easily talk to the API server from outside the cluster during development. If it uses the ServiceAccount's token to authenticate itself, you can always copy the ServiceAccount's Secret's files to your local machine with `kubectl cp`. The API server doesn't care if the client accessing it is inside or outside the cluster.

If the app uses an ambassador container like the one described in chapter 8, you don't even need those Secret files. Run `kubectl proxy` on your local machine, run your app locally, and it should be ready to talk to your local `kubectl proxy` (as long as it and the ambassador container bind the proxy to the same port).

In this case, you'll need to make sure the user account your local `kubectl` is using has the same privileges as the ServiceAccount the app will run under.

## RUNNING INSIDE A CONTAINER EVEN DURING DEVELOPMENT

When during development you absolutely have to run the app in a container for whatever reason, there is a way of avoiding having to build the container image every time. Instead of baking the binaries into the image, you can always mount your local filesystem into the container through Docker volumes, for example. This way, after you build a new version of the app's binaries, all you need to do is restart the container (or not even that, if hot-redeploy is supported). No need to rebuild the image.

### 17.5.2 Using Minikube in development

As you can see, nothing forces you to run your app inside Kubernetes during development. But you may do that anyway to see how the app behaves in a true Kubernetes environment.

You may have used Minikube to run examples in this book. Although a Minikube cluster runs only a single worker node, it's nevertheless a valuable method of trying out your app in Kubernetes (and, of course, developing all the resource manifests that make up your complete application). Minikube doesn't offer everything that a proper multi-node Kubernetes cluster usually provides, but in most cases, that doesn't matter.

## MOUNTING LOCAL FILES INTO THE MINIKUBE VM AND THEN INTO YOUR CONTAINERS

When you're developing with Minikube and you'd like to try out every change to your app in your Kubernetes cluster, you can mount your local filesystem into the Minikube VM using the `minikube mount` command and then mount it into your containers through a `hostPath` volume. You'll find additional instructions on how to do that in the Minikube documentation at <https://github.com/kubernetes/minikube/tree/master/docs>.

## USING THE DOCKER DAEMON INSIDE THE MINIKUBE VM TO BUILD YOUR IMAGES

If you're developing your app with Minikube and planning to build the container image after every change, you can use the Docker daemon inside the Minikube VM to do the building, instead of having to build the image through your local Docker daemon, push it to a registry, and then have it pulled by the daemon in the VM. To use

Minikube's Docker daemon, all you need to do is point your DOCKER\_HOST environment variable to it. Luckily, this is much easier than it sounds. All you need to do is run the following command on your local machine:

```
$ eval $(minikube docker-env)
```

This will set all the required environment variables for you. You then build your images the same way as if the Docker daemon was running on your local machine. After you build the image, you don't need to push it anywhere, because it's already stored locally on the Minikube VM, which means new pods can use the image immediately. If your pods are already running, you either need to delete them or kill their containers so they're restarted.

#### BUILDING IMAGES LOCALLY AND COPYING THEM OVER TO THE MINIKUBE VM DIRECTLY

If you can't use the daemon inside the VM to build the images, you still have a way to avoid having to push the image to a registry and have the Kubelet running in the Minikube VM pull it. If you build the image on your local machine, you can copy it over to the Minikube VM with the following command:

```
$ docker save <image> | (eval $(minikube docker-env) && docker load)
```

As before, the image is immediately ready to be used in a pod. But make sure the imagePullPolicy in your pod spec isn't set to Always, because that would cause the image to be pulled from the external registry again and you'd lose the changes you've copied over.

#### COMBINING MINIKUBE WITH A PROPER KUBERNETES CLUSTER

You have virtually no limit when developing apps with Minikube. You can even combine a Minikube cluster with a proper Kubernetes cluster. I sometimes run my development workloads in my local Minikube cluster and have them talk to my other workloads that are deployed in a remote multi-node Kubernetes cluster thousands of miles away.

Once I'm finished with development, I can move my local workloads to the remote cluster with no modifications and with absolutely no problems thanks to how Kubernetes abstracts away the underlying infrastructure from the app.

### 17.5.3 Versioning and auto-deploying resource manifests

Because Kubernetes uses a declarative model, you never have to figure out the current state of your deployed resources and issue imperative commands to bring that state to what you desire. All you need to do is tell Kubernetes your desired state and it will take all the necessary actions to reconcile the cluster state with the desired state.

You can store your collection of resource manifests in a Version Control System, enabling you to perform code reviews, keep an audit trail, and roll back changes whenever necessary. After each commit, you can run the kubectl apply command to have your changes reflected in your deployed resources.

If you run an agent that periodically (or when it detects a new commit) checks out your manifests from the Version Control System (VCS), and then runs the `apply` command, you can manage your running apps simply by committing changes to the VCS without having to manually talk to the Kubernetes API server. Luckily, the people at Box (which coincidentally was used to host this book’s manuscript and other materials) developed and released a tool called `kube-applier`, which does exactly what I described. You’ll find the tool’s source code at <https://github.com/box/kube-applier>.

You can use multiple branches to deploy the manifests to a development, QA, staging, and production cluster (or in different namespaces in the same cluster).

#### 17.5.4 Introducing Ksonnet as an alternative to writing YAML/JSON manifests

We’ve seen a number of YAML manifests throughout the book. I don’t see writing YAML as too big of a problem, especially once you learn how to use `kubectl explain` to see the available options, but some people do.

Just as I was finalizing the manuscript for this book, a new tool called Ksonnet was announced. It’s a library built on top of Jsonnet, which is a data templating language for building JSON data structures. Instead of writing the complete JSON by hand, it lets you define parameterized JSON fragments, give them a name, and then build a full JSON manifest by referencing those fragments by name, instead of repeating the same JSON code in multiple locations—much like you use functions or methods in a programming language.

Ksonnet defines the fragments you’d find in Kubernetes resource manifests, allowing you to quickly build a complete Kubernetes resource JSON manifest with much less code. The following listing shows an example.

##### Listing 17.10 The `kubia` Deployment written with Ksonnet: `kubia.ksonnet`

```
local k = import "../ksonnet-lib/ksonnet.beta.1/k.libsonnet";  
  
local container = k.core.v1.container;  
local deployment = k.apps.v1beta1.deployment;  
  
local kubiaContainer =  
    container.default("kubia", "luksa/kubia:v1") +  
    container.helpers.namedPort("http", 8080);  
  
deployment.default("kubia", kubiaContainer) +  
deployment.mixin.spec.replicas(3)
```

This defines a container called `kubia`, which uses the `luksa/kubia:v1` image and includes a port called `http`.

This will be expanded into a full Deployment resource. The `kubiaContainer` defined here will be included in the Deployment’s pod template.

The `kubia.ksonnet` file shown in the listing is converted to a full JSON Deployment manifest when you run the following command:

```
$ jsonnet kubia.ksonnet
```

The power of Ksonnet and Jsonnet becomes apparent when you realize you can define your own higher-level fragments and make all your manifests consistent and duplication-free. You'll find more information on using and installing Ksonnet and Jsonnet at <https://github.com/ksonnet/ksonnet-lib>.

### 17.5.5 **Employing Continuous Integration and Continuous Delivery (CI/CD)**

We've touched on automating the deployment of Kubernetes resources two sections back, but you may want to set up a complete CI/CD pipeline for building your application binaries, container images, and resource manifests and then deploying them in one or more Kubernetes clusters.

You'll find many online resources talking about this subject. Here, I'd like to point you specifically to the Fabric8 project (<http://fabric8.io>), which is an integrated development platform for Kubernetes. It includes Jenkins, the well-known, open-source automation system, and various other tools to deliver a full CI/CD pipeline for DevOps-style development, deployment, and management of microservices on Kubernetes.

If you'd like to build your own solution, I also suggest looking at one of the Google Cloud Platform's online labs that talks about this subject. It's available at <https://github.com/GoogleCloudPlatform/continuous-deployment-on-kubernetes>.

## 17.6 **Summary**

Hopefully, the information in this chapter has given you an even deeper insight into how Kubernetes works and will help you build apps that feel right at home when deployed to a Kubernetes cluster. The aim of this chapter was to

- Show you how all the resources covered in this book come together to represent a typical application running in Kubernetes.
- Make you think about the difference between apps that are rarely moved between machines and apps running as pods, which are relocated much more frequently.
- Help you understand that your multi-component apps (or microservices, if you will) shouldn't rely on a specific start-up order.
- Introduce init containers, which can be used to initialize a pod or delay the start of the pod's main containers until a precondition is met.
- Teach you about container lifecycle hooks and when to use them.
- Gain a deeper insight into the consequences of the distributed nature of Kubernetes components and its eventual consistency model.
- Learn how to make your apps shut down properly without breaking client connections.

- Give you a few small tips on how to make your apps easier to manage by keeping image sizes small, adding annotations and multi-dimensional labels to all your resources, and making it easier to see why an application terminated.
- Teach you how to develop Kubernetes apps and run them locally or in Minikube before deploying them on a proper multi-node cluster.

In the next and final chapter, we'll learn how you can extend Kubernetes with your own custom API objects and controllers and how others have done it to create complete Platform-as-a-Service solutions on top of Kubernetes.

# *Extending Kubernetes*

## This chapter covers

- Adding custom objects to Kubernetes
- Creating a controller for the custom object
- Adding custom API servers
- Self-provisioning of services with the Kubernetes Service Catalog
- Red Hat’s OpenShift Container Platform
- Deis Workflow and Helm

You’re almost done. To wrap up, we’ll look at how you can define your own API objects and create controllers for those objects. We’ll also look at how others have extended Kubernetes and built Platform-as-a-Service solutions on top of it.

### **18.1 Defining custom API objects**

Throughout the book, you’ve learned about the API objects that Kubernetes provides and how they’re used to build application systems. Currently, Kubernetes users mostly use only these objects even though they represent relatively low-level, generic concepts.

As the Kubernetes ecosystem evolves, you’ll see more and more high-level objects, which will be much more specialized than the resources Kubernetes supports today. Instead of dealing with Deployments, Services, ConfigMaps, and the like, you’ll create and manage objects that represent whole applications or software services. A custom controller will observe those high-level objects and create low-level objects based on them. For example, to run a messaging broker inside a Kubernetes cluster, all you’ll need to do is create an instance of a Queue resource and all the necessary Secrets, Deployments, and Services will be created by a custom Queue controller. Kubernetes already provides ways of adding custom resources like this.

### 18.1.1 Introducing CustomResourceDefinitions

To define a new resource type, all you need to do is post a CustomResourceDefinition object (CRD) to the Kubernetes API server. The CustomResourceDefinition object is the description of the custom resource type. Once the CRD is posted, users can then create instances of the custom resource by posting JSON or YAML manifests to the API server, the same as with any other Kubernetes resource.

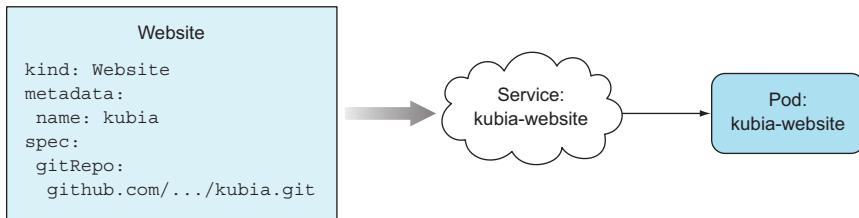
**NOTE** Prior to Kubernetes 1.7, custom resources were defined through Third-PartyResource objects, which were similar to CustomResourceDefinitions, but were removed in version 1.8.

Creating a CRD so that users can create objects of the new type isn’t a useful feature if those objects don’t make something tangible happen in the cluster. Each CRD will usually also have an associated controller (an active component doing something based on the custom objects), the same way that all the core Kubernetes resources have an associated controller, as was explained in chapter 11. For this reason, to properly show what CustomResourceDefinitions allow you to do other than adding instances of a custom object, a controller must be deployed as well. You’ll do that in the next example.

#### INTRODUCING THE EXAMPLE CUSTOMRESOURCEDEFINITION

Let’s imagine you want to allow users of your Kubernetes cluster to run static websites as easily as possible, without having to deal with Pods, Services, and other Kubernetes resources. What you want to achieve is for users to create objects of type Website that contain nothing more than the website’s name and the source from which the website’s files (HTML, CSS, PNG, and others) should be obtained. You’ll use a Git repository as the source of those files. When a user creates an instance of the Website resource, you want Kubernetes to spin up a new web server pod and expose it through a Service, as shown in figure 18.1.

To create the Website resource, you want users to post manifests along the lines of the one shown in the following listing.



**Figure 18.1** Each Website object should result in the creation of a Service and an HTTP server Pod.

### Listing 18.1 An imaginary custom resource: `imaginary-kubia-website.yaml`

```

kind: Website           ← A custom object kind
metadata:
  name: kubia          ← The name of the website
spec:                   ← (used for naming the resulting Service and Pod)
  gitRepo: https://github.com/luksa/kubia-website-example.git ← The Git repository holding the website's files
  
```

Like all other resources, your resource contains a `kind` and a `metadata.name` field, and like most resources, it also contains a `spec` section. It contains a single field called `gitRepo` (you can choose the name)—it specifies the Git repository containing the website’s files. You’ll also need to include an `apiVersion` field, but you don’t know yet what its value must be for custom resources.

If you try posting this resource to Kubernetes, you’ll receive an error because Kubernetes doesn’t know what a `Website` object is yet:

```
$ kubectl create -f imaginary-kubia-website.yaml
error: unable to recognize "imaginary-kubia-website.yaml": no matches for
  ↗ /, Kind=Website
```

Before you can create instances of your custom object, you need to make Kubernetes recognize them.

#### CREATING A CUSTOMRESOURCEDEFINITION OBJECT

To make Kubernetes accept your custom `Website` resource instances, you need to post the `CustomResourceDefinition` shown in the following listing to the API server.

### Listing 18.2 A CustomResourceDefinition manifest: `website-crd.yaml`

```

apiVersion: apiextensions.k8s.io/v1beta1
kind: CustomResourceDefinition
metadata:
  name: websites.extensions.example.com
spec:
  scope: Namespaced
  
```

**The full name of your custom object** → **CustomResourceDefinitions belong to this API group and version.**

**You want Website resources to be namespaced.**

```
group: extensions.example.com
version: v1
names:
  kind: Website
  singular: website
  plural: websites
```

Define an API group and version of the Website resource.

You need to specify the various forms of the custom object's name.

After you post the descriptor to Kubernetes, it will allow you to create any number of instances of the custom Website resource.

You can create the CRD from the website-crd.yaml file available in the code archive:

```
$ kubectl create -f website-crd-definition.yaml
customresourcedefinition "websites.extensions.example.com" created
```

I'm sure you're wondering about the long name of the CRD. Why not call it Website? The reason is to prevent name clashes. By adding a suffix to the name of the CRD (which will usually include the name of the organization that created the CRD), you keep CRD names unique. Luckily, the long name doesn't mean you'll need to create your Website resources with kind: websites.extensions.example.com, but as kind: Website, as specified in the names.kind property of the CRD. The extensions.example.com part is the API group of your resource.

You've seen how creating Deployment objects requires you to set apiVersion to apps/v1beta1 instead of v1. The part before the slash is the API group (Deployments belong to the apps API group), and the part after it is the version name (v1beta1 in the case of Deployments). When creating instances of the custom Website resource, the apiVersion property will need to be set to extensions.example.com/v1.

### CREATING AN INSTANCE OF A CUSTOM RESOURCE

Considering what you learned, you'll now create a proper YAML for your Website resource instance. The YAML manifest is shown in the following listing.

**Listing 18.3 A custom Website resource: kubia-website.yaml**

```
Your custom API
group and version
apiVersion: extensions.example.com/v1
kind: Website
metadata:
  name: kubia
spec:
  gitRepo: https://github.com/luksa/kubia-website-example.git
This manifest
describes a Website
resource instance.
The name of the
Website instance
```

The diagram shows the YAML manifest with three annotations. One annotation points to the first two lines ('Your custom API group and version') and another points to the 'name' field ('This manifest describes a Website resource instance'). A third annotation points to the 'name' field ('The name of the Website instance').

The kind of your resource is Website, and the apiVersion is composed of the API group and the version number you defined in the CustomResourceDefinition.

Create your Website object now:

```
$ kubectl create -f kubia-website.yaml
website "kubia" created
```

The response tells you that the API server has accepted and stored your custom Website object. Let's see if you can now retrieve it.

### RETRIEVING INSTANCES OF A CUSTOM RESOURCE

List all the websites in your cluster:

```
$ kubectl get websites
NAME      KIND
kubia    Website.v1.extensions.example.com
```

As with existing Kubernetes resources, you can create and then list instances of custom resources. You can also use `kubectl describe` to see the details of your custom object, or retrieve the whole YAML with `kubectl get`, as in the following listing.

#### Listing 18.4 Full Website resource definition retrieved from the API server

```
$ kubectl get website kubia -o yaml
apiVersion: extensions.example.com/v1
kind: Website
metadata:
  creationTimestamp: 2017-02-26T15:53:21Z
  name: kubia
  namespace: default
  resourceVersion: "57047"
  selfLink: /apis/extensions.example.com/v1/.../default/websites/kubia
  uid: b2eb6d99-fc3b-11e6-bd71-0800270a1c50
spec:
  gitRepo: https://github.com/luksa/kubia-website-example.git
```

Note that the resource includes everything that was in the original YAML definition, and that Kubernetes has initialized additional metadata fields the way it does with all other resources.

### DELETING AN INSTANCE OF A CUSTOM OBJECT

Obviously, in addition to creating and retrieving custom object instances, you can also delete them:

```
$ kubectl delete website kubia
website "kubia" deleted
```

**NOTE** You're deleting an instance of a Website, not the Website CRD resource. You could also delete the CRD object itself, but let's hold off on that for a while, because you'll be creating additional Website instances in the next section.

Let's go over everything you've done. By creating a `CustomResourceDefinition` object, you can now store, retrieve, and delete custom objects through the Kubernetes API server. These objects don't do anything yet. You'll need to create a controller to make them do something.

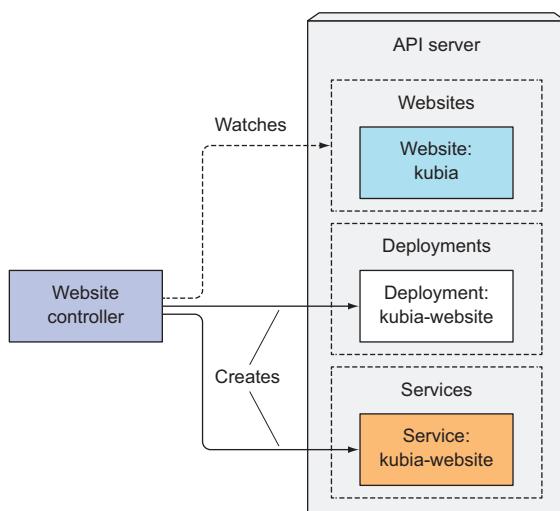
In general, the point of creating custom objects like this isn't always to make something happen when the object is created. Certain custom objects are used to store data instead of using a more generic mechanism such as a ConfigMap. Applications running inside pods can query the API server for those objects and read whatever is stored in them.

But in this case, we said you wanted the existence of a Website object to result in the spinning up of a web server serving the contents of the Git repository referenced in the object. We'll look at how to do that next.

### 18.1.2 Automating custom resources with custom controllers

To make your Website objects run a web server pod exposed through a Service, you'll need to build and deploy a Website controller, which will watch the API server for the creation of Website objects and then create the Service and the web server Pod for each of them.

To make sure the Pod is managed and survives node failures, the controller will create a Deployment resource instead of an unmanaged Pod directly. The controller's operation is summarized in figure 18.2.



**Figure 18.2** The Website controller watches for Website objects and creates a Deployment and a Service.

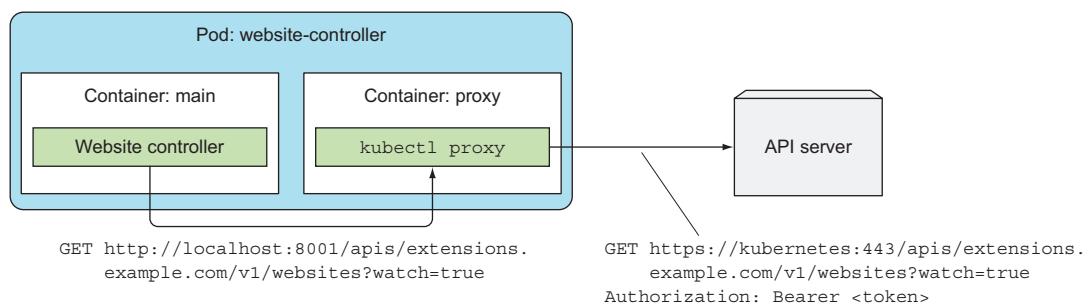
I've written a simple initial version of the controller, which works well enough to show CRDs and the controller in action, but it's far from being production-ready, because it's overly simplified. The container image is available at [docker.io/luksa/website-controller:latest](https://docker.io/luksa/website-controller:latest), and the source code is at <https://github.com/luksa/k8s-website-controller>. Instead of going through its source code, I'll explain what the controller does.

### UNDERSTANDING WHAT THE WEBSITE CONTROLLER DOES

Immediately upon startup, the controller starts to watch Website objects by requesting the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8001/apis/extensions.example.com/v1/websites?watch=true
```

You may recognize the hostname and port—the controller isn’t connecting to the API server directly, but is instead connecting to the `kubectl proxy` process, which runs in a sidecar container in the same pod and acts as the ambassador to the API server (we examined the ambassador pattern in chapter 8). The proxy forwards the request to the API server, taking care of both TLS encryption and authentication (see figure 18.3).

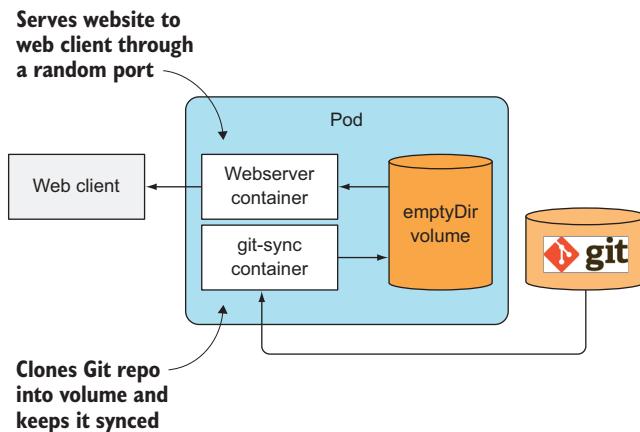


**Figure 18.3** The Website controller talks to the API server through a proxy (in the ambassador container).

Through the connection opened by this HTTP GET request, the API server will send watch events for every change to any Website object.

The API server sends the ADDED watch event every time a new Website object is created. When the controller receives such an event, it extracts the Website’s name and the URL of the Git repository from the Website object it received in the watch event and creates a Deployment and a Service object by posting their JSON manifests to the API server.

The Deployment resource contains a template for a pod with two containers (shown in figure 18.4): one running an nginx server and another one running a git-sync process, which keeps a local directory synced with the contents of a Git repo. The local directory is shared with the nginx container through an `emptyDir` volume (you did something similar to that in chapter 6, but instead of keeping the local directory synced with a Git repo, you used a `gitRepo` volume to download the Git repo’s contents at pod startup; the volume’s contents weren’t kept in sync with the Git repo afterward). The Service is a NodePort Service, which exposes your web server pod through a random port on each node (the same port is used on all nodes). When a pod is created by the Deployment object, clients can access the website through the node port.



**Figure 18.4** The pod serving the website specified in the Website object

The API server also sends a `DELETED` watch event when a `Website` resource instance is deleted. Upon receiving the event, the controller deletes the Deployment and the Service resources it created earlier. As soon as a user deletes the `Website` instance, the controller will shut down and remove the web server serving that website.

**NOTE** My oversimplified controller isn't implemented properly. The way it watches the API objects doesn't guarantee it won't miss individual watch events. The proper way to watch objects through the API server is to not only watch them, but also periodically re-list all objects in case any watch events were missed.

#### RUNNING THE CONTROLLER AS A POD

During development, I ran the controller on my local development laptop and used a locally running `kubectl proxy` process (not running as a pod) as the ambassador to the Kubernetes API server. This allowed me to develop quickly, because I didn't need to build a container image after every change to the source code and then run it inside Kubernetes.

When I'm ready to deploy the controller into production, the best way is to run the controller inside Kubernetes itself, the way you do with all the other core controllers. To run the controller in Kubernetes, you can deploy it through a Deployment resource. The following listing shows an example of such a Deployment.

#### Listing 18.5 A Website controller Deployment: `website-controller.yaml`

```
apiVersion: apps/v1beta1
kind: Deployment
metadata:
  name: website-controller
spec:
  replicas: 1
  template:
```

You'll run a single replica of the controller.

```

metadata:
  name: website-controller
  labels:
    app: website-controller
spec:
  serviceAccountName: website-controller
  containers:
    - name: main
      image: luksa/website-controller
    - name: proxy
      image: luksa/kubectl-proxy:1.6.2

```

**It will run under a special ServiceAccount.**

**Two containers: the main container and the proxy sidecar**

As you can see, the Deployment deploys a single replica of a two-container pod. One container runs your controller, whereas the other one is the ambassador container used for simpler communication with the API server. The pod runs under its own special ServiceAccount, so you'll need to create it before you deploy the controller:

```
$ kubectl create serviceaccount website-controller
serviceaccount "website-controller" created
```

If Role Based Access Control (RBAC) is enabled in your cluster, Kubernetes will not allow the controller to watch Website resources or create Deployments or Services. To allow it to do that, you'll need to bind the website-controller ServiceAccount to the cluster-admin ClusterRole, by creating a ClusterRoleBinding like this:

```
$ kubectl create clusterrolebinding website-controller
  --clusterrole=cluster-admin
  --serviceaccount=default:website-controller
clusterrolebinding "website-controller" created
```

Once you have the ServiceAccount and ClusterRoleBinding in place, you can deploy the controller's Deployment.

#### SEEING THE CONTROLLER IN ACTION

With the controller now running, create the kubia Website resource again:

```
$ kubectl create -f kubia-website.yaml
website "kubia" created
```

Now, let's check the controller's logs (shown in the following listing) to see if it has received the watch event.

#### Listing 18.6 Displaying logs of the Website controller

```
$ kubectl logs website-controller-2429717411-q43zs -c main
2017/02/26 16:54:41 website-controller started.
2017/02/26 16:54:47 Received watch event: ADDED: kubia: https://github.c...
2017/02/26 16:54:47 Creating services with name kubia-website in namespa...
2017/02/26 16:54:47 Response status: 201 Created
2017/02/26 16:54:47 Creating deployments with name kubia-website in name...
2017/02/26 16:54:47 Response status: 201 Created
```

The logs show that the controller received the ADDED event and that it created a Service and a Deployment for the `kubia-website` Website. The API server responded with a 201 Created response, which means the two resources should now exist. Let's verify that the Deployment, Service and the resulting Pod were created. The following listing lists all Deployments, Services and Pods.

**Listing 18.7 The Deployment, Service, and Pod created for the `kubia-website`**

```
$ kubectl get deploy,svc,po
NAME                DESIRED   CURRENT   UP-TO-DATE   AVAILABLE   AGE
deploy/kubia-website 1          1          1           1           4s
deploy/website-controller 1          1          1           1           5m

NAME            CLUSTER-IP      EXTERNAL-IP    PORT(S)        AGE
svc/kubernetes  10.96.0.1     <none>        443/TCP       38d
svc/kubia-website 10.101.48.23 <nodes>       80:32589/TCP  4s

NAME          READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
po/kubia-website-1029415133-rs715 2/2     Running   0          4s
po/website-controller-1571685839-qzmg6 2/2     Running   1          5m
```

There they are. The `kubia-website` Service, through which you can access your website, is available on port 32589 on all cluster nodes. You can access it with your browser. Awesome, right?

Users of your Kubernetes cluster can now deploy static websites in seconds, without knowing anything about Pods, Services, or any other Kubernetes resources, except your custom Website resource.

Obviously, you still have room for improvement. The controller could, for example, watch for Service objects and as soon as the node port is assigned, write the URL the website is accessible at into the status section of the Website resource instance itself. Or it could also create an Ingress object for each website. I'll leave the implementation of these additional features to you as an exercise.

### 18.1.3 Validating custom objects

You may have noticed that you didn't specify any kind of validation schema in the Website CustomResourceDefinition. Users can include any field they want in the YAML of their Website object. The API server doesn't validate the contents of the YAML (except the usual fields like `apiVersion`, `kind`, and `metadata`), so users can create invalid Website objects (without a `gitRepo` field, for example).

Is it possible to add validation to the controller and prevent invalid objects from being accepted by the API server? It isn't, because the API server first stores the object, then returns a success response to the client (`kubectl`), and only then notifies all the watchers (the controller is one of them). All the controller can really do is validate the object when it receives it in a watch event, and if the object is invalid, write the error message to the Website object (by updating the object through a new request to the API server). The user wouldn't be notified of the error automatically. They'd have

to notice the error message by querying the API server for the Website object. Unless the user does this, they have no way of knowing whether the object is valid or not.

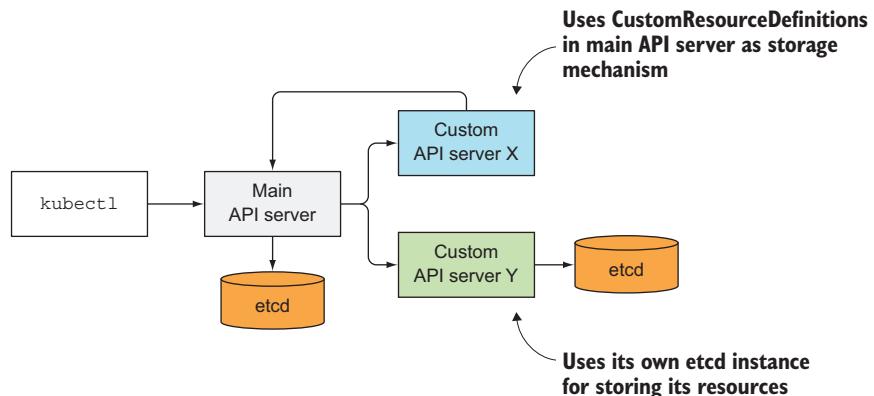
This obviously isn't ideal. You'd want the API server to validate the object and reject invalid objects immediately. Validation of custom objects was introduced in Kubernetes version 1.8 as an alpha feature. To have the API server validate your custom objects, you need to enable the `CustomResourceValidation` feature gate in the API server and specify a JSON schema in the CRD.

#### **18.1.4 Providing a custom API server for your custom objects**

A better way of adding support for custom objects in Kubernetes is to implement your own API server and have the clients talk directly to it.

##### **INTRODUCING API SERVER AGGREGATION**

In Kubernetes version 1.7, you can integrate your custom API server with the main Kubernetes API server, through API server aggregation. Initially, the Kubernetes API server was a single monolithic component. From Kubernetes version 1.7, multiple aggregated API servers will be exposed at a single location. Clients can connect to the aggregated API and have their requests transparently forwarded to the appropriate API server. This way, the client wouldn't even be aware that multiple API servers handle different objects behind the scenes. Even the core Kubernetes API server may eventually end up being split into multiple smaller API servers and exposed as a single server through the aggregator, as shown in figure 18.5.



**Figure 18.5 API server aggregation**

In your case, you could create an API server responsible for handling your `Website` objects. It could validate those objects the way the core Kubernetes API server validates them. You'd no longer need to create a CRD to represent those objects, because you'd implement the `Website` object type into the custom API server directly.

Generally, each API server is responsible for storing their own resources. As shown in figure 18.5, it can either run its own instance of `etcd` (or a whole `etcd` cluster), or it

can store its resources in the core API server’s etcd store by creating CRD instances in the core API server. In that case, it needs to create a CRD object first, before creating instances of the CRD, the way you did in the example.

### REGISTERING A CUSTOM API SERVER

To add a custom API server to your cluster, you’d deploy it as a pod and expose it through a Service. Then, to integrate it into the main API server, you’d deploy a YAML manifest describing an APIService resource like the one in the following listing.

#### Listing 18.8 An APIService YAML definition

```
apiVersion: apiregistration.k8s.io/v1beta1
kind: APIService
metadata:
  name: v1alpha1.extensions.example.com
spec:
  group: extensions.example.com
  version: v1alpha1
  priority: 150
  service:
    name: website-api
    namespace: default
```

The annotations for Listing 18.8 are as follows:

- This is an APIService resource.** Points to the `kind: APIService` line.
- The API group this API server is responsible for** Points to the `group: extensions.example.com` line.
- The supported API version** Points to the `version: v1alpha1` line.
- The Service the custom API server is exposed through** Points to the `service:` block.

After creating the APIService resource from the previous listing, client requests sent to the main API server that contain any resource from the `extensions.example.com` API group and version `v1alpha1` would be forwarded to the custom API server pod(s) exposed through the `website-api` Service.

### CREATING CUSTOM CLIENTS

While you can create custom resources from YAML files using the regular `kubectl` client, to make deployment of custom objects even easier, in addition to providing a custom API server, you can also build a custom CLI tool. This will allow you to add dedicated commands for manipulating those objects, similar to how `kubectl` allows creating Secrets, Deployments, and other resources through resource-specific commands like `kubectl create secret` or `kubectl create deployment`.

As I’ve already mentioned, custom API servers, API server aggregation, and other features related to extending Kubernetes are currently being worked on intensively, so they may change after the book is published. To get up-to-date information on the subject, refer to the Kubernetes GitHub repos at <http://github.com/kubernetes>.

## 18.2 Extending Kubernetes with the Kubernetes Service Catalog

One of the first additional API servers that will be added to Kubernetes through API server aggregation is the Service Catalog API server. The Service Catalog is a hot topic in the Kubernetes community, so you may want to know about it.

Currently, for a pod to consume a service (here I use the term generally, not in relation to Service resources; for example, a database service includes everything

required to allow users to use a database in their app), someone needs to deploy the pods providing the service, a Service resource, and possibly a Secret so the client pod can use it to authenticate with the service. That someone is usually the same user deploying the client pod or, if a team is dedicated to deploying these types of general services, the user needs to file a ticket and wait for the team to provision the service. This means the user needs to either create the manifests for all the components of the service, know where to find an existing set of manifests, know how to configure it properly, and deploy it manually, or wait for the other team to do it.

But Kubernetes is supposed to be an easy-to-use, self-service system. Ideally, users whose apps require a certain service (for example, a web application requiring a back-end database), should be able to say to Kubernetes, “Hey, I need a PostgreSQL database. Please provision one and tell me where and how I can connect to it.” This will soon be possible through the Kubernetes Service Catalog.

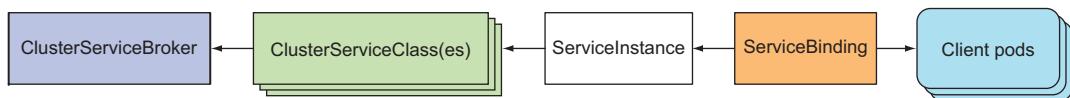
### 18.2.1 Introducing the Service Catalog

As the name suggests, the Service Catalog is a catalog of services. Users can browse through the catalog and provision instances of the services listed in the catalog by themselves without having to deal with Pods, Services, ConfigMaps, and other resources required for the service to run. You’ll recognize that this is similar to what you did with the Website custom resource.

Instead of adding custom resources to the API server for each type of service, the Service Catalog introduces the following four generic API resources:

- A ClusterServiceBroker, which describes an (external) system that can provision services
- A ClusterServiceClass, which describes a type of service that can be provisioned
- A ServiceInstance, which is one instance of a service that has been provisioned
- A ServiceBinding, which represents a binding between a set of clients (pods) and a ServiceInstance

The relationships between those four resources are shown in the figure 18.6 and explained in the following paragraphs.

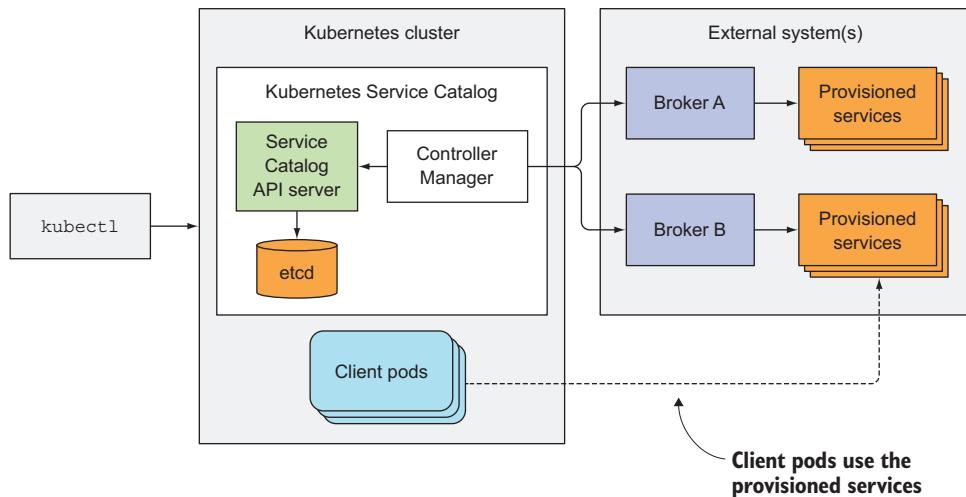


**Figure 18.6** The relationships between Service Catalog API resources.

In a nutshell, a cluster admin creates a ClusterServiceBroker resource for each service broker whose services they’d like to make available in the cluster. Kubernetes then asks the broker for a list of services that it can provide and creates a ClusterServiceClass resource for each of them. When a user requires a service to be provisioned, they create an ServiceInstance resource and then a ServiceBinding to bind that ServiceInstance to

their pods. Those pods are then injected with a Secret that holds all the necessary credentials and other data required to connect to the provisioned ServiceInstance.

The Service Catalog system architecture is shown in figure 18.7.



**Figure 18.7** The architecture of the Service Catalog

The components shown in the figure are explained in the following sections.

### 18.2.2 Introducing the Service Catalog API server and Controller Manager

Similar to core Kubernetes, the Service Catalog is a distributed system composed of three components:

- Service Catalog API Server
- etcd as the storage
- Controller Manager, where all the controllers run

The four Service Catalog-related resources we introduced earlier are created by posting YAML/JSON manifests to the API server. It then stores them into its own etcd instance or uses CustomResourceDefinitions in the main API server as an alternative storage mechanism (in that case, no additional etcd instance is required).

The controllers running in the Controller Manager are the ones doing something with those resources. They obviously talk to the Service Catalog API server, the way other core Kubernetes controllers talk to the core API server. Those controllers don't provision the requested services themselves. They leave that up to external service brokers, which are registered by creating ServiceBroker resources in the Service Catalog API.

### 18.2.3 Introducing Service Brokers and the OpenServiceBroker API

A cluster administrator can register one or more external ServiceBrokers in the Service Catalog. Every broker must implement the OpenServiceBroker API.

#### INTRODUCING THE OPENSERVICEBROKER API

The Service Catalog talks to the broker through that API. The API is relatively simple. It's a REST API providing the following operations:

- Retrieving the list of services with `GET /v2/catalog`
- Provisioning a service instance (`PUT /v2/service_instances/:id`)
- Updating a service instance (`PATCH /v2/service_instances/:id`)
- Binding a service instance (`PUT /v2/service_instances/:id/service_bindings/:binding_id`)
- Unbinding an instance (`DELETE /v2/service_instances/:id/service_bindings/:binding_id`)
- Deprovisioning a service instance (`DELETE /v2/service_instances/:id`)

You'll find the OpenServiceBroker API spec at [https://github.com/openservicebrokerapi/servicebroker](https://github.com.openservicebrokerapi/servicebroker).

#### REGISTERING BROKERS IN THE SERVICE CATALOG

The cluster administrator registers a broker by posting a ServiceBroker resource manifest to the Service Catalog API, like the one shown in the following listing.

##### **Listing 18.9 A ClusterServiceBroker manifest: database-broker.yaml**

```
apiVersion: servicecatalog.k8s.io/v1alpha1
kind: ClusterServiceBroker
metadata:
  name: database-broker
spec:
  url: http://database-osbapi.myorganization.org
```

The resource kind and the API group and version

The name of this broker

Where the Service Catalog can contact the broker (its OpenServiceBroker [OSB] API URL)

The listing describes an imaginary broker that can provision databases of different types. After the administrator creates the ClusterServiceBroker resource, a controller in the Service Catalog Controller Manager connects to the URL specified in the resource to retrieve the list of services this broker can provision.

After the Service Catalog retrieves the list of services, it creates a ClusterServiceClass resource for each of them. Each ClusterServiceClass resource describes a single type of service that can be provisioned (an example of a ClusterServiceClass is “PostgreSQL database”). Each ClusterServiceClass has one or more service plans associated with it. These allow the user to choose the level of service they need (for example, a database ClusterServiceClass could provide a “Free” plan, where the size of the

database is limited and the underlying storage is a spinning disk, and a “Premium” plan, with unlimited size and SSD storage).

#### LISTING THE AVAILABLE SERVICES IN A CLUSTER

Users of the Kubernetes cluster can retrieve a list of all services that can be provisioned in the cluster with `kubectl get serviceclasses`, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 18.10 List of ClusterServiceClasses in a cluster

```
$ kubectl get clusterserviceclasses
NAME          KIND
postgres-database  ClusterServiceClass.v1alpha1.servicecatalog.k8s.io
mysql-database   ServiceClass.v1alpha1.servicecatalog.k8s.io
mongodb-database ServiceClass.v1alpha1.servicecatalog.k8s.io
```

The listing shows ClusterServiceClasses for services that your imaginary database broker could provide. You can compare ClusterServiceClasses to StorageClasses, which we discussed in chapter 6. StorageClasses allow you to select the type of storage you’d like to use in your pods, while ClusterServiceClasses allow you to select the type of service.

You can see details of one of the ClusterServiceClasses by retrieving its YAML. An example is shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 18.11 A ClusterServiceClass definition

```
$ kubectl get serviceclass postgres-database -o yaml
apiVersion: servicecatalog.k8s.io/v1alpha1
bindable: true
brokerName: database-broker
description: A PostgreSQL database
kind: ClusterServiceClass
metadata:
  name: postgres-database
  ...
planUpdatable: false
plans:
- description: A free (but slow) PostgreSQL instance
  name: free
  osbFree: true
  ...
- description: A paid (very fast) PostgreSQL instance
  name: premium
  osbFree: false
  ...

```

This ClusterServiceClass is provided by the database-broker.

A free plan for this service

A paid plan

The ClusterServiceClass in the listing contains two plans—a free plan, and a premium plan. You can see that this ClusterServiceClass is provided by the database-broker broker.

### 18.2.4 Provisioning and using a service

Let's imagine the pods you're deploying need to use a database. You've inspected the list of available ClusterServiceClasses and have chosen to use the free plan of the postgres-database ClusterServiceClass.

#### PROVISIONING A SERVICEINSTANCE

To have the database provisioned for you, all you need to do is create a ServiceInstance resource, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 18.12 A ServiceInstance manifest: database-instance.yaml

```
apiVersion: servicecatalog.k8s.io/v1alpha1
kind: ServiceInstance
metadata:
  name: my-postgres-db
spec:
  clusterServiceClassName: postgres-database
  clusterServicePlanName: free
  parameters:
    init-db-args: --data-checksums
```

You're giving this instance a name.

The ServiceClass and Plan you want

Additional parameters passed to the broker

You created a ServiceInstance called `my-postgres-db` (that will be the name of the resource you're deploying) and specified the ClusterServiceClass and the chosen plan. You're also specifying a parameter, which is specific for each broker and ClusterServiceClass. Let's imagine you looked up the possible parameters in the broker's documentation.

As soon as you create this resource, the Service Catalog will contact the broker the ClusterServiceClass belongs to and ask it to provision the service. It will pass on the chosen ClusterServiceClass and plan names, as well as all the parameters you specified.

It's then completely up to the broker to know what to do with this information. In your case, your database broker will probably spin up a new instance of a PostgreSQL database somewhere—not necessarily in the same Kubernetes cluster or even in Kubernetes at all. It could run a Virtual Machine and run the database in there. The Service Catalog doesn't care, and neither does the user requesting the service.

You can check if the service has been provisioned successfully by inspecting the status section of the `my-postgres-db` ServiceInstance you created, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing 18.13 Inspecting the status of a ServiceInstance

```
$ kubectl get instance my-postgres-db -o yaml
apiVersion: servicecatalog.k8s.io/v1alpha1
kind: ServiceInstance
...
status:
  asyncOpInProgress: false
  conditions:
```

```

- lastTransitionTime: 2017-05-17T13:57:22Z
  message: The instance was provisioned successfully
  reason: ProvisionedSuccessfully
  status: "True"
  type: Ready

```

← It's ready to be used.

The database was provisioned successfully.

A database instance is now running somewhere, but how do you use it in your pods? To do that, you need to bind it.

### BINDING A SERVICEINSTANCE

To use a provisioned ServiceInstance in your pods, you create a ServiceBinding resource, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing 18.14 A ServiceBinding: my-postgres-db-binding.yaml**

```

apiVersion: servicecatalog.k8s.io/v1alpha1
kind: ServiceBinding
metadata:
  name: my-postgres-db-binding
spec:
  instanceRef:
    name: my-postgres-db
  secretName: postgres-secret

```

You're referencing the instance you created earlier.

You'd like the credentials for accessing the service stored in this Secret.

The listing shows that you're defining a ServiceBinding resource called `my-postgres-db-binding`, in which you're referencing the `my-postgres-db` service instance you created earlier. You're also specifying a name of a Secret. You want the Service Catalog to put all the necessary credentials for accessing the service instance into a Secret called `postgres-secret`. But where are you binding the ServiceInstance to your pods? Nowhere, actually.

Currently, the Service Catalog doesn't yet make it possible to inject pods with the ServiceInstance's credentials. This will be possible when a new Kubernetes feature called PodPresets is available. Until then, you can choose a name for the Secret where you want the credentials to be stored in and mount that Secret into your pods manually.

When you submit the ServiceBinding resource from the previous listing to the Service Catalog API server, the controller will contact the Database broker once again and create a binding for the ServiceInstance you provisioned earlier. The broker responds with a list of credentials and other data necessary for connecting to the database. The Service Catalog creates a new Secret with the name you specified in the ServiceBinding resource and stores all that data in the Secret.

### USING THE NEWLY CREATED SECRET IN CLIENT PODS

The Secret created by the Service Catalog system can be mounted into pods, so they can read its contents and use them to connect to the provisioned service instance (a PostgreSQL database in the example). The Secret could look like the one in the following listing.

**Listing 18.15 A Secret holding the credentials for connecting to the service instance**

```
$ kubectl get secret postgres-secret -o yaml
apiVersion: v1
data:
  host: <base64-encoded hostname of the database>
  username: <base64-encoded username>
  password: <base64-encoded password>
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: postgres-secret
  namespace: default
...
type: Opaque
```

This is what the pod should use to connect to the database service.

Because you can choose the name of the Secret yourself, you can deploy pods before provisioning or binding the service. As you learned in chapter 7, the pods won't be started until such a Secret exists.

If necessary, multiple bindings can be created for different pods. The service broker can choose to use the same set of credentials in every binding, but it's better to create a new set of credentials for every binding instance. This way, pods can be prevented from using the service by deleting the ServiceBinding resource.

### **18.2.5 Unbinding and deprovisioning**

Once you no longer need a ServiceBinding, you can delete it the way you delete other resources:

```
$ kubectl delete servicebinding my-postgres-db-binding
servicebinding "my-postgres-db-binding" deleted
```

When you do this, the Service Catalog controller will delete the Secret and call the broker to perform an unbinding operation. The service instance (in your case a PostgreSQL database) is still running. You can therefore create a new ServiceBinding if you want.

But if you don't need the database instance anymore, you should delete the ServiceInstance resource also:

```
$ kubectl delete serviceinstance my-postgres-db
serviceinstance "my-postgres-db" deleted
```

Deleting the ServiceInstance resource causes the Service Catalog to perform a deprovisioning operation on the service broker. Again, exactly what that means is up to the service broker, but in your case, the broker should shut down the PostgreSQL database instance that it created when we provisioned the service instance.

### **18.2.6 Understanding what the Service Catalog brings**

As you've learned, the Service Catalog enables service providers make it possible to expose those services in any Kubernetes cluster by registering the broker in that cluster.

For example, I've been involved with the Service Catalog since early on and have implemented a broker, which makes it trivial to provision messaging systems and expose them to pods in a Kubernetes cluster. Another team has implemented a broker that makes it easy to provision Amazon Web Services.

In general, service brokers allow easy provisioning and exposing of services in Kubernetes and will make Kubernetes an even more awesome platform for deploying your applications.

## 18.3 **Platforms built on top of Kubernetes**

I'm sure you'll agree that Kubernetes is a great system by itself. Given that it's easily extensible across all its components, it's no wonder companies that had previously developed their own custom platforms are now re-implementing them on top of Kubernetes. Kubernetes is, in fact, becoming a widely accepted foundation for the new generation of Platform-as-a-Service offerings.

Among the best-known PaaS systems built on Kubernetes are Deis Workflow and Red Hat's OpenShift. We'll do a quick overview of both systems to give you a sense of what they offer on top of all the awesome stuff Kubernetes already offers.

### 18.3.1 **Red Hat OpenShift Container Platform**

Red Hat OpenShift is a Platform-as-a-Service and as such, it has a strong focus on developer experience. Among its goals are enabling rapid development of applications, as well as easy deployment, scaling, and long-term maintenance of those apps. OpenShift has been around much longer than Kubernetes. Versions 1 and 2 were built from the ground up and had nothing to do with Kubernetes, but when Kubernetes was announced, Red Hat decided to rebuild OpenShift version 3 from scratch—this time on top of Kubernetes. When a company such as Red Hat decides to throw away an old version of their software and build a new one on top of an existing technology like Kubernetes, it should be clear to everyone how great Kubernetes is.

Kubernetes automates rollouts and application scaling, whereas OpenShift also automates the actual building of application images and their automatic deployment without requiring you to integrate a Continuous Integration solution into your cluster.

OpenShift also provides user and group management, which allows you to run a properly secured multi-tenant Kubernetes cluster, where individual users are only allowed to access their own Kubernetes namespaces and the apps running in those namespaces are also fully network-isolated from each other by default.

#### **INTRODUCING ADDITIONAL RESOURCES AVAILABLE IN OPENSHIFT**

OpenShift provides some additional API objects in addition to all those available in Kubernetes. We'll explain them in the next few paragraphs to give you a good overview of what OpenShift does and what it provides.

The additional resources include

- Users & Groups
- Projects

- Templates
- BuildConfigs
- DeploymentConfigs
- ImageStreams
- Routes
- And others

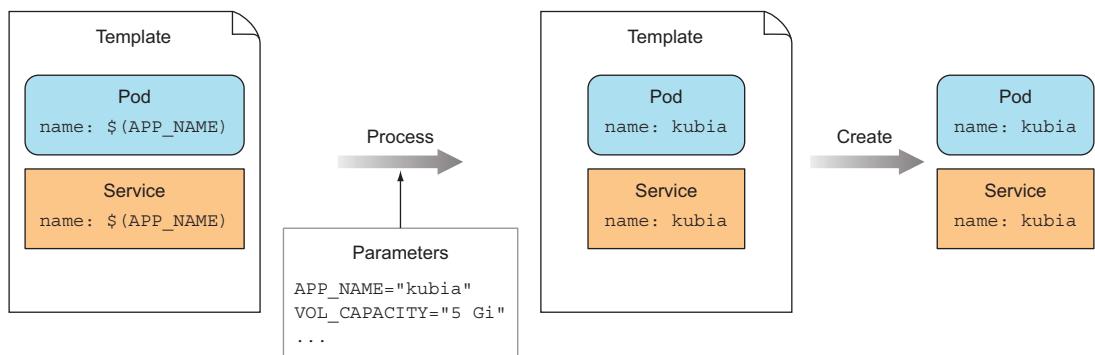
### **UNDERSTANDING USERS, GROUPS, AND PROJECTS**

We've said that OpenShift provides a proper multi-tenant environment to its users. Unlike Kubernetes, which doesn't have an API object for representing an individual user of the cluster (but does have ServiceAccounts that represent services running in it), OpenShift provides powerful user management features, which make it possible to specify what each user can do and what they cannot. These features pre-date the Role-Based Access Control, which is now the standard in vanilla Kubernetes.

Each user has access to certain Projects, which are nothing more than Kubernetes Namespaces with additional annotations. Users can only act on resources that reside in the projects the user has access to. Access to the project is granted by a cluster administrator.

### **INTRODUCING APPLICATION TEMPLATES**

Kubernetes makes it possible to deploy a set of resources through a single JSON or YAML manifest. OpenShift takes this a step further by allowing that manifest to be parameterizable. A parameterizable list in OpenShift is called a *Template*; it's a list of objects whose definitions can include placeholders that get replaced with parameter values when you process and then instantiate a template (see figure 18.8).



**Figure 18.8** OpenShift templates

The template itself is a JSON or YAML file containing a list of parameters that are referenced in resources defined in that same JSON/YAML. The template can be stored in the API server like any other object. Before a template can be instantiated, it needs

to be processed. To process a template, you supply the values for the template's parameters and then OpenShift replaces the references to the parameters with those values. The result is a processed template, which is exactly like a Kubernetes resource list that can then be created with a single POST request.

OpenShift provides a long list of pre-fabricated templates that allow users to quickly run complex applications by specifying a few arguments (or none at all, if the template provides good defaults for those arguments). For example, a template can enable the creation of all the Kubernetes resources necessary to run a Java EE application inside an Application Server, which connects to a back-end database, also deployed as part of that same template. All those components can be deployed with a single command.

### BUILDING IMAGES FROM SOURCE USING BUILDCONFIGS

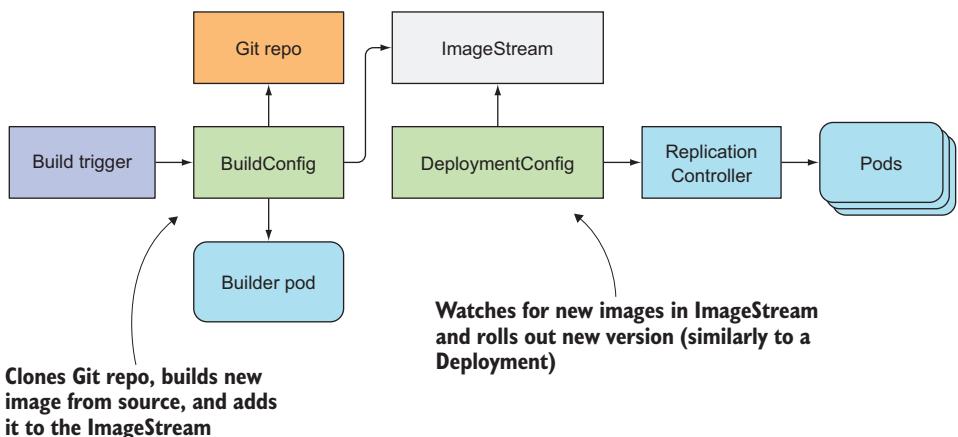
One of the best features of OpenShift is the ability to have OpenShift build and immediately deploy an application in the OpenShift cluster by pointing it to a Git repository holding the application's source code. You don't need to build the container image at all—OpenShift does that for you. This is done by creating a resource called BuildConfig, which can be configured to trigger builds of container images immediately after a change is committed to the source Git repository.

Although OpenShift doesn't monitor the Git repository itself, a hook in the repository can notify OpenShift of the new commit. OpenShift will then pull the changes from the Git repository and start the build process. A build mechanism called *Source To Image* can detect what type of application is in the Git repository and run the proper build procedure for it. For example, if it detects a pom.xml file, which is used in Java Maven-formatted projects, it runs a Maven build. The resulting artifacts are packaged into an appropriate container image, and are then pushed to an internal container registry (provided by OpenShift). From there, they can be pulled and run in the cluster immediately.

By creating a BuildConfig object, developers can thus point to a Git repo and not worry about building container images. Developers have almost no need to know anything about containers. Once the ops team deploys an OpenShift cluster and gives developers access to it, those developers can develop their code, commit, and push it to a Git repo, the same way they used to before we started packaging apps into containers. Then OpenShift takes care of building, deploying, and managing apps from that code.

### AUTOMATICALLY DEPLOYING NEWLY BUILT IMAGES WITH DEPLOYMENTCONFIGS

Once a new container image is built, it can also automatically be deployed in the cluster. This is enabled by creating a DeploymentConfig object and pointing it to an ImageStream. As the name suggests, an ImageStream is a stream of images. When an image is built, it's added to the ImageStream. This enables the DeploymentConfig to notice the newly built image and allows it to take action and initiate a rollout of the new image (see figure 18.9).



**Figure 18.9 BuildConfigs and DeploymentConfigs in OpenShift**

A DeploymentConfig is almost identical to the Deployment object in Kubernetes, but it pre-dates it. Like a Deployment object, it has a configurable strategy for transitioning between Deployments. It contains a pod template used to create the actual pods, but it also allows you to configure pre- and post-deployment hooks. In contrast to a Kubernetes Deployment, it creates ReplicationControllers instead of ReplicaSets and provides a few additional features.

#### EXPOSING SERVICES EXTERNALLY USING ROUTES

Early on, Kubernetes didn't provide Ingress objects. To expose Services to the outside world, you needed to use NodePort or LoadBalancer-type Services. But at that time, OpenShift already provided a better option through a Route resource. A Route is similar to an Ingress, but it provides additional configuration related to TLS termination and traffic splitting.

Similar to an Ingress controller, a Route needs a Router, which is a controller that provides the load balancer or proxy. In contrast to Kubernetes, the Router is available out of the box in OpenShift.

#### TRYING OUT OPENSHIFT

If you're interested in trying out OpenShift, you can start by using Minishift, which is the OpenShift equivalent of Minikube, or you can try OpenShift Online Starter at <https://manage.openshift.com>, which is a free multi-tenant, hosted solution provided to get you started with OpenShift.

### 18.3.2 Deis Workflow and Helm

A company called Deis, which has recently been acquired by Microsoft, also provides a PaaS called Workflow, which is also built on top of Kubernetes. Besides Workflow,

they've also developed a tool called Helm, which is gaining traction in the Kubernetes community as a standard way of deploying existing apps in Kubernetes. We'll take a brief look at both.

### INTRODUCING DEIS WORKFLOW

You can deploy Deis Workflow to any existing Kubernetes cluster (unlike OpenShift, which is a complete cluster with a modified API server and other Kubernetes components). When you run Workflow, it creates a set of Services and ReplicationControllers, which then provide developers with a simple, developer-friendly environment.

Deploying new versions of your app is triggered by pushing your changes with `git push deis master` and letting Workflow take care of the rest. Similar to OpenShift, Workflow also provides a source to image mechanism, application rollouts and rollbacks, edge routing, and also log aggregation, metrics, and alerting, which aren't available in core Kubernetes.

To run Workflow in your Kubernetes cluster, you first need to install the Deis Workflow and Helm CLI tools and then install Workflow into your cluster. We won't go into how to do that here, but if you'd like to learn more, visit the website at <https://deis.com/workflow>. What we'll explore here is the Helm tool, which can be used without Workflow and has gained popularity in the community.

### DEPLOYING RESOURCES THROUGH HELM

Helm is a package manager for Kubernetes (similar to OS package managers like `yum` or `apt` in Linux or `homebrew` in MacOS).

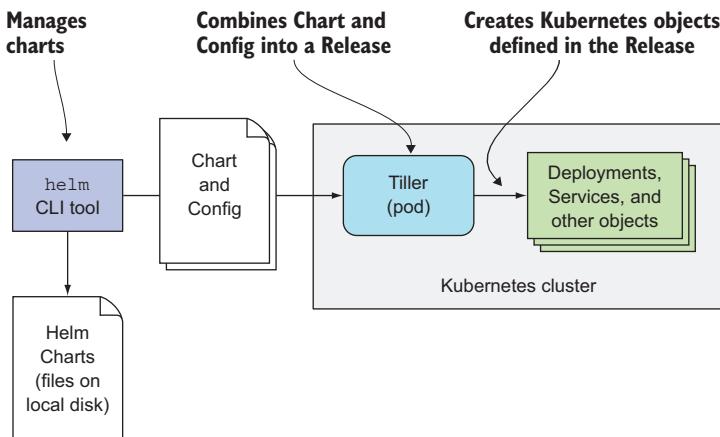
Helm is comprised of two things:

- A `helm` CLI tool (the client).
- Tiller, a server component running as a Pod inside the Kubernetes cluster.

Those two components are used to deploy and manage application packages in a Kubernetes cluster. Helm application packages are called Charts. They're combined with a Config, which contains configuration information and is merged into a Chart to create a Release, which is a running instance of an application (a combined Chart and Config). You deploy and manage Releases using the `helm` CLI tool, which talks to the Tiller server, which is the component that creates all the necessary Kubernetes resources defined in the Chart, as shown in figure 18.10.

You can create charts yourself and keep them on your local disk, or you can use any existing chart, which is available in the growing list of helm charts maintained by the community at <https://github.com/kubernetes/charts>. The list includes charts for applications such as PostgreSQL, MySQL, MariaDB, Magento, Memcached, MongoDB, OpenVPN, PHPBB, RabbitMQ, Redis, WordPress, and others.

Similar to how you don't build and install apps developed by other people to your Linux system manually, you probably don't want to build and manage your own Kubernetes manifests for such applications, right? That's why you'll want to use Helm and the charts available in the GitHub repository I mentioned.



**Figure 18.10** Overview of Helm

When you want to run a PostgreSQL or a MySQL database in your Kubernetes cluster, don't start writing manifests for them. Instead, check if someone else has already gone through the trouble and prepared a Helm chart for it.

Once someone prepares a Helm chart for a specific application and adds it to the Helm chart GitHub repo, installing the whole application takes a single one-line command. For example, to run MySQL in your Kubernetes cluster, all you need to do is clone the charts Git repo to your local machine and run the following command (provided you have Helm's CLI tool and Tiller running in your cluster):

```
$ helm install --name my-database stable/mysql
```

This will create all the necessary Deployments, Services, Secrets, and PersistentVolumeClaims needed to run MySQL in your cluster. You don't need to concern yourself with what components you need and how to configure them to run MySQL properly. I'm sure you'll agree this is awesome.

**TIP** One of the most interesting charts available in the repo is an OpenVPN chart, which runs an OpenVPN server inside your Kubernetes cluster and allows you to enter the pod network through VPN and access Services as if your local machine was a pod in the cluster. This is useful when you're developing apps and running them locally.

These were several examples of how Kubernetes can be extended and how companies like Red Hat and Deis (now Microsoft) have extended it. Now go and start riding the Kubernetes wave yourself!

## 18.4 Summary

This final chapter has shown you how you can go beyond the existing functionalities Kubernetes provides and how companies like Dies and Red Hat have done it. You've learned how

- Custom resources can be registered in the API server by creating a CustomResourceDefinition object.
- Instances of custom objects can be stored, retrieved, updated, and deleted without having to change the API server code.
- A custom controller can be implemented to bring those objects to life.
- Kubernetes can be extended with custom API servers through API aggregation.
- Kubernetes Service Catalog makes it possible to self-provision external services and expose them to pods running in the Kubernetes cluster.
- Platforms-as-a-Service built on top of Kubernetes make it easy to build containerized applications inside the same Kubernetes cluster that then runs them.
- A package manager called Helm makes deploying existing apps without requiring you to build resource manifests for them.

Thank you for taking the time to read through this long book. I hope you've learned as much from reading it as I have from writing it.

# *appendix A*

## *Using kubectl with multiple clusters*

---

### **A.1    Switching between Minikube and Google Kubernetes Engine**

The examples in this book can either be run in a cluster created with Minikube, or one created with Google Kubernetes Engine (GKE). If you plan on using both, you need to know how to switch between them. A detailed explanation of how to use kubectl with multiple clusters is described in the next section. Here we look at how to switch between Minikube and GKE.

#### **SWITCHING TO MINIKUBE**

Luckily, every time you start up a Minikube cluster with `minikube start`, it also reconfigures kubectl to use it:

```
$ minikube start
Starting local Kubernetes cluster...
...
Setting up kubeconfig...
Kubectl is now configured to use the cluster.
```

**Minikube sets up kubectl every time you start the cluster.**

After switching from Minikube to GKE, you can switch back by stopping Minikube and starting it up again. kubectl will then be re-configured to use the Minikube cluster again.

#### **SWITCHING TO GKE**

To switch to using the GKE cluster, you can use the following command:

```
$ gcloud container clusters get-credentials my-gke-cluster
```

This will configure kubectl to use the GKE cluster called `my-gke-cluster`.

## GOING FURTHER

These two methods should be enough to get you started quickly, but to understand the complete picture of using kubectl with multiple clusters, study the next section.

## A.2 Using kubectl with multiple clusters or namespaces

If you need to switch between different Kubernetes clusters, or if you want to work in a different namespace than the default and don't want to specify the `--namespace` option every time you run kubectl, here's how to do it.

### A.2.1 Configuring the location of the kubeconfig file

The config used by kubectl is usually stored in the `~/.kube/config` file. If it's stored somewhere else, the `KUBECONFIG` environment variable needs to point to its location.

**NOTE** You can use multiple config files and have kubectl use them all at once by specifying all of them in the `KUBECONFIG` environment variable (separate them with a colon).

### A.2.2 Understanding the contents of the kubeconfig file

An example config file is shown in the following listing.

**Listing A.1 Example kubeconfig file**

```
apiVersion: v1
clusters:
- cluster:
  certificate-authority: /home/luksa/.minikube/ca.crt
  server: https://192.168.99.100:8443
  name: minikube
contexts:
- context:
  cluster: minikube
  user: minikube
  namespace: default
  name: minikube
current-context: minikube
kind: Config
preferences: {}
users:
- name: minikube
  user:
    client-certificate: /home/luksa/.minikube/apiserver.crt
    client-key: /home/luksa/.minikube/apiserver.key
```

The diagram shows the structure of the kubeconfig file with annotations:

- Clusters:** Contains information about a Kubernetes cluster.
- Contexts:** Defines a kubectl context.
- Current-context:** The current context kubectl uses.
- Users:** Contains a user's credentials.

The kubeconfig file consists of four sections:

- A list of clusters
- A list of users
- A list of contexts
- The name of the current context

Each cluster, user, and context has a name. The name is used to refer to the context, user, or cluster.

### CLUSTERS

A cluster entry represents a Kubernetes cluster and contains the URL of the API server, the certificate authority (CA) file, and possibly a few other configuration options related to communication with the API server. The CA certificate can be stored in a separate file and referenced in the kubeconfig file, or it can be included in it directly in the `certificate-authority-data` field.

### USERS

Each user defines the credentials to use when talking to an API server. This can be a username and password pair, an authentication token, or a client key and certificate. The certificate and key can be included in the kubeconfig file (through the `client-certificate-data` and `client-key-data` properties) or stored in separate files and referenced in the config file, as shown in listing A.1.

### CONTEXTS

A context ties together a cluster, a user, and the default namespace `kubectl` should use when performing commands. Multiple contexts can point to the same user or cluster.

### THE CURRENT CONTEXT

While there can be multiple contexts defined in the kubeconfig file, at any given time only one of them is the current context. Later we'll see how the current context can be changed.

## A.2.3 *Listing, adding, and modifying kube config entries*

You can edit the file manually to add, modify, and remove clusters, users, or contexts, but you can also do it through one of the `kubectl config` commands.

### ADDING OR MODIFYING A CLUSTER

To add another cluster, use the `kubectl config set-cluster` command:

```
$ kubectl config set-cluster my-other-cluster
↳ --server=https://k8s.example.com:6443
↳ --certificate-authority=path/to/the/cafile
```

This will add a cluster called `my-other-cluster` with the API server located at <https://k8s.example.com:6443>. To see additional options you can pass to the command, run `kubectl config set-cluster` to have it print out usage examples.

If a cluster by that name already exists, the `set-cluster` command will overwrite its configuration options.

### ADDING OR MODIFYING USER CREDENTIALS

Adding and modifying users is similar to adding or modifying a cluster. To add a user that authenticates with the API server using a username and password, run the following command:

```
$ kubectl config set-credentials foo --username=foo --password=pass
```

To use token-based authentication, run the following instead:

```
$ kubectl config set-credentials foo --token=mysecrettokenXFDJ1Q1234
```

Both these examples store user credentials under the name `foo`. If you use the same credentials for authenticating against different clusters, you can define a single user and use it with both clusters.

#### **TYING CLUSTERS AND USER CREDENTIALS TOGETHER**

A context defines which user to use with which cluster, but can also define the namespace that `kubectl` should use, when you don't specify the namespace explicitly with the `--namespace` or `-n` option.

The following command is used to create a new context that ties together the cluster and the user you created:

```
$ kubectl config set-context some-context --cluster=my-other-cluster  
  --user=foo --namespace=bar
```

This creates a context called `some-context` that uses the `my-other-cluster` cluster and the `foo` user credentials. The default namespace in this context is set to `bar`.

You can also use the same command to change the namespace of your current context, for example. You can get the name of the current context like so:

```
$ kubectl config current-context  
minikube
```

You then change the namespace like this:

```
$ kubectl config set-context minikube --namespace=another-namespace
```

Running this simple command once is much more user-friendly compared to having to include the `--namespace` option every time you run `kubectl`.

**TIP** To easily switch between namespaces, define an alias like this: `alias kcd='kubectl config set-context $(kubectl config current-context) --namespace'`. You can then switch between namespaces with `kcd some-namespace`.

#### **A.2.4 Using `kubectl` with different clusters, users, and contexts**

When you run `kubectl` commands, the cluster, user, and namespace defined in the kubeconfig's current context are used, but you can override them using the following command-line options:

- `--user` to use a different user from the kubeconfig file.
- `--username` and `--password` to use a different username and/or password (they don't need to be specified in the config file). If using other types of authentication, you can use `--client-key` and `--client-certificate` or `--token`.
- `--cluster` to use a different cluster (must be defined in the config file).

- `--server` to specify the URL of a different server (which isn't in the config file).
- `--namespace` to use a different namespace.

### A.2.5 Switching between contexts

Instead of modifying the current context as in one of the previous examples, you can also use the `set-context` command to create an additional context and then switch between contexts. This is handy when working with multiple clusters (use `set-cluster` to create cluster entries for them).

Once you have multiple contexts set up, switching between them is trivial:

```
$ kubectl config use-context my-other-context
```

This switches the current context to `my-other-context`.

### A.2.6 Listing contexts and clusters

To list all the contexts defined in your `kubeconfig` file, run the following command:

```
$ kubectl config get-contexts
CURRENT      NAME            CLUSTER        AUTHINFO          NAMESPACE
*           minikube        minikube       minikube        default
              rpi-cluster     rpi-cluster   admin/rpi-cluster
              rpi-foo         rpi-cluster   admin/rpi-cluster   foo
```

As you can see, I'm using three different contexts. The `rpi-cluster` and the `rpi-foo` contexts use the same cluster and credentials, but default to different namespaces.

Listing clusters is similar:

```
$ kubectl config get-clusters
NAME
rpi-cluster
minikube
```

Credentials can't be listed for security reasons.

### A.2.7 Deleting contexts and clusters

To clean up the list of contexts or clusters, you can either delete the entries from the `kubeconfig` file manually or use the following two commands:

```
$ kubectl config delete-context my-unused-context
```

and

```
$ kubectl config delete-cluster my-old-cluster
```

# *appendix B*

## *Setting up a multi-node cluster with kubeadm*

---

This appendix shows how to install a Kubernetes cluster with multiple nodes. You’ll run the nodes inside virtual machines through VirtualBox, but you can also use a different virtualization tool or bare-metal machines. To set up both the master and the worker nodes, you’ll use the `kubeadm` tool.

### **B.1 Setting up the OS and required packages**

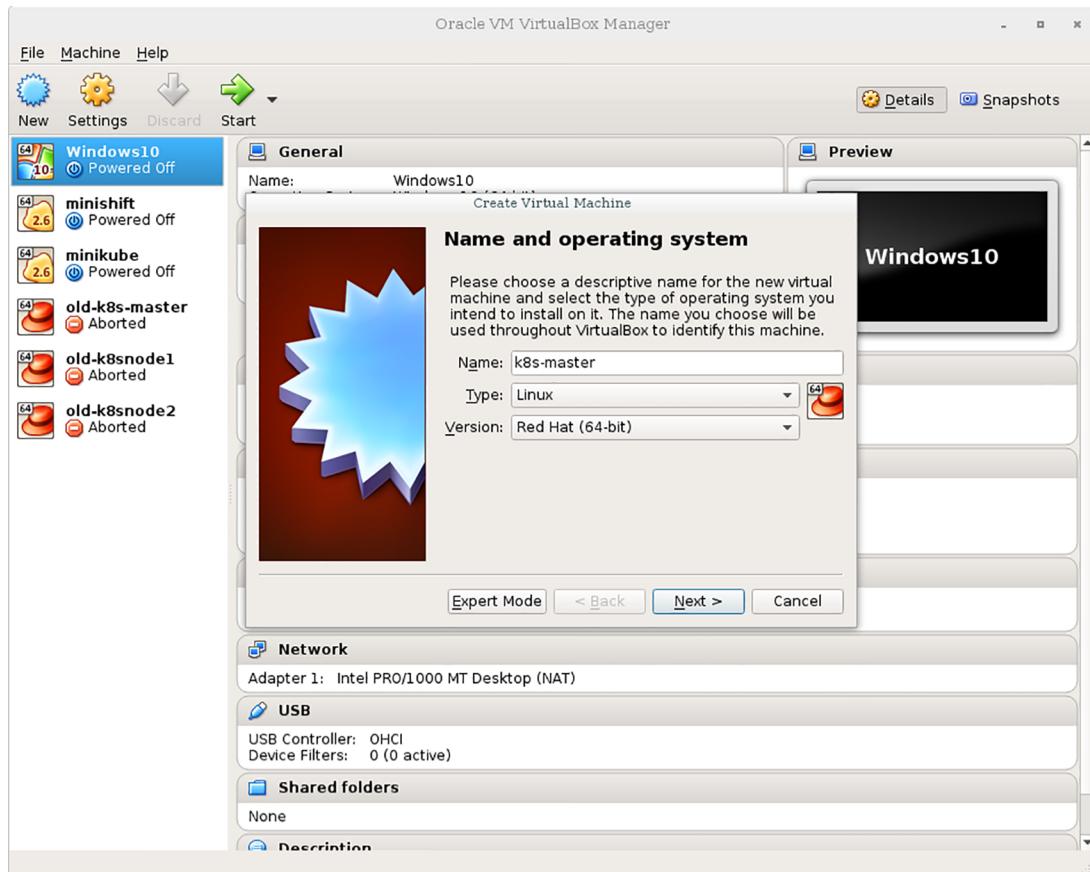
First, you need to download and install VirtualBox, if you don’t have it installed already. You can download it from <https://www.virtualbox.org/wiki/Downloads>. Once you have it running, download the CentOS 7 minimal ISO image from [www.centos.org/download](http://www.centos.org/download). You can also use a different Linux distribution, but make sure it’s supported by checking the <http://kubernetes.io> website.

#### **B.1.1 Creating the virtual machine**

Next, you’ll create the VM for your Kubernetes master. Start by clicking the New icon in the upper-left corner. Then enter “k8s-master” as the name, and select Linux as the Type and Red Hat (64-bit) as the version, as shown in figure B.1.

After clicking the Next button, you can set the VM’s memory size and set up the hard disk. If you have enough memory, select at least 2GB (keep in mind you’ll run three such VMs). When creating the hard disk, leave the default options selected. Here’s what they were in my case:

- Hard disk file type: VDI (VirtualBox Disk Image)
- Storage on physical hard disk: Dynamically allocated
- File location and size: k8s-master, size 8GB



**Figure B.1** Creating a Virtual Machine in VirtualBox

### B.1.2 Configuring the network adapter for the VM

Once you’re done creating the VM, you need to configure its network adapter, because the default won’t allow you to run multiple nodes properly. You’ll configure the adapter so it uses the Bridged Adapter mode. This will connect your VMs to the same network your host computer is in. Each VM will get its own IP address, the same way as if it were a physical machine connected to the same switch your host computer is connected to. Other options are much more complicated, because they usually require two network adapters to be set up.

To configure the network adapter, make sure the VM is selected in the main VirtualBox window and then click the Settings icon (next to the New icon you clicked before).

A window like the one shown in figure B.2 will appear. On the left-hand side, select Network and then, in the main panel on the right, select Attached to: Bridged Adapter, as shown in the figure. In the Name drop-down menu, select your host machine’s adapter, which you use to connect your machine to the network.

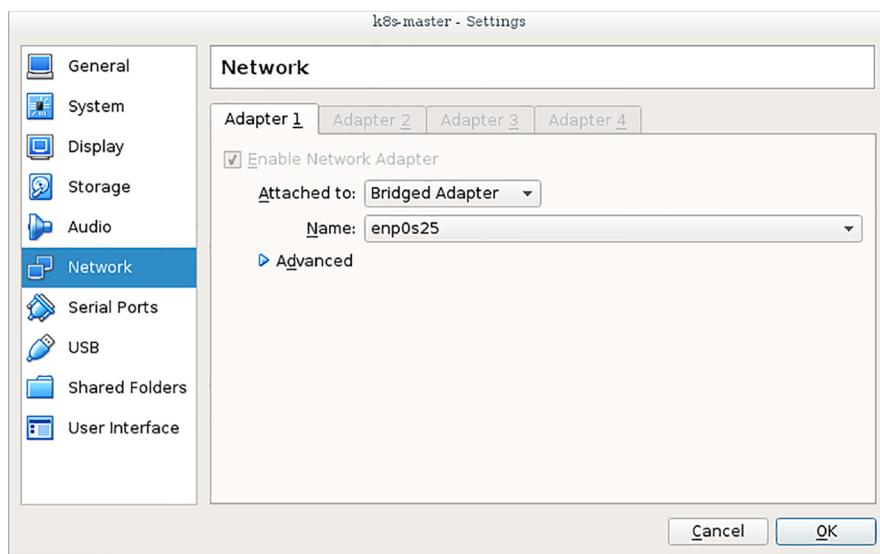


Figure B.2 Configuring the network adapter for the VM

### B.1.3 Installing the operating system

You're now ready to run the VM and install the operating system. Ensure the VM is still selected in the list and click on the Start icon at the top of the VirtualBox main window.

#### SELECTING THE START-UP DISK

Before the VM starts up, VirtualBox will ask you what start-up disk to use. Click the icon next to the drop-down list (shown in figure B.3) and then find and select the CentOS ISO image you downloaded earlier. Then click Start to boot up the VM.



Figure B.3 Selecting the installation ISO image

### INITIATING THE INSTALL

When the VM starts up, a textual menu screen will appear. Use the cursor up key to select the Install CentOS Linux 7 option and press the Enter button.

### SETTING INSTALLATION OPTIONS

After a few moments, a graphical Welcome to CentOS Linux 7 screen will appear, allowing you to select the language you wish to use. I suggest you keep the language set to English. Click the Continue button to get to the main setup screen as shown in figure B.4.

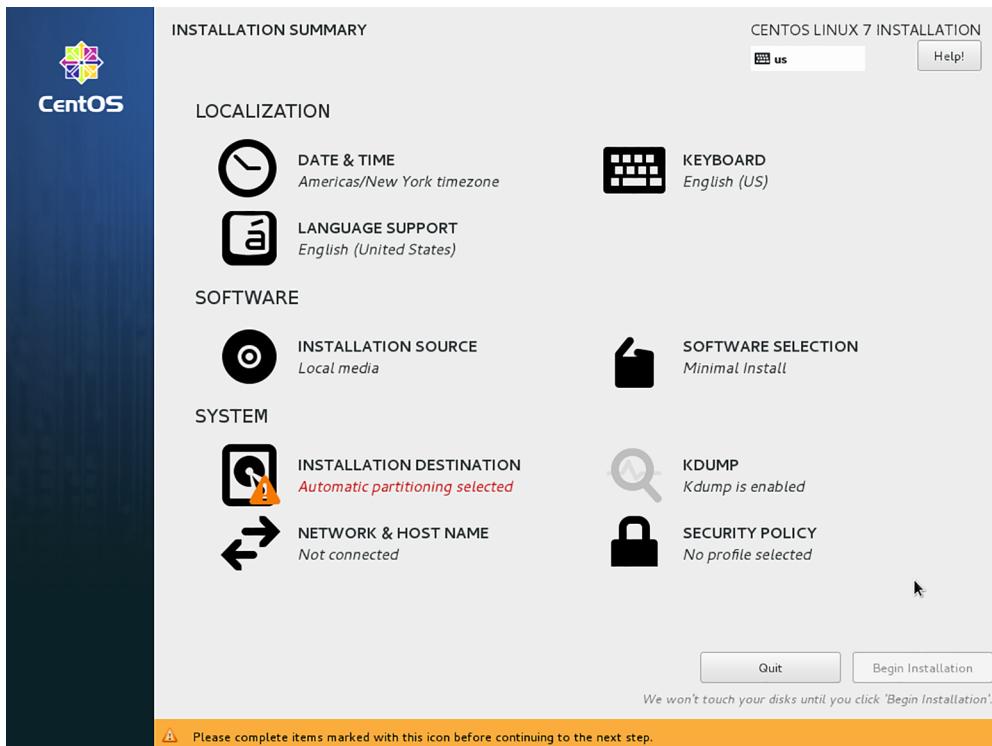


Figure B.4 The main setup screen

**TIP** When you click into the VM's window, your keyboard and mouse will be captured by the VM. To release them, press the key shown at the bottom-right corner of the VirtualBox window the VM is running in. This is usually the Right Control key on Windows and Linux or the left Command key on MacOS.

First, click Installation Destination and then immediately click the Done button on the screen that appears (you don't need to click anywhere else).

Then click on Network & Host Name. On the next screen, first enable the network adapter by clicking the ON/OFF switch in the top right corner. Then enter the host

name into the field at the bottom left, as shown in figure B.5. You’re currently setting up the master, so set the host name to master.k8s. Click the Apply button next to the text field to confirm the new host name.

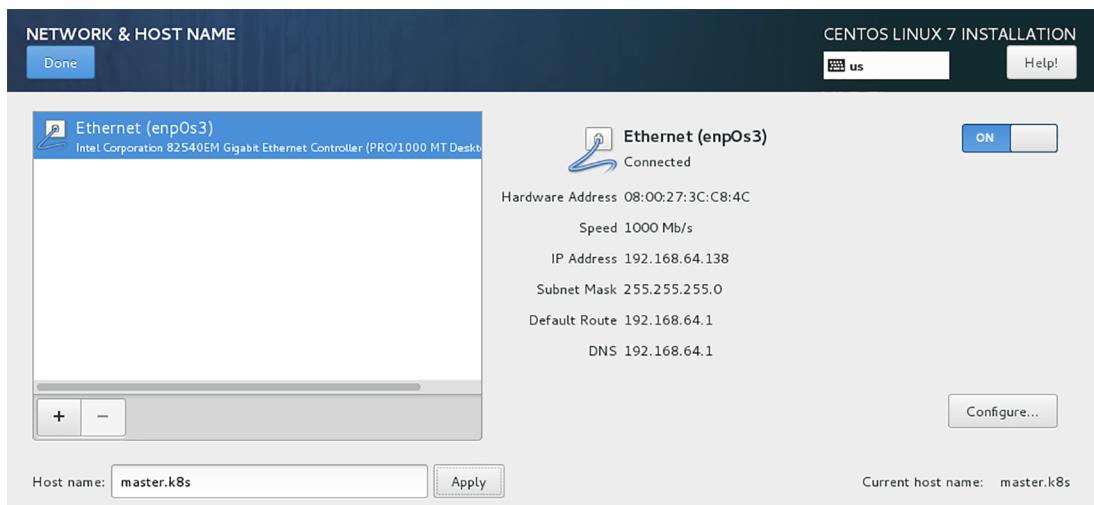


Figure B.5 Setting the hostname and configuring the network adapter

To return to the main setup screen, click the Done button in the top-left corner.

You also need to set the correct time zone. Click Date & Time and then, on the screen that opens, select the Region and City or click your location on the map. Return to the main screen by clicking the Done button in the top-left corner.

#### RUNNING THE INSTALL

To start the installation, click the Begin Installation button in the bottom-right corner. A screen like the one in figure B.6 will appear. While the OS is being installed, set the

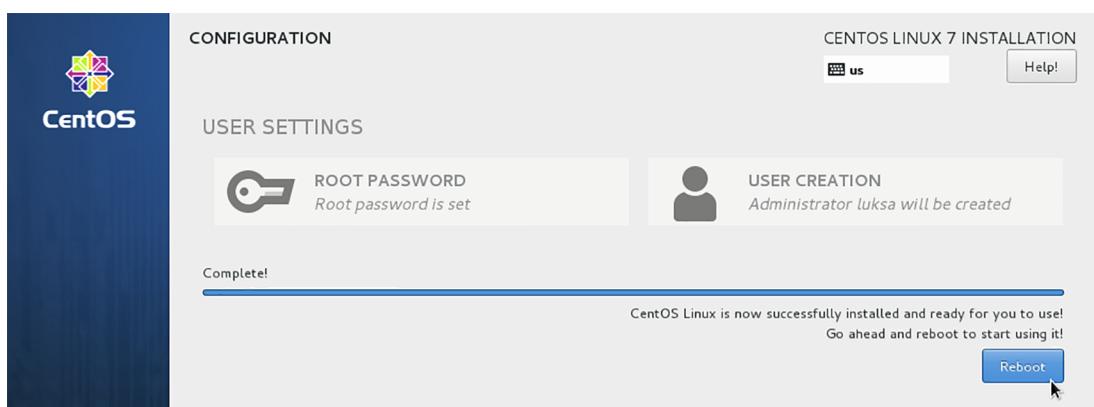


Figure B.6 Setting the root password while the OS is being installed and rebooting afterward

root password and create a user account, if you want. When the installation completes, click the Reboot button at the bottom right.

### B.1.4 *Installing Docker and Kubernetes*

Log into the machine as root. First, you need to disable two security features: SELinux and the firewall.

#### **DISABLING SELINUX**

To disable SELinux, run the following command:

```
# setenforce 0
```

But this only disables it temporarily (until the next reboot). To disable it permanently, edit the `/etc/selinux/config` file and change the `SELINUX=enforcing` line to `SELINUX=permissive`.

#### **DISABLING THE FIREWALL**

You'll also disable the firewall, so you don't run into any firewall-related problems. Run the following command:

```
# systemctl disable firewalld && systemctl stop firewalld
Removed symlink /etc/systemd/system/dbus-org.fedoraproject.FirewallD1...
Removed symlink /etc/systemd/system/basic.target.wants/firewalld.service.
```

#### **ADDING THE KUBERNETES YUM REPO**

To make the Kubernetes RPM packages available to the yum package manager, you'll add a `kubernetes.repo` file to the `/etc/yum.repos.d/` directory as shown in the following listing.

##### **Listing B.1 Adding the Kubernetes RPM repo**

```
# cat <<EOF > /etc/yum.repos.d/kubernetes.repo
[kubernetes]
name=Kubernetes
baseurl=http://yum.kubernetes.io/repos/kubernetes-el7-x86_64
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
repo_gpgcheck=1
gpgkey=https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum/doc/yum-key.gpg
https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum/doc/rpm-package-key.gpg
EOF
```

**NOTE** Make sure no whitespace exists after EOF if you're copying and pasting.

#### **INSTALLING DOCKER, KUBELET, KUBEADM, KUBECTL, AND KUBERNETES-CNI**

Now you're ready to install all the packages you need:

```
# yum install -y docker kubelet kubeadm kubectl kubernetes-cni
```

As you can see, you’re installing quite a few packages. Here’s what they are:

- docker—The container runtime
- kubelet—The Kubernetes node agent, which will run everything for you
- kubeadm—A tool for deploying multi-node Kubernetes clusters
- kubectl—The command line tool for interacting with Kubernetes
- kubernetes-cni—The Kubernetes Container Networking Interface

Once they’re all installed, you need to manually enable the docker and the kubelet services:

```
# systemctl enable docker && systemctl start docker
# systemctl enable kubelet && systemctl start kubelet
```

#### ENABLING THE NET.BRIDGE.BRIDGE-NF-CALL-IPTABLES KERNEL OPTION

I’ve noticed that something disables the bridge-nf-call-iptables kernel parameter, which is required for Kubernetes services to operate properly. To rectify the problem, you need to run the following two commands:

```
# sysctl -w net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables=1
# echo "net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables=1" > /etc/sysctl.d/k8s.conf
```

#### DISABLING SWAP

The Kubelet won’t run if swap is enabled, so you’ll disable it with the following command:

```
# swapoff -a && sed -i '/ swap / s/^/#/' /etc/fstab
```

### B.1.5 Cloning the VM

Everything you’ve done up to this point must be done on every machine you plan to use in your cluster. If you’re doing this on bare metal, you need to repeat the process described in the previous section at least two more times—for each worker node. If you’re building the cluster using virtual machines, now’s the time to clone the VM, so you end up with three different VMs.

#### SHUTTING DOWN THE VM

To clone the machine in VirtualBox, first shut down the VM by running the shutdown command:

```
# shutdown now
```

#### CLONING THE VM

Now, right-click on the VM in the VirtualBox UI and select Clone. Enter the name for the new machine as shown in figure B.7 (for example, k8s-node1 for the first clone or k8s-node2 for the second one). Make sure you check the Reinitialize the MAC address of all network cards option, so each VM uses different MAC addresses (because they’re going to be located in the same network).



Figure B.7 Cloning the master VM

Click the Next button and then make sure the Full clone option is selected before clicking Next again. Then, on the next screen, click Clone (leave the Current machine state option selected).

Repeat the process for the VM for the second node and then start all three VMs by selecting all three and clicking the Start icon.

#### CHANGING THE HOSTNAME ON THE CLONED VMs

Because you created two clones from your master VM, all three VMs have the same hostname configured. Therefore, you need to change the hostnames of the two clones. To do that, log into each of the two nodes (as root) and run the following command:

```
# hostnamectl --static set-hostname node1.k8s
```

**NOTE** Be sure to set the hostname to node2.k8s on the second node.

#### CONFIGURING NAME RESOLUTION FOR ALL THREE HOSTS

You need to ensure that all three nodes are resolvable either by adding records to a DNS server or by editing the /etc/hosts file on all of them. For example, you need to add the following three lines to the hosts file (replace the IPs with those of your VMs), as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing B.2 Entries to add to /etc/hosts on each cluster node

```
192.168.64.138 master.k8s
192.168.64.139 node1.k8s
192.168.64.140 node2.k8s
```

You can get each node's IP by logging into the node as root, running `ip addr` and finding the IP address associated with the `enp0s3` network adapter, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing B.3 Looking up each node's IP address**

```
# ip addr
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 65536 qdisc noqueue state UNKNOWN qlen 1
    link/loopback 00:00:00:00:00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00:00
    inet 127.0.0.1/8 scope host lo
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
    inet6 ::1/128 scope host
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
2: enp0s3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast state UP qlen 1000
    link/ether 08:00:27:db:c3:a4 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    inet 192.168.64.138/24 brd 192.168.64.255 scope global dynamic enp0s3
        valid_lft 59414sec preferred_lft 59414sec
    inet6 fe80::77a9:5ad6:2597:2e1b/64 scope link
        valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

The command's output in the previous listing shows that the machine's IP address is `192.168.64.138`. You'll need to run this command on each of your nodes to get all their IPs.

## B.2 Configuring the master with kubeadm

You're now ready to finally set up the Kubernetes Control Plane on your master node.

### RUNNING KUBEADM INIT TO INITIALIZE THE MASTER

Thanks to the awesome `kubeadm` tool, all you need to do to initialize the master is run a single command, as shown in the following listing.

**Listing B.4 Initializing the master node with kubeadm init**

```
# kubeadm init
[kubeadm] WARNING: kubeadm is in beta, please do not use it for production
clusters.
[init] Using Kubernetes version: v1.8.4
...
You should now deploy a pod network to the cluster.
Run "kubectl apply -f [podnetwork].yaml" with one of the options listed at:
  http://kubernetes.io/docs/admin/addons/
You can now join any number of machines by running the following on each node
as root:
kubeadm join --token eb3877.3585d0423978c549 192.168.64.138:6443
  --discovery-token-ca-cert-hash
  sha256:037d2c5505294af196048a17f184a79411c7b1eac48aaa0ad137075be3d7a847
```

**NOTE** Write down the command shown in the last line of `kubeadm init`'s output. You'll need it later.

Kubeadm has deployed all the necessary Control Plane components, including etcd, the API server, Scheduler, and Controller Manager. It has also deployed the kube-proxy, making Kubernetes services available from the master node.

### B.2.1 Understanding how kubeadm runs the components

All these components are running as containers. You can use the docker ps command to confirm this. But kubeadm doesn't use Docker directly to run them. It deploys their YAML descriptors to the /etc/kubernetes/manifests directory. This directory is monitored by the Kubelet, which then runs these components through Docker. The components run as Pods. You can see them with the kubectl get command. But first, you need to configure kubectl.

#### RUNNING KUBECTL ON THE MASTER

You installed kubectl along with docker, kubeadm, and other packages in one of the initial steps. But you can't use kubectl to talk to your cluster without first configuring it through a kubeconfig file.

Luckily, the necessary configuration is stored in the /etc/kubernetes/admin.conf file. All you need to do is make kubectl use it by setting the KUBECONFIG environment variable, as explained in appendix A:

```
# export KUBECONFIG=/etc/kubernetes/admin.conf
```

#### LISTING THE PODS

To test kubectl, you can list the pods of the Control Plane (they're in the kube-system namespace), as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing B.5 System pods in the kube-system namespace

```
# kubectl get po -n kube-system
NAME                      READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
etcd-master.k8s            1/1     Running   0          21m
kube-apiserver-master.k8s  1/1     Running   0          22m
kube-controller-manager-master.k8s  1/1     Running   0          21m
kube-dns-3913472980-cn6kz  0/3     Pending   0          22m
kube-proxy-qb709           1/1     Running   0          22m
kube-scheduler-master.k8s  1/1     Running   0          21m
```

#### LISTING NODES

You're finished with setting up the master, but you still need to set up the nodes. Although you already installed the Kubelet on both of your two worker nodes (you either installed each node separately or cloned the initial VM after you installed all the required packages), they aren't part of your Kubernetes cluster yet. You can see that by listing nodes with kubectl:

```
# kubectl get node
NAME      STATUS    ROLES   AGE      VERSION
master.k8s  NotReady  master  2m      v1.8.4
```

See, only the master is listed as a node. And even the master is shown as being Not-Ready. You'll see why later. Now, you'll set up your two nodes.

### B.3 Configuring worker nodes with kubeadm

When using kubeadm, configuring worker nodes is even easier than configuring the master. In fact, when you ran the kubeadm init command to set up your master, it already told you how to configure your worker nodes (repeated in the next listing).

#### Listing B.6 Last part of the output of the kubeadm init command

You can now join any number of machines by running the following on each node as root:

```
kubeadm join --token eb3877.3585d0423978c549 192.168.64.138:6443  
--discovery-token-ca-cert-hash  
sha256:037d2c5505294af196048a17f184a79411c7b1eac48aaa0ad137075be3d7a847
```

All you need to do is run the kubeadm join command with the specified token and the master's IP address/port on both of your nodes. It then takes less than a minute for the nodes to register themselves with the master. You can confirm they're registered by running the kubectl get node command on the master again:

```
# kubectl get nodes  
NAME      STATUS    ROLES      AGE       VERSION  
master.k8s  NotReady  master     3m        v1.8.4  
node1.k8s   NotReady  <none>    3s        v1.8.4  
node2.k8s   NotReady  <none>    5s        v1.8.4
```

Okay, you've made progress. Your Kubernetes cluster now consists of three nodes, but none of them are ready. Let's investigate.

Let's use the kubectl describe command in the following listing to see more information. Somewhere at the top, you'll see a list of Conditions, showing the current conditions on the node. One of them will show the following Reason and Message.

#### Listing B.7 Kubectl describe shows why the node isn't ready

```
# kubectl describe node node1.k8s  
...  
KubeletNotReady    runtime network not ready: NetworkReady=false  
                    reason:NetworkPluginNotReady message:docker:  
                    network plugin is not ready: cni config uninitialized
```

According to this, the Kubelet isn't fully ready, because the container network (CNI) plugin isn't ready, which is expected, because you haven't deployed the CNI plugin yet. You'll deploy one now.

### B.3.1 Setting up the container network

You'll install the Weave Net container networking plugin, but several alternatives are also available. They're listed among the available Kubernetes add-ons at <http://kubernetes.io/docs/admin/addons/>.

Deploying the Weave Net plugin (like most other add-ons) is as simple as this:

```
$ kubectl apply -f "https://cloud.weave.works/k8s/net?k8s-version=$(kubectl version | base64 | tr -d '\n')"
```

This will deploy a DaemonSet and a few security-related resources (refer to chapter 12 for an explanation of the ClusterRole and ClusterRoleBinding, which are deployed alongside the DaemonSet).

Once the DaemonSet controller creates the pods and they're started on all your nodes, the nodes should become ready:

| # k get node |        |        |     |         |
|--------------|--------|--------|-----|---------|
| NAME         | STATUS | ROLES  | AGE | VERSION |
| master.k8s   | Ready  | master | 9m  | v1.8.4  |
| node1.k8s    | Ready  | <none> | 5m  | v1.8.4  |
| node2.k8s    | Ready  | <none> | 5m  | v1.8.4  |

And that's it. You now have a fully functioning three-node Kubernetes cluster with an overlay network provided by Weave Net. All the required components, except for the Kubelet itself, are running as pods, managed by the Kubelet, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing B.8 System pods in the kube-system namespace after deploying Weave Net

| # kubectl get po --all-namespaces |                                    |       |         |     |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------|---------|-----|
| NAMESPACE                         | NAME                               | READY | STATUS  | AGE |
| kube-system                       | etcd-master.k8s                    | 1/1   | Running | 1h  |
| kube-system                       | kube-apiserver-master.k8s          | 1/1   | Running | 1h  |
| kube-system                       | kube-controller-manager-master.k8s | 1/1   | Running | 1h  |
| kube-system                       | kube-dns-3913472980-cn6kz          | 3/3   | Running | 1h  |
| kube-system                       | kube-proxy-hcqnx                   | 1/1   | Running | 24m |
| kube-system                       | kube-proxy-jvd1r                   | 1/1   | Running | 24m |
| kube-system                       | kube-proxy-qb709                   | 1/1   | Running | 1h  |
| kube-system                       | kube-scheduler-master.k8s          | 1/1   | Running | 1h  |
| kube-system                       | weave-net-58zbk                    | 2/2   | Running | 7m  |
| kube-system                       | weave-net-91kjg                    | 2/2   | Running | 7m  |
| kube-system                       | weave-net-vt279                    | 2/2   | Running | 7m  |

### B.4 Using the cluster from your local machine

Up to this point, you've used kubectl on the master node to talk to the cluster. You'll probably want to configure the kubectl instance on your local machine, too.

To do that, you need to copy the /etc/kubernetes/admin.conf file from the master to your local machine with the following command:

```
$ scp root@192.168.64.138:/etc/kubernetes/admin.conf ~/.kube/config2
```

Replace the IP with that of your master. Then you point the KUBECONFIG environment variable to the `~/.kube/config2` file like this:

```
$ export KUBECONFIG=~/kube/config2
```

Kubectl will now use this config file. To switch back to using the previous one, unset the environment variable.

You're now all set to use the cluster from your local machine.

# *appendix C*

## *Using other container runtimes*

---

### **C.1** *Replacing Docker with rkt*

We've mentioned rkt (pronounced rock-it) a few times in this book. Like Docker, it runs applications in isolated containers, using the same Linux technologies as those used by Docker. Let's look at how rkt differs from Docker and how to try it in Minikube.

The first great thing about rkt is that it directly supports the notion of a Pod (running multiple related containers), unlike Docker, which only runs individual containers. Rkt is based on open standards and was built with security in mind from the start (for example, images are signed, so you can be sure they haven't been tampered with). Unlike Docker, which initially had a client-server based architecture that didn't play well with init systems such as systemd, rkt is a CLI tool that runs your container directly, instead of telling a daemon to run it. A nice thing about rkt is that it can run existing Docker-formatted container images, so you don't need to repackage your applications to get started with rkt.

#### **C.1.1** *Configuring Kubernetes to use rkt*

As you may remember from chapter 11, the Kubelet is the only Kubernetes component that talks to the Container Runtime. To get Kubernetes to use rkt instead of Docker, you need to configure the Kubelet to use it by running it with the `--container-runtime=rkt` command-line option. But be aware that support for rkt isn't as mature as support for Docker.

Please refer to the Kubernetes documentation for more information on how to use rkt and what is or isn't supported. Here, we'll go over a quick example to get you started.

### C.1.2 Trying out rkt with Minikube

Luckily, to get started with rkt on Kubernetes, all you need is the same Minikube executable you’re already using. To use rkt as the container runtime in Minikube, all you need to do is start Minikube with the following two options:

```
$ minikube start --container-runtime=rkt --network-plugin=cni
```

**NOTE** You may need to run `minikube delete` to delete the existing Minikube VM first.

The `--container-runtime=rkt` option obviously configures the Kubelet to use rkt as the Container Runtime, whereas the `--network-plugin=cni` makes it use the Container Network Interface as the network plugin. Without this option, pods won’t run, so it’s imperative you use it.

#### RUNNING A POD

Once the Minikube VM is up, you can interact with Kubernetes exactly like before. You can deploy the `kubia` app with the `kubectl run` command, for example:

```
$ kubectl run kubia --image=luksa/kubia --port 8080
deployment "kubia" created
```

When the pod starts up, you can see it’s running through rkt by inspecting its containers with `kubectl describe`, as shown in the following listing.

#### Listing C.1 Pod running with rkt

```
$ kubectl describe pods
Name:           kubia-3604679414-l1nn3
...
Status:         Running
IP:             10.1.0.2
Controllers:   ReplicaSet/kubia-3604679414
Containers:
  kubia:
    Container ID:      rkt://87a138ce....-96e375852997:kubia
    Image:             luksa/kubia
    Image ID:          rkt://sha512-5bbc5c7df6148d30d74e0...
...

```

The container and image IDs mention rkt instead of Docker.

You can also try hitting the pod’s HTTP port to see if it’s responding properly to HTTP requests. You can do this by creating a `NodePort` Service or by using `kubectl port-forward`, for example.

#### INSPECTING THE RUNNING CONTAINERS IN THE MINIKUBE VM

To get more familiar with rkt, you can try logging into the Minikube VM with the following command:

```
$ minikube ssh
```

Then, you can use `rkt list` to see the running pods and containers, as shown in the following listing.

### Listing C.2 Listing running containers with `rkt list`

```
$ rkt list
UUID      APP           IMAGE NAME          STATE   ...
4900e0a5  k8s-dashboard gcr.io/google_containers/kun...  running ...
564a6234  nginx-ingr-ctrller gcr.io/google_containers/ngi...  running ...
5dcafffd  dflt-http-backend gcr.io/google_containers/def...  running ...
707a306c  kube-addon-manager gcr.io/google-containers/kub...  running ...
87a138ce  kubia         registry-1.docker.io/luksa/k...  running ...
d97f5c29  kubedns        gcr.io/google_containers/k8s...  running ...
                  dnsmasq       gcr.io/google_containers/k8...
                  sidecar        gcr.io/google_containers/k8...
```

You can see the `kubia` container, as well as other system containers running (the ones deployed in pods in the `kube-system` namespace). Notice how the bottom two containers don't have anything listed in the `UUID` or `STATE` columns? That's because they belong to the same pod as the `kubedns` container listed above them.

`Rkt` prints containers belonging to the same pod grouped together. Each pod (instead of each container) has its own `UUID` and state. If you tried doing this when you were using Docker as the Container Runtime, you'll appreciate how much easier it is to see all the pods and their containers with `rkt`. You'll notice no infrastructure container exists for each pod (we explained them in chapter 11). That's because of `rkt`'s native support for pods.

### LISTING CONTAINER IMAGES

If you've played around with Docker CLI commands, you'll get familiar quickly with `rkt`'s commands. Run `rkt` without any arguments and you'll see all the commands you can run. For example, to list container images, you run the command in the following listing.

### Listing C.3 Listing images with `rkt image list`

```
$ rkt image list
ID      NAME          SIZE    IMPORT TIME  LAST USED
sha512-a9c3 ...addon-manager:v6.4-beta.1 245MiB  24 min ago  24 min ago
sha512-a078 .../rkt/stage1-coreos:1.24.0 224MiB  24 min ago  24 min ago
sha512-5bbc ...ker.io/luksa/kubia:latest 1.3GiB   23 min ago  23 min ago
sha512-3931 ...es-dashboard-amd64:v1.6.1 257MiB  22 min ago  22 min ago
sha512-2826 ...ainers/defaultbackend:1.0 15MiB   22 min ago  22 min ago
sha512-8b59 ...s-controller:0.9.0-beta.4 233MiB  22 min ago  22 min ago
sha512-7b59 ...dns-kube-dns-amd64:1.14.2 100MiB  21 min ago  21 min ago
sha512-39c6 ...nsmasq-nanny-amd64:1.14.2 86MiB   21 min ago  21 min ago
sha512-89fe ...-dns-sidecar-amd64:1.14.2 85MiB   21 min ago  21 min ago
```

These are all Docker-formatted container images. You can also try building images in the OCI image format (OCI stands for Open Container Initiative) with the `acbuild`

tool (available at <https://github.com/containers/build>) and running them with rkt. Doing that is outside the scope of this book, so I'll let you try it on your own.

The information explained in this appendix so far should be enough to get you started using rkt with Kubernetes. Refer to the rkt documentation at <https://coreos.com/rkt> and Kubernetes documentation at <https://kubernetes.io/docs> for additional information.

## C.2 Using other container runtimes through the CRI

Kubernetes' support for other container runtimes doesn't stop with Docker and rkt. Both of those runtimes were initially integrated directly into Kubernetes, but in Kubernetes version 1.5, the Container Runtime Interface (CRI) was introduced. CRI is a plugin API enabling easy integration of other container runtimes with Kubernetes. People are now free to plug other container runtimes into Kubernetes without having to dig deep into Kubernetes code. All they need to do is implement a few interface methods.

From Kubernetes version 1.6 onward, CRI is the default interface the Kubelet uses. Both Docker and rkt are now used through the CRI (no longer directly).

### C.2.1 Introducing the CRI-O Container Runtime

Beside Docker and rkt, a new CRI implementation called CRI-O allows Kubernetes to directly launch and manage OCI-compliant containers, without requiring you to deploy any additional Container Runtime.

You can try CRI-O with Minikube by starting it with `--container-runtime=crio`.

### C.2.2 Running apps in virtual machines instead of containers

Kubernetes is a container orchestration system, right? Throughout the book, we explored many features that show that it's much more than an orchestration system, but the bottom line is that when you run an app with Kubernetes, the app always runs inside a container, right? You may find it surprising that's no longer the case.

New CRI implementations are being developed that allow Kubernetes to run apps in virtual machines instead of in containers. One such implementation, called Frakti, allows you to run regular Docker-based container images directly through a hypervisor, which means each container runs its own kernel. This allows much better isolation between containers compared to when they use the same kernel.

And there's more. Another CRI implementation is the Mirantis Virtlet, which makes it possible to run actual VM images (in the QCOW2 image file format, which is one of the formats used by the QEMU virtual machine tool) instead of container images. When you use the Virtlet as the CRI plugin, Kubernetes spins up a VM for each pod. How awesome is that?

# *appendix D*

## *Cluster Federation*

---

In the section about high availability in chapter 11 we explored how Kubernetes can deal with failures of individual machines and even failures of whole server racks or the supporting infrastructure. But what if the whole datacenter goes dark?

To make sure you're not susceptible to datacenter-wide outages, apps should be deployed in multiple datacenters or cloud availability zones. When one of those datacenters or availability zones becomes unavailable, client requests can be routed to the apps running in the remaining healthy datacenters or zones.

While Kubernetes doesn't require you to run the Control Plane and the nodes in the same datacenter, you'll almost always want to do that to keep network latency between them low and to reduce the possibility of them becoming disconnected from each other. Instead of having a single cluster spread across multiple locations, a better alternative is to have an individual Kubernetes cluster in every location. We'll explore this approach in this appendix.

### **D.1** *Introducing Kubernetes Cluster Federation*

Kubernetes allows you to combine multiple clusters into a cluster of clusters through Cluster Federation. It allows users to deploy and manage apps across multiple clusters running in different locations in the world, but also across different cloud providers combined with on-premises clusters (hybrid cloud). The motivation for Cluster Federation isn't only to ensure high availability, but also to combine multiple heterogeneous clusters into a single super-cluster managed through a single management interface.

For example, by combining an on-premises cluster with one running on a cloud provider's infrastructure, you can run privacy-sensitive components of your application system on-premises, while the non-sensitive parts can run in the cloud. Another example is initially running your application only in a small on-premises cluster, but when the application's compute requirements exceed the cluster's

capacity, letting the application spill over to a cloud-based cluster, which is automatically provisioned on the cloud provider's infrastructure.

## D.2 Understanding the architecture

Let's take a quick look at what Kubernetes Cluster Federation is. A cluster of clusters can be compared to a regular cluster where instead of nodes, you have complete clusters. Just as a Kubernetes cluster consists of a Control Plane and multiple worker nodes, a federated cluster consists of a Federated Control Plane and multiple Kubernetes clusters. Similar to how the Kubernetes Control Plane manages applications across a set of worker nodes, the Federated Control Plane does the same thing, but across a set of clusters instead of nodes.

The Federated Control Plane consists of three things:

- etcd for storing the federated API objects
- Federation API server
- Federation Controller Manager

This isn't much different from the regular Kubernetes Control Plane. etcd stores the federated API objects, the API server is the REST endpoint all other components talk to, and the Federation Controller Manager runs the various federation controllers that perform operations based on the API objects you create through the API server.

Users talk to the Federation API server to create federated API objects (or federated resources). The federation controllers watch these objects and then talk to the underlying clusters' API servers to create regular Kubernetes resources. The architecture of a federated cluster is shown in figure D.1.

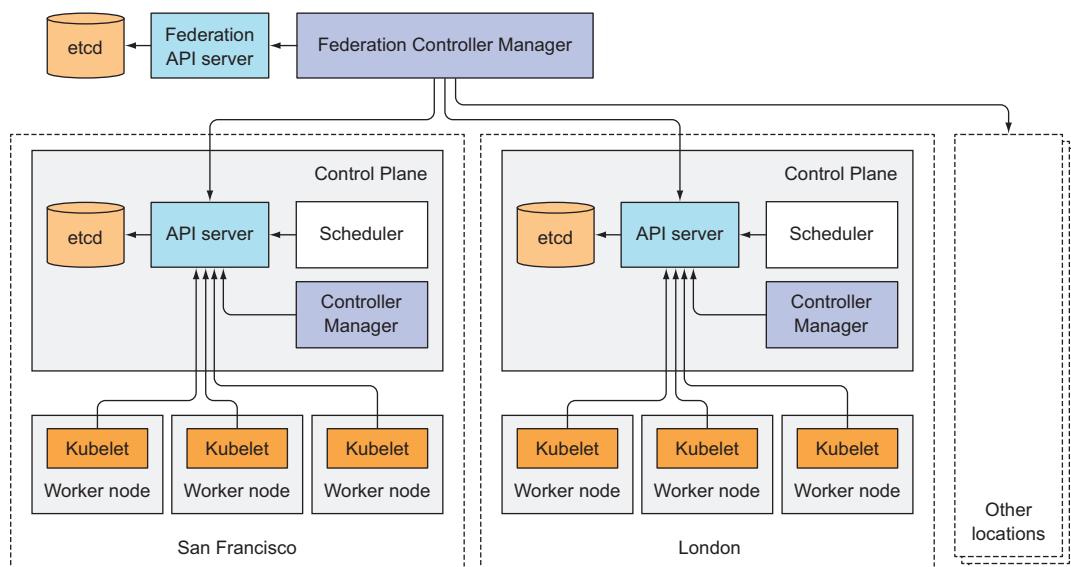


Figure D.1 Cluster Federation with clusters in different geographical locations

## D.3 Understanding federated API objects

The federated API server allows you to create federated variants of the objects you learned about throughout the book.

### D.3.1 Introducing federated versions of Kubernetes resources

At the time of writing this, the following federated resources are supported:

- Namespaces
- ConfigMaps and Secrets
- Services and Ingresses
- Deployments, ReplicaSets, Jobs, and Daemonsets
- HorizontalPodAutoscalers

**NOTE** Check the Kubernetes Cluster Federation documentation for an up-to-date list of supported federated resources.

In addition to these resources, the Federated API server also supports the Cluster object, which represents an underlying Kubernetes cluster, the same way a Node object represents a worker node in a regular Kubernetes cluster. To help you visualize how federated objects relate to the objects created in the underlying clusters, see figure D.2.

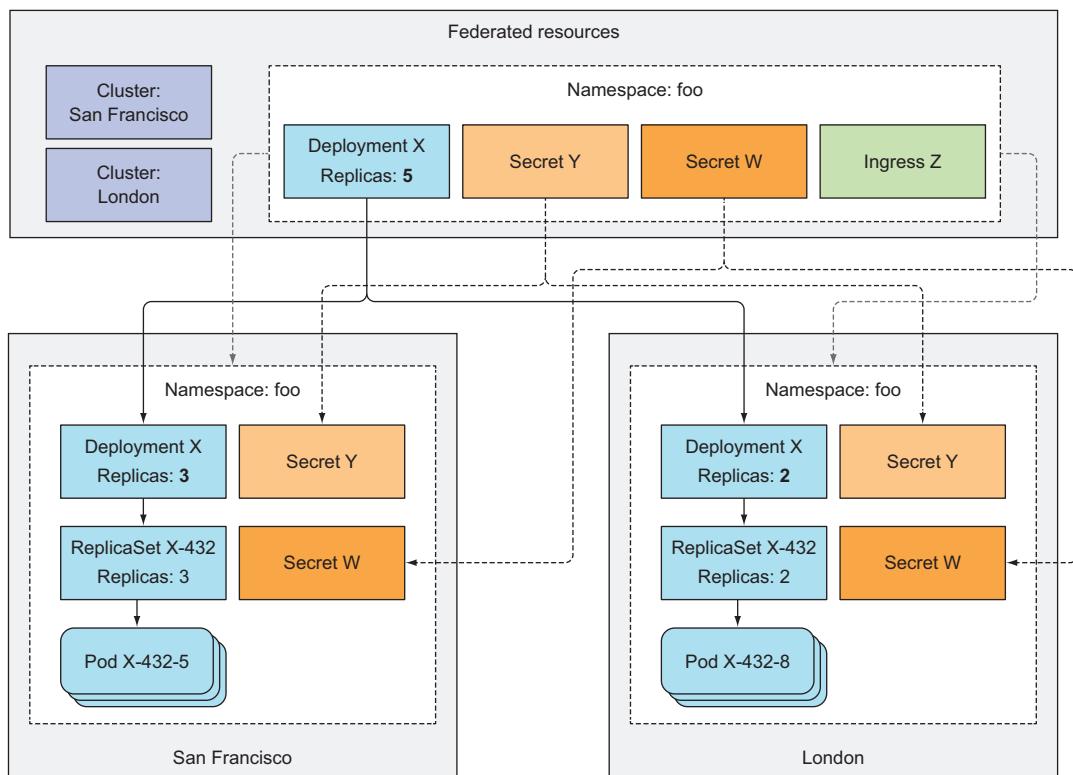


Figure D.2 The relationship between federated resources and regular resources in underlying clusters

### D.3.2 Understanding what federated resources do

For part of the federated objects, when you create the object in the Federation API server, the controllers running in the Federation Controller Manager will create regular cluster-scoped resources in all underlying Kubernetes clusters and manage them until the federated object is deleted.

For certain federated resource types, the resources created in the underlying clusters are exact replicas of the federated resource; for others, they're slightly modified versions, whereas certain federated resources don't cause anything to be created in the underlying clusters at all. The replicas are kept in sync with the original federated versions. But the synchronization is one-directional only—from the federation server down to the underlying clusters. If you modify the resource in an underlying cluster, the changes will not be synced up to the Federation API server.

For example, if you create a namespace in the federated API server, a namespace with the same name will be created in all underlying clusters. If you then create a federated ConfigMap inside that namespace, a ConfigMap with that exact name and contents will be created in all underlying clusters, in the same namespace. This also applies to Secrets, Services, and DaemonSets.

ReplicaSets and Deployments are different. They aren't blindly copied to the underlying clusters, because that's not what the user usually wants. After all, if you create a Deployment with a desired replica count of 10, you probably don't want 10 pod replicas running in each underlying cluster. You want 10 replicas in total. Because of this, when you specify a desired replica count in a Deployment or ReplicaSet, the Federation controllers create underlying Deployments/ReplicaSets so that the sum of their desired replica counts equals the desired replica count specified in the federated Deployment or ReplicaSet. By default, the replicas are spread evenly across the clusters, but this can be overridden.

**NOTE** Currently, you need to connect to each cluster's API server individually to get the list of pods running in that cluster. You can't list all the clusters' pods through the Federated API server.

A federated Ingress resource, on the other hand, doesn't result in the creation of any Ingress objects in the underlying clusters. You may remember from chapter 5 that an Ingress represents a single point of entry for external clients to a Service. Because of this, a federated Ingress resource creates a global, multi-cluster-wide entry point to the Services across all underlying clusters.

**NOTE** As for regular Ingresses, a federated Ingress controller is required for this.

Setting up federated Kubernetes clusters is outside the scope of this book, so you can learn more about the subject by referring to the Cluster Federation sections in the user and administration guides in the Kubernetes online documentation at <http://kubernetes.io/docs/>.



# *index*

---

## Symbols

---

`$(ENV_VAR)` syntax 199  
`$(ENV_VARIABLE_NAME)` syntax 205  
`$(VAR)` syntax 198  
\* (asterisk) character 117  
-- (double dash) 125

## Numerics

---

137 exit code 88  
143 exit code 89  
8080 port 48, 67  
8888 port 67

## A

---

-a option 35  
ABAC (Attribute-based access control) 353  
access controls. *See* RBAC  
accounts. *See* service accounts  
actions 353–354  
activeDeadlineSeconds property 116  
ad hoc tasks 112  
adapters  
    network, configuring for VMs 540  
    node networks, shutting down 304–305  
ADDED watch event 514  
add-ons 328–330  
    components 310  
    deploying 328–329  
DNS servers 329

Ingress controllers 329  
    using 329–330  
addresses attribute 138  
addresses, of API servers 239–240  
admin ClusterRole, granting full control of namespaces with 372  
algorithms, default scheduling 319  
aliases  
    creating for external services 134  
    for kubectl 41–42  
all keyword 82  
-all option 81  
-all-namespaces option 144  
allocatable resources 408  
allowed capabilities, configuring 394–395  
adding capabilities to all containers 395  
dropping capabilities from containers 395  
specifying which capabilities can be added to containers 394  
allowedCapabilities 394  
AlwaysPullImages 317  
Amazon Web Services. *See* AWS  
ambassador containers  
    communicating with API servers through 245  
patterns 244  
running curl pods with 244–245  
simplifying API server communication with 243–245  
annotations  
    adding 76  
describing resources through 498  
modifying 76  
of objects, looking up 75–76  
updating 232  
API (application program interface)  
aggregation 518–519  
custom, providing for custom objects 518–519  
defining custom objects 508–519  
    automating custom resources with custom controllers 513–517  
CRD 509–513  
    providing custom API servers for custom objects 518–519  
    validating custom objects 517–518  
federated objects 558–559  
Service Catalog 521  
    *See also* OpenServiceBroker API  
API servers 233–248, 316–318, 346–374  
    accessing through kubectl proxy 234–235  
authentication of 346–353  
    groups 346–348  
    service accounts 348–353  
    users 347–348  
authorizing clients 317  
communicating from within pods 238–243  
communicating with pods through 295–297  
communicating with, through ambassador containers 245

- API servers (*continued*)
  - connecting to 503
  - connecting to cluster-internal services through 299
  - exploring 235–236, 248
  - finding addresses 239–240
  - modifying resources in requests 317
  - notifying clients of resource changes 318–319
  - persistently storing resources 318
  - running multiple instances of 343
  - running static pods without 326–327
  - securing clusters with RBAC 353–373
    - binding roles to service accounts 359–360
    - default ClusterRoleBindings 371–373
    - default ClusterRoles 371–373
    - granting authorization permissions 373
    - including service accounts from other namespaces in RoleBinding 361
    - RBAC authorization plugins 353–354
  - RBAC resources 355–357
  - using ClusterRoleBindings 362–371
  - using ClusterRoles 362–371
  - using RoleBindings 358–359
  - using Roles 358–359
- simplifying communication 243–245
  - ambassador container patterns 244
  - running curl pod 244–245
- using client libraries to communicate with 246–248
  - building libraries with OpenAPI 248
  - building libraries with Swagger 248
  - interacting with FABRICS Java client 247–248
  - using existing client libraries 246–247
- using custom service account tokens to communicate with 352–353
  - validating resources 318
  - verifying identity of 240–241
- See also* REST API
  - apiVersion property 106, 358, 510
- app=kubia label 98, 123
  - app=pc label selector 72
- application logs 65–66
  - application program interface. *See* API
- application templates, in Red Hat OpenShift Container platform 528–529
  - applications
    - accessing 32
    - best practices for developing 477, 502, 506–507
    - auto-deploying resource manifests 504–505
    - employing CI/CD 506
    - ensuring client requests are handled properly 492–497
    - Ksonnet as alternative to writing JSON/YAML manifests 505–506
    - pod lifecycles 479–491
    - using Minikube 503–504
    - versioning resource manifests 504–505
  - compromised 373
  - containerized, configuring 191–192
  - creating 290–291
  - creating versions of 268
  - deploying through StatefulSets 291–295
    - creating governing services 292–294
    - creating persistent volumes 291–292
    - creating StatefulSets 294
    - examining PersistentVolume-Claims 295
    - examining stateful pods 294–295
  - describing resources through annotations 498
  - descriptions, effect on running containers 19–20
  - examining nodes 51–52
    - displaying pod IP when listing pods 51
    - displaying pod node when listing pods 51
  - inspecting details of pod with kubectl describe 52
  - exposing through services using single YAML file 255
  - handling logs 500–502
    - copying files to and from containers 500–501
    - copying logs to and from containers 500–501
    - handling multi-line log statements 502
    - using centralized logging 501
  - highly available 341
  - horizontally scaling 48–50
    - increasing replica count 49
    - requests hitting three pods when hitting services 50
      - results of scale-out 49–50
      - visualizing new states 50
  - implementing shutdown handlers in 490–491
  - in containers, limits as seen by 415–416
  - killing 479–482
    - expecting data written to disk to disappear 480
    - expecting hostnames to change 480
    - expecting local IP to change 480
    - using volumes to preserve data across container restarts 480–482
  - making container images 497
  - managing 497–502
  - monolithic, vs. microservices 3–6
  - multi-tier, splitting into multiple pods 59
  - Node.js
    - creating 28–29
    - deploying 42–44
  - non-horizontally scalable, using leader-election for 341
  - overview 478–479
  - providing consistent environment to 6
  - providing information about process termination 498–500
  - relocating 479–482
    - expecting data written to disk to disappear 480
    - expecting hostnames to change 480
    - expecting local IP to change 480
    - using volumes to preserve data across container restarts 480–482
  - running 19–21, 497–502
    - in VMs instead of containers 555
    - keeping containers running 20–21

applications (*continued*)  
 locating containers 21  
 outside of Kubernetes during development 502–503  
 scaling number of copies 21  
 through services using single YAML file 255  
 shut-down procedures 496–497  
 splitting into microservices 3–4  
 tagging images 497–498  
 updating declaratively using Deployment 261–278  
 blocking rollouts of bad versions 274–278  
 controlling rate of rollout 271–273  
 creating Deployments 262–264  
 pausing rollout process 273–274  
 rolling back deployments 268–270  
 updating Deployments 264–268  
 using imagePullPolicy 497–498  
 using multi-dimensional labels vs. single-dimensional labels 498  
 using pre-stop hooks when not receiving SIGTERM signal 488–489  
 args array 196  
 arguments defining in Docker 193–195  
 CMD instruction 193  
 ENTRYPOINT instruction 193  
 making INTERVAL configurable in fortune images 194–195  
 shell forms vs. exec forms 193–194  
 overriding in Kubernetes 195–196  
*See also* command-line arguments  
 asterisks 117  
 at-most-one semantics 290  
 Attribute-based access control. *See* ABAC  
 authenticating API servers 346–353  
 groups 347–348  
 service accounts 348, 351–353  
 users 347–348  
 clients with authentication plugins 317

creating Secrets for, with Docker registries 223  
 with API servers 241–242  
 authorization plugins, RBAC 353–354  
 authorizations clients with plugins for 317  
 granting permissions 373  
 service accounts tying into 349  
 auto-deploying, resource manifests 504–505  
 automatic scaling 23  
 automating custom resources with custom controllers 513–517  
 running controllers as pods 515–516  
 Website controllers 514–515  
 Autoscaler, using to scale up Deployments 446–447  
 autoscaling metrics appropriate for 450  
 process of 438–441  
 calculating required number of pods 439  
 obtaining pod metrics 438–439  
 updating replica count on scaled resources 440  
*See also* horizontal autoscaling  
 availability zones co-locating pods in same 471  
 deploying pods in same 471–472  
 availability-zone label 467  
 AWS (Amazon Web Services) 37, 174, 454  
 awsElasticBlockStore volume 162, 174  
 azureDisk volume 162, 174  
 azureFile volume 174

**B**

backend services, connecting to 502  
 backend-database 129–130  
 base images 29  
 bash process 33  
 batch API groups, REST endpoints 236–237  
 BestEffort class, assigning pods to 417  
 binary data, using Secrets for 217  
 binding Roles to service accounts 359–360  
 service instances 525

to host ports without using host network namespaces 377–379  
 blocking rollouts 274–278  
 configuring deadlines for rollouts 278  
 defining readiness probes to prevent rollouts 275  
 minReadySeconds 274–275  
 preventing rollouts with readiness probes 277–278  
 updating deployments with kubectl apply 276–277  
 blue-green deployment 253  
 Borg 16  
 brokers. *See* service brokers  
 BuildConfigs, building images from source using 529  
 Burstable QoS class, assigning to pods 418  
 busybox image 26, 112

**C**

-c option 66, 245  
 CA (certificate authority) 170, 240  
 -cacert option 240  
 cAdvisor 431  
 canary release 69, 273  
 capabilities adding to all containers 395  
 dropping from containers 385–386, 395  
 kernel, adding to containers 384–385  
 specifying which can be added to containers 394  
*See also* allowed capabilities  
 capacity, of nodes 407–408  
 CAP\_CHOWN capability 385, 395  
 CAP\_SYS\_TIME capability 384  
 categorizing worker nodes with labels 74  
 CentOS ISO image 541  
 central processing units. *See* CPUs  
 cephfs volume 163  
 cert files, from Secrets 221  
 certificate-authority-data field 536  
 certificates, TLS 147–149  
 CI/CD (Continuous Integration and Continuous Delivery) 506  
 cinder volume 163  
 claiming benefits of 182  
 PersistentVolumes 179–181  
 client binaries, downloading 39

- client libraries, communicating
  - with API servers through 246–248
  - building libraries with OpenAPI 248
  - building libraries with Swagger 248
  - exploring API servers with Swagger UI 248
  - interacting with FABRIC8 Java client 247–248
  - using existing client libraries 246–247
- client-certificate-data
  - property 536
- client-key-data property 536
- clients
  - authenticating 317
  - authorizing 317
  - custom, creating 519
  - handling requests 492–497
  - non-preservation of IP 142
  - notifying of resource changes 318–319
  - pods, using newly created Secrets in 525–526
  - preventing broken connections 492–497
  - sequence of events at pod deletion 493–495
  - troubleshooting 495–496

*See also* external clients
- cloning VMs 545–547
  - changing hostname on 546
  - configuring name resolution for hosts 546–547
  - shutting down 545
- Cloud infrastructure, requesting nodes from 452–453
- Cluster Autoscaler 452–453
  - enabling 454
  - relinquishing nodes 453
  - requesting additional nodes from Cloud infrastructure 452–453
- cluster events, observing 332–333
- Cluster Federation 556–559
  - architecture of 557
  - federated API objects 558–559
  - overview 556–557
- cluster nodes
  - displaying CPU usage for 431
  - displaying memory usage for 431
  - horizontal scaling of 452–456
  - securing 375–403
    - configuring container security contexts 380–389
- isolating pod networks
  - 399–402
- restricting use of security-related features 389–399
- using host node namespaces in pods 376–380
- clustered data stores 303–304
- cluster-internal services, connecting through API servers 299
- clusterIP field 154, 293
- ClusterIP service 45
- cluster-level resources, allowing access to 362–365
- ClusterRoleBindings
  - combining with ClusterRoles 370–371
  - combining with Role resources 370–371
  - combining with RoleBindings 370–371
  - default 371–373
  - using 362–371
    - allowing access to cluster-level resources 362–365
    - allowing access to non-resource URLs 365–367
- ClusterRoles 362–371
  - allowing access to cluster-level resources 362–365
  - allowing access to non-resource URLs 365–367
  - combining with ClusterRoleBindings 370–371
  - combining with RoleBindings 370–371
  - default 371–373
    - allowing modifying resources 372
    - allowing read-only access to resources 372
    - granting full control of namespaces 372
  - using to grant access to resources in specific namespaces 367–370
- clusters
  - adding 536
  - combining Minikube with 504
  - confirming communication with kubectl 38
  - connecting to services living outside of 131–134
  - creating alias for external services 134
  - service endpoints 131–134
  - creating with three nodes 39
  - deleting 538
- enabling RBAC resources
  - in 356
- etcd, running 342–343
- highly available, running 341–345
- making applications highly available 341
- making Control Plane components highly available 342–345
- hosted, using with GKE 38–41
- in Docker 36–42
  - running local single-node clusters with Minikube 37–38
- setting up aliases for kubectl 41–42
- setting up command-line completion for kubectl 41–42
- in kubeconfig files 536
- Kubernetes, architecture of 18–19
- limiting service disruption during scale-down of 454–456
- listing 538
- listing job instances in 237–238
- listing nodes 40
- listing services available in 523
- local single-node, running with Minikube 37–38
- modifying 536
- multi-node with kubeadm 539–551
  - configuring masters 547–549
  - configuring worker nodes 549–550
  - setting up operating systems 539
  - setting up required packages 539
- overview of 39
- running Grafana in 433
- running InfluxDB in 433
- securing with RBAC 353–373
  - binding roles to service accounts 359–360
  - default ClusterRoleBindings 371–373
  - default ClusterRoles 371–373
  - granting authorization permissions 373
  - including service accounts from other namespaces 361
- RBAC authorization plugins 353–354
- RBAC resources 355–357

- clusters (*continued*)
   
    starting with Minikube 37–38
   
    testing services from within 124
   
    two-node, deploying pods
   
        in 468
   
    tying with user credentials 537
   
    using from local machines
   
        550–551
   
    using kubectl with
   
        multiple 534–538
   
        adding kube config
   
            entries 536–537
   
        configuring location of
   
            kubeconfig files 535
   
    contents of kubeconfig
   
        files 535–536
   
    deleting contexts 538
   
    listing contexts 538
   
    listing kube config
   
        entries 536–537
   
    modifying kube config
   
        entries 536–537
   
    switching between
   
        contexts 538
   
    switching between Minikube
   
        and GKE 534–535
   
*See also* ClusterRoleBindings; ClusterRoles; RoleBindings; Roles; cluster nodes
- CMD instruction 193
- CNI (Container Network Interface) 335, 338, 549
- collecting resource usages 430–432
- COMMAND column 334
- command-line arguments
   
    passing ConfigMap entries
   
        as 204–205
   
    passing to containers 192–196
   
command-line completion, for
   
    kubectl 41–42
- commands
   
    defining in Docker 193–195
   
    CMD instruction 193
   
    ENTRYPOINT instruction
   
        193
   
    making INTERVAL configurable
   
        in fortune images
   
        194–195
   
    shell forms vs. exec forms
   
        193–194
   
    overriding in Kubernetes
   
        195–196
   
    remotely executing, in running
   
        containers 124–126
   
communication
   
    between pods on different
   
        nodes 337–338
   
    between pods on same
   
        node 336–337
   
    of components 311
   
    with API servers 352–353
   
    with pods through API
   
        servers 295–297
   
completions property 114
- components
   
    add-ons 310
   
    communicating 311
   
    involved in controllers 330
   
    isolating with Linux container
   
        technologies 8
   
    of Control Plane 310
   
        making highly available
   
            342–345
   
        using leader-election in 344
   
    of Kubernetes 310–312
   
    running 311–312
   
    running with kubeadm 548–549
- ComponentStatus 311
- computational resources 404–436
   
    limiting resources available to
   
        containers 412–416
   
        exceeding limits 414–415
   
        limits as seen by applications
   
            in containers 415–416
   
        setting hard limits for
   
            resources containers can
   
            use 412–413
   
    limiting total resources available
   
        in namespaces 425–429
   
    limiting objects that can be
   
        created 427–428
- ResourceQuota
   
    resources 425–427
   
    specifying quotas for persistent storage 427
   
    specifying quotas for specific pod states 429
   
    specifying quotas for specific QoS classes 429
- monitoring pod resource
   
    usage 430–434
   
    analyzing historical resource
   
        consumption
   
        statistics 432–434
   
    collecting resource usages 430–432
   
    retrieving resource usages 430–432
   
    storing historical resource
   
        consumption
   
        statistics 432–434
- pod QoS classes 417–421
   
    defining QoS classes for
   
        pods 417–419
   
    killing processes 420–421
- requesting resources for pod
   
        containers 405–412
   
    creating pods with resource requests 405–406
   
    defining custom resources 411–412
   
    effect of CPU requests on
   
        CPU time sharing 411
   
    effect of resource requests on
   
        scheduling 406–410
   
    requesting custom resources 411–412
   
setting default limits for pods
   
    per namespace 421–425
   
applying default resource limits 424–425
   
creating LimitRange objects 422–423
   
enforcing limits 423–424
   
LimitRange resources 421–422
- conditions, using multiple in label selectors 72
- config, updating without restarting application 211–213
   
    editing ConfigMap 212
   
    signaling Nginx to reload config 212
   
    updating ConfigMap 213
   
    updating files automatically 212–213
- config-file.conf file 201
- CONFIG\_FOO-BAR variable 204
- configMap volume
   
    examining mounted contents 209
   
    exposing ConfigMap entries as files 205–211
   
    setting file permissions for files in 211
- ConfigMaps
   
    creating 199–201, 206–207
   
    combining options 201
   
    entries from contents of files 201
   
    from files in directories 201
   
    using kubectl create ConfigMap command 200–201
- decoupling configurations with 198–213
- editing 212
   
    exposing entries as files 205–211
   
    examining mounted config-Map volume contents 209
   
    mounting directory hiding existing files 210

- ConfigMaps (*continued*)**
- setting file permissions for files 211
  - verifying Nginx uses mounted config file 208
  - exposing entries in volume 209–210
  - mounting entries as files 210–211
  - non-existing, referencing in pods 203
  - overview 198
  - passing entries 202–205
  - updating 213
  - using entries in volume 207–208
  - versus Secrets 217–218
- configurations, decoupling with ConfigMap
- creating ConfigMaps 200–201
  - passing ConfigMap entries 202–205
  - updating application config without restarting application 211–213
  - using configMap volume to expose ConfigMap entries as files 205–211
- configuring
- allowed capabilities 394–395
    - adding capabilities to all containers 395
    - dropping capabilities from containers 395
    - specifying which capabilities can be added to containers 394
  - container security contexts 380–389
    - adding individual kernel capabilities to containers 384–385
    - dropping capabilities from containers 385–386
    - preventing containers from running as root 382
    - preventing processes from writing to container filesystems 386–387
    - running containers as specific user 381–382
    - running pods in privileged mode 382–384
    - running pods without specifying security contexts 381
    - sharing volumes when containers run as different users 387–389
- containerized applications 191–192
- deadlines for rollouts 278
- default capabilities 394–395
- adding capabilities to all containers 395
  - dropping capabilities from containers 395
  - specifying which capabilities can be added to containers 394
- disallowed capabilities 394–395
- adding capabilities to all containers 395
  - dropping capabilities from containers 395
  - specifying which capabilities can be added to containers 394
- host in Ingress pointing to Ingress IP address 145
- Ingress, to handle TLS traffic 147–149
- INTERVAL in fortune images 194–195
- Job templates 117
- Kubernetes to use rkt 552
- location of kubeconfig files 535
- masters with kubeadm 547–549
  - running components with kubeadm 548–549
  - running kubeadm init to initialize masters 547–548
- name resolution for hosts 546–547
- network adapters for VMs 540
- pod rescheduling after node failures 462
- properties of liveness probes 88–89
- resource requests automatically 451
- schedule 117
- service endpoints
- manually 132–134
  - creating endpoints resource for services without selectors 133–134
  - creating services without selectors 132–133
- session affinity on services 126
- tab completion for kubectl 41–42
- worker nodes with kubeadm 549–550
- connections
- external 141–142
  - preventing breakage when pods shut down 493–497
- sequence of events at pod deletion 493–495
- troubleshooting 495–496
- preventing breakage when pods start up 492–493
- signaling when pods ready to accept 149–153
- to API servers 503
- to backend services 502
- to services living outside cluster 131–134
  - creating alias for external services 134
  - service endpoints 131–134
- to services through FQDN 130
- to services through load balancers 139–141
- container images
- building 29–32
    - image layers 30–31
    - overview 30
    - with Dockerfile vs. manually 31–32
  - creating Dockerfile for 29
  - creating Node.js applications 28–29
- in Docker container
- platform 15
  - pushing image to image registry 35–36
  - pushing images to Docker Hub 36
  - running images on different machines 36
  - tagging images under additional tags 35
- removing containers 34–35
- running 32–33
  - accessing applications 32
  - listing all running containers 32
  - obtaining information about containers 33
- stopping containers 34–35
- versioning 28
- viewing environment of running containers 33–34
- isolating filesystems 34
- processes running in host operating system 34
- running shells inside existing 33
- with out-of-range user IDs 393
- Container Network Interface. *See CNI*
- container networking interface. *See Kubernetes-CNI*
- container ports, specifying 63–65

- container runtimes 552–555
  - replacing Docker with rkt 552–555
  - configuring Kubernetes to use rkt 552
  - using rkt with Minikube 553–555
- using through CRI 555
  - CRI-O Container Runtime 555
  - running applications in VMs instead of containers 555
- CONTAINER\_CPU\_REQUEST**  
\_MILLICORES variable 228
- ContainerCreating 486
- CONTAINER\_MEMORY\_LIMIT**  
\_KIBIBYTES variable 228
- container-runtime=rkt** option 552–553
- containers 7–16
  - adding capabilities to all 395
  - adding individual kernel capabilities to 384–385
  - comparing VMs to 8–10
  - configuring security contexts 380–389
    - preventing containers from running as root 382
    - running containers as specific user 381–382
  - running pods in privileged mode 382–384
  - running pods without specifying security contexts 381
- copying files to and from 500–501
- copying logs to and from 500–501
- determining QoS class of 418
- Docker container platform 12–15
  - building images 13
  - comparing VMs to 14–15
  - concepts 12–13
  - distributing images 13
  - image layers 15
  - portability limitations of container images 15
  - running images 13
- dropping capabilities from 385–386, 395
- existing, running shells inside 33
- exploring 33
- images
  - creating 290–291
  - listing 554–555
- Init containers, adding to pods 484–485
- instead of VMs, running applications in 555
- isolating filesystems 34
- limiting resource available to 412–416
- limits as seen by applications in 415–416
- Linux, isolating components with 8
- listing all 32
- locating 21
- making images 497
- mechanisms for isolation 11
- mounting local files into 503
- multiple vs. one with multiple processes 56–57
- obtaining information about 33 of pods
  - requesting resources for 405–412
  - resources requests for 411–412
  - running with kubelet 332
- organizing across pods 58–60
  - splitting into multiple pods for scaling 59
  - splitting multi-tier applications into multiple pods 59
- overview 8–12
  - isolating processes with Linux Namespaces 11
  - limiting resources available to process 11–12
- partial isolation between 57
- passing command-line arguments to 192–196
  - defining arguments in Docker 193–195
  - defining command in Docker 193–195
  - overriding arguments in Kubernetes 195–196
  - overriding command in Kubernetes 195–196
  - running fortune pods with custom interval 195–196
- passing ConfigMap entries to 202–203
- pods with multiple, determining QoS classes of 419
- post-start, using lifecycle hooks 486–487
- pre-stop
  - using lifecycle hooks 487–488
- using lifecycle hooks when application not receiving SIGTERM signal 488–489
- preventing processes from writing to filesystems 386–387
- processes running in host operating system 34
- remotely executing commands in 124–126
- removing 34–35
- rkt container platform, as alternative to Docker 15–16
- running 20–21
  - effect of application descriptions on 19–20
  - inspecting in Minikube VM 553–554
  - viewing environment of 33–34
- running applications inside
  - during development 503
  - running shells in 130–131
- seeing all node CPU cores 416
- seeing node memory 415–416
- setting environment variables for 196–198
- configuring INTERVAL in fortune images through environment variables 197
- disadvantages of hardcoding environment variables 198
- referring to environment variables in variable values 198
- setting hard limits for resources used by 412–413
- creating pods with resource limits 412–413
- overcommitting limits 413
- setting up networks 550
- sharing data between with volumes 163–169
  - using emptyDir volume 163–166
  - using Git repository as starting point for volume 166–169
- sharing IP 57
- sharing port space 57
- sharing volumes when running as different users 387–389
- specifying environment variables in definitions 197
- specifying name when retrieving logs of multi-container pods 66

containers (*continued*)  
 specifying which capabilities can be added to 394  
 stopping 34–35  
 targeting 489  
 using Secrets to pass sensitive data to 213–223  
 ConfigMaps versus Secrets 217–218  
 creating Secrets 216  
 default token Secrets 214–215  
 image pull Secrets 222–223  
 overview of Secrets 214  
 using Secrets in pods 218–222  
 using volumes to preserve data across restarts 480–482  
 when to use multiple in pod 59–60  
 with same QoS classes, handling 420–421  
*See also* container images; sidecar containers  
`-containers` option 432  
 containers, Docker-based 13  
 ContentAgent container 162  
 contexts  
   current, in kubeconfig files 536  
   deleting 538  
   in kubeconfig files 536  
   listing 538  
   switching between 538  
   using kubectl with 537–538  
*See also* security contexts  
 continuous delivery 6–7  
   benefits of 7  
   role of developers in 7  
   role of sysadmins in 7  
 Continuous Integration and Continuous Delivery. *See* CI/CD Control Plane 18–19  
   components of 310, 344  
   making components highly available 342–345  
   ensuring high availability of controllers 343–344  
   ensuring high availability of Scheduler 343–344  
   running etcd clusters 342–343  
   running multiple instances of API servers 343  
   using leader-election in Control Plane components 344  
 Controller Manager, Control Plane component 19  
 controllers 145, 321–326, 330–333  
   chain of events 331–332

Deployment controller creates ReplicaSet 331  
 kubelet runs pod containers 332  
 ReplicaSet controller creates pods 332  
 Scheduler assigns node to newly created pods 332  
 components involved in 330  
 custom, automating custom resources with 513–517  
 DaemonSet 324  
 Deployment controllers 324  
 Endpoints controllers 325  
 ensuring high availability of 343–344  
 Job controllers 324  
 Namespace controllers 325  
 Node controllers 324  
 observing cluster events 332–333  
 overview 322, 326  
 PersistentVolume controllers 325–326  
 removing pods from 100  
 ReplicaSet 324  
 replication managers 323–324  
 running as pods 515–516  
 Service controllers 324  
 StatefulSet controllers 324  
 Website 514–515  
 copies, scaling number of 21  
 copying files to and from containers 500–501  
 images to Minikube VM directly 504  
 logs to and from containers 500–501  
 CPUs (central processing units)  
   creating Horizontal pod Autoscaler based on 442–443  
   creating ResourceQuota resources for 425–426  
   displaying usage  
    for cluster nodes 431  
    for pods 431–432  
   nodes, seen by containers 416  
   scaling based on 441–447  
    automatic rescale events 444–445  
    creating Horizontal pod Autoscaler based on CPU usage 442–443  
   maximum rate of scaling 447  
   modifying target metric values on existing HPA objects 447  
   triggering scale-ups 445–446  
   using Autoscaler to scale up Deployments 446–447  
   time sharing 411  
 CrashLoopBackOff 414, 499  
 CRD (CustomResourceDefinitions) 509–513  
 creating CRD objects 510–511  
 creating instances of custom resources 511–512  
 deleting instances of custom objects 512–513  
 examples of 509–510  
 retrieving instances of custom resources 512  
 creation\_method label 72  
 credentials. *See* user credentials  
 CRI (Container Runtime Interface), using container runtimes through 555  
 CronJob resources, creating 116–117  
 CRUD (Create, Read, Update, Delete) 316  
 CSR (CertificateSigningRequest) 148  
 curl command 124–126, 130–131, 167  
 curl pods, running with additional ambassador containers 244–245  
 CURL\_CA\_BUNDLE variable 241  
 CURRENT column 49  
 custom intervals, running fortune pods with 195–196  
 custom-namespace.yaml file 78

---

## D

`-d` flag 32  
 DaemonSets 324, 328, 550, 559  
   creating 111  
   creating YAML definition 110  
   examples of 109  
   running one pod on each node with 108–112  
   running pods on certain nodes with 109–112  
   adding required label to nodes 111  
   removing required label from nodes 111–112  
   running pods on every node with 109  
 dashboard 52–53  
   accessing when running in managed GKE 52  
   accessing when using Minikube 53

data  
 binary, using Secrets for 217  
 passing to containers using  
 Secrets 213–223  
 ConfigMaps versus  
 Secrets 217–218  
 creating Secrets 216  
 default token Secrets  
 214–215  
 image pull Secrets 222–223  
 overview of Secrets 214  
 using Secrets in pods  
 218–222  
 persisted by previous pod  
 173–174  
 using volumes to preserve  
 across container  
 restarts 480–482  
 writing to persistent storage by  
 adding documents to Mon-  
 goDB database 173  
 written to disks,  
 disappearing 480  
 data stores, clustered 303–304  
 deadlines, configuring for  
 rollouts 278  
 declarative scaling 103  
 decoupling  
 configurations with  
 ConfigMap 198–213  
 ConfigMaps 198–199  
 creating ConfigMaps  
 200–201  
 passing all entries of Config-  
 Map as environment  
 variables at once 204  
 passing ConfigMap entries as  
 command-line  
 arguments 204–205  
 passing ConfigMap entries to  
 containers as environ-  
 ment variables 202–203  
 updating application config  
 without restarting  
 application 211, 213  
 using configMap volume to  
 expose ConfigMap  
 entries as files 205, 211  
 pods from underlying storage  
 technologies 176–184  
 benefits of using claims 182  
 PersistentVolumeClaims  
 176–177, 179–181  
 PersistentVolumes 176–184  
 default capabilities,  
 configuring 394–395, 403  
 adding capabilities to all  
 containers 395

dropping capabilities from  
 container 395  
 specifying which capabilities  
 can be added to  
 container 394  
 default policy 397  
 default token Secret 214–215  
 defaultAddCapabilities 394  
 defaultMode property 232  
 Deis Helm package manager  
 530–533  
 DELETED watch event 515  
 deleting  
 clusters 538  
 contexts 538  
 instances of custom  
 objects 512–513  
 PersistentVolumeClaims 288  
 Pet pods 297–298  
 pods 80–82, 252–253, 306  
 by deleting whole  
 namespaces 80–81  
 by name 80  
 forcibly 307  
 in namespace while keeping  
 namespace 81–82  
 manually 306–307  
 sequence of events 493–495  
 using label selectors 80  
 pods marked for 307  
 ReplicationControllers 103–104  
 resources in namespace 82  
 deletionTimestamp field 489, 495  
 delivery. *See* continuous delivery  
 dependencies  
 inter-pod 485  
 overview 5  
 deploying  
 add-ons 328–329  
 applications through  
 StatefulSets 291–295  
 creating governing  
 services 292–294  
 creating persistent  
 volumes 291–292  
 creating StatefulSets 294  
 examining PersistentVolume-  
 Claims 295  
 examining stateful pods  
 294–295  
 applications, simplifying 21–22  
 microservices 5  
 newly built images automatically  
 with DeploymentConfigs  
 529–530  
 Node.js applications 42–44  
 behind the scenes 44  
 listing pods 43–44

pods  
 in same availability  
 zone 471–472  
 co-locating pods in same  
 availability zone 471  
 topologyKey 471–472  
 in same geographical  
 regions 471–472  
 co-locating pods in  
 same geographical  
 region 471  
 topologyKey 471–472  
 in same rack 471–472  
 in two-node clusters 468  
 on same nodes, with  
 inter-pod affinity  
 468–471  
 with container images  
 with out-of-range user  
 IDs 393  
 with pod affinity 470  
 with runAsUser outside of  
 policy ranges 393  
 privileged containers, creating  
 PodSecurityPolicy to  
 allow 396–397  
 resources through Helm  
 531–533  
 versions 269  
 Deployment controllers  
 creating ReplicaSet controller  
 with 331  
 overview 324  
 Deployment resource  
 benefits of 267–268  
 creating 262–264  
 manifest, creating 262  
 rolling back to specific  
 revision 270  
 strategies 264–265  
 updating 264–268  
 slowing down rolling  
 updates 265  
 triggering rolling  
 updates 265–267  
 using for updating applications  
 declaratively 261–278  
 blocking rollouts of bad  
 versions 274–278  
 controlling rate of  
 rollout 271–273  
 pausing rollout process  
 273–274  
 rolling back  
 deployments 268–270  
 DeploymentConfigs, deploying  
 newly built images automati-  
 cally with 529–530

- deployments 250–279  
 displaying rollout history of 270  
 performing automatic rolling updates 254–261  
 obsolescence of kubectl rolling-update 260–261  
 performing rolling updates with kubectl 256–260  
 running initial version of applications 254–255  
 rolling back 268–270  
 creating application versions 268  
 deploying versions 269  
 rolling back to specific Deployment revision 270  
 undoing rollouts 269  
 rollouts, displaying status of 263  
 updating applications running in pods 251–253  
 deleting old pods 252–253  
 replacing old pods 252  
 spinning up new pods 252–253  
 updating with kubectl apply 276–277  
 using anti-affinity with pods of same 475  
 using Autoscaler to scale up 446–447  
 deprovisioning, instances 526  
 describe command 409  
 descriptors  
 JSON, creating pods from 61–67  
 YAML  
 creating for pods 63–65  
 creating pods from 61–67  
 of existing pods 61–63  
 DESIRED column 49  
 developers, role in continuous delivery 7  
 DevOps 7  
 directories  
 mounting hides existing files 210  
 using multiple in same volume 282  
 directory traversal attack 353  
 disabling, firewalls 544  
 disallowed capabilities, configuring 394–395  
 adding capabilities to all containers 395  
 dropping capabilities from container 395  
 specifying which capabilities can be added to container 394  
 disk=ssd label 110  
 disks, data written to  
 disappearing 480  
 disruptions, of services 454–456  
 distributing Docker images 13  
 DNS (Domain Name System) 300  
 discovering pods through 155–156  
 discovering services through 129  
 implementing peer discovery through 301–302  
 records returned for headless service 155–156  
 servers 329  
 dnsPolicy property 129  
 Docker container platform 25–54  
 clusters in 36–42  
 running local single-node clusters with Minikube 37–38  
 setting up aliases for kubectl 41–42  
 setting up command-line completion for kubectl 41–42  
 using hosted clusters with GKE 38–41  
 comparing VMs to 14–15  
 concepts 12–13  
 container images 26–36  
 building 29–32  
 creating Dockerfile for 29  
 creating Node.js applications 28–29  
 pushing images to image registry 35–36  
 removing containers 34–35  
 running 32–33  
 stopping containers 34–35  
 viewing environment of running containers 33–34  
 defining arguments in 193–195  
 CMD instruction 193  
 ENTRYPOINT instruction 193  
 making INTERVAL configurable in fortune images 194–195  
 shell forms vs. exec forms 193–194  
 defining commands in 193–195  
 CMD instruction 193  
 ENTRYPOINT instruction 193  
 making INTERVAL configurable in fortune images 194–195  
 shell forms vs. exec forms 193–194  
 images  
 building 13  
 distributing 13  
 layers 15  
 portability limitations of 15  
 running 13  
 installing 26–28  
 registries, creating Secrets for authenticating with 223  
 rkt container platform as alternative to 15–16  
 running first application on Kubernetes  
 accessing web applications 45–47  
 deploying Node.js applications 42–44  
 examining which nodes application is running on 51–52  
 horizontally scaling applications 48–50  
 logical parts of systems 47–48  
 using Kubernetes dashboard 52–53  
 running Hello World container 26–28  
 behind the scenes 27  
 running other images 27  
 versioning container images 28  
 Docker Hub  
 pushing images to 36  
 using private image repositories on 222  
 Docker Hub ID 35  
 docker images command 35  
 Docker platform  
 replacing with rkt 552–555  
 configuring Kubernetes to use rkt 552  
 using rkt with Minikube 553–555  
 using daemon inside Minikube VM 503–504  
 docker ps command 548  
 docker pull command 44  
 Docker Registry 13  
 docker run command 26  
 Docker tool, installing 544–545  
 disabling firewalls 544  
 disabling SELinux 544  
 enabling net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables Kernel options 545  
 Dockerfile  
 building images with 31–32  
 creating for container images 29

DOCKER\_HOST variable 32, 504  
 Docker-registry Secrets, using  
   in pod definitions 223  
 documents, writing data to  
   persistent storage by  
   adding to MongoDB  
   database 173  
 DoesNotExist operator 107  
 Domain Name System. *See* DNS  
 double dash character 125  
 downloading client binaries 39  
 downtime, reducing by  
   running multiple  
   instances 341  
 Downward API  
   benefits of using 233  
   passing metadata through  
     226–233  
   available metadata 226–227  
   exposing metadata through  
     environment  
       variables 227–230  
     passing metadata through  
       files in downwardAPI  
       volume 230–233  
 downwardAPI volume, passing  
   metadata through files  
   in 163, 230–233  
 benefits of using Downward  
   API 233  
 referring to container-level  
   metadata in volume  
   specification 233  
 updating annotations 232  
 updating labels 232  
 downwardAPI.items attribute 231  
 DSL (Domain-Specific-  
   Language) 248  
 dynamic provisioning  
   of PersistentVolumes  
     184–189  
   defining available storage  
     types through Storage-  
       Class resources 185  
   requesting storage class in  
     PersistentVolume-  
       Claims 185–187  
   without specifying storage  
     class 187–189  
 without specifying storage class  
   creating PersistentVolume-  
     Claims 188–189  
   examining default storage  
     classes 188  
   listing storage classes 187–188  
 PersistentVolumeClaims  
   bound to pre-provisioned  
     Persistent-Volumes 189

**E**


---

echo command 27  
 edit ClusterRole, allowing modification of resources with 372  
 editing  
   ConfigMap 212  
   definitions, scaling Replication-  
     Controller by 102–103  
 EDITOR variable 102  
 EFK Stack 501  
 elastic block store volume, AWS 174  
 ELK Stack 501  
 emptyDir volume 162–166  
   creating pods 164–165  
   seeing pods in action 165  
   specifying medium for 166  
   using in pods 163–164  
 –enable-swagger-ui=true  
   option 248  
 Endpoints controllers 325  
 endpoints resources, creating for  
   services without selectors  
     133–134  
 ENTRYPOINT instruction 193  
 env command 128  
 env label 72  
 env=debug label 70  
 env=devel label 105  
 env=prod label 70  
 env=production label 105  
 envFrom attribute 204  
 environment variables  
   configuring INTERVAL in  
     fortune images through  
       197–198  
   disadvantages of  
     hardcoding 198  
 discovering services  
   through 128–129  
 exposing metadata  
   through 227–230  
 exposing Secrets entries  
   through 221–222  
 passing all ConfigMap entries  
   as 204  
 passing ConfigMap entries to  
   containers as 202–203  
 referring to in variable  
   values 198  
 setting for containers 196, 198  
 specifying in container  
   definitions 197  
 ephemeral pods 121  
 etcd cluster 518  
 etcd stores 312–316  
   ensuring consistency of stored  
     objects 314–315  
 ensuring consistency when  
   clustered 315  
 ensuring validity of stored  
   objects 314–315  
 number of instances 316  
 running clusters 342–343  
 storing resources in 313–314  
 etcd, Control Plane component 19  
 exec forms, versus shell  
   forms 193–194  
 Exec probe 86, 90, 150  
 Exists operator 107, 461  
 explain command 175  
 exposing  
   multiple ports in same  
     service 126–127  
   multiple services through same  
     Ingress 146–147  
   mapping different services to  
     different hosts 147  
   mapping different services to  
     different paths of same  
       host 146  
 services externally through  
   Ingress resources 142–149  
   benefits of using 142–143  
   configuring Ingress to handle  
     TLS traffic 147–149  
   creating Ingress  
     resources 144  
   using Ingress controllers  
     143–144  
 services externally using  
   Routes 530  
 services to external clients  
   134–142  
   external connections 141–142  
   through external load  
     balancers 138–141  
   using NodePort  
     services 135–138  
 external clients  
   allowing NodePort services  
     access to 137–138  
 exposing services to 134–142  
   external connections  
     141–142  
   through external load  
     balancers 138–141  
   using NodePort  
     services 135–138  
 external services, creating alias  
   for 134  
 ExternalIP 138  
 EXTERNAL-IP column 136  
 ExternalName services,  
   creating 134  
 external-traffic annotation 141

**F**

FABRIC8 Java client, interacting with 247–248  
 FailedPostStartHook 487  
 FailedPreStopHook 488  
 FallbackToLogsOnError 500  
 features. *See* security-related features  
 federation. *See* Cluster Federation files  
     copying to and from containers 500–501  
     creating ConfigMap entries from contents of 201  
     in configMap volumes, setting file permissions for 211  
     in directories, creating ConfigMap from 201  
     in downwardAPI volume, passing metadata through 230–233  
     in sync with gitRepo volume 168  
     mounted config, verifying Nginx using 208  
     mounting 503  
     mounting ConfigMap entries as 210–211  
     mounting directory hiding existing 210  
     on worker node filesystems, accessing 169–170  
     updating automatically 212–213  
     using configMap volume to expose ConfigMap entries as 205, 211  
 filesystems  
     of containers  
         isolating 34  
         preventing processes from writing to 386–387  
     worker node, accessing files on 169–170  
 firewalls  
     changing rules to let external clients access NodePort services 137–138  
     disabling 544  
 Flannel 312  
 flat networks, inter-pod 58  
 flexVolume volume 163  
 flocker volume 163  
 foo namespace 358  
 foo.default.svc.cluster.local domain 286  
 FOO\_SECRET variable 221  
 –force option 490

**fortune**

    images, configuring INTERVAL variables in 194–195  
     pods, running with custom intervals 195–196  
 fortune command 163, 165  
 fortune images, INTERVAL variables in 197  
 fortune-config config map, modifying to enable HTTPS 218–219  
 fortune-https directory 216  
 fortune-https Secret, mounting in pods 219–220  
 fortuneloop container 209  
 fortuneloop.sh script 164  
 fortune-pod.yaml file 164  
 forwarding, local network port to port in pod 67  
 FQDN (fully qualified domain name) 129–130, 134  
 FROM scratch directive 497  
 –from-file argument 201  
 fsGroup policies 392–394  
     deploying pod with container image with an out-of-range user ID 393  
     using MustRunAs rule 392–393  
 fsGroup property 388

**G**


---

gateways 58  
 GCE (Google Compute Engine) 185, 454  
 creating persistent disks 171–172  
 using in pod volumes 171–174  
     creating GCE persistent disks 171–172  
 creating pods using gcePersistentDisk volumes 172  
 re-creating pods 173–174  
 verifying pod can read data persisted by previous pod 173–174  
 writing data to persistent storage by adding documents to MongoDB database 173  
 gcePersistentDisk volumes  
     creating pods 172  
     overview 162, 190  
 gcloud command 39, 171  
 gcloud compute ssh command 97  
 –generator flag 42  
 geographical regions  
     co-locating pods in same 471  
     deploying pods in same 471–472  
 Git repositories  
     as starting point for volumes 166–169  
     files in sync with gitRepo volume 168  
     gitRepo volume 169  
     sidecar containers 168  
 cloned, running web server pod serving files from 167  
 private, using gitRepo volume with 168  
 Git sync container 168  
 gitRepo field 510, 517  
 gitRepo volumes  
     files in sync with 168  
     overview 169  
     using with private Git repositories 168  
 GKE (Google Container Engine) 36, 454  
 accessing dashboard when running in 52  
 and Minikube, switching between 534–535  
 switching from Minikube to 534  
 switching to Minikube from 534  
 using hosted clusters with 38–41  
 creating clusters with three nodes 39  
 downloading client binaries 39  
 getting overview of clusters 39  
 listing cluster nodes 40  
 retrieving additional details of objects 41  
 setting up Google Cloud projects 39  
 glusterfs volume 163  
 Google Cloud, setting up projects 39  
 Google Compute Engine. *See* GCE  
 Google Container Registry 35  
 governing services  
     creating 292–294  
     overview 285–287  
 gpu=true label 75, 464–465  
 Grafana suite  
     analyzing resource usage with 433–434  
     overview 432  
     running in clusters 433  
 group ID (gid) 381  
 grouping resources, with namespaces 76–80

groups 347–348  
assigning different PodSecurityPolicies to 396–399  
in Red Hat OpenShift Container platform 528  
Guaranteed class, assigning pods to 417–418  
guarantees, StatefulSets 289–290  
at-most-one semantics 290  
implications of stable identity 289–290  
implications of stable storage 289–290

## H

---

hardcoding environment variables, disadvantages of 198  
hardware, improving utilization of 22  
headless services  
creating 154–155  
DNS returned for 155–156  
using for discovering individual pods 154–156  
discovering all pods 156  
discovering pods through DNS 155–156  
health checking 22–23  
health HTTP endpoint 89  
Heapster aggregator, enabling 431  
Hello World container 26–28  
behind the scenes 27  
running other images 27  
versioning container images 28  
Helm. *See* Deis Helm package manager  
hooks. *See* lifecycle hooks  
hops. *See* network hops  
horizontal autoscaling, of pods 438–451  
autoscaling process 438–441  
metrics appropriate for autoscaling 450  
scaling  
down to zero replicas 450–451  
on CPU utilization 441–447  
on memory consumption 448  
on other and custom metrics 448–450  
Horizontal pod Autoscaler, creating based on CPU usage 442–443  
horizontal scaling, of cluster nodes 452–456

Cluster Autoscaler 452–453  
enabling Cluster Autoscaler 454  
limiting service disruption during cluster scale-down 454–456  
Host header 147  
host networks, namespaces 377–379  
host nodes, using namespaces in pods 376–380  
host operating systems, container processes running in 34  
host ports, binding to 377–379  
hostIPC property 380  
hostnames  
changing on cloned VMs 546  
expecting changes to 480  
hostNetwork property 376  
hostPath volumes 162, 169–170  
hostPort property 377  
hosts  
configuring name resolution for 546–547  
mapping different services to 147  
mapping different services to paths of same 146  
HPA (HorizontalPodAutoscaler)  
modifying target metric values on existing objects 447  
overview 443  
html-generator container 165  
HTTP GET probe 85, 150  
HTTP-based liveness probes, creating 86–87  
httpGet liveness probe 87  
HTTPS (Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure) 218–219  
hybrid cloud 556  
hypervisors 9

---

I

identities  
network, providing 285–287  
governing service, overview 285–287  
scaling StatefulSets 287  
of API servers, verifying 240–241  
providing stable for pods 282–284  
stable, implications of 289–290  
if statement 268  
IgnoredDuringExecution 464

image layers 15, 30–31  
image pull Secrets 222–223, 351  
creating Secrets for authenticating with Docker registries 223  
specifying on every pod 223  
using Docker-registry Secrets in pod definitions 223  
using private image repositories on Docker Hub 222  
image registry  
pushing images to 35–36  
running images on different machines 36  
tagging images under additional tags 35  
pushing images to Docker Hub 36  
imagePullPolicy  
overview 256, 317  
using 497–498  
imagePullSecrets field 222  
images  
building  
from source using BuildConfigs 529  
locally 504  
using Docker daemon inside Minikube VM 503–504  
copying to Minikube VM directly 504  
deploying automatically with DeploymentConfigs 529–530  
Docker  
building 13  
distributing 13  
portability limitations of 15  
running 13  
fortune  
configuring INTERVAL variables in 194–195  
configuring INTERVAL variables through environment variables 197  
of containers  
creating 290–291, 497  
listing 554–555  
pushing to Docker Hub 36  
pushing to image registry 35–36  
running on different machines 36  
tagging 35, 497–498  
*See also* container images  
ImageStream 529  
In operator 107

InfluxDB database  
  overview 432  
  running in clusters 433

Ingress resource 135  
  accessing pods through 145  
  accessing services through 145  
  benefits of using 142–143  
  configuring to handle TLS  
    traffic 147–149  
  creating 144  
  creating TLS certificate  
    for 147–149  
  exposing multiple services  
    through 146–147  
  mapping different services to  
    different hosts 147  
  mapping different services to  
    different paths of same  
    host 146  
  exposing services externally  
    through 142–149  
  obtaining IP address of 145  
  overview 145

Ingresses 559

Init containers, adding to  
  pods 484–485

initialDelaySeconds property 88

initializing masters with kubeadm  
  init 547–548

initiating install of OS 542

inspecting node capacity 407–408

installing  
  Docker 544–545  
    disabling firewalls 544  
    disabling SELinux 544  
    enabling net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables Kernel  
      options 545  
  kubeadm 544–545  
  kubectl 38, 544–545  
  Kubelet 544–545  
  Kubernetes 544–545  
    adding Kubernetes yum  
      repo 544  
    disabling firewalls 544  
    disabling SELinux 544  
    enabling net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables Kernel  
      option 545  
  Kubernetes-CNI 544–545

Minikube 37

OS 541–544  
  initiating 542  
  running install 543–544  
  selecting start-up disks 541  
  setting installation  
    options 542–543

Internet protocol. *See* IP

inter-pod affinity, to deploy pods  
  on same nodes 468–471

deploying pods with pod  
  affinity 470

specifying pod affinity in pod  
  definitions 469

using pod affinity rules with  
  Scheduler 470–471

INTERVAL variables, configuring  
  in fortune images  
  overview 194–195  
  through environment  
    variables 197

intervals, running fortune pods  
  with 195–196

IP (Internet protocol)  
  containers sharing 57  
  external, accessing services  
    through 46–47  
  Ingress address 145  
  local, expecting changes to 480  
  of client, non-preservation of 142  
  service, pinging 131

IP addresses 121

IPC (Inter-Process Communication)  
  overview 11, 56, 376  
  using namespaces 379–380

iptables rules 327–328, 339–340,  
  345, 492, 494–495

iscsi volume 163

isolating  
  components with Linux container  
    technologies 8  
  container filesystems 34  
  containers, mechanisms for 11  
  networks between Kubernetes  
    namespaces 401–402  
  partially between containers of  
    same pod 57  
  pod networks 399–402  
  processes with Linux  
    Namespaces 11

-it option 33

items attribute 138

**J**

Job controllers 324

Job resources 112  
  configuring templates 117  
  running multiple pod instances  
    in 114–116  
    running Job pods in  
      parallel 115  
    running Job pods  
      sequentially 115  
  scaling Job 116  
  running on pods 114

jobs  
  defining 113–114  
  listing instances in  
    clusters 237–238  
  retrieving instances by  
    name 238  
  scheduling 116–118  
    creating CronJob 116–117  
  overview 117

JSON format  
  creating pods from descriptors  
    sending requests to pods  
      66–67  
  using kubectl create to create  
    pods 65  
  viewing application logs  
      65–66  
  manifests, writing 505–506

JSONPath 138

**K**


---

keep-alive connections 140

kernel capabilities, adding to  
  containers 384–385

Kernels, enabling  
  net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables  
    option 545

key files, from Secrets 221

key=value format 232

killing applications 479–482  
  expecting data written to disk to  
    disappear 480  
  expecting hostnames to  
    change 480  
  expecting local IP to  
    change 480  
  using volumes to preserve data  
    across container  
    restarts 480–482

Ksonnet, as alternative to writing  
  JSON manifests 505–506

kube config  
  adding entries 536–537  
    adding clusters 536  
    adding user credentials  
      536–537  
  tying clusters and user credentials  
    together 537

listing entries 536–537  
  adding clusters 536  
  adding user credentials  
    536–537

modifying clusters 536  
  modifying user  
    credentials 536–537

tying clusters and user credentials  
  together 537

- kube config (*continued*)  
modifying entries 536–537  
modifying clusters 536  
modifying user credentials 536–537  
tying clusters and user credentials together 537
- kubeadm init command 549
- kubeadm join command 549
- kubeadm tool  
configuring masters with 547–549  
configuring worker nodes with 549–550  
installing 544–545  
running components with 548–549  
listing nodes 548–549  
listing pods 548  
running kubectl on masters 548  
running init to initialize masters 547–548  
setting up multi-node clusters with 539–551  
setting up operating systems 539  
setting up required packages 539  
using clusters from local machines 550–551
- kubeconfig files  
configuring location of 535  
contents of 535–536
- KUBECONFIG variable 535
- kubectl  
aliases for 41–42  
command-line completion 41–42  
configuring tab completion for 41–42  
confirming cluster communicating with 38  
creating additional users for 398  
installing 38  
logs, retrieving with pod logs 66  
performing rolling updates with 256–260  
replacing old pods with new pods by scaling two ReplicationControllers 259–260  
steps performed before rolling update commences 258–259
- proxy  
accessing API servers through 234–235
- exploring Kubernetes API through 235–236
- using with different clusters 537–538
- using with different contexts 537–538
- using with different users 537–538
- using with multiple clusters 534–538  
adding kube config entries 536–537  
configuring location of kubeconfig files 535  
contents of kubeconfig files 535–536  
deleting clusters 538  
deleting contexts 538  
listing clusters 538  
listing contexts 538  
listing kube config entries 536–537  
modifying kube config entries 536–537  
switching between contexts 538  
switching between Minikube and GKE 534–535
- using with multiple Namespaces 535–538  
adding kube config entries 536–537  
configuring location of kubeconfig files 535  
contents of kubeconfig files 535–536  
deleting clusters 538  
deleting contexts 538  
listing clusters 538  
listing contexts 538  
listing kube config entries 536–537  
modifying kube config entries 536–537  
switching between contexts 538
- kubectl annotate command 76
- kubectl apply command 266, 276–277, 504
- kubectl autoscale command 443
- kubectl cluster-info command 38, 52
- kubectl command-line tool 39
- kubectl cp command 500
- kubectl create command 65, 94, 114, 178, 255
- kubectl create configmap command 200–201
- kubectl create deployment command 519
- kubectl create -f command 65
- kubectl create namespace command 78–79
- kubectl create role command 359
- kubectl create secret command 519
- kubectl delete command 104
- kubectl describe command 41, 52, 76, 95, 131, 408, 444, 512, 549, 553
- kubectl describe node command 409
- kubectl describe pod command 215, 487, 499
- kubectl edit command 151
- kubectl edit method 266
- kubectl exec command 124, 128, 130, 152, 446
- kubectl explain command 64, 505
- kubectl expose command 66, 123
- kubectl get command 48, 95
- kubectl get events 332
- kubectl get pods command 51, 124
- kubectl get serviceclasses command 523
- kubectl get services command 46
- kubectl get svc command 129
- kubectl logs command 87, 485, 502
- kubectl patch method 266
- kubectl port-forward command 67
- kubectl proxy command 244, 503
- kubectl proxy process 514–515
- kubectl replace method 266
- kubectl rolling-update command 257, 260–261, 264
- kubectl rollout status command 271
- kubectl run command 61, 82
- kubectl scale command 102–103, 116
- kubectl set image command 265–266
- kubectl tool  
installing 544–545  
running on masters 548
- kube-dns 129
- KUBE\_EDITOR environment variable 102
- Kubelet node agent, installing 544–545
- kubelets 326–327  
overview 326  
running pod containers with 332  
running static pods without API servers 326–327

- kube-proxy 19, 312, 327, 330, 345  
 overview 339  
 using iptables 339–340  
 kube-public namespace 77  
 Kubernetes 16–24  
   architecture of 310–330  
     add-ons 328–330  
     API servers 316–319  
     clusters 18–19  
     components 310–312  
     components of Control Plane 310  
     components running on worker nodes 310  
     Controller 321–326  
     etcd 312–316  
     kubelet 326–327  
     Scheduler 319–321  
     Service Proxy 327–328  
   benefits of using 21–24  
   automatic scaling 23  
   health checking 22–23  
   improving hardware utilization 22  
   self-healing 22–23  
   simplifying application deployment 21–22  
   simplifying application development 23–24  
 dashboard 52–53  
   accessing when running in managed GKE 52  
   accessing when using Minikube 53  
 installing 544–545  
   adding Kubernetes yum repo 544  
   disabling firewalls 544  
   disabling SELinux 544  
   enabling net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables Kernel option 545  
 master, checking node status as seen by 305  
 origins of 16  
 overriding arguments in 195–196  
 overriding commands in 195–196  
 overview 16–18  
   focusing on core application features 17–18  
   improving resource utilization 18  
 running applications in 19–21  
   effect of application description on running containers 19–20  
 keeping containers running 20–21  
 locating containers 21  
 scaling number of copies 21 when indicated 2–7  
 continuous delivery 6–7  
 microservices vs. monolithic applications 3–6  
 providing consistent application environment 6  
 Kubernetes CNI (Container Networking Interface) 545  
 Kubernetes Control Plane 18  
 KUBERNETES\_SERVICE\_HOST variable 239  
 KUBERNETES\_SERVICE\_PORT variable 239  
 kube-scheduler resource 344  
 kube-system namespace 77, 312, 314, 344, 454, 548  
 kubia 42  
 kubia-2qneh 100  
 kubia-container 32–33  
 kubia-dmdck 100  
 kubia-gpu.yaml file 74  
 kubia-manual 63  
 kubia-rc.yaml file 93  
 KUBIA\_SERVICE\_HOST variable 129  
 KUBIA\_SERVICE\_PORT variable 129  
 kubia-svc.yaml file 123  
 kubia-website service 517
- 
- L**
- label selectors  
   changing for Replication Controller 100–101  
   deleting pods using 80  
   effect of changing 93  
   listing pods using 71–72  
   listing subsets of pods through 71–72  
   ReplicaSets 107  
   using multiple conditions in 72
- labels  
   adding to nodes 111  
   adding to pods managed by ReplicationControllers 99  
   categorizing worker nodes with 74  
   constraining pod scheduling with 73–75  
   categorizing worker nodes with labels 74  
   scheduling pods to specific nodes 74–75
- multi-dimensional vs. single-dimensional 498  
 of existing pods, modifying 70–71  
 of managed pods 99–100  
 organizing pods with 67, 71  
 overview 68–69  
 removing from nodes 111–112  
 specifying when creating pods 69–70  
 updating 232
- LAN (local area network) 58  
 latest tag 28  
 –leader-elect option 343  
 leader-election  
   for non-horizontally scalable applications 341  
   using in Control Plane components 344  
 LeastRequestedPriority 407  
 libraries  
   building with OpenAPI 248  
   building with Swagger 248  
   *See also* client libraries  
 lifecycles, of pods 479–491  
   adding lifecycle hooks 485–489  
 hooks  
   adding 485–489  
   targeting containers with 489  
   using post-start container 486–487  
   using pre-stop container 487–488  
   using pre-stop when application not receiving SIGTERM signal 488–489  
 killing applications 479–482  
 pod shutdowns 489–491  
 relocating applications 479–482  
 rescheduling dead pods 482–483  
 rescheduling partially dead pods 482–483  
 starting pods in specific order 483–485  
 limiting resources  
   available in namespaces 425–429  
   limiting objects that can be created 427–428  
   ResourceQuota  
     resources 425–427  
   specifying quotas for persistent storage 427  
   specifying quotas for specific pod states 429  
   specifying quotas for specific QoS classes 429

limiting resources (*continued*)  
 available to containers 412–416  
 exceeding limits 414–415  
 limits as seen by applications  
   in containers 415–416  
 setting hard limits for  
   resources containers can  
   use 412–413  
**LimitRange** objects, creating  
 422–423  
**limits**  
   as seen by applications in  
     containers 415–416  
   containers seeing all node  
     CPU cores 416  
   containers seeing node  
     memory 415–416  
   enforcing 423–424  
   exceeding 414–415  
   for pods per namespace, setting  
     defaults 421–425  
   overcommitting 413  
   setting for resources used by  
     containers 412–413  
*See also* resource limits  
**Linux Control Groups**  
 (cgroups) 11  
**Linux Namespaces** 11  
**Linux OS**  
 container technologies, isolating components with 8  
 Namespaces, isolating processes with 11  
listing  
 all running containers 32  
 cluster nodes 40  
 clusters 538  
 container images 554–555  
 contexts 538  
 job instances in clusters 237–238  
 kube config entries 536–537  
   adding clusters 536  
   adding user credentials 536–537  
   modifying clusters 536  
   modifying user credentials 536–537  
   tying clusters and user credentials together 537  
 nodes 548–549  
 PersistentVolumeClaims 180  
 PersistentVolumes 180–181  
 pods 43–44, 51, 71–72, 548  
 services 46  
 services available in clusters 523  
 storage classes 187–188  
 subsets through label  
   selectors 71–72

liveness probes 85–86  
 configuring properties of 88–89  
 creating 89–90  
   HTTP-based 86–87  
   implementing retry loops in 90  
   keeping probes light 90  
   what liveness probe should check 89–90  
 in action 87–88  
**load balancers**  
 connecting to services  
   through 139–141  
 external, exposing services  
   through 138–141  
**LoadBalancer** service  
 creating 139  
 overview 135, 530  
**local area network.** *See LAN*  
**local machines**, using clusters  
   from 550–551  
**LogRotator** container 162  
**logs**  
 centralized, using 501  
 copying to and from  
   containers 500–501  
 handling multi-line statements 502  
 kubectl, retrieving with pod logs 66  
 of applications 500–502  
 of multi-container pods, specifying container name when retrieving 66  
 pod, retrieving with kubectl logs 66  
*See also* application logs  
**logVol** 162  
**ls** command 151

---

**M**

**manifests**  
 Deployment resource, creating 262  
 JSON, writing 505–506  
 resources 504–505  
 YAML, writing 505–506  
**mapping**  
 different services to different hosts 147  
 different services to different paths of same host 146  
**master node** 18  
**masters**  
 configuring with  
   kubectl 547–549  
**running** kubeadm init to initialize 547–548  
**running** kubectl on 548  
**matchExpressions** property 107, 465, 470  
**matchLabels** field 105, 107, 470  
**maxSurge** property 271–272  
**maxUnavailable** property 271–274, 277, 455  
**medium**, specifying for emptyDir volume 166  
**memory**  
 creating ResourceQuota resources for 425–426  
 displaying usage  
   for cluster nodes 431  
   for pods 431–432  
 killing processes when low 420–421  
 handling containers with same QoS class 420–421  
 sequence of QoS classes 420  
**nodes**, as seen by containers 415–416  
**scaling** based on consumption of 448  
 Secret volumes stored in memory 221  
**metadata**  
 container-level, in volume specifications 233  
 exposing through environment variables 227–230  
 passing through Downward API 226–233  
 available metadata 226–227  
 passing through files in downwardAPI volume 230–233  
**metadata section** 201  
**metadata.name** field 510  
**metadata.resourceVersion** field 313  
**metric types**  
 Object, scaling based on 449–450  
**pods**  
 obtaining 438–439  
 scaling based on 449  
 resource, scaling based on 449  
**metrics**  
 appropriate for autoscaling 450  
 custom, scaling based on 448–450  
 modifying target values on existing HPA objects 447

microservices 3–6  
 deploying 5  
 divergence of environment requirements 5–6  
 scaling 4  
 splitting applications into 3–4  
**minAvailable** field 455  
**minikube delete** command 553  
**minikube mount** command 503  
**minikube node** 408  
**Minikube** tool  
 accessing dashboard when using 53  
 and GKE, switching between 534–535  
 combining with Kubernetes clusters 504  
 inspecting running containers in 553–554  
 installing 37  
 running local single-node Kubernetes clusters with 37–38  
 starting clusters with 37–38  
 switching from GKE to 534  
 switching to GKE from 534  
 using in development 503–504  
   building images locally 504  
   copying images to Minikube VM directly 504  
   mounting local files into containers 503  
   mounting local files into Minikube VM 503  
   using Docker daemon inside Minikube VM to build images 503–504  
 using **rkt** with 553–555  
   listing container images 554–555  
   running pods 553  
**Minikube** VM (virtual machine)  
   directly copying images to 504  
   mounting local files into 503  
   using Docker daemon inside, to build images 503–504  
**Minishift** 530  
**minReadySeconds** attribute 265, 274–275  
**MongoDB** database, adding documents to 173  
 monitoring pod resource usage 430–434  
   analyzing historical resource consumption statistics 432–434  
   collecting resource usages 430–432

retrieving resource usages 430–432  
 storing historical resource consumption statistics 432–434  
 monolithic applications, vs. microservices 3–6  
**MostRequestedPriority** 407  
**Mount (mnt)** Namespace 11  
 mountable Secrets 350–351  
 mounted config files, verifying Nginx using 208  
 mounting  
   **ConfigMap** entries as files 210–211  
   directories hides existing files 210  
   **fortune-https** Secret in pods 219–220  
   local files into containers 503  
   local files into Minikube VM 503  
 multi-tier applications, splitting into multiple pods 59  
**MustRunAs** rules, using 392–393  
**MustRunAsNonRoot** rules, using in **runAsUser** fields 394  
**my-nginx-config.conf** entry 209  
**my-postgres-db** service 525  
**MYSQL\_ROOT\_PASSWORD** variable 192

**N**


---

**-n** flag 79  
**-n** option 537  
**names**  
   configuring resolution for hosts 546–547  
   deleting pods by 80  
   of containers 66  
   retrieving job instances by 238  
**names.kind** property 511  
**Namespace** controllers 325  
**-namespace** option 535, 537  
**NamespaceLifecycle** 317  
**namespaces**  
   accessing resources in, using **ClusterRoles** 367–370  
   creating  
     from YAML files 78  
     with **kubectl create namespace** 78–79  
   deleting pods in while keeping 81–82  
   discovering pods of 77–78  
   enabling network isolation in 399  
 granting full control of, with **admin ClusterRole** 372  
 grouping resources with 76–80  
 host network, binding to host ports without using 377–379  
 host nodes, using in pods 376–380  
 including service accounts in **RoleBindings** 361  
 IPC, using 379–380  
 isolating networks between 401–402  
 isolation provided by 79–80  
 limiting resources available in 425–429  
 limiting objects that can be created 427–428  
**ResourceQuota** resources 425–427  
 specifying quotas for persistent storage 427  
 specifying quotas for specific pod states 429  
 specifying quotas for specific QoS classes 429  
**Linux**, isolating processes with 11  
 managing objects in 79  
 node network, using in pods 376–377  
 node PID 379–380  
 of pods 242  
 pods in, allowing some to connect to server pods 400  
 setting default limits for pods per 421–425  
   applying default resource limits 424–425  
   creating **LimitRange** objects 422–423  
   enforcing limits 423–424  
   **LimitRange** resources 421–422  
 setting default requests for pods per 421–425  
   applying default resource requests 424–425  
   creating **LimitRange** objects 422–423  
   enforcing limits 423–424  
   **LimitRange** resources 421–422  
 using **kubectl** with multiple 535–538  
   adding **kube config** entries 536–537  
   configuring location of **kubeconfig** files 535

- namespaces (*continued*)  
  contents of kubeconfig  
    files 535–536  
  deleting clusters 538  
  deleting contexts 538  
  listing clusters 538  
  listing contexts 538  
  listing kube config  
    entries 536–537  
  modifying kube config  
    entries 536–537  
  switching between  
    contexts 538  
  why needed 77
- NAS (network-attached storage) 171
- NAT (Network Address Translation) 58, 335
- net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables Kernel option 545
- Network (net) namespace 11
- network hops, preventing 141
- networks  
  between pods 335–338  
    architecture of 335–336  
  CNI (Container Network Interface) 338  
  enabling communication between pods on different nodes 337–338  
  enabling communication between pods on same node 336–337  
  overview 336–338  
  configuring adapters for VMs 540  
  enabling isolation in namespaces 399  
  isolating between Kubernetes namespaces 401–402  
local ports, forwarding port in pod 67
- node namespaces, using in pods 376–377
- node, shutting down  
  adapters 304–305
- of containers, setting up 550
- providing stable identities 285–287
- governing service,  
  overview 285–287
- scaling StatefulSets 287
- securing 375–403  
  configuring container security contexts 380–389
- isolating pod networks 399–402
- restricting use of security-related features in pods 389–399
- using host node namespaces in pods 376–380
- simulating node disconnection from 304–306
- checking node status as seen by Kubernetes master 305  
  pods with unknown status 305–306
- See also flat networks; host networks
- NFS (Network File System) 175
- nfs volume 162
- nginx container 334, 514
- Nginx software  
  signaling to reload config 212  
  using cert files from Secrets 221  
  using key files from Secrets 221  
  verifying use of mounted config files 208
- node affinity  
  specifying hard rules 463–465  
    nodeAffinity attribute  
      names 464–465  
      nodeSelectorTerms 465  
  specifying preferential rules 466–467  
  using to attract pods to nodes 462–468  
    examining default node labels 462–463  
    prioritizing nodes when scheduling 465–468  
  vs. node selectors 462–463
- Node controllers 324
- node failures 304–307  
  deleting pods manually 306–307  
  simulating node disconnection from network 304–306  
    checking node status as seen by Kubernetes master 305  
    pods with unknown status 305–306  
    shutting down node network adapters 304–305
- nodeAffinity attribute names 464–465
- Node.js  
  creating applications 28–29  
  deploying applications 42–44  
    behind the scenes 44  
    listing pods 43–44
- NodeLost 306
- NODE\_NAME variable 228
- NodePort services  
  changing firewall rules to let external clients access 137–138  
  creating 135–136  
  examining 136–137  
  using 135–138
- nodes  
  adding custom taints to 460  
  applications running on, examining 51–52  
  assigning to newly created pods with Scheduler 332  
  checking status as seen by Kubernetes master 305  
  configuring pod rescheduling after failures 462  
  CPU cores, as seen by containers 416  
  creating clusters with three 39  
  creating pods that don't fit on any 408–409  
  displaying taints 458  
  enabling communication between pods on different 337–338  
  enabling communication between pods on same 336–337  
  examining default labels 462–463  
  finding acceptable 320  
  inspecting capacity of 407–408  
  labeling 466  
  listing 40, 548–549  
  memory, as seen by containers 415–416  
  network namespaces, using in pods 376–377  
  PID namespaces 379–380  
  preferences 467  
  prioritizing when scheduling pods 465–468  
  deploying pods in two-node clusters 468  
  specifying preferential node affinity rules 466–467  
  relinquishing 453  
  ReplicationControllers responding to failures 97–98  
  requesting from Cloud infrastructure 452–453  
  running one pod on each, with DaemonSets 108–112  
  running pods on  
    adding required label to nodes 111

**nodes (*continued*)**

- removing required label from nodes 111–112
  - with DaemonSets 109–112
  - running pods on every, with DaemonSets 109
  - Scheduler using pod requests when selecting 407
  - scheduling pods to specific 74–75
  - selecting best for pods 320–321
  - selectors vs. affinity 462–463
  - simulating disconnection from network 304–306
  - checking node status as seen by Kubernetes master 305
  - pods with unknown status 305–306
  - shutting down node network adapters 304–305
  - using inter-pod affinity to deploy pods on 468–471
  - deploying pods with pod affinity 470
  - specifying pod affinity in pod definitions 469
  - using pod affinity rules with Scheduler 470–471
  - using node affinity to attract pods to 462–468
  - comparing node affinity to node selectors 462–463
  - specifying hard node affinity rules 463–465
  - using Scheduler to determine whether pods can fit on 406
  - using taints to repel pods from 457–462
  - taints, overview 458–460
  - using taints 461–462
  - using tolerations to repel pods from 457–462
  - adding tolerations to pods 460–461
  - tolerations, overview 458–460
  - using tolerations 461–462
  - worker
    - categorizing with labels 74
    - components running on 310
- See also* cluster nodes; node affinity; node failures; worker node filesystems; worker nodes
- nodeSelector field 75, 462–464
- nodeSelectorTerms 465
- NoExecute 460
- non-resource URLs, allowing access to 365–367

**NoOps 7**

- NoSchedule 460
- NotIn operator 107
- NotReady status 97, 305
- NotTerminating scope 429
- NTP (Network Time Protocol) daemon 385
- NTP daemon. *See* NTP

**O****-o custom-columns option 312**

- object fields 64
- Object metric types, scaling based on 449–450

**OCI (Open Container Initiative) 15, 554****Omega 16**

- OnlyLocal annotation 142
- OOM (OutOfMemory) score 420

**OpenAPI interface, building libraries with 248****OpenServiceBroker API 522–523**

- listing available services in clusters 523
- overview 522

**registering brokers in Service Catalog 522–523****OpenShift. *See* Red Hat OpenShift****Container platform**

- operations (ops) team 2
- optimistic concurrency control 313

**OS (operating systems), installing 541–544**

- initiating install 542
- running install 543–544
- selecting start-up disks 541
- setting installation options 542–543

**OutOfMemoryErrors 85**

- out-of-range user IDs, container images with 393

**overcommitting limits 413**

- overriding arguments and commands 195–196

**–overwrite option 70, 99****P****parallelism property 114**

- path traversal attack 353
- paths, mapping services to 146

**patterns, of ambassador**

- containers 244
- pausing rollouts 273–274
- PD (Persistent Disk) 185
- PDB (PodDisruptionBudget) 455

**peers**

- discovering in StatefulSets 299–304
- clustered data store 303–304
- implementing peer discovery through DNS 301–302
- SRV records, overview 300
- updating StatefulSets 302–303
- implementing discovery through DNS 301–302

**Pending status 44****permissions 373****persistent disks, GCE 171–172****persistent storage 171–175****specifying quotas for 427****using GCE Persistent Disk in pod volumes 171–174****creating GCE persistent disks 171–172****creating pods using gcePer-****sistentDisk volumes 172****re-creating pods 173–174****verifying pod can read data persisted by previous pod 173–174****using volumes with underlying persistent storage 174–175****using AWS elastic block store volume 174****using NFS volume 175****using storage technologies 175****writing data to, by adding documents to MongoDB database 173****PersistentVolume****controllers 325–326****PersistentVolumeClaims. *See* PVC****PersistentVolumes 176–177, 288****benefits of using 182****claiming by creating Persistent-****VolumeClaims 179–181****creating PersistentVolume-****Claims 179–180****listing PersistentVolume-****Claims 180****creating 177–178****dynamic provisioning of 184–189****defining available storage types through Storage-****Class resources 185****requesting storage class in****PersistentVolumeClaims 185–187****without specifying storage class 187–189**

- PersistentVolumes (*continued*)  
dynamically provisioned 186–187  
listing 180–181  
pre-provisioned, PersistentVolumeClaims bound to 189  
reclaiming automatically 183–184  
reclaiming manually 183  
recycling 183–184  
Pet pods 295–299  
communicating with pods through API servers 295–297  
connecting to cluster-internal services through API servers 299  
deleting 297–298  
exposing through services 298–299  
scaling StatefulSets 298  
PetSets 284  
photonPersistentDisk volume 163  
PID namespaces 379–380  
pinging service IP 131  
platforms 527–533  
  Deis Workflow 530–533  
  Helm 530–533  
Red Hat OpenShift Container platform 527–530  
  application templates 528–529  
automatically deploying newly built images with DeploymentConfigs 529–530  
building images from source using BuildConfigs 529  
exposing services externally using Routes 530  
groups 528  
projects 528  
resources available in 527–528  
users 528  
using 530
- pod affinity  
  co-locating pods with 468–476  
  deploying pods in same availability zone 471–472  
  deploying pods in same geographical regions 471–472  
  deploying pods in same rack 471–472  
  expressing podAffinity preferences instead of hard requirements 472–473  
  deploying pods with 470  
specifying in pod definitions 469  
using inter-pod affinity to deploy pods on same node 468–471  
using rules with Scheduler 470–471  
*See also* inter-pod affinity  
podAffinity, preferences vs. hard requirements 472–473  
podAntiAffinity property 474  
PodDisruptionBudget resource 455  
PodDisruptionBudget. *See* PDB  
POD\_IP variable 228  
POD\_NAME variable 228  
POD\_NAMESPACE variable 228  
pods 20, 47–55, 83  
  accessing through Ingress 145  
  accessing through services 264  
  adding Init containers to 484–485  
  adding readiness probes to 151–153  
  adding readiness probe to pod template 151–152  
  hitting service with single ready pod 153  
  modifying pod readiness status 152  
  observing pod readiness status 152  
  adding tolerations to 460–461  
  advanced scheduling of 321  
  annotating 75–76  
    adding annotations 76  
    looking up object annotations 75–76  
    modifying annotations 76  
  assigning Burstable QoS class to 418  
  assigning nodes to, with Scheduler 332  
  assigning service accounts to 351–353  
  assigning to BestEffort class 417  
  assigning to Guaranteed class 417–418  
  attracting to nodes with node affinity 462–468  
    comparing node affinity to node selectors 462–463  
    examining default node labels 462–463  
  specifying hard node affinity rules 463–465  
calculating required number of 439  
co-locating 468–476  
  expressing podAffinity preferences instead of hard requirements 472–473  
using inter-pod affinity to deploy pods on same node 468–471  
with pod anti-affinity 468–476

- pods (*continued*)
  - dead, rescheduling 482–483
  - decoupling from underlying storage technologies 176–184
  - benefits of using claims 182
  - using PersistentVolume-Claims 176–177, 179–181
  - using PersistentVolumes 176–184
  - definitions 62–63
  - deleting 306
    - by deleting whole namespace 80–81
    - by name 80
    - deleting resources in namespace 82
    - forcibly 307
    - in namespace while keeping namespace 81–82
    - manually 306–307
    - old 252–253
    - using label selectors 80
  - deploying
    - in same availability zone 471–472
    - in same geographical regions 471–472
    - in same rack 471–472
    - in two-node clusters 468
    - managed 84–118
    - with container images with out-of-range user IDs 393
    - with runAsUser outside of policy ranges 393
  - discovering all 156
  - discovering namespaces 242
  - discovering through DNS 155–156
  - displaying CPU usage for 431–432
  - displaying memory usage for 431–432
  - displaying pod IP when listing 51
  - displaying pod node when listing 51
  - displaying tolerations 459
  - flat inter-pod networks 58
  - fortune, running with custom intervals 195–196
  - freeing resources to schedule 410
  - horizontal autoscaling of 438–451
    - autoscaling process 438–441
    - metrics appropriate for
      - autoscaling 450
    - scaling based on CPU utilization 441–447
    - scaling based on memory consumption 448
    - scaling based on other and custom metrics 448–450
    - scaling down to zero replicas 450–451
  - horizontally scaling 102–103
    - declarative approach to scaling 103
    - scaling down with kubectl scale command 103
    - scaling ReplicationController by editing definitions 102–103
    - scaling up Replication-Controller 102
  - in action 165
  - in namespaces, allowing some to connect to server pods 400
  - inspecting details with kubectl describe 52
  - isolating networks 399–402
    - enabling network isolation in namespaces 399
    - isolating networks between Kubernetes namespaces 401–402
  - lifecycles of 479–491
    - adding lifecycle hooks 485–489
    - killing applications 479–482
    - relocating applications 479–482
  - listing 43–44, 548
  - listing subsets through label selectors 71–72
  - listing using label selectors 71–72
  - logs, retrieving with kubectl logs 66
  - managed by ReplicationControllers, adding labels to 99
  - managed, changing labels of 99–100
  - marked for deletion 307
  - modifying labels of existing 70–71
  - modifying resource requests while running 451–452
  - monitoring resource usage 430–434
    - analyzing historical resource consumption statistics 432–434
  - collecting resource usages 430–432
  - retrieving resource usages 430–432
  - storing historical resource consumption statistics 432–434
  - moving in and out of scope of ReplicationControllers 98–101
    - adding labels to pods managed by Replication-Controllers 99
    - changing label selector 100–101
  - multi-container, logs of 66
  - networking between 335–338
  - CNI (Container Network Interface) 338
  - enabling communication between pods on different nodes 337–338
  - enabling communication between pods on same node 336–337
  - network architecture 335–336
  - networking overview 336–338
  - not being scheduled 409–410
  - of clients, using newly created Secrets in 525–526
  - organizing containers across 58–60
    - splitting into multiple pods for scaling 59
    - splitting multi-tier applications into multiple pods 59
  - organizing with labels 67–71
  - overview 43, 48–58, 60
  - partial isolation between containers of same pod 57
  - partially dead, rescheduling 482–483
  - performing single completable task 112–116
    - defining jobs 113–114
    - Job resource 112
    - running multiple pod instances in Job 114–116
    - seeing Job run pods 114
  - preventing broken client connection 492–497
  - prioritizing nodes when scheduling 465–468
  - labeling nodes 466
  - node preferences 467
  - specifying preferential node affinity rules 466–467

pods (*continued*)  
providing stable identity  
for 282–284  
QoS classes 417–421  
defining 417–419  
killing processes when memory is low 420–421  
reading Secret entries in 218  
reattaching PersistentVolume-Claims to new instances of 289  
re-creating 173–174  
referencing non-existing config maps in 203  
removing from controllers 100  
repelling from nodes with taints 457–462  
adding custom taints to node 460  
taints, overview 458–460  
using taints 461–462  
repelling from nodes with tolerations 457–462  
adding tolerations to pods 460–461  
tolerations, overview 458–460  
using tolerations 461–462  
replacing old 252, 259–260  
ReplicationControllers responding to deleted 95  
requesting resources for containers 405–412  
defining custom resources 411–412  
effect of CPU requests on CPU time sharing 411  
effect of resource requests on scheduling 406–410  
requests hitting three when hitting services 50  
restricting use of security-related features in 389–399  
assigning different PodSecurityPolicies to different groups 396–399  
assigning different Pod-SecurityPolicies to different users 396–399  
configuring allowed capabilities 394–395  
configuring default capabilities 394–395  
configuring disallowed capabilities 394–395  
constraining types of volumes pods can use 395  
fsGroup policies 392–394

PodSecurityPolicy  
resources 389–392  
runAsUser policies 392–394  
supplementalGroups policies 392–394  
retrieving whole definition of 65  
running 333–334, 357, 553  
in privileged mode 382–384  
on certain nodes  
adding required label to nodes 111  
DaemonSets 109–112  
removing required label from nodes 111–112  
on every node,  
DaemonSets 109  
one on each node, with DaemonSets 108–112  
shell in containers 130–131  
without specifying security contexts 381  
without writing YAML manifest 155  
running controllers as 515–516  
Scheduler using requests when selecting nodes 407  
scheduling to specific nodes 74–75  
seeing newly created in list of 65  
selecting best nodes for 320–321  
sending requests to 66–67  
sequence of events at deletion 493–495  
setting default limits for, per namespace 421–425  
setting default requests for, per namespace 421–425  
shutdowns of 489–491  
implementing proper shut-down handler in applications 490–491  
replacing critical shut-down procedures with dedicated shut-down procedure pods 491  
specifying termination grace periods 490  
signaling when ready to accept connections 149–153  
specifying for quotas for specific states 429  
specifying image pull Secrets on 223  
specifying labels when creating 69–70  
specifying pod affinity in definitions 469  
spinning up new 252–253  
starting 483–484  
starting in specific order 483–485  
best practices for handling inter-pod dependencies 485  
Init containers 484  
static, running without API servers 326–327  
stopping, deleting pods 80–82  
templates  
changing 101  
effect of changing 93  
using with volume claim templates 288  
updating applications running in 251–253  
using anti-affinity with pods of same Deployment 475  
using dedicated service for each instance 283–284  
using Docker-registry Secrets in definitions 223  
using emptyDir volume in 163–164  
using GCE Persistent Disk in volumes 171–174  
creating GCE persistent disks 171–172  
creating pods using gce-PersistentDisk volumes 172  
writing data to persistent storage by adding documents to MongoDB database 173  
using headless services to discover 154–156  
using host node namespaces in 376–380  
binding to host ports without using host network namespaces 377–379  
using node IPC namespaces 379–380  
using node PID namespaces 379–380  
using labels to constrain scheduling 73–75  
categorizing worker nodes with labels 74  
scheduling pods to specific nodes 74–75  
using namespaces to group resources 76, 80  
creating namespaces 78–79

pods (*continued*)  
 discovering other namespaces and their pods 77–78  
 isolation provided by 79–80  
 managing objects in other namespaces 79  
 namespaces, why needed 77  
 using node network namespaces in 376–377  
 using one ReplicaSet per instance 281–282  
 using PersistentVolumeClaims in 181  
 using Scheduler to determine whether pod can fit on node 406  
 using Secrets in 218, 222  
 exposing Secret entries through environment variables 221–222  
 modifying fortune-config config map to enable HTTPS 218–219  
 mounting fortune-https Secret in pod 219–220  
 Secret volumes stored in memory 221  
 verifying Nginx is using cert files from Secrets 221  
 verifying Nginx is using key files from Secrets 221  
 using selectors to constrain scheduling  
 categorizing worker nodes with labels 74  
 scheduling pods to specific nodes 74–75  
 verifying readability of data persisted by previous pods 173–174  
 vertical autoscaling of 451–452  
 automatically configuring resource requests 451  
 modifying resource requests while pod is running 451–452  
 web server, serving files from cloned Git repository 167  
 when to use multiple containers in 59–60  
 why needed 56–57  
 with multiple containers, determining QoS classes of 419  
 with pod affinity, deploying 470  
 with unknown status 305–306  
*See also* curl pods; inter-pod affinity; Pet pods; pod affinity; server pods

PodSecurityPolicy resources 389–392  
 assigning to different groups 396–399  
 assigning to different users 396–399  
 creating additional users for kubectl 398  
 creating pods as different user 398–399  
 with RBAC 397–398  
 creating, allowing privileged containers to be deployed 396–397  
 examining 391–392  
 overview 390–391  
 pod.spec.containers.args field 204  
 policy ranges, deploying pods with runAsUser outside of 393  
 port forwarding 66  
 port spaces, containers sharing 57  
 portability, limitations of Docker images 15  
 ports  
 exposing multiple in same service 126–127  
 local network, forwarding port in pod 67  
 named, using 127–128  
*See also* host ports  
 Post-start hooks 485  
 PreferNoSchedule 460  
 preserving data, with volumes 480–482  
 Pre-stop hooks 485  
 private image repositories, using on Docker Hub 222  
 privilege escalation 372  
 privileged containers  
 deployment of 396–397  
 overview 403  
 privileged mode, running pods in 382–384  
 privileged policy 397  
 privileged property 383  
 probes. *See* liveness probes; readiness probes  
 procedures. *See* shut-down procedures  
 Process ID (pid) Namespace 11  
 processes  
 isolating with Linux Namespaces 11  
 killing when memory is low 420–421  
 handling containers with same QoS class 420–421  
 sequence of QoS classes 420  
 multiple with one container vs. multiple containers 56–57  
 preventing from writing to container filesystems 386–387  
 projects, in Red Hat OpenShift Container platform 528  
 provisioning. *See* dynamic provisioning  
 ProvisioningFailed event 186  
 proxies 327–328  
 publicHtml volume 162  
 pushing  
 images to Docker Hub 36  
 images to image registry 35–36  
 running images on different machines 36  
 tagging images under additional tags 35  
 PVC (PersistentVolumeClaims) 176–177, 288, 423, 532  
 bound to pre-provisioned PersistentVolumes 189  
 creating 179–180, 288  
 creating without specifying storage class 188–189  
 deleting 288  
 examining 295  
 listing 180  
 reattaching to new instances of pod 289  
 requesting storage class in 185–187  
 by creating PersistentVolumeClaim definition 185–186  
 examining created PersistentVolumeClaims 186–187  
 examining dynamically provisioned PersistentVolumes 186–187  
 using storage classes 187  
 using in pods 181

**Q**


---

QCOW2 image file format 555  
 QEMU virtual machine tool 555  
 QoS (Quality of Service) 417  
 QoS classes 417–421  
 defining for pods 417–419  
 assigning Burstable QoS class to pods 418  
 assigning pods to BestEffort class 417  
 assigning pods to Guaranteed class 417–418  
 handling containers with same QoS class 420–421

QoS classes (*continued*)  
 killing processes when memory is low 420–421  
 handling containers with same QoS class 420–421  
 sequence of QoS classes 420  
 of containers, determining 418  
 of pods with multiple containers, determining 419  
 sequence of 420  
 specifying quotas for 429  
**QPS (Queries-Per-Second)** 439, 449  
 quobyte volume 163  
 quorum 315  
 quotas, specifying 427–429

**R**

racks, deploying pods in 471–472  
**RBAC (role-based access control)** 242  
 authorization plugins 353–354  
 plugins 354  
 resources 355–357  
   creating namespaces 357  
   enabling in clusters 356  
   listing services from pods 357  
   running pods 357  
 securing clusters with 353–373  
 binding roles to service accounts 359–360  
 default ClusterRoleBindings 371–373  
 default ClusterRoles 371–373  
 granting authorization permissions 373  
 including service accounts from other namespaces in RoleBinding 361  
 RBAC authorization plugins 353–354  
 RBAC resources 355–357  
 using ClusterRoleBindings 362–371  
 using ClusterRoles 362–371  
 using RoleBindings 358–359  
 using Roles 358–359  
 using to assign different Pod-SecurityPolicies to different users 397–398  
 rbd volume 163  
**rc (replicationcontroller)** 46, 95  
 readiness probes  
   adding to pods 151–153  
   adding readiness probe to pod template 151–152

hitting service with single ready pod 153  
 modifying pod readiness status 152  
 observing pod readiness status 152  
 benefits of using 151  
 defining 153  
 defining to prevent rollouts 275  
 including pod shutdown logic in 153  
 operation of 150  
 overview 149–151  
 preventing rollouts with 277–278  
 types of 150  
 reading, Secret entries in pods 218  
 read-only access, to resources with view ClusterRole 372  
**ReadOnlyMany** access mode 180  
**readOnlyRootFilesystem** property 387, 392  
**ReadWriteMany** access mode 180  
**ReadWriteOnce** access mode 180  
**READY** column 44, 152  
 reconciliation loops 92  
 records, DNS 155–156  
 re-creating pods 173–174  
 recycling PersistentVolumes 183–184  
   automatically 183–184  
   manually 183  
**Red Hat OpenShift Container platform** 527–530  
 application templates 528–529  
 automatically deploying newly built images with DeploymentConfigs 529–530  
 building images from source using BuildConfigs 529  
 exposing services externally using Routes 530  
 groups 528  
 projects 528  
 resources available in 527–528  
 users 528  
 using 530  
 referencing non-existing config maps in pods 203  
 registering  
   custom API servers 519  
   service brokers in Service Catalog 522–523  
 registries, creating Secrets for authenticating with 223  
**rel=canary** label 80  
 relinquishing, nodes 453  
 reloading config, signaling Nginx to 212  
 relocating applications 479–482  
 expecting data written to disk to disappear 480  
 expecting hostnames to change 480  
 expecting local IP to change 480  
 using volumes to preserve data across container restarts 480–482  
 removing  
   containers 34–35  
   labels from nodes 111–112  
   pods from controllers 100  
 repelling  
   pods from nodes with taints 457–462  
   adding custom taints to node 460  
   taints, overview 458–460  
   using taints 461–462  
 pods from nodes with tolerations 457–462  
   adding tolerations to pods 460–461  
   tolerations, overview 458–460  
   using tolerations 461–462  
 replacing old pods  
   by scaling two ReplicationControllers 259–260  
   overview 252  
 replica count 49, 92  
 replicas  
   running multiple with separate storage for each 281–282  
   creating pods manually 281  
   using multiple directories in same volume 282  
   using one ReplicaSet per pod instance 281–282  
 scaling down to zero 450–451  
 updating count on scaled resources 440  
**ReplicaSets** 104–108, 324, 559  
 controllers  
   creating pods with 332  
   creating with Deployment controller 331  
   creating 106–107, 263–264  
   defining 105–106  
   examining 106–107  
   using label selectors 107  
   using one per pod instance 281–282  
 vs. ReplicationControllers 105  
 vs. StatefulSets 284–285

replicating stateful pods 281–284  
 providing stable identity for pods 282–284  
 running multiple replicas with separate storage for each 281–282

replication controllers 47–48  
 replication managers 323–324  
**ReplicationControllers** 90–104  
 benefits of using 93  
 changing pod templates 101  
 creating 93–94  
 creating new pods with 96  
 deleting 103–104  
 getting information about 95–96  
 horizontally scaling pods 102–103  
 in action 94–98  
 moving pods in and out of scope of 98–101  
 adding labels to pods managed by 99  
 changing label selectors 100–101  
 changing labels of managed pod 99–100  
 removing pods from controllers 100  
 operation of 91–93  
 parts of 92–93  
 performing automatic rolling updates with 254–261  
 obsolescence of kubectl rolling-update 260–261  
 performing rolling updates with kubectl 256–260  
 running initial version of applications 254–255

reconciliation loops 92  
 replacing old pods with new pods by scaling 259–260  
 responding to deleted pods 95  
 responding to node failures 97–98  
 scaling by editing definitions 102–103  
 scaling up 102  
 vs. **ReplicaSets** 105  
 vs. **StatefulSets** 284–285

repo files, adding to yum package manager 544

requests  
 for pods per namespace, setting defaults 421–425  
 from clients, handling 492–497

preventing broken client connections when pod shuts down 493–497  
 preventing broken client connections when pod starts up 492–493  
 modifying resources in, with admission control plugins 317  
 sending to pods 66–67  
 connecting to pods through port forwarders 67  
 forwarding local network port to port in pod 67  
*See also CPU requests*  
**requiredDropCapabilities** 394–395  
**requiredDuringScheduling** 464, 475  
 rescaling automatically 444–445  
 rescheduling  
 dead pods 482–483  
 partially dead pods 482–483  
 resource limits, creating pods with 412–413  
 resource metric types, scaling based on 449  
 resource requests  
 automatically configuring 451  
 creating pods with 405–406  
 default, applying 424–425  
 defining custom resources 411–412  
 effect on scheduling 406–410  
 creating pods that don't fit on any node 408–409  
 freeing resources to schedule pods 410  
 inspecting node capacity 407–408  
 pods not being scheduled 409–410  
 Scheduler determining whether pod can fit on node 406  
 Scheduler using pod requests when selecting best nodes 407  
 for pod containers 411–412  
 modifying while pod is running 451–452  
**resourceFieldRef** 233  
**resourceNames** field 358  
**ResourceQuota** resources 425–427  
 creating for CPUs 425–426  
 creating for memory 425–426  
 creating LimitRange along with ResourceQuota 427

inspecting Quota and Quota usage 426

resources  
 accessing in specific namespaces 367–370  
 allowing modification of resources with edit ClusterRole 372  
 analyzing statistics for historical consumption of 432–434  
 Grafana 432  
 InfluxDB 432  
 running Grafana in clusters 433  
 running InfluxDB in clusters 433  
 using information shown in charts 434  
 analyzing usage with Grafana 433–434  
 auto-deploying manifests 504–505  
 available in namespaces, limiting 425–429  
 limiting objects that can be created 427–428  
**ResourceQuota**  
 resources 425–427  
 specifying quotas for persistent storage 427  
 specifying quotas for specific pod states 429  
 specifying quotas for specific QoS classes 429  
 available to containers, limiting 412–416  
 exceeding limits 414–415  
 limits as seen by applications in containers 415–416

cluster-level, allowing access to 362–365

collecting usage 430–432  
 displaying CPU usage for cluster nodes 431  
 displaying CPU usage for individual pods 431–432  
 displaying memory usage for cluster nodes 431  
 displaying memory usage for individual pods 431–432  
 enabling Heapster 431

custom  
 automating with custom controllers 513–517  
 creating instances of 511–512  
 retrieving instances of 512  
 deleting in namespace 82

resources (*continued*)  
 deploying through Helm 531–533  
 describing through annotations 498  
 federated  
   functions of 559  
   versions of 558  
 freeing to schedule pods 410  
 in Red Hat OpenShift Container platform 527–528  
 limiting consumption of 11–12  
 modifying in requests with admission control  
   plugins 317  
 notifying clients of changes 318–319  
 of pods, monitoring usage of 430–434  
 read-only access to 372  
 requesting for pod  
   containers 405–412  
 creating pods with resource requests 405–406  
 defining custom resources 411–412  
 effect of CPU requests on CPU time sharing 411  
 effect of resource requests on scheduling 406–410  
 retrieving usage 430–432  
   displaying CPU usage 431–432  
   displaying memory usage 431–432  
   enabling Heapster 431  
 setting hard limits for 412–413  
   creating pod with resource limits 412–413  
   overcommitting limits 413  
 storing in etcd 313–314  
 storing persistently 318  
 storing statistics for historical consumption of 432–434  
 Grafana 432  
 InfluxDB 432  
 running Grafana in clusters 433  
 running InfluxDB in clusters 433  
 using information shown in charts 434  
 using namespaces to group 76–80  
   creating namespaces 78–79  
   discovering other namespaces and their pods 77–78

isolation provided by 79–80  
 managing objects in other namespaces 79  
 namespaces, why needed 77  
 validating 318  
 versioning manifests 504–505  
*See also* computational resources  
 REST API 234–238  
 accessing API server through kubectl proxy 234–235  
 exploring batch API group REST endpoints 236–237  
 exploring Kubernetes API through kubectl proxy 235–236  
 listing job instances in clusters 237–238  
 retrieving job instances by name 238  
`-restart=Never` option 446  
`restartPolicy` property 113  
 restarts, of containers 480–482  
 RESTful (REpresentational State Transfer) APIs 4  
 resuming rollouts 274  
 retrieving  
   instances of custom resources 512  
 job instances by name 238  
 resource usages 430–432  
   displaying CPU usage for cluster nodes 431  
   displaying CPU usage for individual pods 431–432  
   displaying memory usage for cluster nodes 431  
   displaying memory usage for individual pods 431–432  
   enabling Heapster 431  
 retry loops, implementing in liveness probes 90  
`revisionHistoryLimit` property 270  
 revisions, rolling back Deployment to 270  
 RHEL (Red Hat Enterprise Linux) 12  
 rkt container system  
   configuring Kubernetes to use 552  
 replacing Docker with 552–555  
 using with Minikube 553–555  
   inspecting running containers in Minikube VM 553–554  
   listing container images 554–555  
   running pods 555  
`-rm` option 446  
 Role resources  
   binding to service accounts 359–360  
   creating 357–359  
   using 358–359  
 role-based access control. *See* RBAC  
 RoleBindings  
   combining with ClusterRole- Bindings 370–371  
   combining with ClusterRoles 370–371  
   combining with Roles 370–371  
   including service accounts from other namespaces in 361  
   using 358–359  
 rolling back deployments 268–270  
   creating application versions 268  
   deploying versions 269  
   displaying deployment rollout history 270  
   to specific Deployment revision 270  
   undoing rollouts 269  
 rolling updates 253  
   performing automatically with Replication- Controller 254–261  
   obsolescence of kubectl rolling-update 260–261  
   running initial version of applications 254–255  
   performing with kubectl 256–260  
   replacing old pods with new pods by scaling two ReplicationControllers 259–260  
   steps performed before rolling update commences 258–259  
   slowing 265  
   triggering 265–267  
 rolling-update command, in kubectl 260–261  
 rollouts  
   blocking 274–278  
   configuring deadlines for rollouts 278  
   defining readiness probes to prevent rollouts 275  
`minReadySeconds` 274–275  
 preventing rollouts with readiness probes 277–278  
 updating deployments with kubectl apply 276–277

rollouts (*continued*)  
 configuring deadlines for 278  
 controlling rate of 271–273  
 maxSurge property 271–272  
 maxUnavailable property 271–273  
 of deployments  
 displaying history of 270  
 displaying status of 263  
 pausing 273–274  
 preventing  
 by using pause feature 274  
 with readiness probes 277–278  
 resuming 274  
 undoing 269  
 root, preventing containers from running as 382  
 Routes, exposing services externally with 530  
 rpi-cluster context 538  
 rpi-foo context 538  
 run command 27, 42–43, 47  
 runAsUser fields, using mustRunAsNonRoot rules in 394  
 runAsUser policies 392–394  
 deploying pods 393  
 using MustRunAs rules 392–393  
 using MustRunAsNonRoot rules in runAsUser fields 394  
 runAsUser property 381, 393  
 runtimes. *See* container runtimes

**S**

scaled resources, updating replica count on 440  
 scale-downs 456  
 of clusters, limiting service disruption during 454–456  
 to zero replicas 450–451  
 scaleIO volume 163  
 scale-out, results of 49–50  
 scale-ups 456  
 of Deployments, with  
 Autoscaler 446–447  
 triggering 445–446  
 scaling  
 applications, horizontally 48–50  
 automatic 23  
 based on CPU utilization 441–447  
 automatic rescale events 444–445  
 creating Horizontal pod  
 Autoscaler based on CPU usage 442–443

maximum rate of scaling 447  
 modifying target metric values on existing HPA objects 447  
 triggering scale-ups 445–446  
 using Autoscaler to scale up Deployments 446–447  
 based on custom metrics 448–450  
 Object metric types 449–450  
 pods metric types 449  
 resource metric types 449  
 based on memory consumption 448  
 cluster nodes horizontally 452–456  
 Cluster Autoscaler 452–453  
 enabling Cluster Autoscaler 454  
 limiting service disruption during cluster scale-down 454–456  
 down to zero replicas 450–451  
 horizontal autoscaling of pods 438–451  
 autoscaling process 438–441  
 metrics appropriate for autoscaling 450  
 Job resource 116  
 maximum rate of 447  
 microservices 4  
 number of copies 21  
 pods horizontally 102–103  
 declarative approach to scaling 103  
 scaling down with kubectl scale command 103  
 scaling ReplicationController by editing definitions 102–103  
 scaling up ReplicationController 102  
 ReplicationControllers 259–260  
 splitting into multiple pods for 59  
 StatefulSets 287, 298  
 vertical autoscaling of pods 451–452  
 automatically configuring resource requests 451  
 modifying resource requests while pod is running 451–452  
*See also* autoscaling  
 scaling out 3  
 scaling up 3  
 schedule, configuring 117  
 Scheduler 319–321  
 advanced scheduling of pods 321  
 assigning nodes to newly created pods 332  
 default scheduling algorithm 319  
 ensuring high availability of 343–344  
 finding acceptable nodes 320  
 selecting best node for pod 320–321  
 using multiple schedulers 321  
 using pod affinity rules with 470–471  
 using pod requests when selecting best nodes 407  
 using to determine whether pod can fit on node 406  
 scheduling 44, 457–476  
 co-locating pods with pod affinity 468–476  
 deploying pods 471–472  
 expressing podAffinity preferences instead of hard requirements 472–473  
 using inter-pod affinity to deploy pods on same node 468–471  
 default 319  
 effect of resource requests on 406–410  
 creating pods that don't fit on any node 408–409  
 freeing resources to schedule pods 410  
 inspecting node capacity 407–408  
 pod not being scheduled 409–410  
 Scheduler determining whether pod can fit on node 406  
 Scheduler using pod requests when selecting best nodes 407  
 jobs 116–118  
 creating CronJob 116–117  
 overview 117  
 pods  
 away from each other with  
 pod anti-affinity 474–476  
 to specific nodes 74–75  
 using labels to constrain 73–75  
 using selectors to constrain 73–75  
 using multiple 321

- scheduling (*continued*)  
  using node affinity to attract pods to nodes 462–468  
  comparing node affinity to node selectors 462–463  
  examining default node labels 462–463  
  prioritizing nodes when scheduling pods 465–468  
  specifying hard node affinity rules 463–465  
using taints during 461–462  
using taints to repel pods from nodes 457–462  
  adding custom taints to node 460  
  taints, overview 458–460  
  using taints 461–462  
using tolerations during 461–462  
using tolerations to repel pods from nodes 457–462  
  adding tolerations to pods 460–461  
  tolerations, overview 458–460  
  using tolerations 461–462  
*See also* scheduler  
secret volume 163  
Secrets  
  creating 216, 223  
  default token 214–215  
  exposing entries through environment variables 221–222  
  image pull 351  
  mountable 350–351  
  overview 214  
  reading entries in pods 218  
  using for binary data 217  
  using in pods 218, 222  
    modifying fortune-config config map to enable HTTPS 218–219  
    mounting fortune-https Secret in pods 219–220  
  Secret volumes stored in memory 221  
  verifying Nginx is using cert and key from Secret 221  
using newly created in client pods 525–526  
using to pass sensitive data to containers 213, 223  
  default token Secrets 214–215  
  image pull Secrets 222–223  
versus ConfigMaps 217–218  
*See also* image pull secrets
- securing  
  cluster nodes 375–403  
    configuring container security contexts 380–389  
    isolating pod networks 399–402  
    restricting use of security-related features in pods 389–399  
    using host node namespaces in pods 376–380  
  clusters with RBAC 353–373  
    binding roles to service accounts 359–360  
    default ClusterRole- Bindings 371–373  
    default ClusterRoles 371–373  
    granting authorization permissions 373  
    including service accounts from other namespaces in RoleBinding 361  
  RBAC authorization plugins 353–354  
  RBAC resources 355–357  
  using ClusterRole- Bindings 362–371  
  using ClusterRoles 362–371  
  using RoleBindings 358–359  
  using Roles 358–359  
networks 375–403  
  configuring container security contexts 380–389  
  isolating pod networks 399–402  
  restricting use of security-related features in pods 389–399  
  using host node namespaces in pods 376–380  
security contexts  
  of containers 380–389  
  running pods without specifying 381  
  setting options at pod level 387  
securityContext property 380, 383, 385, 387  
securityContext.capabilities field 394  
securityContext.capabilities.drop property 386  
securityContext.readOnlyRootFilesystem property 386  
securityContext.runAsUser property 381  
security-enhanced Linux. *See* SELinux
- security-related features, restricting use of in pods 389–399  
assigning different PodSecurity Policies to different groups 396–399  
assigning different PodSecurity Policies to different users 396–399  
configuring allowed capabilities 394–395  
configuring default capabilities 394–395  
configuring disallowed capabilities 394–395  
constraining types of volumes pods can use 395  
fsGroup policies 392–394  
PodSecurityPolicy resources 389–392  
runAsUser policies 392–394  
supplementalGroups policies 392–394  
selecting start-up disks 541  
selector property 106  
selector.matchLabels 106  
selectors  
  constraining pod scheduling with 73–75  
  categorizing worker nodes with labels 74  
  scheduling pods to specific nodes 74–75  
creating endpoints resource for services without 133–134  
creating services without 132–133  
SelectorSpreadPriority function 468  
self-healing 22–23  
SELinux (security-enhanced Linux)  
  disabling 544  
  overview 380  
semantics, at-most-one 290  
server pods, allowing some pods in namespaces to connect to 400  
servers 346–374  
  API, connecting to 503  
  authentication of 346–353  
    groups 346–348  
    service accounts 348–353  
    users 347–348  
  securing clusters with RBAC 353–373  
    binding roles to service accounts 359–360

- servers (*continued*)
  - default ClusterRoleBindings 371–373
  - default ClusterRoles 371–373
  - granting authorization
    - permissions 373
  - including service accounts
    - from other namespaces in RoleBinding 361
  - RBAC authorization
    - plugins 353–354
  - RBAC resources 355–357
  - using ClusterRoleBindings 362–371
  - using ClusterRoles 362–371
  - using RoleBindings 358–359
  - using Roles 358–359- using custom service account
  - tokens to communicate with 352–353
- service accounts 348–349
  - assigning to pods 351–353
  - binding Roles to 359–360
  - creating 349–351
  - creating for each pod 373
  - custom
    - creating pods that use 351–352
    - using tokens to communicate with API servers 352–353
  - image pull Secrets 351
  - including from other namespaces in RoleBinding 361
  - mountable Secrets 350–351
  - ServiceAccount resources 348–349
  - tying into authorizations 349
- service brokers 522–523
  - listing available services in clusters 523
  - registering in Service Catalog 522–523
- Service Catalog 519–527
  - benefits of using 526–527
  - Controller Manager 521
  - deprovisioning instances 526
  - OpenServiceBroker API 522–523
    - listing available services in clusters 523
    - overview 522
  - overview 520–521
  - provisioning services 524–526
    - binding service instances 525
    - provisioning service instances 524–525
- using newly created Secret in client pods 525–526
- registering service brokers
  - in 522–523
  - service brokers 522–523
- Service Catalog API server 521
- unbinding instances 526
- using services 524–526
- Service controllers 324
- service endpoints
  - manually configuring 132–134
    - creating endpoints resource for services without selectors 133–134
    - creating services without selectors 132–133
  - overview 131–132
- Service Proxy 327–328
- ServiceAccount resources 348–349
- SERVICE\_ACCOUNT variable 228
- serviceAccountName property 373
- SERVICE\_HOST variable 129
- SERVICE\_PORT variable 129
- service-reader role 359
- services 47, 120–158
  - accessing pods through 264
  - accessing through external IP 46–47
  - accessing through Ingress 145
  - accessing pods through Ingress 145
  - configuring host in Ingress pointing to Ingress IP addresses 145
  - how Ingresses work 145
  - obtaining IP address of Ingress 145
  - available in clusters, listing 523
  - backend, connecting to 502
  - binding instances 525
  - cluster-internal, connecting through API servers 299
  - configuring for kubectl 41
  - configuring session affinity on 126
  - connecting to, through load balancers 139–141
  - creating 45, 122–128
    - remotely executing commands in running containers 124–126
  - through kubectl expose command 123
  - through YAML descriptors 123
  - using named ports 127–128
- creating endpoints resource
  - without selectors 133–134
- creating without selectors 132–133
- dedicated, using for each pod instance 283–284
- discovering 128–131
- connecting to service through its FQDN 130
- pinging service IP 131
- running shell in pod containers 130–131
- through DNS 129
- through environment variables 128–129
- disruptions of, limiting during cluster scale-down 454–456
- examining new 124
- examples of 121–122
- exposing applications through, using YAML file 255
- exposing externally through Ingress resources 142–149
  - benefits of using 142–143
  - configuring Ingress to handle TLS traffic 147–149
  - creating Ingress resources 144
  - using Ingress controllers 143–144
- exposing externally using Routes 530
- exposing multiple ports in same 126–127
- exposing multiple through same Ingress 146–147
- mapping different services to different hosts 147
- mapping different services to different paths of same host 146
- exposing Pet pods through 298–299
- exposing through external load balancers 138–141
  - connecting to services through load balancers 139–141
  - creating LoadBalancer services 139
- exposing to external clients 134–142
  - external connections 141–142
  - using NodePort services 135–138
- governing
  - creating 292–294
  - overview 285–287
- implementing 338–340

- services (*continued*)  
listing 46  
listing from pods 357  
living outside cluster, connecting to 131–134  
overview 121–131  
provisioning 524–526  
requests hitting three pods 50  
running applications through, using YAML file 255  
signaling when pods ready to accept connections 149–153  
testing from within cluster 124  
troubleshooting 156  
using 524–526  
why needed 48  
*See also* external services  
sessionAffinity property 126  
sessions, configuring affinity on services 126  
set-context command 538  
share-type label 467  
sharing  
  data between containers with volumes 163–169  
  using emptyDir volume 163–166  
  using Git repository as starting point for volume 166–169  
volumes when containers running as different users 387–389  
shell forms, versus exec forms 193–194  
shells  
  running in containers 130–131  
  running inside existing containers 33  
shutdown handlers, implementing in applications 490–491  
shutdown logic, pods 153  
shutdowns  
  critical, replacing dedicated shut-down procedure pods 491  
  dedicated pods, replacing critical shut-down procedures with 491  
of pods 489–491  
  implementing proper shut-down handler in applications 490–491  
  replacing critical shut-down procedures with dedicated shut-down procedure pods 491  
specifying termination grace periods 490  
shutting down VMs 545  
sidecar container 60, 168  
SIG (Special Interest Group) 448  
SIGKILL 89  
signaling, when pods ready to accept connections 149–153  
SIGTERM signal 487–491, 493, 495  
simulating node disconnection from network 304–306  
  checking node status as seen by Kubernetes master 305  
  pods with unknown status 305–306  
  shutting down node network adapters 304–305  
single-node clusters, local 37–38  
sleep-interval entry 221  
slowing rolling updates 265  
SNAT (Source Network Address Translation) 142  
spec section 75  
spec.containers.ports field 377  
specifications, referring to container-level metadata in 233  
spec.initContainers field 484  
spec.replicas field 102–103  
spec.template.spec.containers.image attribute 303  
spinning up, new pods 252–253  
splitting  
  applications into  
    microservices 3–4  
    into multiple pods 59  
SRV records 300  
SSD (Solid-State Drive) 109  
ssd storage class 427  
startingDeadlineSeconds field 118  
start-up disks, selecting 541  
stateful pods 308  
  examining 294–295  
  overview 284  
  replicating 281–284  
    providing stable identity for pods 282–284  
    running multiple replicas with separate storage for each 281–282  
StatefulSet controllers 324  
StatefulSet resources 280–308  
  creating 294  
  creating applications 290–291  
  creating container images 290–291  
deploying applications through 291–295  
  creating governing services 292–294  
  creating persistent volumes 291–292  
examining PersistentVolume-Claims 295  
examining stateful pods 294–295  
discovering peers in 299–304  
  clustered data store 303–304  
  implementing peer discovery through DNS 301–302  
  SRV records, overview 300  
guarantees 289–290  
  at-most-one semantics 290  
implications of stable identity 289–290  
implications of stable storage 289–290  
node failures and 304–307  
  deleting pods manually 306–307  
  simulating node disconnection from network 304–306  
overview 284–290  
  providing stable dedicated storage to pets 287–289  
  providing stable network identities 285–287  
replicating stateful pods 281–284  
  providing stable identity for pods 282–284  
  running multiple replicas with separate storage for each 281–282  
scaling 287, 298  
updating 302–303  
using 290–295  
vs. ReplicaSets 284–285  
vs. ReplicationControllers 284–285  
with Pet pods 295–299  
  communicating with pods through API servers 295–297  
  connecting to cluster-internal services through API servers 299  
  deleting Pet pods 297–298  
  exposing Pet pods through services 298–299  
states, visualizing new 50  
statistics, of historical resource consumption 432–434

status  
 of nodes 305  
 pods with unknown 305–306  
 status attribute 138  
 STATUS column 183  
 Status section 63  
 status.certificate field 148  
 status.qosClass field 419  
 stopping  
 containers 34–35  
 pods 80, 82  
 storage  
 defining available types  
 through StorageClass  
 resources 185  
 providing to pets 287–289  
 creating PersistentVolume-  
 Claims 288  
 deleting PersistentVolume-  
 Claims 288  
 reattaching Persistent-  
 VolumeClaims to new  
 instances of same  
 pod 289  
 using pod templates with  
 volume claim templates  
 288  
 running multiple replicas with  
 separate storage for  
 each 281–282  
 creating pods manually 281  
 using multiple directories in  
 same volume 282  
 using one ReplicaSet per pod  
 instance 281–282  
 stable, implications of  
 289–290  
*See also* persistent storage  
 storage classes  
 creating PersistentVolume-  
 Claims without specifying  
 188–189  
 default 188  
 dynamic provisioning without  
 specifying 187–189  
 listing 187–188  
 requesting in PersistentVolume-  
 Claims 185–187  
 creating PersistentVolume-  
 Claim definition  
 requesting specific stor-  
 age class 185–186  
 examining created Persistent-  
 VolumeClaims 186–187  
 examining dynamically provi-  
 sioned Persistent-  
 Volumes 186–187  
 using 187

storage technologies  
 decoupling pods from 176–184  
 benefits of using claims 182  
 PersistentVolumeClaims  
 176–177, 179–181  
 PersistentVolumes 176–184  
 using 175  
 storage volumes 160  
 StorageClass resources, defining  
 available storage types  
 through 185  
 storageclass-fast-hostpath.yaml  
 file 187  
 storageClassName attribute  
 188–189  
 storing  
 historical resource consump-  
 tion statistics 432–434  
 analyzing resource usage with  
 Grafana 433–434  
 Grafana 432  
 InfluxDB 432  
 running Grafana in  
 clusters 433  
 running InfluxDB  
 clusters 433  
 using information shown in  
 charts 434  
 resources persistently 318  
 StringData field 218  
 subPath property 210–211  
 subsets, listing through label  
 selectors 71–72  
 listing pods using label  
 selectors 71–72  
 using multiple conditions in  
 label selectors 72  
 supplementalGroups  
 policies 392–394  
 deploying pod with container  
 image with an out-of-range  
 user ID 393  
 using MustRunAs rule 392–393  
 supplementalGroups property  
 388–389  
 Swagger framework 248  
 symlink 213  
 syncHandler field 323  
 sysadmins, role in continuous  
 delivery 7  
 system:authenticated group 348,  
 366  
 system:discovery cluster role  
 373  
 system:serviceaccounts: 348  
 system:unauthenticated  
 group 348, 366  
 SYS\_TIME capability 394

**T**

---

tab completion, configuring for  
 kubectl 41–42  
 tagging images  
 overview 497–498  
 under additional tags 35  
 tags 28  
 taints  
 custom, adding to nodes 460  
 effects of 459–460  
 of nodes, displaying 458  
 overview 458–462  
 repelling pods from nodes  
 with 457–462  
 using during scheduling  
 461–462  
 targeting containers 489  
 TCP packets 126  
 TCP Socket 86, 150  
 templates  
 for Job resources 117  
 pods  
 adding readiness probes  
 to 151–152  
 changing 101  
 effect of changing 93  
 using with volume claim  
 templates 288  
 volume claim, using with pod  
 templates 288  
 TERM variable 33  
 terminating processes, providing  
 information about 498–500  
 Terminating scope 429  
 termination grace periods,  
 specifying 490  
 terminationMessagePath field 499  
 terminationMessagePolicy  
 field 500  
 testing services from within  
 clusters 124  
 ThirdPartyResource objects 509  
 time sharing. *See* CPU time sharing  
 TLS (Transport Layer  
 Security) 147–149  
 tmpfs filesystem 166  
 TOKEN variable 241  
 tokens, of custom service  
 accounts 352–353  
 tolerations  
 adding to pods 460–461  
 of pods, displaying 459  
 overview 458–462  
 repelling pods from nodes  
 with 457–462  
 using during scheduling  
 461–462

topologyKey 471–473  
triggering  
  rolling updates 265–267  
  scale-ups 445–446  
troubleshooting services 156

**U**

ubuntu:latest image 164  
UDP packets 126  
unbinding instances 526  
undoing rollouts 269  
universal resource locators. *See*  
  URLs  
unschedulable nodes 109  
updates. *See* rolling updates  
updating  
  annotations 232  
  application config without  
    restarting application 211–213  
applications declaratively using  
  Deployment 261–278  
  blocking rollouts of bad  
    versions 274–278  
  controlling rate of  
    rollout 271–273  
  creating Deployments 262–264  
  pausing rollout process 273–274  
  rolling back  
    deployments 268–270  
  updating Deployments 264–268  
applications running in  
  pods 251–253  
  deleting old pods 252–253  
  replacing old pods 252  
  spinning up new pods 252–253  
ConfigMap 213  
Deployment resource 264–268  
  Deployment strategies 264–265  
  slowing down rolling  
    updates 265  
  triggering rolling  
    updates 265–267  
deployments with kubectl  
  apply 276–277  
files automatically 212–213  
labels 232  
replica count on scaled  
  resources 440  
StatefulSets 302–303  
URLs (universal resource  
  locators) 365–367

–user argument 359  
user credentials  
  adding 536–537  
  modifying 536–537  
  tying with clusters 537  
USER directive 381  
users 347–348  
  assigning PodSecurityPolicies to 396–399  
  creating PodSecurityPolicy  
    allowing privileged containers to be deployed 396–397  
    with RBAC 397–398  
  creating additional for kubectl 398  
  creating pods as 398–399  
  in kubeconfig files 536  
  in Red Hat OpenShift Container platform 528  
out-of-range IDs 393  
running containers as  
  specific 381–382  
sharing volumes when containers running as different users 387–389  
using kubectl with 537–538  
UTS Namespace 11

**V**

V1 applications, creating 254  
validating  
  custom objects 517–518  
  resources 318  
valueFrom field 202  
values property 107  
values, referring to environment variables in 198  
variables. *See* environment variables  
VCS (Version Control System) 505  
VDI (VirtualBox Disk Image) 539  
verifying identity of API servers 240–241  
versioning  
  container images 28  
  resource manifests 504–505  
versions  
  creating 268  
  deploying 269  
  of resources, federated 558  
vertical autoscaling, of pods 451–452  
  automatically configuring resource requests 451

modifying resource requests while pod is running 451–452  
veth pair 336–337  
view ClusterRole, allowing read-only access to resources with 372  
visualizing new states 50  
VMs (virtual machines) 8, 26  
cloning 545–547  
  changing hostname on 546  
  configuring name resolution for hosts 546–547  
comparing to containers 8–10  
comparing to Docker 14–15  
configuring network adapters for 540  
creating 539  
instead of containers 555  
shutting down 545  
  *See also* Minikube VM  
volume claim templates, using with pod templates 288  
VOLUME column 186  
volumeClaimTemplates 293  
volumes 159–177, 190  
  accessing files on worker node filesystems 169–170  
  examining system pods that use hostPath volumes 170  
  hostPath volume 169–170  
constraining types of 395  
decoupling pods from underlying storage technologies 176–184  
  claims 182  
PersistentVolumeClaims 176–181  
  PersistentVolumes 176–184  
dynamic provisioning of PersistentVolumes 184–189  
defining available storage types through StorageClass resources 185  
requesting storage class in PersistentVolumeClaims 185–187  
without specifying storage class 187–189  
overview 160–163  
available volumes types 162–163  
examples of 160–162  
sharing data between containers with 163–169  
sharing when containers run as different users 387–389

volumes (*continued*)  
 specifications, referring to  
 container-level metadata  
 in 233  
 using AWS elastic block store 174  
 using ConfigMap entries  
 in 207–208  
 using emptyDir 163–166  
 creating pods 164–165  
 in pods 163–164  
 seeing pods in action 165  
 specifying medium for 166  
 using Git repository as starting  
 point for 166–169  
 files in sync with gitRepo  
 volume 168  
 gitRepo volume 169  
 running web server pod serv-  
 ing files from  
 cloned 167  
 sidecar containers 168  
 using gitRepo volume with  
 private Git repositories  
 168  
 using multiple directories in 282  
 using NFS 175  
 using persistent storage 171–175  
 underlying storage 174–175  
 using GCE Persistent Disk in  
 pod volumes 171–174  
 using to preserve data across  
 container restarts 480–482

*See also* gitRepo volume; per-  
 sistent volumes

vsphereVolume volume 163

## W

---

watch command 445  
 web applications, accessing 45–47  
 accessing services through  
 external IP 46–47  
 creating services 45  
 listing services 46  
 web browsers 140  
 web server pods, serving files from  
 cloned Git repository 167  
 WebHook plugin 353  
 WebServer container 162  
 Website controllers 514–515  
 website-crd.yaml file 511  
 worker nodes 18, 43  
 accessing files on 169–170  
 examining system pods that  
 use hostPath  
 volumes 170  
 hostPath volume 169–170  
 categorizing with labels 74  
 components running on 310  
 configuring with  
 kubeadm 549–550  
 worker() method 323  
 Workflow. *See* Deis Workflow plat-  
 form

## X

---

-Xmx JVM option 416

## Y

---

YAML file format  
 creating definitions 110  
 creating descriptors for  
 pods 63–65  
 creating namespaces 78  
 creating pods from  
 descriptors 61–67  
 sending requests to pods  
 66–67  
 using kubectl create to create  
 pods 65  
 viewing application logs  
 65–66  
 creating services through 123  
 examining descriptors of exist-  
 ing pods 61–63  
 exposing applications through  
 services using 255  
 manifests, writing 505–506  
 running applications through  
 services using 255  
 running pods without writing  
 manifest 155  
 yum package manager, adding  
 Kubernetes repo files 544

## Kubernetes resources covered in the book (continued)

|                      | <b>Resource (abbr.) [API version]</b>                                 | <b>Description</b>   | <b>Section</b> |
|----------------------|---|--|----------------|
| <b>Scaling</b>       | <b>HorizontalPodAutoscaler</b> (hpa) [autoscaling/v2beta1**]          | Automatically scales number of pod replicas based on CPU usage or another metric                 | 15.1           |
|                      | <b>PodDisruptionBudget</b> (pdb) [policy/v1beta1]                     | Defines the minimum number of pods that must remain running when evacuating nodes                | 15.3.3         |
| <b>Resources</b>     | <b>LimitRange</b> (limits) [v1]                                       | Defines the min, max, default limits, and default requests for pods in a namespace               | 14.4           |
|                      | <b>ResourceQuota</b> (quota) [v1]                                     | Defines the amount of computational resources available to pods in the namespace                 | 14.5           |
| <b>Cluster state</b> | <b>Node*</b> (no) [v1]  | Represents a Kubernetes worker node  | 2.2.2          |
|                      | <b>Cluster*</b> [federation/v1beta1]                                  | A Kubernetes cluster (used in cluster federation)  | App. D         |
|                      | <b>ComponentStatus*</b> (cs) [v1]                                     | Status of a Control Plane component  | 11.1.1         |
|                      | <b>Event</b> (ev) [v1]  | A report of something that occurred in the cluster   | 11.2.3         |
| <b>Security</b>      | <b>ServiceAccount</b> (sa) [v1]                                       | An account used by apps running in pods  | 12.1.2         |
|                      | <b>Role</b> [rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1]                            | Defines which actions a subject may perform on which resources (per namespace)                   | 12.2.3         |
|                      | <b>ClusterRole*</b> [rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1]                    | Like Role, but for cluster-level resources or to grant access to resources across all namespaces | 12.2.4         |
|                      | <b>RoleBinding</b> [rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1]                     | Defines who can perform the actions defined in a Role or ClusterRole (within a namespace)        | 12.2.3         |
|                      | <b>ClusterRoleBinding*</b> [rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1]             | Like RoleBinding, but across all namespaces  | 12.2.4         |
|                      | <b>PodSecurityPolicy*</b> (psp) [extensions/v1beta1]                  | A cluster-level resource that defines which security-sensitive features pods can use             | 13.3.1         |
|                      | <b>NetworkPolicy</b> (netpol) [networking.k8s.io/v1]                  | Isolates the network between pods by specifying which pods can connect to each other             | 13.4           |
|                      | <b>CertificateSigningRequest*</b> (csr) [certificates.k8s.io/v1beta1] | A request for signing a public key certificate   | 5.4.4          |
| <b>Ext.</b>          | <b>CustomResourceDefinition*</b> (crd) [apiextensions.k8s.io/v1beta1] | Defines a custom resource, allowing users to create instances of the custom resource             | 18.1           |

\* Cluster-level resource (not namespaced)

\*\* Also in other API versions; listed version is the one used in this book

# Kubernetes IN ACTION

Marko Lukša

**K**ubernetes is Greek for “helmsman,” your guide through unknown waters. The Kubernetes container orchestration system safely manages the structure and flow of a distributed application, organizing containers and services for maximum efficiency. Kubernetes serves as an operating system for your clusters, eliminating the need to factor the underlying network and server infrastructure into your designs.

**Kubernetes in Action** teaches you to use Kubernetes to deploy container-based distributed applications. You’ll start with an overview of Docker and Kubernetes before building your first Kubernetes cluster. You’ll gradually expand your initial application, adding features and deepening your knowledge of Kubernetes architecture and operation. As you navigate this comprehensive guide, you’ll explore high-value topics like monitoring, tuning, and scaling.

## What's Inside

- Kubernetes’ internals
- Deploying containers across a cluster
- Securing clusters
- Updating applications with zero downtime

Written for intermediate software developers with little or no familiarity with Docker or container orchestration systems.

**Marko Lukša** is an engineer at Red Hat working on Kubernetes and OpenShift.

To download their free eBook in PDF, ePub, and Kindle formats,  
owners of this book should visit  
[www.manning.com/books/kubernetes-in-action](http://www.manning.com/books/kubernetes-in-action)



“Authoritative and exhaustive. In a hands-on style, the author teaches how to manage the complete lifecycle of any distributed and scalable application.”  
—Antonio Magnaghi, System1

“The best parts are the real-world examples. They don’t just apply the concepts, they road test them.”  
—Paolo Antinori, Red Hat

“An in-depth discussion of Kubernetes and related technologies. A must-have!”  
—Al Krinker, USPTO

“The full path to becoming a professional Kuber-naut. Fundamental reading.”  
—Csaba Sári  
Chimera Entertainment

ISBN-13: 978-1-61729-372-6  
ISBN-10: 1-61729-372-5



9 781617 293726



MANNING

\$59.99 / Can \$79.99 [INCLUDING eBOOK]